

The minitoc package^{*}

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

4th December 2007

^{*}This document corresponds to minitoc v56, dated 2007/12/04.

Summary

Table of contents	4
List of figures	17
List of tables	19
About this document	21
I User's Manual	23
1 The minitoc package	25
2 Frequently Asked Questions	56
3 Memento	80
4 Examples of documents	90
5 Messages	150
6 Jargon	204
7 Installation	241
8 Postface	248
II Implementation	258
9 Commented code of the minitoc package	260
10 Commented code of the mtcoff package	441
11 Commented code of the mtcmess package	457
12 Patch for the memoir class	458
13 Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	460

Summary	3
III Complements	601
Bibliography	603
Changes history	639
Acknowledgments	673
Index	676

Table of contents

Summary	2
Table of contents	4
List of figures	17
List of tables	19
About this document	21
 I User's Manual	 23
1 The minitoc package	25
1.1 Introduction	26
1.1.1 Important restrictions	27
1.1.2 Version	27
1.2 License	27
1.3 Using the minitoc package	28
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	28
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables	28
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables	30
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	34
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables	35
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	36
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	36
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables	36
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	38
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables	40
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	40
1.4.7 Position of the titles	40
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	40
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	41
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	41
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles	41
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	42
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts	42
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	43
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	43

Table of contents 5

1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets	43
1.4.13	Languages for the titles	44
1.4.14	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	44
1.5	Special Features	46
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	46
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	47
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	47
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	49
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	49
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC	50
1.6	The <code>notoccite</code> option	52
1.7	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	52
1.8	The <code>hints</code> option	52
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	54
1.10	Why several \LaTeX runs are required ?	55
1.11	The <code>mtcoff</code> package	55
2	Frequently Asked Questions	56
2.0	Introduction	57
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	58
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	58
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error	58
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	58
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	58
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	59
2.7	Supported document classes	60
2.8	Compatibility with \LaTeX versions	60
2.9	Other mini-tables	60
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ?	61
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	61
2.12	Incompatibility with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$	62
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	62
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	62
2.15	The <code>secttocs</code> are wrong	62
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	62
2.17	Using the <code>hyperref</code> package with <code>minitoc</code>	62
2.18	Problem while upgrading <code>minitoc</code>	63
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices	63
2.20	Use with the <code>appendix</code> package	64
2.21	Use with the <code>tocloft</code> package	64
2.22	Use with the <code>memoir</code> class	65
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	66
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	66
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	67
2.26	Defining your own <code>.mld</code> file	70
2.27	Use with the <code>abstract</code> package	70
2.28	Use with the <code>sectsty</code> package	70
2.29	Strange alignment in the <code>minitocs</code>	71
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	72

Table of contents

6

2.31	Use with packages for captions	72
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	72
2.33	Use with the varsects package	73
2.34	Initial font settings	73
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	75
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	75
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package	75
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	75
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	75
2.40	Use with the romannum package	76
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	76
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	76
2.43	Use with the captcont package	76
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles	76
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable	77
2.46	Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages	78
2.47	Use with the hangcaption package	79
2.48	Use with the flowfram package	79
3	Memento	80
4	Examples of documents	90
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	91
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	92
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file	93
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file	96
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file	100
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file	105
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file	105
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file	105
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file	110
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file	115
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	120
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file	121
4.13	The mtc-fko.tex document file	122
4.14	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	123
4.15	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	124
4.16	The mtc-gap.tex document file	125
4.17	The mtc-hi1.tex document file	125
4.18	The mtc-hi2.tex document file	125
4.19	The mtc-hia.tex document file	125
4.20	The mtc-hir.tex document file	126
4.21	The mtc-hop.tex document file	127
4.22	The mtc-liv.tex document file	128
4.23	The mtc-mem.tex document file	132
4.24	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	133
4.25	The mtc-mu.tex document file	134
4.26	The mtc-nom.tex document file	136
4.27	The mtc-ocf.tex document file	137

Table of contents 7

4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file	138
4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	140
4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	142
4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	143
4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	144
4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	146
4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	146
4.35	The <code>mtc-tsfx.tex</code> document file	147
5	Messages	150
5.1	Introduction	150
5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	152
5.2.1	Informative messages	152
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	160
5.2.2	Warning messages	164
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	170
5.2.3	Error messages	186
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	200
5.3.1	Warning messages	200
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	203
6	Jargon	204
7	Installation	241
8	Postface	248
8.1	The origins	248
8.2	New design in 1993	249
8.3	Developments in 1994	249
8.4	No developments in 1995	249
8.5	Developments in 1996	250
8.6	Developments in 1997	250
8.7	Developments in 1998	250
8.8	Developments in 1999	250
8.9	Developments in 2000	250
8.10	Developments in 2001	251
8.11	Developments in 2002	251
8.12	Developments in 2003	251
8.13	Developments in 2004	251
8.14	Developments in 2005	252
8.15	Developments in 2006	254
8.16	Developments in 2007	254
II	Implementation	258
9	Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package	260
9.1	Introduction	264
9.2	Identification code	264
9.3	A file descriptor to write	264

9.4	Indentation and skip	265
9.5	Tests and flags	266
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	266
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	267
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	267
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats	268
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables	268
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	268
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used	269
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	270
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoc</code> option	271
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	271
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	272
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	272
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	272
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	272
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded	275
9.9.15	Check if the <code>floatrow</code> package is loaded	275
9.9.16	Check if the <code>trivfloat</code> package is loaded	276
9.9.17	Check if the <code>rotfloat</code> package is loaded	276
9.10	Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded ?	276
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	277
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters	278
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	279
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	279
9.15	Section level macros	280
9.16	Corrections for numbering	280
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	280
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	281
9.19	Chapter level macros	281
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	281
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	282
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	282
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	283
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of <code>L^AT_EX</code>	284
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	285
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	285
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	288

9.28	Fake tables of contents	290
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	291
9.30	Chapter level commands	291
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	292
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	294
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	294
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	295
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands	295
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	295
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	298
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	302
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	305
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	305
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	306
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	306
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	307
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	310
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	314
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	315
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	317
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	317
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	320
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	321
9.45	Part level commands	321
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	322
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	323
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	324
9.49	The part level mini-tables : <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code>	325
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	325
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	328
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	331
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	334
9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	334
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	334
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs	337
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	340
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	343
9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	345
9.54	Section-level commands	345
9.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	346
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	346
9.57	The <code>stc@verse</code> environment	347
9.58	The <code>\secttoc</code> , <code>\sectlof</code> , and <code>\sectlot</code> commands	347
9.58.1	The <code>\secttoc</code> command	347
9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command	350
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command	353
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	355
9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	356
9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	357

9.62	End of section-level commands	367
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	367
9.64	Use with <code>\nofiles</code>	368
9.65	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	369
9.66	The horizontal rules and their default values	369
9.67	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	370
9.67.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	370
9.67.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	372
9.67.3	The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	376
9.67.4	The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	378
9.67.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	379
9.67.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	383
9.67.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	386
9.67.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	388
9.67.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	390
9.67.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	392
9.68	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	393
9.69	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	395
9.70	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	397
9.71	Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC	398
9.72	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	399
9.73	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	400
9.74	The “coffee breaks”	400
9.75	Initialization of counters	401
9.76	Declarations for simple options	401
9.76.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	401
9.76.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	401
9.76.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	402
9.76.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	402
9.76.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	402
9.77	The <code>insection</code> option	402
9.78	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	403
9.79	Language options	403
9.80	The <code>hints</code> option	408
9.80.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	408
9.80.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	408
9.80.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	409
9.80.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	409
9.80.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	409
9.80.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	410
9.80.1.6	Hint about the <code>titlesec</code> package	410
9.80.1.7	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	411
9.80.1.8	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	411
9.80.1.9	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	412
9.80.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	413
9.80.1.11	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	413
9.80.1.12	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	413
9.80.1.13	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	414
9.80.1.14	Hint about the <code>flowfram</code> package	414
9.80.1.15	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	414

9.80.1.15.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	415
9.80.1.15.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	415
9.80.1.15.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	416
9.80.1.16	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands	416
9.80.2	Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	417
9.80.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	417
9.80.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	418
9.80.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	420
9.80.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	422
9.80.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	424
9.80.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	425
9.80.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	425
9.80.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	426
9.80.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	426
9.80.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	427
9.80.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	427
9.80.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	427
9.80.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	428
9.80.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	428
9.80.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	428
9.80.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	429
9.80.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	429
9.80.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	429
9.80.2.19	Final part of the hint about the <code>float</code> package	430
9.80.2.20	Final part of the hint about the <code>floatrow</code> package	430
9.80.2.21	Final part of the hint about the <code>trivfloat</code> package	430
9.80.2.22	Final part of the hint about the <code>rotfloat</code> package	431
9.80.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	431
9.80.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used	433
9.80.2.25	Check if some hints have been written	434
9.81	Processing of options	434
9.81.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	435
9.81.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	436
9.81.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	436
9.81.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	437
9.81.5	Saving the sectioning commands	437
9.82	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	438
9.83	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	439
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	441
10.1	Why <code>mtcoff</code> ?	442
10.2	Identification of the package	442
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	443
10.4	Faking simple commands	446
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	447
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	448
10.7	Disabling the font commands	448
10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	450

Table of contents 12

10.9	Disabling the new \l@... commands	450
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	450
10.11	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands	450
10.12	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	451
10.13	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	451
10.14	Disabling the mini-table features commands	452
10.15	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	453
10.16	Caution for some commands	453
10.17	Disabling commands for “coffee”	455
10.18	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments	455
10.19	Inhibition of the \mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth internal commands	455
10.20	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command	455
10.21	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command	456
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixnomenclature command	456
10.23	Disabling the \addstarred... commands	456
11	Commented code of the mtcmess package	457
12	Patch for the memoir class	458
13	Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	460
13.1	“Acadian” language : acadian.mld	467
13.2	“Acadien” language : acadien.mld	467
13.3	“Afrikaan” language : afrikaan.mld	468
13.4	“Afrikaans” language : afrikaans.mld	469
13.5	“Albanian” language : albanian.mld	469
13.6	“American” language : american.mld	470
13.7	“Arab” language : arab.mld	470
13.8	“Arab2” language : arab2.mld	471
13.9	“Arabi” language : arabi.mld	472
13.10	“Arabic” language : arabic.mld	472
13.11	“Armenian” language : armenian.mld	473
13.12	“Australian” language : australian.mld	474
13.13	“Austrian” language : austrian.mld	474
13.14	“Bahasa” language : bahasa.mld	474
13.15	“Bahasai” language : bahasai.mld	474
13.16	“Bahasam” language : bahasam.mld	475
13.17	“Bangla” language : bangla.mld	476
13.18	“Basque” language : basque.mld	477
13.19	“Bengali” language : bengali.mld	478
13.20	“Bicig” language : bicig.mld	478
13.21	“Bicig2” language : bicig2.mld	479
13.22	“Bicig3” language : bicig3.mld	480
13.23	“Bithe” language : bithe.mld	480
13.24	“Brazil” language : brazil.mld	481
13.25	“Brazilian” language : brazilian.mld	482
13.26	“Breton” language : breton.mld	482
13.27	“British” language : british.mld	483
13.28	“Bulgarian” language : bulgarian.mld	483
13.29	“Bulgarianb” language : bulgarianb.mld	484

13.30	“Buryat” language : buryat.mld	485
13.31	“Buryat2” language : buryat2.mld	486
13.32	“Canadian” language : canadian.mld	486
13.33	“Canadien” language : canadien.mld	489
13.34	“Castillan” language : castillan.mld	489
13.35	“Castillian” language : castillian.mld	489
13.36	“Catalan” language : catalan.mld	490
13.37	“Chinese1” language : chinese1.ml[d o]	491
13.38	“Chinese2” language : chinese2.ml[d o]	491
13.39	“Croatian” language : croatian.mld	492
13.40	“Czech” language : czech.mld	493
13.41	“Danish” language : danish.mld	494
13.42	“Devanagari” language : devanagari.mld	495
13.43	“Dutch” language : dutch.mld	495
13.44	“English” language : english.mld	496
13.45	“English1” language : english1.mld	497
13.46	“English2” language : english2.mld	498
13.47	“Esperant” language : esperant.mld	498
13.48	“Esperanto” language : esperanto.mld	499
13.49	“Estonian” language : estonian.mld	499
13.50	“Ethiopia” language : ethiopia.mld	500
13.51	“Ethiopian” language : ethiopian.mld	502
13.52	“Ethiopian2” language : ethiopian2.mld	502
13.53	“Farsi1” language : farsi1.ml[d o]	502
13.54	“Farsi2” language : farsi2.ml[d o]	504
13.55	“Farsi3” language : farsi3.mld	505
13.56	“Finnish” language : finnish.mld	505
13.57	“Finnish2” language : finnish2.mld	507
13.58	“Francais” language : francais.mld	508
13.59	“French” language : french.mld	508
13.60	“French1” language : french1.mld	509
13.61	“French2” language : french2.mld	510
13.62	“Frenchb” language : frenchb.mld	510
13.63	“Frenchle” language : frenchle.mld	511
13.64	“Frenchpro” language : frenchpro.mld	511
13.65	“Galician” language : galician.mld	511
13.66	“German” language : german.mld	512
13.67	“Germanb” language : germanb.mld	514
13.68	“Germanb2” language : germanb2.mld	514
13.69	“Greek” language : greek.mld	515
13.70	“Greek-mono” language : greek-mono.mld	515
13.71	“Greek-polydemo” language : greek-polydemo.mld	517
13.72	“Greek-polykatha” language : greek-polykatha.mld	518
13.73	“Guarani” language : guarani.mld	519
13.74	“Hangul1” language : hangul1.ml[d o]	520
13.75	“Hangul2” language : hangul2.ml[d o]	522
13.76	“Hangul3” language : hangul3.ml[d o]	522
13.77	“Hangul4” language : hangul4.ml[d o]	523
13.78	“Hangul-u8” language : hangul-u8.ml[d o]	523

13.79	“Hanja1” language : hanja1.mld.ml[d o]	524
13.80	“Hanja2” language : hanja2.ml[d o]	524
13.81	“Hanja-u8” language : hanja-u8.ml[d o]	525
13.82	“Hebrew” language : hebrew.mld	525
13.83	“Hebrew2” language : hebrew2.mld	527
13.84	“Hindi” language : hindi.mld	527
13.85	“Hindi-modern” language : hindi-modern.mld	528
13.86	“Hungarian” language : hungarian.mld	529
13.87	“Icelandic” language : icelandic.mld	529
13.88	“Indon” language : indon.mld	530
13.89	“Indonesian” language : indonesian.mld	530
13.90	“Interlingua” language : interlingua.mld	531
13.91	“Irish” language : irish.mld	531
13.92	“Italian” language : italian.mld	532
13.93	“Italian2” language : italian2.mld	534
13.94	“Japanese” language : japanese.ml[d o]	534
13.95	“Japanese2” language : japanese2.ml[d o]	535
13.96	“Japanese3” language : japanese3.ml[d o]	536
13.97	“Japanese4” language : japanese4.ml[d o]	536
13.98	“Japanese5” language : japanese5.ml[d o]	537
13.99	“Japanese6” language : japanese6.ml[d o]	538
13.100	“Kannada” language : kannada.mld	538
13.101	“Khalkha” language : khalkha.mld	539
13.102	“Latin” language : latin.mld	539
13.103	“Latin2” language : latin2.mld	540
13.104	“Latinc” language : latinc.mld	540
13.105	“Latinc2” language : latinc2.mld	541
13.106	“Latvian” language : latvian.mld	541
13.107	“Latvian2” language : latvian2.mld	542
13.108	“Letton” language : letton.mld	543
13.109	“Letton2” language : letton2.mld	543
13.110	“Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld	543
13.111	“Lithuanian2” language : lithuanian2.mld	544
13.112	“Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld	545
13.113	“Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld	546
13.114	“Magyar” language : magyar.mld	548
13.115	“Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld	548
13.116	“Magyar3” language : magyar3.mld	549
13.117	“Malay” language : malay.mld	549
13.118	“Malayalam-b” language : malayalam-b.mld	550
13.119	“Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld	551
13.120	“Malayalam-keli2” language : malayalam-keli2.mld	551
13.121	“Malayalam-mr” language : malayalam-mr.mld	552
13.122	“Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.ml[d o]	553
13.123	“Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld	553
13.124	“Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld	554
13.125	“Malayalam-rachana3” language : malayalam-rachana3.mld	554
13.126	“Manju” language : manju.mld	555
13.127	“Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld	555

13.128 “Mongol” language : mongol.mld	555
13.129 “Mongolb” language : mongolb.mld	557
13.130 “Mongolian” language : mongolian.mld	558
13.131 “Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld	558
13.132 “Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld	558
13.133 “Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld	559
13.134 “Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld	559
13.135 “Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld	560
13.136 “Norsk” language : norsk.mld	560
13.137 “Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld	561
13.138 “Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld	562
13.139 “Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld	562
13.140 “Polish” language : polish.mld	563
13.141 “Polish2” language : polish2.mld	563
13.142 “Polski” language : polski.mld	564
13.143 “Portuges” language : portuges.mld	565
13.144 “Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld	565
13.145 “Romanian” language : romanian.mld	566
13.146 “Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld	567
13.147 “Romanian3” language : romanian3.mld	568
13.148 “Russian” language : russian.mld	570
13.149 “Russian2m” language : russian2m.mld	570
13.150 “Russian2o” language : russian2o.mld	571
13.151 “Russianb” language : russianb.mld	572
13.152 “Russianc” language : russianc.mld	573
13.153 “Russian-cca” language : russian-cca.ml[d o]	573
13.154 “Russian-cca1” language : russian-cca1.ml[d o]	574
13.155 “Russian-lh” language : russian-lh.ml[d o]	574
13.156 “Russian-lhcyralt” language : russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o]	575
13.157 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o]	575
13.158 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language : russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o]	576
13.159 “Samin” language : samin.mld	576
13.160 “Scottish” language : scottish.mld	577
13.161 “Serbian” language : serbian.mld	578
13.162 “Serbianc” language : serbianc.mld	579
13.163 “Slovak” language : slovak.mld	580
13.164 “Slovene” language : slovene.mld	580
13.165 “Spanish” language : spanish.mld	581
13.166 “Spanish2” language : spanish2.mld	584
13.167 “Spanish3” language : spanish3.mld	584
13.168 “Spanish4” language : spanish4.mld	585
13.169 “Swahili” language : swahili.mld	585
13.170 “Swedish” language : swedish.mld	587
13.171 “Swedish2” language : swedish2.mld	587
13.172 “Thai” language : thai.ml[d o]	589
13.173 “Turkish” language : turkish.mld	590
13.174 “Uighur” language : uighur.mld	591
13.175 “Uighur2” language : uighur2.mld	592
13.176 “Uighur3” language : uighur3.mld	592

Table of contents **16**

13.177 “UKenglish” language : UKenglish.mld	592
13.178 “Ukraineb” language : ukraineb.mld	593
13.179 “Ukrainian” language : ukrainian.mld	593
13.180 “Uppersorbian” language : uppersorbian.mld	595
13.181 “USenglish” language : USenglish.mld	595
13.182 “Usorbian” language : usorbian.mld	595
13.183 “Vietnam” language : vietnam.mld	596
13.184 “Vietnamese” language : vietnamese.mld	597
13.185 “Welsh” language : welsh.mld	597
13.186 “Xalx” language : xalx.mld	598
13.187 “Xalx2” language : xalx2.mld	599
13.188 “Xalx3” language : xalx3.mld	600

III Complements **601**

Bibliography **603**

Changes history **639**

Acknowledgments **673**

Index **676**

List of figures

1.1	Float barriers	32
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	45
2.1	Three compilations for minitoc	59
13.1	Language families in the world	465
13.2	Political world	465
13.3	Acadia today	467
13.4	Areas of the afrikaans language	468
13.5	Areas of the albanian language	469
13.6	Areas of the arabic language	471
13.7	Armenia and the languages in the Caucasus	473
13.8	Indonesia	475
13.9	Malaysia	476
13.10	Areas of the bangla (or bengali) language	477
13.11	The Basque country	478
13.12	Brazil	481
13.13	Brittany	482
13.14	Bulgaria	484
13.15	Republic of Buryatia	485
13.16	Official languages in Canada	487
13.17	Canada	487
13.18	Political map of Canada	488
13.19	Linguistic map of Canada	488
13.20	Areas of the catalan language	490
13.21	Languages in China	491
13.22	Minorities in Croatia	492
13.23	Czech Republic	493
13.24	Denmark and Faeroe Islands	494
13.25	Languages in the Netherlands and in Belgium	495
13.26	Anglophone areas	496
13.27	Estonia	499
13.28	Areas of the ethiopian languages	501
13.29	Areas of the farsi language	503
13.30	Iranian tongues	504
13.31	Finland	506
13.32	Finnish dialects	507
13.33	Francophone areas	508

13.34	Areas of the galician language	512
13.35	Germanophone areas	513
13.36	Greece	516
13.37	Dialects of modern Greek	516
13.38	Paraguay	519
13.39	Areas of the korean language	521
13.40	Hangûl and hanja characters	521
13.41	Israël	526
13.42	Languages in India	528
13.43	Iceland	529
13.44	Ireland	532
13.45	Italy	533
13.46	Italophone areas in Europa	533
13.47	Japon	535
13.48	Areas of the kannada language	538
13.49	Baltic languages and Latvia	542
13.50	Baltic languages and Lithuania	544
13.51	Lusace and the Sorbians	546
13.52	Areas of the sorbian dialects	547
13.53	Hungaria and magyar speaking areas	548
13.54	Areas of the malayalam language	550
13.55	Areas of the mongol language	556
13.56	General linguistic map of the mongol language	556
13.57	Languages in Norway	561
13.58	Poland	563
13.59	Portugal	565
13.60	Lusophone areas	566
13.61	Areas of the romanian language	567
13.62	Areas of the russian language	569
13.63	Areas where the russian language is official or spoken	569
13.64	Areas of the Sámi dialects	577
13.65	Scotland and the scottish language	577
13.66	Serbia and Bosnia-Herzegovina	578
13.67	Slovakia	580
13.68	Slovenia	581
13.69	The 17 autonomous communities in Spain	582
13.70	Languages in Spain	583
13.71	Hispanophone areas	583
13.72	Area of the swahili language	586
13.73	Areas of the swedish language	588
13.74	Area of the thai language	589
13.75	Turkey	590
13.76	Areas of the uighur language	591
13.77	Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region	591
13.78	Languages in Ukraine	594
13.79	Ukraine	594
13.80	Vietnam	596
13.81	Wales	598
13.82	Areas of the khalkha language	599

List of tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	29
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	31
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	33
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	35
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	37
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	38
1.7	Available languages	39
1.8	Horizontal rules	46
1.9	Page numbers	46
1.10	Features for mini-tables	48
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	55
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	78
3.1	Package options	80
3.2	General commands	81
3.3	Commands : part level	82
3.4	Commands : chapter level	83
3.5	Commands : section level	84
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	85
3.7	Commands for page numbers	85
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	86
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	87
3.10	Adjustment commands	87
3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	88
3.12	Obsolete commands	89
5.1	Message identifiers	151
6.1	Category codes	210
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	211
6.3	Standard document classes	212
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	214
6.5	Various encodings	215
6.6	Most common font encodings	229
6.7	Most common font families	230
6.8	Most common font series	230
6.9	Most common font shapes	230

List of tables **20**

6.10	The five font parameters of some fonts	230
6.11	Author commands for fonts	231
6.12	Some systems derived from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$	232
7.1	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), first part	242
7.2	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), second part	243
7.3	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files	244
9.1	Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions	283

About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 24):
 - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 25, describes the essential commands to use the package;
 - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 56, may help you to solve some specific problems;
 - the chapter “Memento”, page 80, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
 - the chapter “Examples of documents”, page 90, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
 - the chapter “Messages”, page 150, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages (table 5.1 on page 151 will help you to find the meaning of a message);
 - the chapter “Jargon”, page 204, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
 - the chapter “Installation”, page 241, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
 - the chapter “Postface”, page 248, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 259, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 460, may be useful if you are interested by some language.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 602, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, a list of acknowledgments, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [133], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables; as the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks (with the help of the `hyperref` package [323]), these mini-tables should help you to navigate within the document;
- some hyperlinks, placed in the right margin, contain a message identifier; the link points to the description of the message in the “Messages” chapter; try this one: [—————→](#)
- the `calc` package [360] to make some computations with comfort;
- the `booktabs` package [143] to format the tables;
- the `doc` [274] and `docstrip` [241] packages to document the code;
- many other packages to improve the presentation of the documentation.

I0001

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

1	The minitoc package	25	5	Messages	150
2	Frequently Asked Questions	56	6	Jargon	204
3	Memento	80	7	Installation	241
4	Examples of documents	90	8	Postface	248

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

1.1	Introduction	26
1.1.1	Important restrictions	27
1.1.2	Version	27
1.2	License	27
1.3	Using the minitoc package	28
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	28
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	28
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	30
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	34
1.4	Typesetting of the mini-tables	35
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	36
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	36
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	36
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	38
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	40
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	40
1.4.7	Position of the titles	40
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	40
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	41
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	41
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positionning of titles	41
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	42
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	42
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	43
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	43
1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets	43
1.4.13	Languages for the titles	44
1.4.14	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	44
1.5	Special Features	46
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	46
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	47
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	47
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	49

1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	49
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC	50
1.6	The <code>notoccite</code> option	52
1.7	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	52
1.8	The <code>hints</code> option	52
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	54
1.10	Why several \LaTeX runs are required?	55
1.11	The <code>mtcoff</code> package	55

Figures

1.1	Float barriers	32
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	45

Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	29
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	31
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	33
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	35
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	37
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	38
1.7	Available languages	39
1.8	Horizontal rules	46
1.9	Page numbers	46
1.10	Features for mini-tables	48
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	55

1.1 Introduction

The minitoc package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 248. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”¹) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like `book` or `report` [236]) or sections (classes like `article`²) [236]. Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use

¹ The minitoc package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

² As the standard `proc` class [235], and the `ltxdoc` [105] and `ltnews` [208] classes, load the standard `article` class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the `article` class.

section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions

Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectioning level.



Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.



1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #56. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 248) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 639.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L^AT_EX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L^AT_EX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don’t bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and reasoned improvements are welcome.

1.3 Using the minitoc package

1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:
`\minitoc`
`\chapter`

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
```

in the preamble of the document³. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*⁴ inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the next page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.mtc* $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter⁵. The suffix is *.mlf* $\langle N \rangle$ for mini-lists of figures and is *.mlt* $\langle N \rangle$ for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending on the document class.

1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands⁶ `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the *document.toc*, *document.lof*, and *document.lot*
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the *document.mtc* $\langle N \rangle$, *document.mlf* $\langle N \rangle$, and
document.mlt $\langle N \rangle$ files.

³ This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectioning commands; if you modify some sectioning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

⁴ “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you are asking for details with a high value for `minitocdepth`.

⁵ The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

⁶ The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [103], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcoffset}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\dominitoc</code>	
<code>\dominilof</code>	
<code>\dominilot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fakelistoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fakelistoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\chapter{...}</code>	
<code>\minitoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

<code>\dosecttoc</code>	The commands <code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , and <code>\dosectlot</code> (for mini-tables at the section level) and <code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , and <code>\dopartlot</code> (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.
<code>\dosectlof</code>	
<code>\dosectlot</code>	
<code>\doparttoc</code>	
<code>\dopartlof</code>	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for <i>all</i> the mini-tables.
<code>\dopartlot</code>	
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	
<code>\listoffigures</code>	
<code>\listoftables</code>	All the preparation commands are <i>ignored</i> if the <code>\nofiles</code> command is invoked in the preamble, to avoid to overwrite the mini-table auxiliary files.

To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must *imperatively be put before* any command analog to the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables` commands, or their `\fake...` siblings.



W0098



It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the `\do...toc` commands), and *before* any `\caption`-like command producing an entry in the list of figures (for the `\do...lof` commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot` commands); else disorder in the mini-tables might result.



1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. It is often better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add a section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2 on the following page.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58).

`\usepackage` As floats (figures and tables) could drift⁷ somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

W0056

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent `sectlofs` and `sectlots`. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [12] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier

⁷ A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.

Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

\documentclass[...]{article}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{secttoc}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dosecttoc		
\dosectlof		
\dosectlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\section{...}		
\secttoc	if you want one	
\sectlof	if you want one	
\sectlot	if you want one	
...		

becomes “porous” upwards⁸ (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on the next page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENEAU, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [242] and [277, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section.

In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `document.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [255] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [239].



⁸ But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{parttoc}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\doparttoc		
\dopartlof		
\dopartlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\part{...}		
\parttoc	if you want one	
\partlof	if you want one	
\partlot	if you want one	
...		

If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.ptc* $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute part number. The suffix is *.plf* $\langle N \rangle$ for partial lists of figures and is *.plt* $\langle N \rangle$ for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58).

Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a minilof for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a partlof for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (secttoc, sectlof, and sectlot) and to the part-level mini-tables (parttoc, partlof, and partlot).

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command



in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 30) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `document.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [116, 118] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

<code>\addcontentsline</code>	NOTE: if using <code>\chapter*</code> and a
<code>\addstarredpart</code>	
<code>\addstarredchapter</code>	
<code>\addstarredsection</code>	<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}</code>

command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:



```
\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}
```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

<code>\addcontentsline</code>	<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}</code>
-------------------------------	--

So, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```
\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}
```

`\adjustptc` There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or `\section*`):
`\adjustmtc` the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc` (or `\adjuststc`
`\adjuststc` or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to
 increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like `\stepcounter{mtc}` or
`\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is cheating), because the `mtcoff`
 package (see section 1.11 on page 55) knows what to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others),
 but can do nothing about `\stepcounter` or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic
 commands of L^AT_EX, not minitoc specific commands. Syntax:

$$\backslash\mathrm{adjustptc}[n] \quad \backslash\mathrm{adjustmtc}[n] \quad \backslash\mathrm{adjuststc}[n]$$

where n is the increment (default: 1).

`\decrementptc` There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters:
`\decrementmtc` `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`,
`\decrementstc` and `\incrementstc`; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.
`\incrementptc` But a more clever way to solve this problem would be using commands similar to:
`\incrementmtc`
`\incrementstc`
`\mtcaddpart` `\mtcaddchapter[title]`
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcaddsection`

This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 72 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.



Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>

1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over several pages.

1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont` The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default.

`\mtcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. See tables 1.5 on the next page and 1.6 on page 38⁹.

`\mlfSfont`
`\mltSfont`

Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence it is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed¹⁰ (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can often be adjusted by changing some fonts.



1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtifont` Titles are typeset in the `\mtifont` (`\large\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\mtctitle`, `\mlftitle` and `\mltttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.

`\mltttitle`
`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (the suffix `.mld` means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on page 39 and section 1.4.13 on page 44) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning of a parttoc, partlof or partlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is

`\ptcCfont`
`\ptcSfont`

⁹ Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

¹⁰ This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [218]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [332]), for instance, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 71.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:**			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\sltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
*for document classes with <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., book, report).			
**for document classes with no <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., article).			
[†] default for english; changed by the language definition files or <code>\renewcommand</code> .			
All these fonts use <code>\rmfamily</code> , <code>\upshape</code> , and <code>\mdseries</code> by default.			

`\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

`\ptcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands
`\ptcSSfont` `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default,
`\ptcPfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts.
`\ptcSPfont`

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	Default setting
For the <code>\parttoc</code> entries:		
Chapter*	<code>\ptcCfont*</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries*</code>
Section	<code>\ptcSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\bfseries**</code>
Subsection	<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)
Subsubsection	<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)
Paragraph	<code>\ptcPfont</code>	(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)
Subparagraph	<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)
For the <code>\minitoc</code> entries:*		
Section	<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\small\bfseries</code>
Subsection	<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)
Subsubsection	<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)
Paragraph	<code>\mtcPfont</code>	(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)
Subparagraph	<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)
For the <code>\secttoc</code> entries:**		
Subsection	<code>\stcSSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code>
Subsubsection	<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	(like <code>\stcfont</code>)
Paragraph	<code>\stcPfont</code>	(like <code>\stcfont</code>)
Subparagraph	<code>\stcSPfont</code>	(like <code>\stcfont</code>)

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

`\plffont` Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\plffont` and `\pltfont`, which
`\pltfont` are `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\plfSfont` and `\pltSfont` for
`\plfSfont` sub-figures and sub-tables entries.
`\pltSfont`

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

`\ptifont` Titles are typeset in the `\ptifont` (`\LARGE\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings
`\ptctitle` of the titles are defined by `\ptctitle`, `\plftitle` and `\plttitle`, which are the strings
`\plftitle` “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title commands
`\plttitle` should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.
`\mtcsettitle`
`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and many others;
for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the next page) are available. Read also
section 1.4.13 on page 44. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language
(see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the
`\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

– afrikaan (afrikaans)	– ethiopian2 ^{c,e,h}	– japanese3 ^{c,d,g}	– romanian
– albanian	– farsi1 ^{c,f,g}	– japanese4 ^{c,d,g}	– romanian2
– arab (arabic) ^c	– farsi2 ^{c,f,g}	– japanese5 ^{c,d,g}	– romanian3
– arab2 ^{a,c}	– farsi3 ^{c,j}	– japanese6 ^{c,d,g}	– russian ^{b,c}
– arabi ^{c,j}	– finnish	– kannada ^c	– russianb ^{b,c}
– armenian ^c	– finnish2	– latin	– russianc ^{b,c}
– bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) ^c	– french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	– latin2	– russian2m ^{c,e}
– bahasam (malay, meyalu) ^c	– french1	– latinc	– russian2o ^{c,e}
– bangla (bengali) ^c	– french2	– latin2	– russian-cca ^{c,g,h}
– basque	– galician	– latvian (letton) ^e	– russian-lh ^{c,g,h}
– bicig (uighur) ^{c,i}	– german (austrian)	– latvian2 (letton2) ^c	– russian-lhcyralt ^{c,g,h}
– bicig2 (uighur2) ^{c,i}	– germanb	– lithuanian	– russian-lhcyrkoi ^{c,g,h}
– bicig3 (uighur3) ^{c,i}	– germanb2	– lithuanian2 ^{c,h}	– russian-lhcyrwin ^{c,g,h}
– bithe (manju) ^c	– greek ^c	– lowersorbian (Isorbian)	– samin
– brazil (brazilian)	– greek-mono ^{c,e}	– magyar (hungarian)	– scottish
– breton	– greek-polydemo ^{c,e}	– magyar2	– serbian
– bulgarian ^c	– greek-polykatha ^{c,e}	– magyar3	– serbianc ^c
– bulgarianb ^c	– guarani ^h	– malayalam-b ^c	– slovak
– buryat ^c	– hangul1 ^{c,d,g}	– malayalam-keli ^c	– slovene
– buryat2 ^c	– hangul2 ^{c,d,g}	– malayalam-keli2 ^c	– spanish (castillan, castillian)
– catalan	– hangul3 ^{c,d,g}	– malayalam-mr ^c	– spanish2
– chinese1 ^{c,g}	– hangul4 ^{c,d,g}	– malayalam-omega ^{c,e,g,h}	– spanish3 ^{e,f}
– chinese2 ^{c,g}	– hangul-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	– malayalam-rachana ^c	– spanish4
– croatian	– hanja1 ^{c,d,g}	– malayalam-rachana2 ^c	– swahili
– czech	– hanja2 ^{c,d,g}	– malayalam-rachana3 ^c	– swedish
– danish	– hanja-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	– mongol ^c	– swedish2
– devanagari (hindi) ^c	– hebrew ^{c,h}	– mongolb (mongolian) ^{c,f,h}	– thai ^{c,d,f,g}
– dutch	– hebrew2 ^{c,h}	– ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	– turkish
– english [†] (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	– hindi-modern ^c	– ngermanb2	– ukrainian (ukraine) ^{b,c}
– english1	– icelandic ^f	– norsk	– uppsorbian (usorbian)
– english2	– interlingua	– norsk2	– vietnam (vietnamese) ^{c,d}
– esperant (esperanto)	– irish	– nynorsk	– welsh
– estonian	– italian	– nynorsk2	– xalx (khalkha) ^c
– ethiopia (ethiopian) ^c	– italian2	– polish	– xalx2 ^c
	– japanese ^{c,d,g}	– polish2 ^{c,e}	– xalx3 ^c
	– japanese2 ^{c,d,g}	– polski ^c	
		– portuguese (portuges)	

() The languages between parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

[†] The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory.

^a The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabTeX package [230, 231] (by Klaus LAGALLY).

^b The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [48, 49], but russianb [240] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

^c Some languages may require specific fonts.

^d Requires the CJK package [250, 251].

^e Requires *Lambda* (Λ), the version of L^AT_EX for Omega (Ω).

^f Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

^g Uses also a .mlo file.

^h Requires a specific input encoding.

ⁱ The bicig language is also known as uighur.

^j The arabi and farsi3 languages require the use of the A^Abi package [204].

1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as `\stcSSfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot`.

More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

`\stcPfont` For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\slffont` and `\sltfont`, which are defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\slttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.

`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on the preceding page and explained in section 1.4.13 on page 44) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.7 Position of the titles

1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

`\doparttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof` and `\dopartlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).

`\parttoc` The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one `parttoc` (or `partlof` or `partlot`), just use such an optional argument with the command `\parttoc` (or `\partlof` or `\partlot`).

1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

`\dominitoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for “empty” (“no” title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\minitoc` (or `\minilof` or `\minilot`).

1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

`\dosecttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\secttoc` (or `\sectlof` or `\sectlot`).

1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:
`\dopartlof`
`\dopartlot`
`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,
`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,
`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,
`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positionning of the title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, `[e]` or `[n]` for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:

`\partlof`
`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,
`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,
`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`
`\minilot`

`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positionning only for the title of the current mini-table.
`\sectlof`
`\sectlot`

1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse`
`\tightmtctrue` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight)
`\tightmtcfalse` or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\parskip` But with the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may
`\parsep` sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set
`\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the follow-
ing options depends on the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option,
`parskip` option and variants).

I0043

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight`
`\ktightmtctrue` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the
`\ktightmtcfalse` default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:
`\mtcsettitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectionning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlofs`) with the given font commands.

1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.4.12 Simplified command for mini-table offsets

`\mtcsetoffset` To simplify the redefinition of the offsets for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetoffset` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-4em}
```

will set the macro `\mtcoffset` to the given value. This command checks that you set a offset for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its offset).

NOTE: the argument of `\mtcsetoffset` is *not* verified. It must be a length value, without shrink nor stretch part. A positive offset is towards the right, a negative one towards the left.



1.4.13 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [48, 49] of Johannes L. BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [230, 231], `Ayabi` [204], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [123], `BangTeX` (bangla, bengali) [304], `CervanTeX` (spanish) [43], `Devanāgarī` for `TeX` [306], `ethiop` [39], `guarani` [41], `malayalam` [4] and `omal` [5], `MonTeX` (mongol) [119, 122], `CJK` (chinese, corean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [250, 251], `PLaTeX` [299, 380] (polish), `SLaTeX` [265] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` [140] (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam` [252] — `latvian` (letton), `greek-mono`, `greek-polydemo`, `greek-polykatha`, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need *Lambda* (Λ), i.e., the *Omega* (Ω) version of `LATeX`, (see [226]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome¹¹. See table 1.7 on page 39.

But for some oriental languages¹², the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file¹³, not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of minitoc package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.



1.4.14 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 on the following page (this figure is adapted from [386]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but `LATeX` commands, created by `\newcommand`, modifiable via `\renewcommand`).

- `\@dotsep`, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about

¹¹I am searching for the titles in corsican and in occitan, in particular.

¹²Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

¹³The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

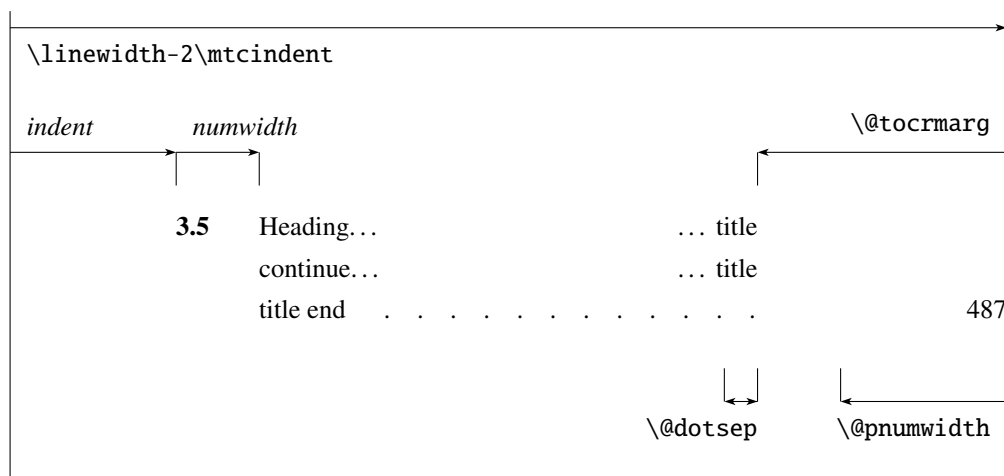


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.

- $\backslash\@pnumwidth$, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a \LaTeX command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- $\backslash\@tocrmarg$, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than $\backslash\@pnumwidth$, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the “... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

$\backslash\mtcsetformat$ As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on the specified kinds of mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the $\backslash\mtcsetformat$ command:

```
 $\backslash\mtcsetformat\{mini-table\}\{parameter\}\{value\}$ 
```

where *mini-table* is one of the parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof or sectlot keywords; *parameter* is one of the dotinterval (for $\backslash\@dotsep$), pagenumwidth (for $\backslash\@pnumwidth$), or tocrighthmargin (for $\backslash\@tocrmarg$) keywords; so:

```
 $\backslash\mtcsetformat\{partlof\}\{tocrighthmargin\}\{2.55em\ plus\ 1fil\}$ 
```

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long (it prevents most hyphenations).

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
	rules in		no rules in	book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagewidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2 on the page before).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

1.5 Special Features

1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹⁴ :

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the page before are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹⁴ :

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.14 on page 44.

1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a `parttoc` (or a `partlof` or a `partlot`), in a `book`- or `report`-class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10 on the next page, whose meaning is often obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

¹⁴0 and o are the letter O, Ø is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	\beforeparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\afterparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\openparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\closeparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\thispageparttocstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlof	\beforepartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\afterpartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\openpartlof	\empty
partlof	\closepartlof	\empty
partlof	\thispagepartlofstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlot	\beforepartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\afterpartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\openpartlot	\empty
partlot	\closepartlot	\empty
partlot	\thispagepartlotstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
minitoc	\beforeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\afterminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\openminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\closeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\thispageminitocstyle	\empty
minilof	\beforeminilof	\empty
minilof	\afterminilof	\empty
minilof	\openminilof	\empty
minilof	\closeminilof	\empty
minilof	\thispageminilofstyle	\empty
minilot	\beforeminilot	\empty
minilot	\afterminilot	\empty
minilot	\openminilot	\empty
minilot	\closeminilot	\empty
minilot	\thispageminilotstyle	\empty
secttoc	\beforesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\aftersecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\opensecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\closesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\thispagesecttocstyle	\empty
sectlof	\beforesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\aftersectlof	\empty
sectlof	\opensectlof	\empty
sectlof	\closesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\thispagesectlofstyle	\empty
sectlot	\beforesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\aftersectlot	\empty
sectlot	\opensectlot	\empty
sectlot	\closesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\thispagesectlotstyle	\empty
\mtcsetfeature{ <i>mini-table</i> }{before after open close pagestyle}{ <i>command</i> }		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}
```

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: `parttoc...` `sectlot`. *keyword* is one of the followings: `before`, `after`, `open`, `close` or `pagestyle`. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles¹⁵

`\mtcsetfeature` The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply
`\thispagestyle` a standard `\thispagestyle{\empty}` command, because in document classes defining the
`\pagestyle` `\chapter` command (like `book` or `report`), the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages.
`\cleardoublepage` If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour is a consequence from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the preceding page. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the `empty` page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short theoretical example¹⁶:



```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{pagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{\empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each `parttoc`, then we set the `empty` page style for the first page of the `parttocs`, the `myheadings` page style for the following pages of the `parttocs`, and set `headings` page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

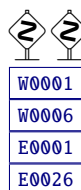
¹⁵This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [26], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the minitoc package.

¹⁶This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



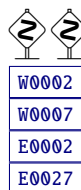
`\printindex` For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the
`\addcontentsline` `\printindex` command:
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcfixindex`

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



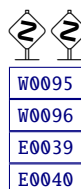
`\printnomenclature` For the nomenclature¹⁷, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands
`\addcontentsline` just after the `\printnomenclature` command:
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcfixnomenclature`

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the nomenclature entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



¹⁷If you are using the `nomencl` package [374] or the `nomentbl` package [139] (`nomentbl` calls `nomenc`).

Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index or nomenclature) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the `document.log` file the insertion of `.mtc<N>` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 96), `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.5 on page 100), and `mtc-nom.tex` (see section 4.26 on page 136) files distributed with minitoc. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.



1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [11] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run BibTeX using the `unsorted` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `document.maf`¹⁸. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the L^AT_EX run. Under Unix or Linux, you can try:


```
cat document.maf | xargs -i -t \rm {}
```

1.8 The hints option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `document.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `document.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:



¹⁸This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

<code>\part</code>	• Alteration of some of the following commands ¹⁹ : <code>\part</code> , <code>\@part</code> , <code>\@spart</code> , <code>\chapter</code> , <code>\@chapter</code> , <code>\@schapter</code> , <code>\section</code> , <code>\@sect</code> , and <code>\@ssect</code> . Note that the <code>hyperref</code> (see section 2.17 on page 62) package alters these commands at <code>\begin{document}</code> , hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the <code>hyperref</code> must be loaded <i>before</i> <code>minitoc</code> .	
<code>\@part</code>		
<code>\spart</code>		
<code>\@spart</code>		
<code>\chapter</code>		
<code>\@chapter</code>		
<code>\schapter</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: <code>amsbook</code> (class), <code>memoir</code> (class), <code>appendix</code> , <code>placeins</code> (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), <code>scrbook</code> (class), <code>scrreprt</code> (class), <code>scrartcl</code> (class), <code>tocbibind</code> , and <code>tocloft</code> .	
<code>\@schapter</code>		
<code>\section</code>		
<code>\@sect</code>		
<code>\@ssect</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are <i>incompatible</i> with the <code>minitoc</code> package: <code>amsart</code> (class), <code>amspdoc</code> (class), <code>alphanum</code> , <code>flowfram</code> ²⁰ , <code>jura</code> (class), <code>titlesec</code> , and <code>titletoc</code> ²¹ .	W0026 W0027 W0025 W0097 W0029 W0040 W0099
<code>\parttoc</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code> ; or the reverse.	
<code>\doparttoc</code>		
<code>\sectlot</code>		
<code>\dosectlot</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> , ... , of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> .	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>		
<code>\listoftables</code>	• Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option).	W0056
<code>\sectlof</code>		
<code>\sectlot</code>	• If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the <code>shorttext</code> package option, see section 1.9 on the next page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the <code>hints</code> package option displays a warning.	W0053 W0054 W0055
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	• If the <code>abstract</code> package [387] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code> , else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment.	I0040
<code>\mtcaddsection</code>		
	• If the <code>sectsty</code> package [266] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil KLEB.	W0037
	• If the <code>varsects</code> package [357] (by Daniel TAUPIN [†]) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0038
	• If the <code>fncychap</code> package [254] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0086
	• If the <code>hangcaption</code> package [210] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0092
	• If the <code>quotchap</code> package [361] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0087

¹⁹The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of L^AT_EX, of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

²⁰This package has its own system for minitocs.

²¹The `titlesec` package redefines the sectioning commands in a way completely alien to the standard L^AT_EX way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally *incompatible*, and it is very sad.

- If the romannum package [398] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0088
 - If the sfheaders package [256] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0089
 - If the alnumsec package [228] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0090
 - If the captcont package [117] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0091
 - If one of the caption [346], caption2²² [344], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [391] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [194] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0033
W0034
W0035
W0036
 - If one of the float [255], floatrow [239], trivfloat [401], or rotfloat [343] packages is used, you must remember that *you can not use* the minitoc facilities for preparing mini-tables of floats of the new defined types. I0053
 - If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the hints option gives a global warning (except if you used also the nocheckfiles option, see section 1.3.3 on page 30). I0006
- `\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstchapteris` `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global `\firstsectionis` hint as reminder. W0003
W0004
W0005
- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

1.9 Usage with MS-DOS

Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The `.mtc<N>` extensions will become `.M<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute chapter number. The extensions `.mlf<N>` and `.mlt<N>` become `.F<N>` and `.T<N>`. The `.ptc<N>` extensions become `.P<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The extensions `.plf<N>` and `.plt<N>` become `.G<N>` and `.U<N>`. The `.stc<N>` extensions become `.S<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The extensions `.slf<N>` and `.slt<N>` become `.H<N>` and `.V<N>`. All these extensions are listed in table 1.11 on the next page. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The hints option (section 1.8 on page 52) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 58.

²²This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.



W0053
W0054
W0055

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$.V $\langle N \rangle$

1.10 Why several \LaTeX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first \LaTeX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third \LaTeX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 59).

1.11 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the `document.log` file. At least two \LaTeX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

2.0	Introduction	57
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	58
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	58
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error	58
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	58
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	58
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	59
2.7	Supported document classes	60
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	60
2.9	Other mini-tables	60
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	61
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	61
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	62
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	62
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	62
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	62
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	62
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	62
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	63
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices	63
2.20	Use with the appendix package	64
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	64
2.22	Use with the memoir class	65
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	66
2.24	Compatibility with the A _M S document classes	66
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	67
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	70
2.27	Use with the abstract package	70
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	70
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	71
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands	72
2.31	Use with packages for captions	72
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	72

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	73
2.34	Initial font settings	73
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	75
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanumeric</code> package	75
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	75
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	75
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	75
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	76
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	76
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	76
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	76
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	76
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	77
2.46	Another interaction between the <code>tocloft</code> and <code>minitoc</code> packages	78
2.47	Use with the <code>hangcaption</code> package	79
2.48	Use with the <code>flowfram</code> package	79

Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	59
-----	---	----

Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	78
-----	---	----

2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the `minitoc.sty` package. If the version has a number less than 56, please upgrade to version #56. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 52), which is activated by default, and b) read the `document.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last resort (please join a minimal but complete example [318, 352]¹ (or “MCE”) reproducing the problem; this example should use the `hints` option).

¹ See also: <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=minxampl> and <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=askquestion> for good advices.

2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L^AT_EX manual [233]. The `needspace` package [385] may also be useful.

2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.14 on page 44. There are yet some examples in chapter 4 on page 90, for some layouts, like mini-tables on two or three columns.

2.3 A “\” command in a contents line makes an error

`\\` Use `\protect\linebreak`. The `\\` command should be used only in tabular material
`\protect` (tabular environment and similar, or in the `tabbing` environment) and in math arrays and
`\linebreak` equations, or in the quote-like environments.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

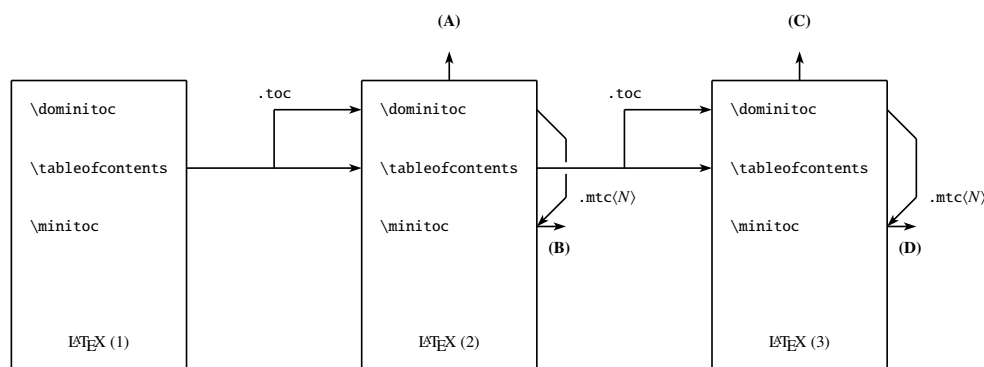
If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute L^AT_EX at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1 on the following page². Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute L^AT_EX at least three times.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?

² I used the `pict2e` package [154], by Hubert GÄSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK, to prepare this figure.



(A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.

(B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.

(C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.

(D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

W0053
W0054
W0055

2.6 Playing with the chapter number

`\setcounter` `\chapter` *Do not cheat* with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like:

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the minitoc package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries in the TOC”, section 1.5.5 on page 50.

Since version #23 (1994/11/08), the numbering of chapters and that of minitocs are independent, so that problem just vanished.

The same remarks apply to the part and section counters.



2.7 Supported document classes

The minitoc package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article” [236]. There are “parttocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter” [237], which have not the classical sectionning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectionning commands with other names are not supported³. See also section 2.24 on page 66.

W0017

2.8 Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions

Some users have failed to make minitoc to work. They got a message like:

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have minilof, minilot and minibbl (mini-bibliographies per part, chapter or section). First, “minibbl” is another problem, strongly related to the B_BT_EX’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the chapterbib [16], bibunits [176], multibib [177], bibtopic [22], and splitbib [263] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic minilofs and minilots. Minibbbls are not the aim of this package⁴.

³ This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectionning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The minitoc package relies on the names of the standard sectionning commands and on the syntax of these commands.

⁴ See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=multibib>

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all minitocs, one for all minilofs, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 30) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the \LaTeX run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and siblings) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with only one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 52.

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the \LaTeX run. If you run \LaTeX via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 55 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `document.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [30] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots` for the part level in `book` | `report`-like and `article`-like documents, `secttocs`, `sectlofs` and `sectlots` for the section level in `article`-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an almost unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with L^AT_EX 2.09

`\protect` The more recent version of L^AT_EX 2_ε adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,
`\contentsline` `.lof` and `.lof` files. The version #17 of `minitoc` attempts to be compatible with L^AT_EX 2_ε and L^AT_EX 2.09. This will be the *last* version usable with L^AT_EX 2.09. Versions #18 and later are L^AT_EX 2_ε specific, and no more compatible with L^AT_EX 2.09, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, `minitoc` works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.14 on page 44.

2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc

Since version #31, `minitoc` works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [323], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, using the work of Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS. Hence the *minitoc-hyper* package [372] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents. If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the L^AT_EX run, then re-L^AT_EX the document. There will



be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from `minitoc` #30 to `minitoc` #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with `minitoc` #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* `minitoc`. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`.

2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, `.lot` files of the document, else the first \LaTeX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the page before.

2.19 A local TOC for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<p>Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:</p> <pre> \doparttoc % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices} % create a part level subdivision \parttoc % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section 2.25 on page 67.

2.20 Use with the `appendix` package

`\addcontentsline` `\adjustmtc` `\adjuststc` `appendices` If you use the `appendix` package [388] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with `minitocs` in the `appendices` environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening `\begin{appendices}` hides a `\addcontentsline` command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of `minitocs` or `secttocs`. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a `\adjustmtc` or `\adjuststc` command (depending on the level of the appendices, chapter or section) after *each* `\begin{appendices}` command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble *after* the loading of the `appendix` package:

I0042

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section⁵.

A rather more elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` command offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

See also the `mtc-amm.tex` example file (section 4.6 on page 105), which uses the `memoir` class [396, 397, 399], which includes itself the `appendix` package functionality (these packages and this class are from the same author).

2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [386].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction⁶, which fortunately

I0047

⁵ In fact, the commands `\partend`, `\chapterend` and `\sectend` should not be used directly by the user, in normal circumstances.

⁶ Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```



To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the `minitoc` section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section [2.22](#).

2.22 Use with the memoir class

The `memoir` class [396, 397, 399] offers basically the functionalities of the `appendix`, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. Wilson), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections [2.20](#) on the page before, [1.5.5](#) on page [50](#), and [2.21](#) on the page before respectively). If your version of the `memoir` class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the `memoir` class *could be no more compatible* with the `minitoc` package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the `memoir` class is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the `memoir` class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsetttitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package).

	
E0028	
I0020	
I0027	
I0030	
I0032	
I0044	
M0001	

If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the `memoir/tocloft` font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont` Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands are available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsetttitle` Since version #42, the `\mtcsetttitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\sltttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth` Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the \mathcal{AMS} document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri MASSIAS.

`\mtcaddchapter` Unfortunately, the `amsart` and `amsproc` document classes are *incompatible* with `minitoc`. The `amsbook` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

W0026
W0027
I0041

2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

`mtchideinmaintoc` It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 63. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```
1 (*mtc - apx)
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
4 [2007/03/22]
5 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
6 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
7 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
8 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
9 \begin{document}
10 \doparttoc \dominitoc % prepare the mini-tables
11 \tableofcontents
12 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
13 \chapter{First}
14 \minitoc
15 First chapter
16 \section{First section} \lipsum[1]
17 \section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
18 \chapter{Second}
19 \minitoc
20 Second
21 \section{First section of second chapter} \lipsum[3]
22 \section{Second section of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
23 \appendix % begins the appendices
24 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
25 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
26 \mtcsettitle{parttoc}{List of Appendices} % changes the parttoc title
27 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
28 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the appendices in the main TOC,
29 % % but chapter-level entries would be still visible in the main TOC
30 % % if you use 0 in place of -1 as optional argument.
31 \chapter{First appendix}
32 \minitoc
33 First appendix
34 \section{First section} \lipsum[5]
35 \section{Second section} \lipsum[6]
```

```

36 \chapter{Second appendix}
37 \minitoc
38 Second appendix
39 \section{First section of second appendix} \lipsum[7]
40 \section{Second section of second appendix} \lipsum[8]
41 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
42 \end{document}
43 \</mtc - apx>

```

`mtchideinmainlof` Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.

Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):



<pre> 44 \<{*mtc - hi1} 45 \documentclass{report} 46 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}% 47 [2007/01/04] 48 \usepackage% 49 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 50 \begin{document} 51 \dominilof \listoffigures 52 \dominilot \listoftables 53 \chapter{First} 54 \minilof \minilot 55 \begin{figure} 56 \caption{AAAA1} </pre>	<pre> 57 \end{figure} 58 \begin{figure} 59 \caption{AAAA2} 60 \end{figure} 61 \begin{table} 62 \caption{TAAAA1} 63 \end{table} 64 \begin{table} 65 \caption{TAAAA2} 66 \end{table} 67 \chapter{Second} 68 \minilof \minilot 69 %%----- </pre>
--	---

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 70 \begin{mtchideinmainlof} 71 \begin{mtchideinmainlot} 72 \begin{figure} 73 \caption{BBBB1} 74 \end{figure} 75 \begin{figure} 76 \caption{BBBB2} 77 \end{figure} </pre>	<pre> 78 \begin{table} 79 \caption{TBBBB1} 80 \end{table} 81 \begin{table} 82 \caption{TBBBB2} 83 \end{table} 84 \chapter{Third} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 85 \end{mtchideinmainlot} 86 \end{mtchideinmainlof} 87 %%----- 88 \minilof \minilot 89 \begin{figure} </pre>	<pre> 90 \caption{CCCC1} 91 \end{figure} 92 \begin{figure} 93 \caption{CCCC2} 94 \end{figure} </pre>
--	--

<pre> 95 \begin{table} 96 \caption{TCCCC1} 97 \end{table} 98 \begin{table} </pre>	<pre> 99 \caption{TCCCC2} 100 \end{table} 101 \end{document} 102 </mtc-hi1> </pre>
---	--

`\mtchideinmainlof` But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a
`\mtchideinmainlot` `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to
`\endmtchideinmainlof` hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) com-
`\endmtchideinmainlot` mand at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file
(mtc-hi2.tex):

<pre> 103 (*mtc-hi2) 104 \documentclass{report} 105 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}% 106 [2007/01/04] 107 \usepackage% 108 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 109 \begin{document} 110 \dominilof \listoffigures 111 \dominilot \listoftables 112 \chapter{First} 113 \minilof \minilot 114 \begin{figure} 115 \caption{AAAA1} </pre>	<pre> 116 \end{figure} 117 \begin{figure} 118 \caption{AAAA2} 119 \end{figure} 120 \begin{table} 121 \caption{TAAAA1} 122 \end{table} 123 \begin{table} 124 \caption{TAAAA2} 125 \end{table} 126 \chapter{Second} 127 \minilof \minilot </pre>
--	--

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables.
In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the
first “hidden” entry.

<pre> 128 \begin{figure} 129 \mtchideinmainlof % <-- 130 \caption{BBBB1} 131 \end{figure} 132 \begin{figure} 133 \caption{BBBB2} </pre>	<pre> 134 \endmtchideinmainlof % <-- 135 \end{figure} 136 \begin{table} 137 \mtchideinmainlot % <-- 138 \caption{TBBBB1} 139 \end{table} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of
tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption
of the *last* “hidden” entry.

<pre> 140 \begin{table} 141 \caption{TBBBB2} 142 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 143 \end{table} 144 \chapter{Third} 145 \minilof \minilot 146 \begin{figure} 147 \caption{CCCC1} 148 \end{figure} </pre>	<pre> 149 \begin{figure} 150 \caption{CCCC2} 151 \end{figure} 152 \begin{table} 153 \caption{TCCCC1} 154 \end{table} 155 \begin{table} 156 \caption{TCCCC2} 157 \end{table} </pre>
---	--

158 `\end{document}`

159 `\</mtc – hi2>`

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is much more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 Defining your own .mld file

`\mtcsettitle` First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via `\renewcommand` or better via `\mtcsettitle`. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via `\mtcselectlanguage`. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the *language*[.mld-.mlo] pairs of language definition files.

2.27 Use with the abstract package

`\mtcaddchapter` If the `abstract` package [387] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a
`\mtcaddsection` “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class
`\chapter` defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the `hints` option
`abstract` and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your
`abstract` environment.

I0040

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the `sectsty` package [266] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0037

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

<code>\l@part</code> <code>\l@chapter</code> <code>\l@section</code> <code>\l@subsection</code> <code>\l@subsubsection</code> <code>\l@paragraph</code> <code>\l@subparagraph</code> <code>\renewcommand</code> <code>\@dottedtocline</code> <code>\mtcsetfont</code> <code>\mtcSfont</code> <code>\mtcSSfont</code> <code>\mtcSSSfont</code> <code>\mtcPfont</code> <code>\mtcSPfont</code>	<p>The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like <code>\l@part</code>, <code>\l@chapter</code>, <code>\l@section</code>, etc.</p> <p>The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the <code>report</code> and <code>book</code> classes) and lower levels, these commands are (<code>book</code> class, <code>book.cls</code>) by default:</p> <pre> \renewcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}} \renewcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}} \renewcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}} \renewcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}} \renewcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}} </pre> <p>which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of <code>\@dottedtocline</code> are</p>
--	---

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.



In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes [236], the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends on the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 38), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section` ... `\l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a `@` in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [386] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see section 2.21 on page 64.

- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 42) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 38), or similar.

2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is *necessary* to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages. 
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectioning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence 

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [346], `caption2`⁷ [344], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [391] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [194] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0033
W0034
W0035
W0036

2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [323] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [396, 397, 399], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

⁷ This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the varsects package [357] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0038

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the parttoc as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes⁸:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the minitoc package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc, partlof or partlot to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the parttoc, partlofs, and partlots. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

In the initialization of the minitoc package, we have a sequence of commands:



```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a parttoc (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the parttoc, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

⁸ The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.

Note that if you say:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

after loading the minitoc package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a minitoc font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [223, 288, 328], compatible with minitoc (scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 50. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

I0043

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are *incompatible* with `minitoc`.



2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the `babel` package [48, 49], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \addto\captions $\textit{language1}$ {\mtcselectlanguage{\mathit{language2}}}}
```

where $\textit{language1}$ is the language name for `babel` and $\textit{language2}$ the language name for `minitoc`; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized `.mld` file, for instance).

2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the `fncychap` package [254] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0086

2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the `quotchap` package [361] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0087

2.40 Use with the `romannum` package

If the `romannum` package [398] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0088

2.41 Use with the `sfheaders` package

If the `sfheaders` package [256] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0089

2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [228] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0090

2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [117] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0091

2.44 Vertical spaces (gaps) for `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles

These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the `book` and `report` document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:



```
160 \*mtc-gap>
161 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
162 \ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}%
```


163 [2007/01/04]

We use the `vruler` package (by Zhuhan JIANG) to display a vertical ruler showing the position of the titles:

```
164 \usepackage{vruler} % to have a vertical graduation to note positions
165 % (by Zhuhan Jiang)
166 \usepackage{txfonts}
167 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
168 \begin{document}
169 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][0pt] % with vruler package
170 \doparttoc \faketableofcontents
171 \part{First part}
```

A normal `parttoc`, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
172 \parttoc
173 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
174 \part{Second part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We set large gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.

`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
175 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
176 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
177 \parttoc
178 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
179 \part{Third part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We set small gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.

`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
180 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
181 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
182 \parttoc
183 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
184 \end{document}
185 </mtc-gap>
```

2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the minitable. The values should depend on the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1 on the following page.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

2.46 Another interaction between the `tocloft` and `minitoc` packages

I encountered an interaction between `tocloft` and `minitoc`. I want to force `minitoc` to not display the page numbers, but because of `tocloft` it doesn't. Here is an example code:

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\end{document}
```

If I comment the line loading the `tocloft` package, I will get a `minitoc` without page numbers as I wanted.

When using together `tocloft` and `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in minitocs). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{XXX}` command (from `tocloft`), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [386, pages 45-56]; `XXX` is the level of entry (chapter, sec, subsec, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The `tocloft` package is more specialized in that job than `minitoc`, so if it is loaded, `minitoc` uses the `tocloft` tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```
186 <*mtc - tlo>
187 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
188 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}%
189 [2007/06/13]
```

We must load `tocloft` *before* `minitoc`:

```
190 \usepackage{tocloft}
191 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
192 \begin{document}
```

`\mtcsetfont` We define the global font for the `minitoc` entries:

```
193 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
194 \frontmatter
195 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

`\cftpagenumbersoff` For the section entries in the `minitocs`, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by
`\cftsecfont` using commands from the `tocloft` package:

```
196 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
197 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}
198 \mainmatter
199 \chapter{First Chapter} \minitoc
200 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
201 \chapter{Second Chapter} \minitoc
202 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
203 \end{document}
204 </mtc - tlo>
```

2.47 Use with the `hangcaption` package

If the `hangcaption` package [210] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0092

2.48 Use with the `flowfram` package

The `flowfram` package [353, 354], which has its own system of `minitocs`, is hence *incompatible* with `minitoc`.


W0097

Chapter 3

Memento

Tables

3.1	Package options	80	3.8	Commands for mini-tables features .	86
3.2	General commands	81	3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	87
3.3	Commands: part level	82	3.10	Adjustment commands	87
3.4	Commands: chapter level	83	3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc	88
3.5	Commands: section level	84	3.12	Obsolete commands	89
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules . . .	85			
3.7	Commands for page numbers	85			

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	listfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into <i>document.maf</i> .
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the <i>document.log</i> file. Useful to detect some problems. Option <i>nohints</i> is inadvisable.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 39. Default: `english`.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <code>language.mld</code> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}</code>	Changes the offset for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}*{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table}*{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>parttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>parttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>parttocs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\plfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlofs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\pltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlots</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{parttoc partlof partlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of <code>parttocs</code> . Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of <code>partlofs</code> . Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of <code>partlots</code> . Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for <code>partXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minitocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mlfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilots. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{minitoc minilof minilot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mlttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: [x] is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of *x* are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\mtcfont`.

Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a secttoc is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a sectlof is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a sectlot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following secttocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on sectlofs and sectlots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on sectlofs and sectlots.
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for secttocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\slfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for sectlofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\sltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for sectlots. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on sectlofs and sectlots.
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for secttoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for secttoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for sectlof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for sectlof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for sectlot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for sectlot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of secttocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of sectlofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of sectlots. Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for sectXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\openparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\openpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlof file.
<code>\openpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlot file.
<code>\closeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\closepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlof file.
<code>\closepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlot file.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\openminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\openminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilof file.
<code>\openminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilot file.
<code>\closeminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\closeminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilof file.
<code>\closeminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilot file.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\opensecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\opensectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\opensectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\closesecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\closesectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\closesectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<hr/>		
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominiloof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\miniloof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument *p*, which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument *p* has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by <i>n</i> .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by <i>n</i> .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by <i>n</i> .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the index in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the nomenclature in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of tables.

*: recommended form.

Table 3.11: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. WILSON	53	[387]
P	alnumsec	Frank KÜSTER	54	[228]
* P	alphanum	Felix BRAUN	75	[96]
* C	amsart	<i>AMS</i>	66	[7]
C	amsbook	<i>AMS</i>	66	[7]
* C	amsproc	<i>AMS</i>	66	[7]
P	appendix	Peter R. WILSON	64	[388]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	54	[117]
P	caption	Axel SOMMERFELDT	54	[345, 346]
P	caption2	Axel SOMMERFELDT	54	[344]
P	ccaption	Peter R. WILSON	54	[391]
P	float	Anselm LINGNAU	54	[255]
P	floatrow	Olga G. LAPKO	54	[239]
* P	flowfram	Nicola L. C. TALBOT	79	[353, 354]
P	fnycchap	Ulf A. LINDGREN	75	[254]
P	hangcaption	David M. JONES	79	[210]
P	hyperref	Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK	62	[291, 294–296, 320, 323, 324]
* C	jura	Felix BRAUN	75	[96]
P	mcaption	Stephan HENNIG	54	[194]
C	memoir	Peter R. WILSON	65	[396, 397, 399]
P	notoccite	Donald ARSENEAU	52	[11]
P	placeins	Donald ARSENEAU	30	[12]
P	quotchap	Karsten TINNEFELD	53	[361]
P	romannum	Peter R. WILSON	54	[398]
P	rotfloat	Sebastian RAHTZ and Léonor BARROCA	54	[343]
C	scrartcl, scrbook and scrcrpt	Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI	75	[223, 288, 328]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDONNELL	70	[266]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio LORETI	76	[256]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	34	[118]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	34	[116]
* P	titlesec	Javier BEZOS	53	[42]
* P	titletoc	Javier BEZOS	53	[42]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. WILSON	50	[389]
P	tocloft	Peter R. WILSON	64, 78	[386]
P	trivfloat	Joseph A. WRIGHT	54	[401]
P	varsects	Daniel TAUPIN [†]	53	[357]

*: *Incompatible* with minitoc. C: Class. P: Package.

Any class not defining the main standard sectionning commands is *incompatible* with minitoc.

Table 3.12: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first section.
These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).	

Chapter 4

Examples of documents

Contents

4.1	The <code>mtc-2c.tex</code> document file	91	4.19	The <code>mtc-hia.tex</code> document file	125
4.2	The <code>mtc-2nd.tex</code> document file	92	4.20	The <code>mtc-hir.tex</code> document file	126
4.3	The <code>mtc-3co.tex</code> document file	93	4.21	The <code>mtc-hop.tex</code> document file	127
4.4	The <code>mtc-add.tex</code> document file	96	4.22	The <code>mtc-liv.tex</code> document file	128
4.5	The <code>mtc-ads.tex</code> document file	100	4.23	The <code>mtc-mem.tex</code> document file	132
4.6	The <code>mtc-amm.tex</code> document file	105	4.24	The <code>mtc-mm1.tex</code> document file	133
4.7	The <code>mtc-apx.tex</code> document file	105	4.25	The <code>mtc-mu.tex</code> document file	134
4.8	The <code>mtc-art.tex</code> document file	105	4.26	The <code>mtc-nom.tex</code> document file	136
4.9	The <code>mtc-bk.tex</code> document file	110	4.27	The <code>mtc-ocf.tex</code> document file	137
4.10	The <code>mtc-bo.tex</code> document file	115	4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file	138
4.11	The <code>mtc-ch0.tex</code> document file	120	4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	140
4.12	The <code>mtc-cri.tex</code> document file	121	4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	142
4.13	The <code>mtc-fko.tex</code> document file	122	4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	143
4.14	The <code>mtc-fo1.tex</code> document file	123	4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	144
4.15	The <code>mtc-fo2.tex</code> document file	124	4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	146
4.16	The <code>mtc-gap.tex</code> document file	125	4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	146
4.17	The <code>mtc-hi1.tex</code> document file	125	4.35	The <code>mtc-tsf.tex</code> document file	147
4.18	The <code>mtc-hi2.tex</code> document file	125			

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of some specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 67, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 68, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 69, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 76, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 79,

Note that the `lipsum` package [178] is often used to provide filling text.

4.1 The `mtc-2c.tex` document file

`\mtcindent` This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the `multicol` standard package [272] and its `multicols` environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a `minitoc` is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

<pre> 205 *mtc - 2c> 206 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% 207 {report} 208 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}% 209 [2007/01/04] 210 \usepackage{multicol} 211 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 212 \usepackage% 213 [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc} 214 \usepackage[latin]{babel} 215 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} 216 \begin{document} 217 \dominitoc \tableofcontents </pre>
--	---

`multicols` Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a `minitoc` on one full width column, then the
`\minitoc` body of the chapter on two columns:

<pre> 218 \chapter{Primum capitulum} 219 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 220 \section{Prima sectio} 221 \lipsum[1-2] 222 \section{Secunda sectio} 223 \lipsum[3-4] 224 \end{multicols} 225 \chapter{Secundum capitulum} </pre>	<pre> 226 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 227 \section{Prima sectio} 228 \lipsum[5-6] 229 \section{Secunda sectio} 230 \lipsum[7-8] 231 \section{Tertia sectio} 232 \lipsum[9-10] 233 \end{multicols} </pre>
---	---

`multicols` A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the `minitoc` are in the first
`\minitoc` column:

<pre> 234 \begin{multicols}{2} 235 \chapter{Tertium capitulum} 236 \minitoc 237 \section{Prima sectio} 238 \lipsum[11-12] </pre>	<pre> 239 \section{Secunda sectio} 240 \lipsum[13-14] 241 \section{Tertia sectio} 242 \lipsum[15-16] 243 \end{multicols} </pre>
--	---

`multicols` A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the `minitoc` and the chapter body
`\minitoc` on two columns (the `minitoc` is in the first column):

<pre> 244 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum} 245 \begin{multicols}{2} 246 \minitoc 247 \section{Prima sectio} 248 \lipsum[16-17] 249 \section{Secunda sectio} </pre>	<pre> 250 \lipsum[18-19] 251 \section{Tertia sectio} 252 \lipsum[20-21] 253 \end{multicols} 254 \end{document} 255 *mtc - 2c> </pre>
---	--

4.2 The mtc-2nd.tex document file

This document tests the french2.mld minitoc language definition file (section 13.61 on page 510) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the french2 minitoc package language option¹:

```

256 <*mtc - 2nd>
257 %% Test de french2.mld:
258 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
259 %% compilez 3 fois.
260 \documentclass{report}
261 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
262 [2007/01/04]
263 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
264 \usepackage[french]{babel}
265 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
266 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
267 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
268 \usepackage{mypatches}
269 \begin{document}

```

\ifmtcsecondpart We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```

270 \ifmtcsecondpart
271 Il n'y a que 2 parties: seconde.
272 \else
273 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
274 \fi
275 \clearpage

```

\doparttoc The body of the document, with two parts:
\fakeableofcontents

```

\doparttoc
\parttoc
276 \doparttoc
277 \fakeableofcontents
278 \part{P1}
279 \parttoc
280 \chapter{P1C1}
281 \chapter{P1C2}
282 \part{P2}
283 \parttoc
284 \chapter{P2C1}
285 \chapter{P2C2}

```

If you want also a third part, comment out this line and recompile 3 times:

¹ The franc, frnew and mypatches packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.

Observe the titles of the parttocs when the document has two then three parts. Note the changes after each compilation. You can play by adding and removing parts. It would be interesting to add a starred part, with starred chapters, at the beginning of the document, this part and these chapters having their entries in the TOC. For instance, try to add the following lines after `\faketableofcontents`:

and you will see how the parttoc of the new starred part is titled.

This document shows how to prepare a minitoc on three columns, with some modifications of the code the `mtc@verse` environment.

```

294 \*mtc - 3co>
295 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
296 \ProvidesFile{mtc-3co.tex}%
297   [2007/02/19]
298 \usepackage[a3paper]{geometry}
299 \usepackage{lipsum}
300 \usepackage{multicol}
301 \usepackage[toc]{multitoc}
302 \renewcommand{\multicolumntoc}{3}

```

```

\mtcindent Then we load the minitoc package, set some parameters and define the number of columns for
\mtcsetformat the minitocs. We alter the mtc@verse environment to add a multicols environment2:
\multicolumnmtc
\mtc@verse 303 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\endmtc@verse 304 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
multicols 305 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
306 \mtcsetformat{minitoc}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
307 \newcommand{\multicolumnmtc}{3}
308 \makeatletter
309 \let\SV@mtc@verse\mtc@verse
310 \let\SV@endmtc@verse\endmtc@verse
311 \def\mtc@verse#1{\SV@mtc@verse#1\removelastskip%
312 \begin{multicols}{\multicolumnmtc}\raggedcolumns\leavevmode\unskip
313 \vskip -1.5ex \vskip -1\baselineskip}
314 \def\endmtc@verse{\end{multicols}\SV@endmtc@verse}
315 \makeatother
316 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

```

We begin the document, preparing the minitocs and the main TOC. The (first) chapter begins with its minitoc, then the text on two columns. We use the `lipsum` package [178] to provide filling text; the section number is used to select a *lipsum* paragraph.

```

317 \begin{document}
318 \dominitoc
319 \tableofcontents
320 \chapter{First chapter}
321 \minitoc
322 \begin{multicols}{2}

```

We use a lot of sections, to have a minitoc large enough to use the three columns. A subsection with a long title gives a good result (we have used `\mtcsetformat` to avoid hyphenations).

```

323 \section{First section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
324 \section{Second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
325 \section{Third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
326 \section{Fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
327 \section{Fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
328 \section{Sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
329 \section{Seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
330 \section{Eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
331 \section{Ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
332 \section{Tenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
333 \section{Eleventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
334 \section{Twelfth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
335 \section{Thirteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
336 \section{Fourteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
337 \section{Fifteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
338 \section{Sixteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
339 \section{Seventeenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
340 \section{Eighteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

² Some vertical adjustments are necessary.

```

341 \section{Nineteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
342 \section{Twentieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
343 \section{Twenty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
344 \section{Twenty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
345 \section{Twenty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
346 \section{Twenty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
347 \subsection{A very long subsection title, for the fun in
348 a multicolumn table of contents} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
349 \section{Twenty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
350 \section{Twenty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
351 \section{Twenty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
352 \section{Twenty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
353 \section{Twenty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
354 \section{Thirtieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
355 \section{Thirty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
356 \section{Thirty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
357 \section{Thirty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
358 \section{Thirty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
359 \section{Thirty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
360 \section{Thirty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
361 \section{Thirty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
362 \section{Thirty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
363 \section{Thirty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
364 \section{Fortieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
365 \section{Forty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
366 \section{Forty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
367 \section{Forty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
368 \section{Forty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
369 \section{Forty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
370 \section{Forty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
371 \section{Forty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
372 \section{Forty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
373 \section{Forty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
374 \section{Fiftieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
375 \section{Fifty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
376 \section{Fifty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
377 \section{Fifty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
378 \section{Fifty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
379 \section{Fifty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
380 \section{Fifty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
381 \section{Fifty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
382 \section{Fifty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
383 \section{Fifty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
384 \end{multicols}
385 \clearpage
386 \end{document}
387 </mtc - 3co>

```

4.4 The mtc-add.tex document file

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the tocbibind package [389].

```

388 <*mtc - add>
389 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
390 %% \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
391 \ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
392 [2007/01/04]
393 \usepackage{url}
394 \usepackage{tocbibind}
395 \usepackage{makeidx}
396 \makeatletter
397 \newif\ifscan@allowed
398 \scan@allowedtrue
399 \makeatother
400 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
401 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
402           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%

```

Load the minitoc package, or mtcoff.

```

403 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
404 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}

405 \makeindex
406 \begin{document}

```

```

\dominitoc We call the mini-table preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 407 \dominitoc \dominilof \dominilot

```

```

\tableofcontents We are using the tocbibind package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must
\mtcaddchapter take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 50:
\listoffigures
\listoftables 408 \tableofcontents \mtcaddchapter
409 \listoffigures \mtcaddchapter
410 \listoftables \mtcaddchapter

```

```

\chapter For a chapter, we want a minitoc, a minilof and a minitoc:
\minitoc
\minilof 411 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
\minilot 412 \minitoc \mtcskip
\mtcskip 413 \minilof \mtcskip
414 \minilot

```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```

415 \section{First section}
416
417 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
418 \begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}
419
420 \section{Second section}
421 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
422 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
423 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
424 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
425 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
426 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
427 \index{would}\index{yes}%
428 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.}
429 But I imagine that he would, yes.}\
430 \hbox{}\hfill
431 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
432 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
433
434 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
435 \begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}

```

`\chapter*` A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

436 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
437 \index{chapter!starred}
438 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
439 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
440 %% \mtcaddchapter[~] % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
441 %% \addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
442 %%%
443 %% \mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
444 %% \mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION
445 %%%
446 \index{tests}
447
448 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
449 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
450 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
451 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
452 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
453 and at this chapter.
454 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
455 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
456 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
457 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
458 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
459 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%

```

```

460 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
461 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
462 \index{variations}\index{you}%
463 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
464
465 \chapter{Third chapter}
466 \index{chapter!normal}
467 \minitoc \mtcskip
468 \minilof \mtcskip
469 \minilot
470 \section{Third section}
471
472 \begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
473 \begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}
474
475 \section{Fourth section}
476
477 \begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
478 \begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}

```

`\bibliographystyle` As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction with `\adjustmtc`:

`\bibliography`

`\adjustmtc`

```

479 \nocite*
480 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
481 \bibliographystyle{plain}
482 \bibliography{mtc-add}
483 \adjustmtc

```

`\printindex` As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or the other given three lines:

`\mtcfixindex`

```

484 \printindex
485 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
486 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
487 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
488 %% \mtcaddchapter
489 %%
490
491 \appendix
492 \chapter{App.~1}
493 \index{chapter!appendix}
494 \minitoc \mtcskip
495 \minilof \mtcskip
496 \minilot
497 \section{Fifth section}
498
499 \begin{figure} \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}
500 \begin{table} \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}
501

```

```

502 \section{Sixth section}
503
504 \begin{figure} \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
505 \begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

506 \chapter{App.~2}
507 \index{chapter!appendix}
508 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
509 \minitoc \mtcskip
510 \minilof \mtcskip
511 \minilot
512 \section{Seventh section}
513 \begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
514 \begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}
515
516 \section{Eighth section}
517
518 \begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
519 \begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}
520
521 \end{document}
522 </mtc – add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [135]:

```

523 < *mtc – addbib>
524 @MISC{minitoc,
525   TITLE="The {\textsf{minitoc}} package",
526   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
527   ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
528   NOTE="{\url{http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
529   MONTH=dec,
530   YEAR=2007}
531

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [134]:

```

532 @MISC{fminitoc,
533   TITLE="Le paquetage {\textsf{minitoc}}",
534   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
535   ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
536   NOTE="{\url{http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf}}",
537   MONTH=dec,
538   YEAR=2007}
539

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [133]:

```

540 @MISC{shorttoc,
541     TITLE="The {\textsf{shorttoc}} package",
542     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
543     ADDRESS="{\url{mailto:drucbert@onera.fr}}",
544     NOTE="{\url{http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf}}",
545     MONTH=aug,
546     YEAR=2002}
547

```

- a novel [21] from which a short citation is taken:

```

548 @BOOK{dark,
549     TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",
550     AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
551     PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
552     ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
553     YEAR=1993}
554 </mtc – addbib>

```

But the database created this way must be trimmed of some spurious lines; on Unix-like systems, do³:

```
cat mtc-add.bib | grep -v '^%%' > addbib;mv addbib mtc-add.bib
```

4.5 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocbibind package [389] for the first ones and the minitoc insection package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

555 (*mtc – ads)
556 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
557 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
558 [2007/01/04]
559 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
560 \makeatletter \newif\ifscan@allowed \scan@allowedtrue \makeatother
561 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
562 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
563     \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
564 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
565 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}
566 \makeindex

```

\doparttoc The preparation commands:

\dopartlof

\dopartlot

\dosecttoc

\dosectlof

\dosectlot

³ Note that we should use no preamble for this file in minitoc.ins; nevertheless, some spurious lines are still generated. This problem is not yet corrected now, so we keep the solution.


```

567 \begin{document}
568 \doparttoc \dopartlof \dopartlot
569 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot

```

`\setcounter` The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we use the `tocbibind` package, we must add some `\mtcaddsection` commands:

```

\tableofcontents
\mtcaddsection
\listoffigures 570 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
\listoftables 571 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
               572 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
               573 \tableofcontents \mtcaddsection
               574 \listoffigures \mtcaddsection
               575 \listoftables \mtcaddsection

```

`\parttoc` The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.

```

\partlof
\partlot
\secttoc 576 \part{Part~1}
\sectlof 577 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
\sectlot 578
\mtcskip 579 \section{First section}
         580 \index{section!normal}
         581 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
         582 \subsection{First subsection}
         583
         584 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
         585 \begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}
         586
         587 \subsection{Second subsection}
         588 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
         589 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
         590 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
         591 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
         592 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
         593 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
         594 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
         595 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
         596 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
         597 \hbox{}\hfill Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
         598 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
         599 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
         600 \begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}

```

`\section*` Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several solutions (good or bad).

```

601 \section*{Second section, starred}
602 \index{section!starred}
603 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
604 \mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
605 %% \mtcaddsection[] % BAD

```

```

606%% \mtcaddsection[~]      % produces a (strange) correct result.
607%% \mtcaddsection         % BAD
608%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
609\index{tests}
610
611This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
612the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
613only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
614\verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
615For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
616and at this section.
617\index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
618\index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
619\index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
620\index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
621\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
622\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
623\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
624\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
625\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
626\index{variations}\index{you}%
627I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
628
629\section{Third section}
630\index{section!normal}
631\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
632\subsection{Third subsection}
633
634\begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
635\begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}
636
637\subsection{Fourth subsection}
638
639\begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
640\begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}
641
642\subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
643\subsubsection{And yet another one}
644
645\part{Part~2}
646\parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
647
648\section{Fourth section}
649\index{section!normal}
650\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
651\subsection{Fifth subsection}
652
653\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}
654\begin{table}[tp] \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}
655
656\subsection{Sixth subsection}
657A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
658\index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
659\index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%

```

```

660 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
661 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
662 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
663 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
664 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
665 But I imagine that he would, yes.\\
666 \hbox{}\hfill
667 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
668 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
669
670 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
671 \begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}
672
673 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
674 \index{section!starred}
675 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
676 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
677 %% \mtcaddsection[] % OK
678 %% \mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
679 %% \mtcaddsection % OK
680 %%%
681 \index{tests}
682
683 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
684 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
685 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
686 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
687 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
688 and at this section.\index{a}%
689 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
690 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
691 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
692 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
693 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
694 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
695 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
696 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
697 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
698 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
699 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
700
701 \section{Sixth section}
702 \index{section!normal}
703 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
704 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
705
706 \begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
707 \begin{table} \caption{Seventh table} \end{table}
708
709 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
710
711 \begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}
712 \begin{table} \caption{Eighth table} \end{table}

```

`\bibliographystyle` The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [389] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

`\bibliography`

`\adjuststc`

```
713 \nocite*
714 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
715 \bibliographystyle{plain}
716 \bibliography{mtc-add}
717 \adjuststc
```

`\printindex` The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [389] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

`\mtcfixindex`

```
718 \printindex
719 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
720 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
721 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
722 %% \mtcaddsection
723
724 \appendix
725 \section{App.~1}
726 \index{section!appendix}
727 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
728 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
729
730 \begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
731 \begin{table} \caption{Ninth table} \end{table}
732
733 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
734
735 \begin{figure} \caption{Tenth figure} \end{figure}
736 \begin{table} \caption{Tenth table} \end{table}
737
738 \section{App.~2}
739 \index{section!appendix}
740 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
741 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
742 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
743
744 \begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}
745 \begin{figure} \caption{Twelfth figure} \end{figure}
746
747 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
748
749 \begin{figure} \caption{Thirteenth figure} \end{figure}
750 \begin{figure} \caption{Fourteenth figure} \end{figure}
751
752 \end{document}
753 </mtc - ads>
```

4.6 The `mtc-amm.tex` document file

`\dominitoc` This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document
`\tableofcontents` when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

<code>\adjustmtc</code> <code>\minitoc</code>	<pre>754 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir} 755 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}% 756 [2007/08/29] 757 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text 758 \usepackage{hyperref} 759 \usepackage{memhfixc} 760 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}</pre>	<pre>762 \begin{document} 763 \dominitoc \tableofcontents 764 \adjustmtc 765 \chapter{First chapter} 766 \minitoc 767 \lipsum[1] 768 \section{First section} 769 \lipsum[2]</pre>
--	--	---

`appendices` The `appendices` are set in an `appendices` environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with
`\addappheadtotoc` `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

<code>\chapter</code> <code>\minitoc</code>	<pre>770 \begin{appendices} 771 \addappheadtotoc 772 \adjustmtc %correction! 773 \chapter{Afterthoughts} 774 \minitoc 775 \lipsum[3] 776 Afterthoughts appendix 777 \section{Further remarks} 778 \lipsum[4] 779 \chapter{Last wills} 780 \minitoc 781 \section{Testament} 782 \lipsum[5]</pre>	<pre>783 \end{appendices} 784 \chapter{Conclusion} 785 \minitoc 786 \section{Bye} 787 \lipsum[6] 788 \chapter{Back from Hell} 789 \minitoc 790 \section{Not dead yet!} 791 \lipsum[7] 792 \section{I will survive} 793 \lipsum[8] 794 \end{document} 795 \end{mtc-amm}</pre>
--	---	--

4.7 The `mtc-apx.tex` document file

The `mtc-apx.tex` document file is described in section 2.25 on page 67.

4.8 The `mtc-art.tex` document file

`\stcindent` This is a basic document using the `minitoc` package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it
`\stcfont` must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its
`\stcSSfont` preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```
796 \documentclass{article}
797 %% mtc-art.tex
798 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #56
```

```

799%% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
800%% article (\section must be defined)
801 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
802 \ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
803 [2007/06/06]
804 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
805%% \usepackage{hyperref} % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
806 \usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
807 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectioning commands
808 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
809 \setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
810 %% % font for secttocs, default
811 \renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
812 %% % font for secttocs, subsections
813 %% \renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sfont}%
814 %% % you can make experiments with
815 %% % \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
816 %% % but it is ‘fontomania’...
817 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent on the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```

818%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
819%% resetting section number in each part
820%% \makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
821%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
822 \begin{document}
```

<pre> \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot \doparttoc \dopartlof \dosectlot </pre>	<pre> The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary: 823 \dosecttoc 824 \dosectlof[c] % center titles of the sectlofs 825 \dosectlot 826 \doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff 827 \dopartlof % added in version #15 828 \dopartlot % added in version #15 </pre>
--	--

<pre> \fakeableofcontents \fakeistoffigures \fakeistoftables </pre>	<pre> It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print. 829 \fakeableofcontents % or \tableofcontents 830 \fakeistoffigures % to check compatibility 831 \fakeistoftables % to check compatibility </pre>
---	--

`\part` There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a
`\parttoc` parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:
`\partlof`
`\partlot` 832 `\part{First Part} \parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot`

`\section` A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section
`\secttoc` contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).
`\sectlof`
`\mtcskip` 833 `\twocolumn\sloppy` % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
834 % but works. Ideas to make it better?
835 `\section{AAAAA}` % a section with a lot of sections
836 `\secttoc[r]` % secttoc title on the right
837 `\mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED`
838 `\lipsum[1]`
839 `\subsection{S1} \lipsum[2]`
840 `\subsection{S2} \lipsum[3]`
841 `\subsection{S3} \lipsum[4]`
842 `\subsection*{S4}`
843 `%% \addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}`
844 `\lipsum[5]`

A lot of subsections:

845 <code>\subsection{S5} \lipsum[6]</code>	858 <code>\subsection{S18} \lipsum[19]</code>
846 <code>\subsection{S6} \lipsum[7]</code>	859 <code>\subsection{S19} \lipsum[20]</code>
847 <code>\subsection{S7} \lipsum[8]</code>	860 <code>\subsection{S20} \lipsum[21]</code>
848 <code>\subsection{S8} \lipsum[9]</code>	861 <code>\subsection{S21} \lipsum[22]</code>
849 <code>\subsection{S9} \lipsum[10]</code>	862 <code>\subsection{S22} \lipsum[23]</code>
850 <code>\subsection{S10} \lipsum[11]</code>	863 <code>\subsection{S23} \lipsum[24]</code>
851 <code>\subsection{S11} \lipsum[12]</code>	864 <code>\subsection{S24} \lipsum[25]</code>
852 <code>\subsection{S12} \lipsum[13]</code>	865 <code>\subsection{S25} \lipsum[26]</code>
853 <code>\subsection{S13} \lipsum[14]</code>	866 <code>\subsection{S26} \lipsum[27]</code>
854 <code>\subsection{S14} \lipsum[15]</code>	867 <code>\subsection{S27} \lipsum[28]</code>
855 <code>\subsection{S15} \lipsum[16]</code>	868 <code>\subsection{S28} \lipsum[29]</code>
856 <code>\subsection{S16} \lipsum[17]</code>	869 <code>\subsection{S29} \lipsum[30]</code>
857 <code>\subsection{S17} \lipsum[18]</code>	870 <code>\subsection{S30} \lipsum[31]</code>

`\FloatBarrier` We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are
`\section*` subsections and figures). The `insection` package option should ensure that floating objects
`\mtcaddsection` (like figures) do not drift outside their section.
`\sectlof`
`\sectlot` 871 `\onecolumn\fussy` % back to one column
872 `\section{BBBBB}`
873 `\secttoc`
874 `\mtcskip` % put some skip here
875 `\sectlof` % a sectlof
876 `\lipsum[32]`
877 `\subsection{T1} \lipsum[33]`
878 `\begin{figure}[t]` % tests compatibility with floating bodies
879 `\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}`

```

880 \begin{picture}(100,50)
881 \end{picture}
882 \caption{F1} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
883 \end{figure}
884 \FloatBarrier
885 \subsubsection{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
886 \lipsum[34]
887 \paragraph{TTT1} \lipsum[35]
888 \subparagraph{TTTT1} \lipsum[36]
889 \begin{figure}[t]
890 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
891 \begin{picture}(100,50)
892 \end{picture}
893 \caption{F2} % tests optional arg. of a caption
894 \end{figure}
895 \FloatBarrier
896 \subsection{T2} \lipsum[37]
897 \section*{CCCCC} % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
898 %% \addstarredsection{CCCCC}
899 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
900 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
901 \lipsum[38]
902 \subsection{U1} \lipsum[39]
903 \subsubsection{UU1} \lipsum[40]
904 \paragraph{UUU1} \lipsum[41]
905 \subparagraph{UUUU1} \lipsum[42]
906 \subsection{U2} \lipsum[43]
907 \part{Second Part}
908 \parttoc
909 \partlof[c]
910 \partlot
911 %% % the following section should have no secttoc,
912 \section{DDDDD} % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
913 %% \secttoc
914 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
915 % % the secttoc appears
916 \lipsum[44]
917 \subsection{V1} \lipsum[45]
918 \subsubsection{VV1} \lipsum[46]
919 \paragraph{VVV1} \lipsum[47]
920 \subparagraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[48]
921 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
922 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
923 \begin{picture}(100,50)
924 \end{picture}
925 \caption{F3} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
926 \end{figure}
927 \FloatBarrier
928 \lipsum[49] \subsection{V2} \lipsum[50]

```



```

\mtcskip We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):
\section
\chapter 929 \section{EEEEEE} % this section should have a secttoc
\secttoc 930 {% % left brace, see below
\sectlof 931 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3} % depth of sect table of contents;
\sectlot 932 % try with different values.
\FloatBarrier 933 \secttoc
\part 934 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
\parttoc 935 } % right brace
\partlof 936 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
\partlot 937 %% on secttocdepth.
938 \lipsum[51]
939 \subsection{W1} % with the given depth
940 \lipsum[52]
941 \subsubsection{WW1} \lipsum[53]
942 \paragraph{WWW1} \lipsum[54]
943 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
944 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
945 \begin{picture}(100,50)
946 \end{picture}
947 \caption{F4} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
948 \end{figure}
949 \FloatBarrier
950 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
951 \subparagraph{WWW1} \lipsum[55]
952 \subsection{W2} \lipsum[56]
953 \chapter*{}
954 \part{Appendices}
955 \parttoc \mtcskip
956 \partlof \mtcskip
957 \partlot
958 \FloatBarrier
959 \appendix
960 \section{Comments} \lipsum[57]
961 \secttoc
962 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
963 \subsection{C1} \lipsum[58]
964 \subsection{C2} \lipsum[59]
965 \subsection{C3} \lipsum[60]
966 \begin{figure}[hb] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
967 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
968 \begin{picture}(100,50)
969 \end{picture}
970 \caption{F5} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
971 \end{figure}
972 \FloatBarrier
973 \subsection{C4} \lipsum[61]
974 \FloatBarrier
975 \section{Evolution}
976 \secttoc
977 \sectlof % empty
978 \sectlot % empty
979 \lipsum[62]
980 \subsection{D1} \lipsum[63]

```

```

981 \subsection{D2} \lipsum[64]
982 \subsection{D3} \lipsum[65]
983 \subsection{D4} \lipsum[66]
984 \end{document}
985 </mtc - art>

```

4.9 The mtc-bk.tex document file

`\setcounter` This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

`\mtcindent`

`\mtcfont`

`\mtcSfont`

`\mtcSSfont`

```

986 <*mtc - bk>
987 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
988 %% mtc-bk.tex
989 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #56
990 %% package file. You can alter most of parameters to test.
991 %% book/report (\chapter must be defined).
992 %% You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc
993 %% commands and parameters.
994 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
995 %% \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
996 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
997 [2007/06/06]
998 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
999 %% \usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
1000 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}
1001 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
1002 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
1003 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
1004 \setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt} % indentation of minitocs, default
1005 \renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
1006 \renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
1007 %% \renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
1008 %% you can make experiments with \mtcSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
1009 %% but it is ‘fontomania’...
1010 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent on the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```

1011 %% TEST: uncomment the next line to test resetting chapter number in each part
1012 %% \makeatletter \@addtoreset{chapter}{part} \makeatother
1013 %% END TEST

```

`\mtcpagenumbers` We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

`\noptcrule`

```
1014 \begin{document}
1015 \mtcpagenumbers
1016 \noptcrule
1017 %% \nomtcrule                % suppresses minitoc rules
1018 %% \nomtcpagenumbers          % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1019 %% \nomlfpagenumbers          % ----- minilof ----
1020 %% \nomltpagenumbers          % ----- minilot ----
```

`\dominitoc` The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

`\dominilof`

`\dominilot` 1021 `\dominitoc`

`\doparttoc` 1022 `\dominilof[c]` % centers title of minilof's

`\dopartlof` 1023 `\dominilot`

`\dopartlot` 1024 `\doparttoc` % test of parttoc/partlof stuff

1025 `\dopartlof` % added in version #15

1026 `\dopartlot` % added in version #15

`\tableofcontents` It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

`\listoffigures`

```
\fakelistoftables 1027 \tableofcontents          % or \faketableofcontents
                  1028 \listoffigures             % or \fakelistoffigures
                  1029 \fakelistoftables          % or \listoftables
```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```
1030 %% \addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0
```

`\part` There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:

`\parttoc`

`\partlof` 1031 `\part{First Part}`

`\partlot` 1032 `\parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot[r]`

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```
1033 \twocolumn\sloppy                % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1034 \chapter{AAAAA}                  % a chapter with a lot of sections
1035 \minitoc[r]                      % minitoc title on the right
1036 \lipsum[1]
1037 \section{S1} \lipsum[2]
1038 \section{S2} \lipsum[3]
1039 \section{S3} \lipsum[4]
```

`\section*` A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:

`\addtocontentsline`

```

1040 \section*{S4}
1041 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
1042 \lipsum[5]

```

A lot of subsections:

1043 \section{S5} \lipsum[6]	1057 \section{S19} \lipsum[20]
1044 \section{S6} \lipsum[6]	1058 \section{S20} \lipsum[21]
1045 \section{S7} \lipsum[7]	1059 \section{S21} \lipsum[22]
1046 \section{S8} \lipsum[9]	1060 \section{S22} \lipsum[23]
1047 \section{S9} \lipsum[10]	1061 \section{S23} \lipsum[24]
1048 \section{S10} \lipsum[11]	1062 \section{S24} \lipsum[25]
1049 \section{S11} \lipsum[12]	1063 \section{S25} \lipsum[26]
1050 \section{S12} \lipsum[13]	1064 \section{S26} \lipsum[27]
1051 \section{S13} \lipsum[14]	1065 \section{S27} \lipsum[28]
1052 \section{S14} \lipsum[15]	1066 \section{S28} \lipsum[29]
1053 \section{S15} \lipsum[16]	1067 \section{S29} \lipsum[30]
1054 \section{S16} \lipsum[17]	1068 \section{S30} \lipsum[31]
1055 \section{S17} \lipsum[18]	1069 \subsection{S31} \lipsum[32]
1056 \section{S18} \lipsum[19]	1070 \section{S31} \lipsum[33]

```

\chapter We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:
\minitoc
\minilof 1071 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
\minilot 1072 \chapter{BBBBB}
\mtcskip 1073 \minitoc
          1074 \mtcskip                  % put some skip here
          1075 \minilof                  % a minilof
          1076 \mtcskip                  % put some skip here
          1077 \minilot                  % a minilot
1078 \lipsum[34]
1079 \section{T1} \lipsum[35]
1080 \begin{figure}[t]                   % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1081 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1082 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1083 \end{picture}
1084 \caption{F1}                        % (tables are similar)
1085 \end{figure}
1086 \begin{table}[b]                   % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1087 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1088 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1089 \end{picture}
1090 \caption{T1}                        % (tables are similar)
1091 \end{table}
1092 \clearpage
1093 \subsection{tt1}{T1}               % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
1094 \lipsum[36]
1095 \subsubsection{TTT1} \lipsum[37]
1096 \paragraph{TTTT1} \lipsum[38]
1097 \begin{figure}
1098 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1099 \begin{picture}(100,50)

```

```

1100 \end{picture}
1101 \caption[f2]{F2}           % tests optional arg. of a caption
1102 \end{figure}
1103 \section{T2} \lipsum[39]

```

`\chapter*` A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectioning commands must also be starred.

```

\addstarredchapter
\addcontentsline
  \section* 1104 \chapter*{CCCCC}           % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
\paragraph* 1105 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
  \part 1106 \lipsum[40]
\parttoc 1107 \section*{U1}
\partlof 1108 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
  1109 \lipsum[41]
  1110 \subsection*{UU1}
  1111 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
  1112 \lipsum[42]
  1113 \subsubsection*{UUU1}
  1114 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
  1115 \lipsum[43]
  1116 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
  1117 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
  1118 \lipsum[44]
  1119 \section*{U2}
  1120 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
  1121 \lipsum[45]
  1122 \part{Second Part}
  1123 \parttoc
  1124 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment `\minitoc`, the minitoc will appear.

```

1125 %%                               % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1126 \chapter{DDDDD}                   % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1127 %% \minitoc                       % the minitoc appears
1128 \lipsum[46]
1129 \section{V1} \lipsum[47]
1130 \subsection{VV1} \lipsum[48]
1131 \subsubsection{VVV1} \lipsum[49]
1132 \paragraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[50]
1133 \begin{figure}[t]                 % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1134 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1135 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1136 \end{picture}
1137 \caption{F3}                       % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1138 \end{figure}
1139 \lipsum[51]
1140 \section{V2} \lipsum[52]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1141 \chapter{EEEE}           % this chapter should have a minitoc
1142 {%                       % left brace, see below
1143 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} % depth of mini table of contents;
1144                             % try with different values.
1145 \minitoc
1146 }                         % right brace
1147 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1148 %% on minitocdepth.
1149 \lipsum[53]
1150 \section{W1}              % with the given depth
1151 \lipsum[54]
1152 \subsection{WW1} \lipsum[55]
1153 \subsubsection{WWW1} \lipsum[56]
1154 \begin{figure}[t]         % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1155 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1156 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1157 \end{picture}
1158 \caption{F4}              % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1159 \end{figure}
1160 \lipsum[57]
1161 \paragraph{WWWW1} \lipsum[58]
1162 \subparagraph{WWWWW1} \lipsum[59]
1163 \section{W2} \lipsum[60]

```

\appendix Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its

\part

\parttoc parttoc:

```

1164 \appendix
1165 \part{Appendices}
1166 \parttoc

```

mtchideinmaintoc Then, we begin a mtchideinmaintoc environment, with the hiding depth as optional

\chapter argument:

\minitoc

```

1167 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1168 \chapter{Comments}
1169 \minitoc
1170 \section{C1} \lipsum[61]
1171 \section{C2} \lipsum[62]
1172 \section{C3} \lipsum[63]
1173 \begin{figure}[t]         % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1174 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1175 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1176 \end{picture}
1177 \caption{F5}              % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1178 \end{figure}
1179 \section{C4}
1180 \chapter{Evolution}
1181 \minitoc
1182 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1183 \minilot %Empty => invisible

```

```

1184 \section{D1} \lipsum[64]
1185 \section{D2} \lipsum[65]
1186 \section{D3} \lipsum[66]
1187 \section{D4} \lipsum[67]

```

mtchideinmaintoc We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this
 \addtocontents mtchideinmaintoc environment:

```

1188 %% this line closes the omitted part
1189 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1190 %% this line restore the depth in the main TOC
1191 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1192 \lipsum[68]
1193 \end{document}
1194 </mtc - bk>

```

4.10 The mtc-bo.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the tocloft package [386]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a minitoc and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads the geometry package [366], which defines the global page layout, the multicols package [272], the color package [109], because we want a colored background for the minitoc, the tocloft package [386], to change some parameters of the minitoc, and, at least, the minitoc package itself:

```

1195 <*mtc - bo>
1196 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1197 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
1198 [2007/04/17]
1199 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
1200 lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1201 \usepackage{multicol}
1202 \usepackage{color}

```

```

\setlength We use the tocloft package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the
\addtolength minitoc:
\cftsecindent
\cftsecnumwidth 1203 \usepackage{tocloft}
\cftsubsecindent 1204 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
\cftsubsecnumwidth 1205 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
\cftsubsubsecindent 1206 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
\cftsubsubsecnumwidth 1207 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1208 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1209 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1210 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

```

`\cftpagenumbersoff` Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the minitoc, we must use the commands from `tocloft`:

```
1211 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1212 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}
```

`\mtcindent` We load the minitoc package and change the indentation, suppress the rules and change the minitoc title. The `hyperref` package [324] can also be loaded (*after* minitoc).
`\nomtcrule`
`\nomtcpagenumbers`

```
\mtctitle 1213 \usepackage[francais,tight]{minitoc}
1214 \usepackage{hyperref}
1215 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1216 \nomtcrule      % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1217 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1218 %              (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1219 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}
```

We load also some packages for the french language (some are local):

```
1220 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
1221 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1222 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1223 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
1224 \usepackage{mypatches}
```

This code redefines the format of the chapter head:

```
1225 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1226 % MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT « RENCONTRE » AU LIEU DE « CHAPITRE » %
1227 % Sans saut de ligne (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ) %
1228 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1229 \makeatletter
1230 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1231   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1232   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1233     \interlinepenalty\@M
1234     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1235       \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1236       \fi
1237     \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1238     \vskip 10\p@
1239   }}
1240 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1241   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1242   {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1243     \interlinepenalty\@M
1244     \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1245     \vskip 10\p@
1246   }} \makeatother
```


We define an environment (pageUn) for the block placed at the beginning of a chapter. This block contains a minitoc, then a sequence of informations given by the 6 parameters of the environment. The block uses a multicols environment to typeset on two columns. Some decorations are added: rules, colored background for the minitoc.

```

1247 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1248 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES %
1249 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1250 % param1: date de la rencontre
1251 % param2: nombre de périodes
1252 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1253 % param4: messages
1254 % param5: lecture
1255 % param6: exercices
1256 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1257 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1258 \parindent = 0.0in
1259 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1260 \begin{multicols}{2}
1261     {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1262     \textit{(#2)}}
1263     \vfill\columnbreak
1264     \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1265     #1
1266 \end{multicols}
1267 \vspace{-18pt}
1268 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1269
1270 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt}
1271 \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1272 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1273
1274 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1275 \colorbox{cmyk}{.1,0,0,0}{%
1276     \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1277         \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1278         \minitoc%
1279     }}
1280 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1281
1282 \mtcskip
1283
1284 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1285
1286 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
1287 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1288
1289 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1290
1291 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1292 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1293
1294 %: LECTURE

```

```

1295 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1296
1297 % EXERCICES
1298 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1299
1300 %\newpage
1301 \end{multicols}%
1302 }
1303 %{\newpage}
1304 {\hrule}
1305
1306 %\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne
1307
1308 %\pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1309 %\parindent = 0.0in
1310 \parskip = 0.1in
1311
1312 %%%%%%%%%%%
1313 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS %
1314 %%%%%%%%%%%
1315 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1316 %\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1317

```

The body of the document:

```

1318 %%%%%%%%%%%
1319 %: BEGIN %
1320 %%%%%%%%%%%
1321 \begin{document}
1322 \dominitoc
1323 \faketableofcontents
1324 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1325 %\minitoc
1326 \begin{pageUn}
1327     {%1    Date du cours
1328           lundi 25 août
1329           }
1330     {%2    Durée du cours
1331           2 périodes
1332           }
1333     {%3    Liste des documents à~distribuer
1334           \item Plan de cours
1335           \item Fiche d'identification
1336           \item Grille horaire
1337           \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1338           }
1339     {%4    Ne pas oublier
1340           \item Acheter le livre de référence
1341           \item Apporter une disquette
1342           }
1343     {%5    Lecture
1344           Lire les pages ppp à~ppp et ppp à~ppp

```

```

1345             }
1346         {%6     Exercice
1347             Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1348         }
1349 \end{pageUn}
1350
1351 %%%%%%%%%%
1352 \section{Titre de la section} %
1353 %%%%%%%%%%
1354
1355 Texte dans la section
1356
1357 %%
1358 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1359 %%
1360 Bla bla bla
1361
1362 %%
1363 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1364 %%
1365 Bla bla bla
1366
1367
1368 %%%%%%%%%%
1369 \section{Titre d'une autre section} %
1370 %%%%%%%%%%
1371
1372 Texte dans la section
1373
1374 %%
1375 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1376 %%
1377 Bla bla bla
1378
1379 %%
1380 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1381 %%
1382 Bla bla bla
1383
1384 %%%%%%%%%%
1385 \section{Encore une autre section} %
1386 %%%%%%%%%%
1387
1388 Texte dans la section
1389
1390 \end{document}
1391 </mtc - bo>

```

4.11 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

`\dominitoc` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.
`\tableofcontents`

```
1392 (*mtc - ch0)
1393 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1394 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
1395 [2007/01/04]
1396 \usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
1397 \begin{document}
1398 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

`\chapter*` The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC
`\mtcaddchapter` for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:
`\minitoc`

```
1399 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1400 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1401 \minitoc
1402 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1403 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1404 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1405 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1406
1407 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1408 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1409 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1410 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1411 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1412 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1413 things by halves around here.
1414
1415 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1416 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1417 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1418 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1419
1420 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1421 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1422 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1423 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1424 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1425 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1426 things by halves around here.
```

`\chapter` The second chapter is normal:
`\minitoc`

```
1427 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1428 \minitoc
1429 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
```

```

1430 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1431 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1432 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1433
1434 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1435 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1436 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1437 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1438 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1439 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1440 things by halves around here.
1441 \end{document}
1442 \</mtc - ch0>

```

4.12 The mtc-cri.tex document file

<pre> \mtcsetdepth This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and \doarttoc starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented: \dominitoc just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file. \tableofcontents \part* 1443 \<mtc - cri> \mtcaddpart 1444 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% \adjustptc 1445 {report} \parttoc 1446 \ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}% \chapter* 1447 [2007/01/04] \mtcaddchapter 1448 \usepackage[français]{babel} \chapter 1449 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc} \chapter 1450 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc} \minitoc 1451 \usepackage% \section 1452 [french2,tight]% 1453 {minitoc} 1454 1455 \mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2} 1456 1457 \begin{document} 1458 \doarttoc \dominitoc 1459 \tableofcontents 1460 \part*{Présentation générale} 1461 \mtcaddpart[Présentation générale] 1462 \adjustptc[-2] 1463 \parttoc 1464 1465 Texte de la 1466 présentation générale\ldots 1467 1468 \chapter*{Les auteurs} 1469 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs] 1470 Présentation des auteurs\ldots 1471 </pre>	<pre> 1472 \chapter*{Les lecteurs} 1473 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs] 1474 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots 1475 1476 \part{Première partie} 1477 \parttoc 1478 \chapter*{Introduction} 1479 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction] 1480 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 1481 \minitoc 1482 \section{Première section~A} 1483 \section{Deuxième section~A} 1484 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre} 1485 \minitoc 1486 \section{Première section~B} 1487 \section{Deuxième section~B} 1488 1489 \part{Deuxième partie} 1490 \parttoc 1491 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 1492 \minitoc 1493 \section{Première section~C} 1494 \section{Deuxième section~C} 1495 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre} 1496 \minitoc 1497 \section{Première section~D} 1498 \section{Deuxième section~D} 1499 \end{document} 1500 \</mtc - cri> </pre>
--	--

4.13 The `mtc-fko.tex` document file

This is a document using the `scrbook` class. Without any precaution, some entries in the minitocs are not in the right font (bold sans serif) like in the main table of contents; moreover, the language of the minitoc titles is not correct because the options of the `babel` package are not transferred to the minitoc package. To solve the language problem, we just set “`german`” as a *global* option in the `\documentclass` command (`babel` and `minitoc` will hence use this global option).

```
1501 <*mtc - fko>
1502 \documentclass[german,a4paper,oneside]{scrbook}
1503 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fko.tex}%
1504 [2007/02/19]
```

`\mtcindent` Then we load the packages and set some parameters:

```
1505 \usepackage{babel}
1506 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1507 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} % optional
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then we set explicitly the fonts for the entries⁴ and the font of the titles of the minitocs, knowing that the font command `\sectfont` is defined in `scrbook.cls`; we change also the

`\sectfont` title for the minitocs:

`\mtcsettitle`

```
1508 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\sectfont\small}
1509 \mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\sectfont\large}
1510 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Inhalt}
```

`\dominitoc` Then the body of the document, with a chapter (with a minitoc) containing a section. The

`\tableofcontents` section entry did not appear in bold sans serif in the original document (before the corrections).

`\chapter`

`\minitoc`

```
1511 \begin{document}
1512 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1513 %
1514 \chapter{Ein serifenloses Kapitel}
1515 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
1516 \section{Dieser Text ist in minitoc serifenlos}
1517 Auch der Text \glqq Inhaltsangabe\grqq\ will
1518 so wie koma es definiert.
1519 \end{document}
1520 </mtc - fko>
```

⁴ Here we only gave the commands for the section entries in the minitocs, but analog commands may be used for lower entries.

4.14 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

```

\doparttoc This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the
\dominitoc chapter level entries); you can compare the results.
\tableofcontents
  \part 1521 <*mtc - fo1>
        1522 \documentclass{report}
        1523 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
        1524 [2007/01/04]
        1525 \usepackage{lipsum}
        1526 \usepackage{txfonts}
        1527 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
        1528 \begin{document}
        1529 \doparttoc \dominitoc \tableofcontents
        1530 \part{Introduction} \clearpage

  \parttoc A first copy, with default fonts:

        1531 \parttoc \clearpage

\mtcsetfont A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:
  \parttoc
        1532 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
        1533 \parttoc \clearpage

\mtcsetfont A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:
  \parttoc
        1534 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
        1535 \parttoc \clearpage

\mtcsetfont A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:
  \parttoc
  \chapter 1536 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
  \minitoc 1537 \parttoc \clearpage
  \section 1538 \chapter{A very short chapter}
  \subsection 1539 \minitoc
        1540 \lipsum[1]
        1541 \section{First section} \lipsum[2]
        1542 \subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3]
        1543 \subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]
        1544 \section{Second section} \lipsum[5]
        1545 \subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6]
        1546 \subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]
        1547 \end{document}
        1548 </mtc - fo1>

```

4.15 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of mtc-fo1.tex (see section 4.14 on the page before).

```

1549 <*mtc - fo2>
1550 \documentclass{report}
1551 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
1552 [2007/01/04]
1553 \usepackage{lipsum}
1554 \usepackage{txfonts}
1555 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

\ptcfont We declare the fonts with the old method:
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont 1556 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsections)
\ptcPfont 1557 \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsubsections)
\ptcSPfont 1558 \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont} % (paragraphs)
\plffont 1559 \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont} % (subparagraphs)
\plfSfont 1560 \def\plffont{\ptcfont} % (figures)
\pltfont 1561 \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont} % (subfigures)
\pltSfont 1562 \def\pltfont{\ptcfont} % (tables)
\pltSfont 1563 \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont} % (subtables)
\doparttoc 1564 \begin{document}
\dominitoc 1565 \doparttoc \dominitoc
\tableofcontents 1566 \tableofcontents
\part 1567 \part{Introduction}
1568 \clearpage

\parttoc A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

1569 \parttoc \clearpage

\mtcsetfont A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:
\parttoc
1570 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1571 \parttoc \clearpage

\mtcsetfont A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:
\parttoc
1572 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1573 \parttoc \clearpage

\mtcsetfont A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:
\parttoc
1574 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}

```



```

1575 \parttoc \clearpage
1576 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1577 \minitoc
1578 \lipsum[1]
1579 \section{First section} \lipsum[2]
1580 \subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3]
1581 \subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]
1582 \section{Second section} \lipsum[5]
1583 \subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6]
1584 \subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]
1585 \end{document}
1586 </mtc – fo2>

```

4.16 The mtc-gap.tex document file

The mtc-gap.tex document file is described in section 2.44 on page 76.

4.17 The mtc-hi1.tex document file

The mtc-hi1.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 68.

4.18 The mtc-hi2.tex document file

The mtc-hi2.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 69.

4.19 The mtc-hia.tex document file

<pre> \dosectlot This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some \listoftables tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the article class. \section \sectlot 1587 <*mtc – hia> 1588 \documentclass% 1589 [oneside,a4paper]{article} 1590 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}% 1591 [2007/01/04] 1592 \usepackage{lipsum} 1593 \usepackage% 1594 [tight,insection]% 1595 {minitoc} 1596 \dosectlot </pre>	<pre> 1597 \begin{document} 1598 \listoftables 1599 \section{First section} 1600 \sectlot 1601 \lipsum[1] 1602 \begin{table}[hb] 1603 \caption{My first visible table} 1604 \end{table} 1605 \lipsum[2] 1606 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>
--	---

```
1607 \caption{A second visible table}
1608 \end{table}
```

```
1609 \lipsum[3]
```

`\mtchideinmainlot` For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```
\section
```

```
\sectlot
```

```
1610 \begin{table}[hb]
1611 \mtchideinmainlot
1612 \caption{My first hidden table}
1613 \end{table}
1614 \lipsum[4-6]
1615 \begin{table}[ht]
```

```
1616 \caption{A second hidden table}
1617 \end{table}
1618 \lipsum[7]
1619 \section{Second section}
1620 \sectlot
1621 \lipsum[8]
```



`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

```
1622 \begin{table}[hb]
1623 \caption{My last hidden table}
1624 \endmtchideinmainlot
1625 \end{table}
1626 \lipsum[9]
1627 \begin{table}[ht]
1628 \caption{A third visible table}
1629 \end{table}
```

```
1630 \lipsum[10]
1631 \begin{table}[hb]
1632 \caption{A fourth visible table}
1633 \end{table}
1634 \lipsum[11]
1635 \end{document}
1636 \end{mtc-hir}
```



4.20 The mtc-hir.tex document file

`\dominilot` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the report class.

```
\listoftables
```

```
\chapter
```

```
\minilot
```

```
1637 \*mtc-hir
1638 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
1639 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}%
1640 [2007/01/04]
1641 \usepackage{lipsum}
1642 \usepackage%
1643 [tight]{minitoc}
1644 \dominilot
1645 \begin{document}
1646 \listoftables
1647 \chapter{First chapter}
```

```
1648 \minilot
1649 \lipsum[1]
1650 \begin{table}[hb]
1651 \caption{My first visible table}
1652 \end{table}
1653 \lipsum[2]
1654 \begin{table}[ht]
1655 \caption{A second visible table}
1656 \end{table}
1657 \lipsum[3]
```

`\mtchideinmainlot` For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```
\chapter
```

```
\minilot
```



<pre> 1658 \begin{table}[hb] 1659 \mtchideinmainlot % <-- 1660 \caption{My first hidden table} 1661 \end{table} 1662 \lipsum[4-6] 1663 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>	<pre> 1664 \caption{A second hidden table} 1665 \end{table} 1666 \lipsum[7] 1667 \chapter{Second chapter} 1668 \minilot 1669 \lipsum[8] </pre>
--	--

`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

<pre> 1670 \begin{table}[hb] 1671 \caption{My last hidden table} 1672 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 1673 \end{table} 1674 \lipsum[9] 1675 \begin{table}[ht] 1676 \caption{A third visible table} 1677 \end{table} </pre>	<pre> 1678 \lipsum[10] 1679 \begin{table}[hb] 1680 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1681 \end{table} 1682 \lipsum[11] 1683 \end{document} 1684 </mtc – hir> </pre>
--	--



4.21 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class `scrbook`.

```

1685 <*mtc – hop>
1686 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1687 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
1688 [2007/01/04]
1689 \usepackage{lipsum}
1690 \usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
1691 \begin{document}

```

`\dominitoc` We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF
`\dominilof` file is prepared):
`\tableofcontents`

```

\listoffigures 1692 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1693 \dominilof \fakelistoffigures

```

`\part*` A starred part with its entry in the TOC:
`\mtcaddpart`

```

1694 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
1695 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

`\chapter` Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:
`\minitoc`
`\minilof` 1696 \chapter{Chapter 1}

```

1697 \minitoc \minilof
1698 \section{Section one of first chapter} \lipsum[1]
1699 \begin{figure}
1700     \centering Test
1701     \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
1702 \end{figure}
1703
1704 \section{Section two of first chapter} \lipsum[2]
1705 \begin{figure}
1706     \centering Test
1707     \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1708 \end{figure}
1709
1710 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1711 \minitoc \minilof
1712
1713 \section{Section one of second chapter} \lipsum[3]
1714 \begin{figure}
1715     \centering Test
1716     \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1717 \end{figure}
1718 \cleardoublepage
1719 \section{Section two of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
1720 \begin{figure}
1721     \centering Test
1722     \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1723 \end{figure}
1724 \end{document}
1725 </mtc – hop>

```

4.22 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1726 < *mtc – liv>
1727 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
1728 \ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%
1729 [2007/01/04]

```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine \cleardoublepage:

```

1730 \makeatletter
1731 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1732 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
1733   \if@twoside
1734     \ifodd\c@page\else
1735       \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage

```

```

1736 \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
1737 \fi
1738 \fi
1739 }%
1740 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1741 \makeatother

```

We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```

1742 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1743 \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}

```

We load two packages, `tocloft` [386], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and `sectsty` [266], to customize the sectionning commands:

```

1744 \usepackage{tocloft}
1745 \usepackage{sectsty}

```

We load the minitoc package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```

1746 \usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}
1747 \usepackage[english,français]{babel}
1748 \usepackage{franc,frnew,mypatches}
1749 \providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}

```

```

\addtolength We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the
\cftsubsecindent minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:
\cftsetrmarg
\setcounter 1750 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
\chapterfont 1751 \cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
\thesection 1752 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
\sectionfont 1753 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
\raggedright 1754 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
1755 \chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
1756 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
1757 \sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)

```

Some informations for the title page:

```

1758 \title{Systèmes d'occultation} \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}

```

```

\dominitoc And the document body5:
\tableofcontents
\chapter 1759 \begin{document}
\minitoc 1760
\section
\subsection
\subsection*
\subsubsection
\addcontentsline

```

⁵ The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

```

1761 \maketitle
1762
1763 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1764
1765 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}%
1766 \label{chap+controle}
1767 \minitoc
1768
1769 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
1770 \index{taylorisme}
1771 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
1772 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
1773 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
1774 industrielle.
1775
1776 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
1777 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
1778 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
1779 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
1780 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
1781 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
1782
1783 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
1784 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
1785 son destinataire.
1786
1787 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
1788 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
1789 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
1790 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
1791 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
1792 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous
1793 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
1794
1795 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
1796 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
1797 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
1798
1799 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
1800 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
1801 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
1802 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]
1803
1804 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}
1805 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle
1806 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public
1807 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]
1808
1809 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}
1810 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés
1811 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes
1812 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]
1813
1814 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}

```

1815 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système
 1816 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître
 1817 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un
 1818 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les
 1819 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]

1820
 1821 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}
 1822 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un
 1823 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de
 1824 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent
 1825 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]

1826
 1827 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}
 1828 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne
 1829 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]

1830
 1831 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}
 1832 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion
 1833 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]

1834
 1835 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}
 1836 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons
 1837 déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup
 1838 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du
 1839 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]

1840
 1841 \chapter{Le travail informatique}
 1842 \minitoc

1843
 1844 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}

1845
 1846 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}
 1847 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin
 1848 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des
 1849 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,
 1850 on pensait~[...]

1851
 1852 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}
 1853 J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du
 1854 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus
 1855 au sujet de la programmation.

1856
 1857 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}
 1858 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres
 1859 principes. Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la
 1860 préserver~[...]

1861
 1862 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}
 1863 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}

1864
 1865 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et
 1866 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?
 1867 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{\oe}ur de notre
 1868 préoccupation.

```

1869
1870 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}
1871 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions
1872 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires
1873 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
1874 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]
1875
1876 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}
1877 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
1878 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
1879 expressions qui vont composer un programme.
1880
1881 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
1882 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
1883 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
1884 de programme fut la \emph{programmation
1885 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]
1886
1887 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
1888 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
1889 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
1890 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
1891
1892 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
1893 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
1894 modèle~[...]
1895 \end{document}
1896 </mtc – liv>

```

4.23 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

<pre> 1897 <*mtc – mem> 1898 \documentclass% 1899 [oneside]{memoir} 1900 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}% 1901 [2007/01/04] 1902 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 1903 %% \usepackage{hyperref} 1904 %% \usepackage{memhfixc} 1905 \usepackage% 1906 [tight]{minitoc} 1907 %% \usepackage{mtcoff} 1908 \begin{document} </pre>
--	--

<pre> \dominitoc We use the starred form \tableofcontents* specific of the memoir class. Note that the the \tableofcontents* \chapter command has <i>two</i> optional arguments in the memoir class. \chapter \minitoc 1909 \dominitoc \section 1910 \tableofcontents* 1911 1912 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC} 1913 \minitoc </pre>	<pre> 1914 \lipsum[1] \newpage \lipsum[2] 1915 \section{S-1-one} \lipsum[3] 1916 \section{S-1-two} \lipsum[4] 1917 1918 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC} </pre>
--	---

<pre> 1919 \minitoc 1920 \lipsum[4] \newpage \lipsum[5] 1921 \section{S-2-one} \lipsum[6] </pre>	<pre> 1922 \section{S-2-two} \lipsum[7] 1923 \end{document} 1924 \</mtc - mem> </pre>
--	---

4.24 The mtc-mm1.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document and shows some of the necessary adaptations for fonts. First, the preamble:

```

1925 \<*mtc - mm1>
1926 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
1927 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
1928 [2007/01/04]
1929 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text

```

`\providecommand` We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```

\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1930 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 1931 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}

```

`\renewcommand` Then we redefine them:

```

\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1932 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
1933 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}

```

`\mtcsetfont` We load the minitoc package and try to use some minitoc font commands, but without any success:

```

1934 %% hyperref before minitoc, optional
1935 %% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref}\usepackage{memhfixc}
1936 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1937 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
1938 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape

```

`\providecommand` But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```

\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1939 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 1940 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
\renewcommand 1941 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
1942 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}

```

`\mtcsetttitlefont` But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```

\mtcsetttitle
1943 \mtcsetttitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}

```

```

1944 %% this is working beautifully ->
1945 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}

\dominitoc The document body:
\tableofcontents*
  \chapter 1946 \begin{document}
  \minitoc 1947 \dominitoc \tableofcontents*
  \section 1948
    1949 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
    1950 \minitoc
    1951 \section{This section} \lipsum[1]
    1952 \section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
    1953 \section{Third section} \lipsum[3]
    1954 \end{document}
1955 </mtc - mm1>

```

4.25 The mtc-mu.tex document file

```

\mtcindent This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted
\dominitoc in the text with the wrapfig package [15].
\tableofcontents

1956 <*mtc - mu>
1957 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
1958 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
1959 [2007/01/04]
1960 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1961 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1962 \usepackage{wrapfig}
1963 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
1964 \begin{document}
1965 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

```

wrapfigure A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the
minipage half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:
\chapter
\linewidth 1966 \chapter{Mulspreen}\label{chapter+mulspreen}
\vspace 1967 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
\baselineskip 1968 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
\minitoc 1969 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
1970 \minitoc
1971 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
1972 \end{minipage}
1973 \end{wrapfigure}

```

The remaining of the text:

```

1974 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
1975 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
1976 These gulfs were often created when programing environments used
1977 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
1978 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
1979 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
1980 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
1981 notations helped users understand programs.
1982 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
1983 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
1984 programming gulfs.
1985 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
1986 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
1987 programming gulfs.
1988
1989 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
1990 Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
1991 benefits of multiple notations.
1992 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
1993 similar to conventional code.
1994 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
1995 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
1996 This is programming using dual notations.
1997 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
1998 Mulspren's language signature is \LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}.
1999
2000 Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
2001 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.
2002
2003 \section{section 1}
2004 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
2005 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2006 \section{section 3}
2007 \section{section 4}
2008 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
2009 bla bla bla bla bla}

```

thebibliography I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

\bibitem

```

2010 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
2011 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
2012 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2013 \newblock Mulspren: a multiple language simulation programming
2014 environment.
2015 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
2016 on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
2017 page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.
2018
2019 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
2020 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2021 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.

```

```

2022 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
2023 conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
2024 Australia, 2005.
2025 Australian Computer Society, Inc.
2026 \end{thebibliography}
2027 \end{document}
2028 </mtc - mu>

```

4.26 The mtc-nom.tex document file

This document⁶ shows the interaction of the minitoc package with the nomencl package [374], when this package uses its option intoc.

```

2029 <*mtc - nom>
2030 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
2031 \ProvidesFile{mtc-nom.tex}%
2032 [2007/04/02]

```

\makenomenclature We load the packages and prepare the nomenclature:

```

2033 \usepackage[intoc]{nomencl}
2034 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2035 \makenomenclature
2036 \begin{document}

```

\dominitoc We prepare the minitocs and the table of contents:
\tableofcontents

```

2037 \dominitoc
2038 \tableofcontents

```

```

\chapter A first chapter, with its minitoc, a section and some entries for the nomenclature:
\minitoc
\section 2039 \chapter{Angels}
\nomenclature 2040 \minitoc
2041 \section{Main equations}
2042 \begin{equation}
2043 a=\frac{N}{A}
2044 \end{equation}%
2045 \nomenclature{$a$}{The number of angels per unit area}%
2046 \nomenclature{$N$}{The number of angels per needle point}%
2047 \nomenclature{$A$}{The area of the needle point}%
2048 The equation $\sigma = m a$%
2049 \nomenclature{$\sigma$}{The total mass of angels per unit area}%
2050 \nomenclature{$m$}{The mass of one angel}
2051 follows easily.

```

⁶ It is derived from the example given in the documentation of nomencl.

`\printnomenclature` We print the nomenclature; but that adds a chapter entry in the TOC because of the `intoc` option of the `nomenc`, hence we add a correction with `\mtcfixnomenclature` (try to remove the correction and look at the result: the next minitocs are wrong):

```
2052 \printnomenclature \mtcfixnomenclature
```

`\chapter` A second chapter, with its minitoc, a section, and an entry in the nomenclature. This entry will
`\minitoc` be present in the nomenclature printed above.
`\section`
`\nomenclature` 2053 `\chapter{Demons}`
2054 `\minitoc`
2055 `\section{False equations}`
2056 `\begin{equation} i=\sqrt{-1} \end{equation}`
2057 `\nomenclature{i}{The imaginary unit}%`
2058 `\end{document}`
2059 `</mtc - nom>`

4.27 The `mtc-ocf.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `open` and `close` features of the `minitoc` package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [125] is used to have a wide text area.

```
2060 <*mtc - ocf>
2061 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
2062 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ocf.tex}%
2063 [2007/04/02]
2064 \usepackage{multicol} % to make multi-columns.
2065 \usepackage[french]{babel}
2066 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2067 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
2068 \usepackage{fullpage}
2069 % to allow a page breaks before a section
2070 \let\osection\section \def\section{\penalty-1\relax\osection}
2071 %
2072 \usepackage[french,tight]{minitoc}
```

`\mtcsetfeature` The “open” feature for minitocs opens a `multicols` environment, with 3 columns:
`multicols`

```
2073 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\vspace{-1ex}\begin{multicols}{3}}
```

`\mtcsetfeature` The “close” feature for minitocs close the `multicols` environment:
`multicols`

```
2074 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\vspace{-1.5ex}}
```

As the `multicols` environment adds some vertical spacing before and after it, we added some corrections.

`\mtcsetfeature` As the number of sections is not a multiple of three (or some entries are long), we cannot always balance the columns nicely, so we use ragged columns, using the “before” and “after” features:

```
2075 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
2076 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}
```

<pre>\dominitoc And the body of the document, a chapter with many sections, listed in a minitoc: \tableofcontents \chapter 2077 \begin{document} \minitoc 2078 \dominitoc \section 2079 \tableofcontents 2080 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 2081 \minitoc 2082 % A lot of sections 2083 \section{Alfa} 2084 \section{Bravo} 2085 \section{Charlie} 2086 \section{Delta} 2087 \section{Echo} 2088 \section{Fox-Trot} 2089 \section{Golf} 2090 \section{Hotel} 2091 \section{India} 2092 \section{Juliet} 2093 \section{Kilo}</pre>	<pre>2094 \section{Lima} 2095 \section{Mike} 2096 \section{November} 2097 \section{Oscar} 2098 \section{Papa} 2099 \section{Quebec} 2100 \section{Romeo} 2101 \section{Sierra} 2102 \section{Tango} 2103 \section{Uniform} 2104 \section{Victor} 2105 \section{Whiskey} 2106 \section{X-Ray} 2107 \section{Yankee} 2108 \section{Zulu} 2109 \end{document} 2110 \</mtc - ocf></pre>
--	---

4.28 The mtc-ofs.tex document file

This document shows the use of the `\mtcsetoffset` command to shift a minitoc to the left, trying to put it along the left margin of the text. The open and close features of the minitoc package are also used to prepare the minitoc on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [125] is used to have a wide text area.

```
2111 \<mtc - ofs>
2112 \documentclass[a4paper]{book}
2113 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ofs.tex}%
2114 [2007/04/17]
2115 \usepackage{lipsum}
2116 \usepackage{multicol}
2117 \usepackage{fullpage}
2118 %\usepackage[a4paper]{geometry}
2119 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

```

\setlength We remove the minitoc indentation and set up the open and close features:
\mtcindent
\mtcsetfeature 2120 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\raggedcolumns 2121 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\kern1sp\vspace*{-1ex}\begin{multicols}{4}[\kern-2.5ex]}
\flushcolumns 2122 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\kern-2.ex}
multicols 2123 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
2124 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}

\dominitoc We begin the document with a chapter and its minitoc:
\faketableofcontents
\chapter 2125 \begin{document}
\minitoc 2126 \dominitoc \faketableofcontents
2127 \chapter{Introduction}
2128 \minitoc

\mtcsetoffset As the minitoc is not aligned on the left margin of the text, we set a negative offset and print
\mtcskip again the minitoc:
\minitoc
2129 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-1.75em}
2130 \mtcskip \minitoc

\mtcsetoffset But then the minitoc does not use the full width of the text; it would be better to modify both
\setlength the offset and the indentation, each by the half of the total correction:
\mtcindent
\mtcskip 2131 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-0.875em}
\minitoc 2132 \setlength{\mtcindent}{-0.875em}
2133 \mtcskip \minitoc

\section Then a lot of sections, with some text:

2134 \section{Alfa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2135 \section{Bravo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2136 \section{Charlie} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2137 \section{Delta} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2138 \section{Echo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2139 \section{Fox-Trot} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2140 \section{Golf} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2141 \section{Hotel} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2142 \section{India} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2143 \section{Juliet} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2144 \section{Kilo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2145 \section{Lima} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2146 \section{Mike} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2147 \section{November} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2148 \section{Oscar} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2149 \section{Papa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2150 \section{Quebec} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2151 \section{Romeo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2152 \section{Sierra} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

```

2153 \section{Tango}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2154 \section{Uniform}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2155 \section{Victor}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2156 \section{Whiskey}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2157 \section{X-Ray}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2158 \section{Yankee}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2159 \section{Zulu}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2160 \end{document}
2161 </mtc – ofs>

```

Note: if you add a sub-section in this example, the corresponding entry in the minitoc may stick out if it appears in the last column, and the offset and the indentation should then be corrected again.



4.29 The mtc-sbf.tex document file

```

\l@subfigure This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures
\@dottedxxxline (here with the subfigure package [116]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their
\ext@subfigure depth.

```

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2162 <*mtc – sbf>
2163 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2164 \ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
2165 [2007/01/04]
2166 \usepackage{subfigure}
2167 \makeatletter
2168 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{\@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2169 \makeatother

```

We load the varioref [273] package (to have nice cross-references) and the minitoc package:

```

2170 \usepackage{varioref}
2171 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

```

\newcommand We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:
\goodap
\subfigtopskip 2172 \newcommand{\goodap}{%
\subfigbottomskip 2173 \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%
\setcounter 2174 \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}
2175 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2176 \begin{document}

```


`\mtcsetdepth` We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:
`\mtcsetfont`

```
2177 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2178 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2179 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2180 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2181 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2182 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2183 %% no tables in this document
2184 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2185 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2186 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2187 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

`\dominilof` We prepare the minilofs, the table of contents and the list of figures:
`\tableofcontents`
`\listoffigures` 2188 `\dominilof \listoffigures \tableofcontents`

`\chapter` A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:
`\minilof`
`\mtcskip` 2189 `\chapter{First Chapter}`
`\mtcsetdepth` 2190 `\minilof \mtcskip`
 2191 `\mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1} \minilof`

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```
2192 \begin{figure}
2193 \centering
2194   \fbox{%
2195     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2196       \raggedright
2197       \begin{center}
2198         \subfigure[First]{%
2199           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2200           \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2201         \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2202           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2203         \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2204           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2205         \caption{Three subfigures.}\label{3figs}%
2206       \end{center}
2207       \vspace{4pt}%
2208       This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2209       Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2210     \end{minipage}}
2211 \end{figure}
2212 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2213 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2214 \end{document}
2215 \end{mtc - sbf}
```

4.30 The `mtc-scr.tex` document file

`\setcounter` This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package with a KOMA-Script document class [223, 288, 328], `scrreprt`. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```

2216 <*mtc – scr>
2217 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
2218 \ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
2219 [2007/01/04]
2220 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
2221 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2222 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2223 \usepackage{longtable}

```

The `hyperref` package, if used, must be loaded *before* `minitoc`:

```

2224 \usepackage{hyperref}

```

`\pagenumbering` With a KOMA-Script class [223, 288, 328], use the `k-tight` package option in place of
`\dominitoc` `tight`; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:
`\tableofcontents`

```

2225 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
2226 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2227 \begin{document}
2228 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2229 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`\listoftables` In this document class, with the `liststotoc` class option, the `\listoftables` macro adds a
`\mtcaddchapter` chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```

2230 \listoftables \mtcaddchapter

```

`\pagenumbering` With the `bibtotoc` class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after
`\chapter` `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the `tocbibind`
`\setcounter` package.

`\appendix`

`\minitoc` 2231 \clearpage

`\section` 2232 \pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits

```

2233 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1

```

```

2234

```

```

2235 \chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}

```

```

2236

```

```

2237 Text.

```

```

2238

```

```

2239 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}

```

```

2240

```

```

2241 \begin{table}

```

```

2242 \centering
2243 \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
2244 \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft
2245 \\
2246 \underline{Ausbildender} & & Hammer \\
2247 Ausbildungsstätte & & XXXXX Ort
2248 \end{longtable}
2249 \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2250 \end{table}
2251
2252 Text.
2253
2254 \appendix
2255 \chapter{Dokumente}
2256 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2257
2258 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2259 Text.\\
2260 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2261 \end{document}
2262 </mtc – scr>

```

4.31 The mtc-syn.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

`\dominitoc` We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```

2263 < *mtc – syn>
2264 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2265 \ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
2266 [2007/01/04]
2267 \usepackage{minitoc}
2268 \begin{document}
2269 \dominitoc

```

`\chapter*` Some starred chapters, with calls to `\mtcaddchapter` to synchronize. The optional argument `\mtcaddchapter` is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2270 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2271 \mtcaddchapter % Added for a starred chapter
2272 % without entry in the ToC
2273 Dedication goes here
2274
2275 \chapter*{Abstract}
2276 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2277 % with an entry in the ToC

```

```

2278 Abstract goes here
2279
2280 \chapter*{Declaration}
2281 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2282                               % with an entry in the ToC
2283 Declaration goes here

\tableofcontents The table of contents comes here. Looking at the document.log file shows that the minitoc
\decrementmtc    files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

2284 \tableofcontents
2285 \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)

\chapter The following chapters are normal (unstarred):
\minitoc
\section 2286 \chapter{Chapter One}
2287 \minitoc
2288
2289 \section{Section 1}
2290 Some text.
2291
2292 \section{Section 2}
2293 Some text.
2294
2295 \chapter{Chapter Two}

2296 \minitoc
2297
2298 \section{Another Section 1}
2299 Some more text.
2300
2301 \section{Another Section 2}
2302 Some more text.
2303
2304 \end{document}
2305 \</mtc – syn>

```

4.32 The mtc-tbi.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbibind package [389].

```

2306 \<*mtc – tbi>
2307 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}

2308 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}%
2309 [2007/01/04]

\dominitoc We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option nottoc for the tocbibind package:
\tableofcontents

2310 \usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind}
2311 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

2312 \begin{document}
2313 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

\mtcaddchapter As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the
usual correction7:

```

⁷ It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

2314 %% tocbibind compatibility 2315 %% not used if nottoc option :	2316 %% \mtcaddchapter[]
--	--------------------------

\chapter* A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it; \mtcaddchapter 2317 \chapter*{Introduction}	2318 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
---	-----------------------------------

\chapter Some normal chapters: \minitoc \section 2319 \chapter{Title of chapter~1} 2320 \minitoc 2321 \section{as1} \section{as2} 2322 \chapter{Title of chapter~2} 2323 \minitoc 2324 \section{bs1} \section{bs2}	2325 \chapter{Title of chapter~3} 2326 \minitoc 2327 \section{cs1} \section{cs2} 2328 \chapter{Title of chapter~4} 2329 \minitoc 2330 \section{ds1} \section{ds2}
--	--

\chapter* Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC: \mtcaddchapter 2331 \chapter*{Conclusion}	2332 \mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]
---	---------------------------------

\chapter* Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in \mtcaddchapter the TOC: \minitoc \section* 2333 \chapter*{Appendices} \addcontentsline 2334 \mtcaddchapter[Appendices] 2335 \minitoc 2336 \section*{first appendix} 2337 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}%	2338 {first appendix} 2339 \section*{second appendix} 2340 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}% 2341 {second appendix}
--	--

\listoffigures The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the tocbibind package), so a correction must \mtcaddchapter be applied:	2342 %% tocbibind compatibility
--	---------------------------------

2342 %% tocbibind compatibility	2343 \listoffigures \mtcaddchapter
---------------------------------	------------------------------------

thebibliography The tocbibind package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the \bibitem recommended correction: \adjustmtc 2344 \begin{thebibliography}{3} 2345 \bibitem {s1}{title ...} 2346 \end{thebibliography} 2347 %% tocbibind compatibility	2348 \adjustmtc 2349 \end{document} 2350 </mtc - tbi>
---	---

4.33 The mtc-tlc.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of the article class. It is the example of [277, page 58], modernized.

2351 <*mtc – tlc>	2353 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}%
2352 \documentclass{article}	2354 [2007/01/04]
\setlength	Dimensions of the text on the page:
\textwidth	
\textheight	2355 \setlength{\textwidth}%
2356 {124.20126pt}	2357 \setlength{\textheight}%
	2358 {19\baselineskip}
\setlength	We load the minitoc package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for
\stcindent	the secttocs:
\mtcsetfont	
\mtcsetdepth	2359 \usepackage{minitoc}
2360 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt}	2362 {\footnotesize}
2361 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}%	2363 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3}
\dosecttoc	We prepare the secttocs, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed:
\faketableofcontents	
\section	2364 \begin{document}
\secttoc	2365 \dosecttoc[e]
\subsection	2366 \faketableofcontents
\subsubsection	2367
2368 \section{Afghanistan}	2376
2369 \secttoc	2377 \section{Albania}
2370 \subsection{Geography}	2378 \secttoc
2371 \subsubsection{Total area}	2379 \subsection{Geography}
2372 647,500 km2	2380 \subsubsection{Total area}
2373 \subsubsection{Land area}	2381 28,750 km2
2374 647,500 km2	2382 \subsubsection{Land area}
2375 \subsection{History} \ldots	2383 27,400 km2
	2384 \subsection{History} \ldots
	2385 \end{document}
	2386 </mtc – tlc>

4.34 The mtc-tlo.tex document file

The mtc-tlo.tex document file is described in section 2.46 on page 79.

4.35 The `mtc-tsf.tex` document file

This document⁸ shows the use of the `minitoc` package with a document containing subfigures (here with the `subfig` package [118]). We show how to use `minilofs` and to adjust their depth. The old package `fullpage` [125] is used to have a wide text area.

The preamble loads the `subfig` package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2387 <*mtc - tsf>
2388 \documentclass{report}
2389 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}%
2390 [2007/01/04]
2391 \usepackage{fullpage}
2392 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2393 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```

2394 \newdimen\testtemp
2395 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2396   \testtemp #1%
2397   \advance\testtemp .5pt%
2398   \divide\testtemp 2%
2399   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2400     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
2401   \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2402   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2403     \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}}
2404   %%
2405   \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2406   \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2407     \fbox{%
2408       \vbox to 1in{%
2409         \vfil
2410         \hbox to 2in{%
2411           \parbox{2in}{%
2412             \centering
2413             #1}}%
2414         \vfil
2415       \vbox to 0pt{%
2416         \vss
2417         \hbox to 2in{%
2418           \hfil
2419           \ru{1.1in}%
2420           \hfil}}}}}}

```

⁸ It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the `subfig` package [118].

```

\setcounter The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and
\dominilof the list of figures:
\listoffigures

2421 \begin{document}
2422 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2423 \dominilof \listoffigures
2424 \newpage

\chapter A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print a minilof twice, with different depths:
\minilof
\mtcskip 2425 \chapter{Reference Test}
\mtcsetdepth 2426 \minilof
2427 \mtcskip
2428 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2429 \minilof
2430
2431 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2432 \centering
2433 \subfigure{%
2434 \label{fig+A}%
2435 \figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\
2436 (no opt)}}
2437 \quad
2438 \subfigure[]{%
2439 \label{fig+B}%
2440 \figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\
2441 (empty opt)}}\\
2442
2443 \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2444 \label{fig+C}%
2445 \figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\
2446 (opt)}}
2447 \quad
2448 \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2449 \label{fig+D}%
2450 \figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\
2451 (empty opt and opt)}}
2452 \quad
2453 \subfigure[][]{%
2454 \label{fig+E}%
2455 \figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\
2456 (both empty opt)}}\\
2457
2458 \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2459 \label{fig+F}%
2460 \figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\
2461 (both opt)}}
2462 \quad
2463 \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][]{%
2464 \label{fig+G}%
2465 \figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\
2466 (opt and empty opt)}}
2467

```



```
2468 \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2469 \label{fig+main}%
2470 \end{figure}
2471
2472 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2473 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2474 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2475 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2476 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2477
2478 \section{Centering Test}
2479 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2480 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2481 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned
2482 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2483 have centered labels.
2484 \end{document}
2485 </mtc - tsf>
```

Chapter 5

Messages

Contents

5.1	Introduction	150
5.2	Messages from the minitoc package	152
5.2.1	Informative messages	152
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	160
5.2.2	Warning messages	164
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	170
5.2.3	Error messages	186
5.3	Messages from the mtcoff package	200
5.3.1	Warning messages	200
5.4	Message from the mtcpatchmem package	203

Tables

5.1	Message identifiers	151
------------	----------------------------	------------

5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and is associates, mtcoff and mtcpatchmem¹. The table 5.1 on the following page lists all messages; in this table, you can click on a message identifier to find quickly its meaning.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation,

¹ The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may vary.

Table 5.1: Message identifiers (click on a message identifier to see its meaning).

E0001	E0002	E0003	E0004	E0005	E0006	E0007	E0008	E0009	E0010
E0011	E0012	E0013	E0014	E0015	E0016	E0017	E0018	E0019	E0020
E0021	E0022	E0023	E0024	E0025	E0026	E0027	E0028	E0029	E0030
E0031	E0032	E0033	E0034	E0035	E0036	E0037	E0038	E0039	E0040
E0041	E0042	E0043							
F0001	F0002	F0003	F0004	F0005	F0006	F0007	F0008	F0009	
I0000									
I0001	I0002	I0003	I0004	I0005	I0006	I0007	I0008	I0009	I0010
I0011	I0012	I0013	I0014	I0015	I0016	I0017	I0018	I0019	I0020
I0021	I0022	I0023	I0024	I0025	I0026	I0027	I0028	I0029	I0030
I0031	I0032	I0033	I0034	I0035	I0036	I0037	I0038	I0039	I0040
I0041	I0042	I0043	I0044	I0045	I0046	I0047	I0048	I0049	I0050
I0051	I0052	I0053							
M0001									
W0001	W0002	W0003	W0004	W0005	W0006	W0007	W0008	W0009	W0010
W0011	W0012	W0013	W0014	W0015	W0016	W0017	W0018	W0019	W0020
W0021	W0022	W0023	W0024	W0025	W0026	W0027	W0028	W0029	W0030
W0031	W0032	W0033	W0034	W0035	W0036	W0037	W0038	W0039	W0040
W0041	W0042	W0043	W0044	W0045	W0046	W0047	W0048	W0049	W0050
W0051	W0052	W0053	W0054	W0055	W0056	W0057	W0058	W0059	W0060
W0061	W0062	W0063	W0064	W0065	W0066	W0067	W0068	W0069	W0070
W0071	W0072	W0073	W0074	W0075	W0076	W0077	W0078	W0079	W0080
W0081	W0082	W0083	W0084	W0085	W0086	W0087	W0088	W0089	W0090
W0091	W0092	W0093	W0094	W0095	W0096	W0097	W0098	W0099	

but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).

- Informative messages are written only in the *document.log* file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the mtcff package and M for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally L^AT_EX does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document.log* file.
- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but L^AT_EX stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
 - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
 - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.

- *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
- *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
- *COMMAND* The name of the command.
- *COUNTER* The name of a \LaTeX counter.
- *document* The name of your document, without its `.tex` extension.
- *EXTENSION* The extension part of the name of a file.
- *FILE* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the `document.toc` file, the `document.lof` file, or the `document.lot` file).
- *INTERNAL_NAME* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
- *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
- *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
- *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
- *NEW_TITLE* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsetttitle`.
- *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
- *OFFSET* The new value of an offset redefined by `\mtcsetoffset`.
- *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
- *SEQUENCE* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
- *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
- *VALUE* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 457.

5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

5.2.1 Informative messages

I0000

Package: minitoc 2007/12/04 v56 Package minitoc (JPFd)

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPFd” are my initials. This message has no real identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`, but, for indexing it, we use `I0000`.

I0001

```
Package minitoc Info: I0001
(minitoc)          *** minitoc package, version 56 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

I0002

```
Package minitoc Info: I0002
(minitoc)          Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

I0003

```
Package minitoc Info: I0003
(minitoc)          chapter level macros available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0004

```
Package minitoc Info: I0004
(minitoc)          chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the `\section` sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

I0005

```
Package minitoc Info: I0005
(minitoc)          compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the `hyperref` package.

I0006

```
Package minitoc Info: I0006
(minitoc)           document.EXTENSION is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

I0007

```
Package minitoc Info: I0007
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0008

```
Package minitoc Info: I0008
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0009

```
Package minitoc Info: I0009
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the *document.maf* file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 52. This option is the default since version #48.

I0010

```
Package minitoc Info: I0010
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)           on input line LINE.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language² by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

² The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

I0011

Package minitoc Info: I0011
(minitoc) *LANGUAGE* language object selected.
(minitoc) on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

I0012

Package minitoc Info: I0012
(minitoc) Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

I0013

Package minitoc Info: I0013
(minitoc) `\mtcsetdepth` redefines the counter
(minitoc) "*COUNTER*" as "*VALUE*" on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0014

Package minitoc Info: I0014
(minitoc) `\mtcsetfeature` redefines the macro
(minitoc) "*INTERNAL_NAME*" as
(minitoc) "*SEQUENCE*" on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *INTERNAL_NAME* with the given *SEQUENCE*.

I0015

Package minitoc Info: I0015
(minitoc) `\mtcsetfont` redefines the macro
(minitoc) "*macro*" as "*SEQUENCE*" on input line *LINE*.

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *SEQUENCE* of font commands.

I0016

```
Package minitoc Info: I0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

I0017

```
Package minitoc Info: I0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "NEW_TITLE" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

I0018

```
Package minitoc Info: I0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\INTERNAL_NAME` macro which the given sequence *SEQUENCE*.

I0019

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0019
(minitoc(hints))   No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))   in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

I0020

```
Package minitoc Info: I0020
(minitoc)          old version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

I0021

Package minitoc Info: I0021
(minitoc) Page numbers are activated
(minitoc) for the *ARG1*s on input line *LINE*.

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0022

Package minitoc Info: I0022
(minitoc) Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc) for the *ARG1*s on input line *LINE*.

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0023

Package minitoc Info: I0023
(minitoc) part level macros available.

The `\part` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

I0024

Package minitoc Info: I0024
(minitoc) PREPARING MINITOCs FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *FILE*.

I0025

Package minitoc Info: I0025
(minitoc) PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *FILE*.

I0026

Package minitoc Info: I0026
(minitoc) PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM *FILE* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *FILE*.

I0027

```
Package minitoc Info: I0027
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

I0028

```
Package minitoc Info: I0028
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0029

```
Package minitoc Info: I0029
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

I0030

```
Package minitoc Info: I0030
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.
```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

I0031

```
Package minitoc Info: I0031
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

I0032

```

Package minitoc Info: I0032
(minitoc)           This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)           a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)           incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)           We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

I0033

```

Package minitoc Info: I0033
(minitoc)           Writing document.EXTENSION.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

I0034

```

Package minitoc Info: I0034
(minitoc)           PREPARING MINILOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *FILE*.

I0035

```

Package minitoc Info: I0035
(minitoc)           PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dopartlof` command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *FILE*.

I0036

```

Package minitoc Info: I0036
(minitoc)           PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dosectlof` command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *FILE*.

I0037

```
Package minitoc Info: I0037
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominilot` command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *FILE*.

I0038

```
Package minitoc Info: I0038
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dopartlot` command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *FILE*.

I0039

```
Package minitoc Info: I0039
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosectlot` command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *FILE*.

5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

I0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0040
(minitoc(hints))      The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))      loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))      You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))      documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.27](#) on page [70](#).

I0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0041
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.24](#) on page [66](#).

I0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0042
(minitoc(hints))      --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 64.

I0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0043
(minitoc(hints))      --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 50. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328] compatible with `minitoc`.

I0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0044
(minitoc(hints))      --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `memoir` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 65.

I0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0045
(minitoc(hints))      The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))      has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))      on input line LINE.
```

A `minitoc` preparation command has been invoked more than once.

I0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0046
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 50.

I0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0047
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 64.

I0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0048
(minitoc(hints))          Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))          hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))          because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))          commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))          without any previous check.
```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

I0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0049
(minitoc(hints))          ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints are eventually given below.
```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the `document.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

I0050

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0050
(minitoc)           The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)           The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)           will not be available.
(minitoc)           Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)           or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0051

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0051
(minitoc)           The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)           The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)           will not be available.
(minitoc)           Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)           or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mlo* file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0052

```

Package minitoc Info: I0052
(minitoc)           \mtcsetoffset redefines the offset
(minitoc)           "OFFSET" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetoffset` macro changes the value of the specified offset and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0053

```

Package minitoc Info: I0053
(minitoc)           You have loaded the PACK package;
(minitoc)           please be aware that the minitoc package
(minitoc)           facilities can not be used for new types
(minitoc)           of floats defined by the PACK package
```

The minitoc package does not manage new types of floats defined via the float [255], floatrow [239], trivfloat [401] and rotfloat [343] packages³.

³ As the trivfloat and rotfloat packages load the float package, this message will then appear twice!

5.2.2 Warning messages

W0001

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0001
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0002

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0002
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0003

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0003
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0004

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0004
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0005

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0005
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0006

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0006
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0007

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0007
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0008

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0008
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0009

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0009
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0010

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0010
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0011

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0011
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0012

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0012
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0013

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0013
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTTocs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0014

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0014
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0015

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0015
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0016

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0016
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0017

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0017
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.

```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

W0018

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0018
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.

```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

W0019

```

Package minitoc Warning: W0019
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.

```

The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

W0020

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0020
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of \LaTeX , but the minitoc package will still try to continue. It would be better to update your \LaTeX installation.



W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

Your version of \LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your \LaTeX installation as soon as possible.



W0093

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0093
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                The full list of the missing language files
(minitoc)                is given in the W0094 warning message.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document.log* file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The full list of the missing language files is given in the W0094 warning message.

I0050

I0051

W0094

W0094

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0094
(minitoc)               Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)               ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

W0095

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0095
(minitoc)               \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)               Cannot use \mtcfixnomenclature without
(minitoc)               optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0096

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0096
(minitoc)               \mtcfixnomenclature can only be used
(minitoc)               with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)               which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0098

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0098
(minitoc)               --- You have used the \nofiles command
(minitoc)               in your preamble; all preparation commands
(minitoc)               in the body of the document will be ignored.
```

You have used the `\nofiles` command in the preamble of your document; hence the preparation commands will be ignored in your document. Please verify that the mini-table auxiliary files are in their final state. See page 29.

5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

W0023

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0023
(minitoc(hints))          --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))          of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The hyperref package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 62.

W0024

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0024
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))          in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the `document.log` file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

W0025

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0025
(minitoc(hints))          --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the alphanum package which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0026

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0026
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the amsart document class which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0027

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0027
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0028

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0028
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \chapter command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0029

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0029
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0030

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0030
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \part command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0031

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0031
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))      loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))      You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))      ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 30, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



W0032

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0032
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))      too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))      dated of 2005/04/18 at least.

```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

W0033

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0033
(minitoc(hints))      The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 72.

W0034

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0034
(minitoc(hints))      The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption2` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 72. Note that the `caption2` package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the `caption` package.

W0035

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0035
(minitoc(hints))           The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 72.

W0036

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0036
(minitoc(hints))           The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 72.

W0037

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0037
(minitoc(hints))           The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 70.

W0038

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0038
(minitoc(hints))           The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 73.

W0039

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0039
(minitoc(hints))           --- The \section command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0040
(minitoc(hints))      --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. See note [21](#) on page [53](#).



W0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0041
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0042
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0043
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0044
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0045
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0046
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0047
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0048
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0049
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0050

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0050
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0051

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0051
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0052

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0052
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0053

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0053
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 54.

W0054

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0054
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 54.

W0055

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0055
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 54.

W0056

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0056
(minitoc(hints))           You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))           \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))           option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the *insection* package option. See page 30.

W0057

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0057
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

W0058

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0058
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

W0059

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0059
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

W0060

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0060
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

W0061

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0061
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

W0062

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0062
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

W0063

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0063
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

W0064

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0064
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

W0065

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0065
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

W0066

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0066
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0067

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0067
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0068

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0068
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0069

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0069
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0070

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0070
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0071

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0071
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0072

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0072
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0073

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0073
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0074

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0074
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0075

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0075
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0076

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0076
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0077

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0077
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0078

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0078
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0079

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0079
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never used one of them.

W0080

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0080
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

W0081

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0081
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))           but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0082

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0082
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0083

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0083
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0084

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0084
(minitoc(hints))           --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))           with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))           but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))           which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))           Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))           use consistent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 30, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0085

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0085
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use consistent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 30, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0086

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0086
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `fncychap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.38 on page 75.

W0087

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0087
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `quotchap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.39 on page 75.

W0088

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0088
(minitoc(hints))      The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `romannum` package alters the numbering of some sectioning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.40 on page 76.

W0089

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0089
(minitoc(hints))           The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sfheaders package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.41 on page 76.

W0090

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0090
(minitoc(hints))           The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The alnumsec package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.42 on page 76.

W0091

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0091
(minitoc(hints))           The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The captcont package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.43 on page 76.

W0092

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0092
(minitoc(hints))           The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The hangcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.47 on page 79.

W0097

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0097
(minitoc(hints))           --- The flowfram package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))           with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the flowfram package which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package, because it has its own definitions for minitocs. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0099

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0099
(minitoc(hints))      --- The titlesec package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the titlesec package, but it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. See note 21 on page 53.



5.2.3 Error messages

E0001

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0001
(minitoc)      But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixglossary macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0002

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0002
(minitoc)      But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixindex macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0003

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0003
(minitoc)      Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

E0004

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0004
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

E0005

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0005
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

E0006

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0006
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)           Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0007

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0007
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0008

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0008
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0009

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0009
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```


The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0010

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0010
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0011

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0011
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0012

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0012
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a feature param
(minitoc)          (before, after, open, close, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, `open`, `close`, or `thispagestyle`.

E0013

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0013
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

E0014

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0014
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

E0015

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0015
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, `...`, `sectlot`).

E0016

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)          pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

E0017

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)          argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0018

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)          argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists⁴ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

E0019

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0019
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0020

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0020
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists⁴ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

⁴ O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

E0021

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0021
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0022

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0022
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

E0023

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0023
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are *incompatible*. You should verify them.



E0024

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0024
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

E0025

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0025
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are *incompatible*. One is likely to be misspelt.



E0026

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0026
(minitoc)          The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)          is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0027

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0027
(minitoc)          The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)          is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0028

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0028
(minitoc)          Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.
```

Your version of the memoir class is really *incompatible* with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.



E0029

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0029
(minitoc)          Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

E0030

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0030
(minitoc)          Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

E0031

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0031
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

E0032

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0032
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

E0033

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0033
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

E0034

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0034
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

E0035

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0035
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

E0036

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0036
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

E0037

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0037
(minitoc)                The \COMMAND command is incompatible
(minitoc)                with the document class.
```

```
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
...
```

```
1.39 \dominitoc[r]
```

```
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (`\COMMAND`) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in `book`- or `report`-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in `article`-like classes, mini-tables are not available in `letter`-like classes, etc.).

E0038

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0038
(minitoc)                Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)                A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)                We will try to continue with
(minitoc)                current/default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory `LANGUAGE.mld` language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

E0039

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0039
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixnomenclature not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0040

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0040
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixnomenclature
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0041

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0041
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset attempts to use
(minitoc)                an undefined mini-table type (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You are trying to set the offset for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0042

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0042
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0043

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0043
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

5.3 Messages from the `mtcoff` package

The `mtcoff` package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

5.3.1 Warning messages

F0001

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0001
(mtcoff)          \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)          by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)          on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0002

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0002
(mtcoff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0003

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0003
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0004

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0004
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0005

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0005
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0006

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0006
(mtcoff)      \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)      by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)      on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0007

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0007
(mtcoff)      You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)      file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)      to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)      DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)      document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)      \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)      and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the *document.log* file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

F0008

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0008
(mtcoff)      The macro \kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)      should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)      on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

F0009

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0009
(mtcoff)      The macro \STRINGoffset
(mtcoff)      should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)      on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\STRINGoffset` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the horizontal position of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: `mtcpatchmem` package to patch the `memoir` class.

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter [12](#) on page [458](#).

Chapter 6

Jargon

Contents

“.” 205	E 214	J 220	O 231	T 237
A 206	F 216	K 220	P 232	U 239
B 208	G 218	L 220	Q 234	V 239
C 209	H 218	M 222	R 234	W 239
D 213	I 219	N 228	S 235	X 240

Tables

6.1	Category codes 210	6.7	Most common font families 230
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in	6.8	Most common font series 230
	CJK 211	6.9	Most common font shapes 230
6.3	Standard document classes 212	6.10	The five font parameters of some fonts 230
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands . 214	6.11	Author commands for fonts 231
6.5	Various encodings 215	6.12	Some systems derived from T_EX and
6.6	Most common font encodings 229		L^AT_EX 232

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages (often from the abstract), and from [4, 5, 119, 122, 222, 223, 236, 243–245, 260, 261, 264, 277, 288, 297, 298, 376].



- .aux** The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a \LaTeX document. It carries some information from a \LaTeX run to the next.
- .cls** The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via `\documentclass`.
- .dtx** The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a \LaTeX package or class. This file is often associated with a `.ins` file to generate the package or class. Compiling a `.dtx` file with \LaTeX generates the documentation.
- .F** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Fnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.
- .G** The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Gnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlof.
- .H** The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Hnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlof.
- .ins** The suffix of the name for an installation file of a \LaTeX package or class. When compiled with \LaTeX , it extracts the files of the package or class from an `.dtx` file.
- .lof** The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
- .log** The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
- .lot** The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
- .M** The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Mnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minitoc.
- .maf** The suffix of the name of the file generated by the `listfiles` package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
- .mld** The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
- .mlf** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.mlfnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.
- .mlo** The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a `.mld` file; hence the `.mld` file must load a `.mlo` file.
- .mlt** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.mltnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
- .mtc** The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.mtcnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minitoc.
- .P** The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Pnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the parttoc.

.plf	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.plfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.plt	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.pltmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.ptc	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.ptcmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.S	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Snn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
.slf	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.slfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.slt	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.sltmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.
.stc	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.stcmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
.sty	The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via <code>\usepackage</code> .
.T	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Tnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
.tex	The suffix of the name of a T _E X or L ^A T _E X normal source file.
.toc	The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
.U	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Unn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.V	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Vnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.

A

absolute numbering The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

abstract The abstract package [387] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.

I0040

adjustment Some minitoc commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`,

`\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `\mtcfixnomenclature`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.



after A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

afterpage The `afterpage` [104] package is used to add code to be executed *after* the next page break.

alnumsec The `alnumsec` package [228] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. It's output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [96]), but you can use the standard L^AT_EX sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.42 on page 76).

W0090

alphanum The `alphanum` package, which is part of the specialized `jura` class [96], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0025

\mathcal{AMS} The American Mathematical Society ¹. This society has developed some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.

W0026

W0027

I0041

amsart, `amsart.cls` A document class for articles [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0026

amsbook, `amsbook.cls` A document class for books [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is compatible with the `minitoc` package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 66.

I0041

amsproc, `amsproc.cls` A document class for conference proceedings [7], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0027

Antomega `Antomega` [226] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for *Lambda* (Λ), based on the original `omega.sty` file of the Omega project (Ω). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (`.mld`) use titles taken from `Antomega`: `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `latvian.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, `russian2o.mld`, and `spanish3.mld`.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The `appendix` package [388] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for instance, for per chapter/section appendices. If this

I0042

¹ <http://www.ams.org>

package is used with minitoc, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 64).

Arabi *Arabi* [204] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in *arabi.mld* and *farsi3.mld* come from the *arabic.ldf* and *farsi.ldf* files of this system.

ArabT_EX ArabT_EX [230, 231] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in *arab.mld* (or *arabic.mld*), *arab2.mld* and *hebrew.mld* come from ArabT_EX, while those of *hebrew2.mld* come from babel [48, 49].

ArmT_EX ArmT_EX [123] is a package (prepared by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the armenian language. The titles in *armenian.mld* come from ArmT_EX.

article A standard L^AT_EX document class [236]. It has sectionning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).

\AtBeginDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

\AtEndDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

autoconfiguration Since version #28, minitoc detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

auxiliary During the preparation of a document, the L^AT_EX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are *document.aux* (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), *document.toc* for the table of contents, *document.lof* for the list of figures, and *document.lot* for the list of tables. The minitoc package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are *document.extension*, the table 1.11 on page 55 lists the possible extensions. See also the `.maf` extension above.

B

babel The babel package [48, 49] (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write L^AT_EX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the babel package.

- BangTeX** A package for typesetting documents in the bangla (bengali) language using the TeX/LaTeX systems; see [304].
- before** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.
- BibTeX** A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in LaTeX documents. Distributed with LaTeX. See [264, 308, 309, 340].
- bibtopic** A LaTeX package [22] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.
- bibunits** The bibunits package [176] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, `natbib` [126, 127], `overcite` [14] and KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328].
- book** A standard LaTeX document class [236]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).
- booktabs** This nice package [143] helps to the preparation of better tables, *without* vertical rules nor double rules.

C

- calc** The `calc` [360] package makes easier the numeric computations (on counters and dimensions) when preparing a LaTeX document.
- cappuccino** See “minutes” below.
- captcont** The `captcont` package [117] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the `subfig` package [118] in particular. W0091
- caption** The `caption` package [346] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages. W0033
- caption2** The² `caption2` package [344] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular `caption` package [346] and has been superseded by the new release of the regular W0034

² This text comes from the documentation of the `caption` package. The `caption` and `caption2` packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

Table 6.1: Category codes

	Category	Meaning
0	Escape character	(\ usually)
1	Beginning of group	{ usually)
2	End of group	} usually)
3	Math shift	(\$ usually)
4	Alignment tab	(& usually)
5	End of line	(<i>return</i> usually)
6	Parameter	(# usually)
7	Superscript	(^ usually)
8	Subscript	(_ usually)
9	Ignored character	(<i>null</i> usually)
10	Space	(_ usually)
11	Letter	(A, . . . , Z and a, . . . , z)
12	Other character	(none of the above or below)
13	Active character	(~ usually)
14	Comment character	(% usually)
15	Invalid character	(<i>delete</i> usually)

caption package version 3.0 in December 2003. `caption2` is still some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the `caption` package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the `caption2` package should be used instead of the `caption` package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

CATALOG A plain text file which contains basic infos about the `minitoc` package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

catcode Short for “category code”. In³ the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that \TeX might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that \TeX responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The \TeX book*” led you to believe that there were just two types — the escape character and the others — and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The `ccaption` package [391] provides commands for “continuation captions”,

W0035

³ This definition is taken from “*The \TeX book*” [219, 221].

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

chnpage The `chnpage` package (by Peter R. WILSON) provides commands to change the page layout in the middle of a document, and to robustly check for typesetting on odd or even pages.

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the `minitoc` package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (`\firstchapteris` and `co.`). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in `minitoc` version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 49.

chapterbib The `chapterbib` package [16] allows multiple bibliographies in a \LaTeX document, including items `\cite`d in more than one bibliography. Despite the name “`chapterbib`”, *the bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.76.2 on page 401.

CJK The CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare \LaTeX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; then the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into \TeX since some of the values used for the encodings’ second bytes are reserved for control characters: ‘{’, ‘}’, and ‘\’. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in \LaTeX ; to avoid this,

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article [236]	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
proc [235]	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc [105]	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltnews [208]	For preparing the announcement of a L ^A T _E X release; analog to the article class.
report [236]	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
book [236]	For real books.
letter [237]	For letters; as this class has no sectionning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides [271]	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerT _E X ^a instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

^a <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [260, 261]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the minitoc package uses the .mlo files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.13 on page 44.

class The **class**⁴ is the first information L^AT_EX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[options]{class}`

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes [236]. The L^AT_EX 2_ε distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 60.

close A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately after (*close*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 137.

cmk An example of shell script to prepare the documentation files in PostScript format from the ones in PDF format. This script should be adapted to your needs.

CMR For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in english.

⁴ This note is extracted from [298], then adapted.

Computer Modern A set of fonts [218] designed by Donald E. KNUTH for T_EX. Initially they were built with METAFONT [129, 220] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

counter A T_EX register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in T_EX, but L^AT_EX uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from T_EX, ϵ -T_EX [98], allows more counters. Omega (Ω) also offers more counters.

CTAN The *Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the T_EX related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are⁵:

- ftp.dante.de (Cologne [Köln], Germany)
 - anonymous ftp /tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)
 - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/>
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.dante.de/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de>
- ftp.tex.ac.uk (Cambridge, England, UK)
 - anonymous ftp /tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)
 - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/>
 - NFS mountable from <nfs.tex.ac.uk:/tex-archive>
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.tex.ac.uk/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk>
- tug.ctan.org (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
 - anonymous ftp /tex-archive (/pub/archive)
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.ctan.org/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org>

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

D

dblaccnt I needed to use the dblaccnt [275] package to typeset “The pdfT_EX Program” entry [173] in the bibliography, because its author’s first name contains a double accent (Thế Thành HàN).

de.comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in german.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectioning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectioning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the secnumdepth counter),

⁵ This list may change in the future.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 6.4 for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the `parttocs`, `minitocs`, and `secttocs`, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For \TeX (and \LaTeX), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

devanagari.sty The *Devanāgarī for \TeX* (Devanāgarī) package [306] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with \TeX . Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for \TeX .

E

em A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 10 on page 246.

en-mtc.bst A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [167] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
<code>ansinew</code>	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
<code>applemac</code>	Macintosh encoding.
<code>ascii</code>	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
<code>cp1250</code>	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
<code>cp1251</code>	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
<code>cp1252</code>	Synonym for <code>ansinew</code> .
<code>cp1257</code>	Windows 1257 (Baltic) code page.
<code>cp437</code>	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
<code>cp437de</code>	IBM 437 code page (German version).
<code>cp850</code>	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
<code>cp852</code>	IBM 852 code page.
<code>cp855</code>	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
<code>cp865</code>	IBM 865 code page.
<code>cp866</code>	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
<code>decmulti</code>	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
<code>latin1</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
<code>latin2</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
<code>latin3</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, <code>latin5</code> is the preferred character set for Turkish.
<code>latin4</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
<code>latin5</code>	Is essentially the same as <code>latin1</code> , except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
<code>next</code>	Next encoding.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended T_EX). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [115, 131, 367]), etc. See table 6.5 and [246, 270].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env}` ... `\end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

- ε -TeX** ε -TeX [98] is an extended version of TeX, with much more registers and many new primitives; it supports also left-to-right and right-to-left writing.
- ethiop** A L^ATeX package [39] giving the ethiopian language support for the babel package [48, 49].
- extension** The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 54 and 2.5 on page 58. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

F

farsi.sty See FarsiTeX below.

FarsiTeX A package [140] to typeset a document in the farsi (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for L^ATeX2.09. See also sections 13.53 on page 502 and 13.54 on page 504.

features A feature (for the minitoc package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Five features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the whole mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the whole mini-table), a “open” feature, executed just before inserting the mini-table file, a “close” feature, executed just after inserting the mini-table file, and a “pagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

filecontents A special L^ATeX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.13 on page 44) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 49.

\firstpartis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\firstsectionis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

float This package [255] (by Anselm LINGNAU) improves the interface for defining floating objects such as figures and tables in L^AT_EX. It adds the notion of a ‘float style’ that governs appearance of floats. New kinds of floats may be defined using a `\newfloat` command analogous to `\newtheorem`. This package also incorporates the functionality of David P. CARLISLE’s package [here](#), giving floating environments a [H] option which means ‘PUT IT HERE’ (as opposed to the standard [h] option which means ‘You may put it here if you like’).

I0053

\FloatBarrier A macro from the `placeins` package [12]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

floatrow This package [239] (by Olga G. LAPKO) is an extension of the `float` package [255] (by Anselm LINGNAU), reusing its code, with extensions from the `rotfloat` package [343] (by Axel SOMMERFELDT).

I0053

flowfram This package [353, 354] is designed to enable you to create text *frames* in a document such that the contents of the document environment flow from one frame to the next in the order that they were defined. This is useful for creating posters or magazines or any other form of document that does not conform to the standard one or two column layout. As this package defines its own system of minitocs, it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0097

fminitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package.

fminitoc.dtx The source file for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `fminitoc.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `fminitoc.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.lan A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.pdf The french documentation in PDF format.

fminitoc.ps The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` script).

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 10 on page 246.

fncychap The `fncychap` package [254] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard L^AT_EX 2_ε document classes: `book` and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.38 on page 75).

W0086

fr.comp.text.tex The Usenet newsgroup about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in french.

franc.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

frbib.sty A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fr-mtc.bst A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [167] tool to add an URL field.

frnew.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

G

geometry The `geometry` package [366] provides a flexible and complete user interface to page dimensions. You can specify them by using intuitive parameters to get your desired page layout. For instance, if you want to set margins (the left, right, top and bottom margins) to 2cm from each edge of the paper, what you need is just:

```
\usepackage[margin=2cm]{geometry}
```

This powerful (and recommended) package is used in some example documents and in this documentation.

guarani A \LaTeX package to compose text in Guarani, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [41] and section 13.73 on page 519.

H

hangcaption The `hangcaption` package [210] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, \LaTeX 2.09).

W0092

Hindi For the Hindi language, see the `Devanāgarī` package [306] above. The `minitoc` package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available. See also [128] about the Hindi language.

hint An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).

hints An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the consistency between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `document.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).

H^ΛTeX A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* (Λ) (see below). Written by Un KOAUNGHI [222, in korean]. It uses special Hangûl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.

hyperlink In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamically found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.

hyperref The hyperref package [323] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in L^ATeX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for HyperTeX dvi processors, for embedded pdfmark commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (dvips and dvipsone), for dviwindo, for pdfTeX, for T_EX4ht, and for VTeX's pdf and HTML backends.

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperTeX project, described in [313]. It extends the functionality of all the L^ATeX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

W0023
W0028
W0030
W0039

I

ifmtarg The ifmtarg package [400] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty ("empty" meaning zero or more spaces only).

ifthen The ifthen package [107] implements an `\ifthenelse` command for L^ATeX 2_ε.

imk An example of shell script, which prepares the minitoc package from minitoc.ins and minitoc.dtx; note that imk must be run before running emk or fmk. See item 10 on page 246.

insection The insection package option loads the placeins package [12] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use sectlofs or sectlots in your document. See section 1.2 on page 31.

W0056

insertion The insertion commands of the minitoc package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are (see table 3.9 on page 87):

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

INSTALL A text file describing the installation of the minitoc package. See chapter 7 on page 241.

J

\jobname A \TeX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by \TeX (or \LaTeX), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

jura The jura class [96], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. It is used for german judicial documents.

W0029

K

Kannada \TeX A project [402] to use \LaTeX for typesetting in the Kannada language. See section 13.100 on page 538.

k-loose A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the loose package option for standard classes.

k-tight A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the tight package option for standard classes.

KOMA-Script KOMA-Script [223, 288, 328] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (scrartcl, scrbook, scrlettr, scrlltr2, and scrreprt) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

I0043

The scrbook, scrreprt, and scrartcl classes are compatible with the minitoc package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 50). The scrlettr and scrlltr2 have no sectioning commands, so the minitoc package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the \LaTeX kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard \LaTeX classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes book, report, and article. There is also a replacement for the standard class letter.

L

Lambda The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega (Ω) is called “*Lambda*” (Λ).

- Lamed** The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Aleph (\aleph) is called “*Lamed*” (\beth).
- \LaTeX** \LaTeX [233] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books. \LaTeX uses \TeX [219, 221] as its formatting engine (from [298]).
- In fact, \LaTeX is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout. \LaTeX was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [233]. It uses the \TeX formatter as its typesetting engine. These days \LaTeX is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.
- In 1994 the \LaTeX package was (deeply) updated by the \LaTeX 3 team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of \LaTeX 2.09 some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called \LaTeX 2 ϵ .
- \LaTeX is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to \LaTeX in an ASCII environment, you type `LaTeX`. \LaTeX 2 ϵ is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed `LaTeX2e`.
- \LaTeX 2.09** An obsolete version of the \LaTeX program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it⁶. Use the current version of \LaTeX 2 ϵ , which is supported and much more efficient.
- \LaTeX 2 ϵ** The current version of the \LaTeX program, after 1994; it is supported.
- \LaTeX 3** The future version of \LaTeX , whose development is still in progress.
- leaders** A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regularly spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).
- letter** A standard document class [237] to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectionning commands nor structure, the minitoc package is pointless (hence *incompatible*) with them.
- lipsum** The lipsum package [178] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).
- listfiles** An option of the minitoc package. It creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the \LaTeX run) in the `document.maf` file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 52.
- LOF, LoF** An acronym for “list of figures”.
- lofdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

⁶ Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.



loose An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is **tight**.

LOT, LoT An acronym for “list of tables”.

lotdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

LPPL The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.

ltxdoc A standard \LaTeX document class [105], for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

ltnews A standard \LaTeX document class [208], for preparing the announcement of a \LaTeX release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

M

\makeatletter and **\makeatother** Many⁷ internal commands of \LaTeX , of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands *should never be used in a package or class file*.

makefile A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

mcaption The `mcaption` package [194] provides a `margincap` environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

MCE A minimal [complete] example is the smallest possible complete document that illustrates a problem. A minimal example file should not include any packages or code that do not contribute to the problem, but must include a document class and the `document` environment (from [352]). See also [318], <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=minxampl> and <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=askquestion> for good advices.

⁷ Informations from [277, page 843].



memoir, memoir.cls A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [396, 397, 399]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 65.

mini-bibliography See **minibbl** below.

mini-list Synonym for “mini-table” below.

mini-lof See “minilof” below.

mini-lot See “minilot” below.

mini-table This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectioning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only tables of contents for chapters.

mini-toc See “minitoc” below.

minibbl Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 60.

minilof A list of figures for a chapter.

minilofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

minilot A list of tables for a chapter.

minilotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

minitoc A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).

minitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.

minitoc.bug A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 56.

minitocdepth This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.

minitoc.dtx The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.

minitoc-hyper.sty A special version [372] of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS to work with the powerful hyperref package [323]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package [372] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*

E0028
I0020
I0027
I0030
I0032
I0044
M0001



minitoc.ins The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with \LaTeX produces most of the files of the minitoc package.

minitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc.l A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in `minitoc.l` are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.

minitoc.lan A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc.pdf The english documentation in PDF format.

minitoc.pre This file contains a \LaTeX preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc.ps The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` scripts).

minitoc.sty This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

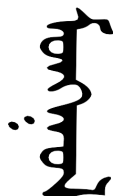
minitoc.sum A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 80.

minitoc-tds.zip A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.

minutes The minutes package [253] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter! ⁸

MonTeX MonTeX [119, 122] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russiанc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [121]. See also http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_writing_systems and http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_language. The following description is extracted from [122].

MonTeX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian. Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).



Монгол

⁸ The little cups ☕ come from the `marvosym` package [193].

Mongolian The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

Buryat is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, \xalx{H/h}) for marking the difference to /s/.

Bicig (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root *bicig* whereas the Manju commands have the name root *bi*the.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

Manju Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [120] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

MS-DOS (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the minitoc point of view, its main drawback is the use of filenames with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

mtc-2c.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout. See section 4.1 on page 91.

- mtc-2nd.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package and its french2 language option. See section 4.2 on page 92.
- mtc-add.bib** A small bibliographic data base for the mtc-add.tex and mtc-ads.tex example documents. See section 4.4 on page 96.
- mtc-3co.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.3 on page 93.
- mtc-add.tex** An example document showing how to use \mtcaddchapter and the tocbibind package [389] with minitoc. See section 4.4 on page 96.
- mtc-ads.tex** An example document showing how to use \mtcaddsection and the tocbibind package [389] with minitoc. See section 4.5 on page 100. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.
- mtc-amm.tex** An example file showing the use of the appendices environment in a memoir class document with the minitoc package. See section 4.6 on page 105.
- mtc-apx.tex** An example file showing the use of the mtchideinmaintoc environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices. See section 2.25 on page 67.
- mtc-art.tex** An example of document (article class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.8 on page 105.
- mtc-bk.tex** An example of document (book or report class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.9 on page 110.
- mtc-bo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout and using the tocloft package [386]. See section 4.10 on page 115.
- mtc-ch0.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred first chapter. See section 4.11 on page 120.
- mtc-cri.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with starred parts and chapters. See section 4.12 on page 121.
- mtc-fko.tex** An example file showing the problem of fonts in minitocs when using the scrbook class. See section 4.13 on page 122.
- mtc-fo1.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.14 on page 123.
- mtc-fo2.tex** Another example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.15 on page 124.
- mtc-gap.tex** An example file showing the use of the \mtcgapbeforeheads and \mtcgapafterheads commands. See section 2.44 on page 76.
- mtc-hi1.tex** An example file showing the use of the mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot specialized environments. See section 2.25 on page 68.
- mtc-hi2.tex** An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:
- \mtchideinmainlof and \endmtchideinmainlof,

- `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.

See section 2.25 on page 69.

mtc-hia.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an `article` class document. See section 4.19 on page 125.

mtc-hir.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a `report` class document. See section 4.20 on page 126.

mtc-hop.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `scrbook` document class. See section 4.21 on page 127.

mtc-liv.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a book with customized table of contents and minitocs. See section 4.22 on page 128.

mtc-mem.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `memoir` class. See section 4.23 on page 132.

mtc-mm1.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `memoir` class, if you want to change some fonts. See section 4.24 on page 133.

mtc-mu.tex A document using a `minitoc` set in a `wrapfigure` environment with the `wrapfig` package [15]. See section 4.25 on page 134.

mtc-nom.tex A document showing an interaction between the `minitoc` package and the `nomencl` package [374]. See section 4.26 on page 136.

mtc-ocf.tex A document using the `open` and `close` features to prepare a `minitoc` on three columns. See section 4.27 on page 137.

mtc-ofs.tex A document using the `open` and `close` features to prepare a `minitoc` on three columns and `\mtcsetoffset` to shift the `minitoc` to align it on the left. See section 4.28 on page 138.

mtc-sbf.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `subfigure` package [116]. See section 4.29 on page 140.

mtc-scr.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with a KOMA-Script class [223, 288, 328], `scrreprt`. See section 4.30 on page 142.

mtc-syn.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package when the table of contents is preceded by some starred chapters. See section 4.31 on page 143.

mtc-tbi.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `tocbibind` package [389]. See section 4.32 on page 144.

mtc-tlc.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a document of `article` class. It is the example of [277, page 58], modernized. See section 4.33 on page 146.

mtc-tlo.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `tocloft` package [386] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables. See section 2.46 on page 79.

- mtc-tsf.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [118]. See section 4.35 on page 147.
- mtcmess** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for a unique message identifier.
- mtcoff** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
- mtcpatchmem** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version *incompatible* with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- mu** A length unit normally used in math mode (μ means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.
- multibib** The multibib package [177] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [176] or chapterbib [16], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.
- multicol** The multicol package [272] defines the `multicols` environment (with a “s”) to typeset text on several columns. Used in some example documents.
- multitoc** This package [338] allows setting only the table of contents, list of figures and/or list of tables in two or more columns (using the multicol package [272], of course). The number of columns can be configured via commands; the `multicolumn toc(s)` can be selected via package options. The `mtc-3co.tex` example document uses this package; see section 4.3 on page 93.



M0001

N

- natbib** It is a \LaTeX 2_ε (but with some support for \LaTeX 2.09) package [126, 127] to act as generalized interface for standard and non-standard bibliographic style files (\BibTeX).
- needspace** The needspace package [385] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.
- NFSS** The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The \LaTeX 2_ε font selection system [245] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. \LaTeX 2_ε includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	L ^A T _E X extended text (“Cork”)
TS1	L ^A T _E X symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	L ^A T _E X text (Cyrillic)
T3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet
TS3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	L ^A T _E X text (African languages)
T5	L ^A T _E X text (Vietnamese)
T7	L ^A T _E X text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	T _E X text (as defined by Donald E. K _N UTH)
OT2	T _E X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	T _E X text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	T _E X text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	T _E X math italic (Donald E. K _N UTH)
OMS	T _E X math symbols (Donald E. K _N UTH)
OMX	T _E X math large symbols (Donald E. K _N UTH)
X2	L ^A T _E X extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some V _T E _X fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software
PD1	Implements the PDFDocEncoding for use with L ^A T _E X 2 _ε ’s NFSS.
PU	Implements the Unicode encoding for use with L ^A T _E X’s NFSS.

Every text font in L^AT_EX has five *attributes*:

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in L^AT_EX are K_NUTH’s “T_EX text” encoding (OT1), and the “T_EX text extended” encoding (T1) developed by the T_EX Users Group members during a T_EX Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [246, 270].

family The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For instance, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and K_NUTH’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

series How heavy or expanded a font is. For instance, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

shape The form of the letters within a font family. For instance, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

size The design size of the font, for instance “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by L^AT_EX. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6.

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for instance a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

Table 6.7: Most common font families

Family	Description
<code>cmr</code>	Computer Modern Roman
<code>cmss</code>	Computer Modern Sans
<code>cmtt</code>	Computer Modern Typewriter
<code>cmm</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic
<code>cmsy</code>	Computer Modern Math Symbols
<code>cmex</code>	Computer Modern Math Extensions
<code>ptm</code>	Adobe Times
<code>phv</code>	Adobe Helvetica
<code>pcr</code>	Adobe Courier

Table 6.8: Most common font series

Series	Description
<code>m</code>	Medium
<code>b</code>	Bold
<code>bx</code>	Bold extended
<code>sb</code>	Semi-bold
<code>c</code>	Condensed

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
<code>n</code>	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
<code>it</code>	Italic
<code>sl</code>	Slanted (or “oblique”)
<code>sc</code>	Caps and small caps

Table 6.10: The five font parameters of some fonts

\LaTeX specification	Font	\TeX name
OT1 <code>cmr</code> <code>m</code> <code>n</code> <code>10</code>	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	<code>cmr10</code>
OT1 <code>cmss</code> <code>m</code> <code>sl</code> <code>1pc</code>	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	<code>cmssi12</code>
OML <code>cmm</code> <code>m</code> <code>it</code> <code>10pt</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	<code>cmmi10</code>
T1 <code>ptm</code> <code>b</code> <code>it</code> <code>1in</code>	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	<code>ptmb8t at 1in</code>

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for instance `10pt` or `1.5in` or `3mm`; if no unit is specified, `pt` is assumed. These five parameters specify every \LaTeX font, see table 6.10, for instance.

These five parameters are displayed whenever \LaTeX gives an overfull box warning, for instance:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

Table 6.11: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
<code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code>	family	<code>cmr</code>
<code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code>	family	<code>cmss</code>
<code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code>	family	<code>cmtt</code>
<code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code>	series	<code>m</code>
<code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code>	series	<code>bx</code>
<code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>	shape	<code>n</code>
<code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>	shape	<code>it</code>
<code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>	shape	<code>sl</code>
<code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>	shape	<code>sc</code>
<code>\tiny</code>	size	<code>5pt</code>
<code>\scriptsize</code>	size	<code>7pt</code>
<code>\footnotesize</code>	size	<code>8pt</code>
<code>\small</code>	size	<code>9pt</code>
<code>\normalsize</code>	size	<code>10pt</code>
<code>\large</code>	size	<code>12pt</code>
<code>\Large</code>	size	<code>14.4pt</code>
<code>\LARGE</code>	size	<code>17.28pt</code>
<code>\huge</code>	size	<code>20.74pt</code>
<code>\Huge</code>	size	<code>24.88pt</code>

The table 6.11 lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes⁹.

nocheckfiles A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `checkfiles` package option (see above).

nohints A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `hints` package option (see above).

nolistfiles An option of the `minitoc` package. It is the opposite of the `listfiles` above. See section 1.7 on page 52.

notoccite This option of the `minitoc` package loads the `notoccite` package [11] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 52.

O

Omega The Omega typesetting system¹⁰ (Ω) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ that is aimed primarily at improving $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$'s multilingual abilities.

When the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald E. KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical

⁹ The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

¹⁰ Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [183, 184, 187, 315, 316]. See <http://omega.enstb.org/> for more information.

Table 6.12: Some systems derived from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$

$$\begin{array}{rcccl}
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Omega & + & \text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Lambda \\
 & & + & & & & + \\
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & + & \text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} \\
 \hline
 & & \aleph & + & \text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \beth
 \end{array}$$

texts in the english language. Since then $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ format (in the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “*Lambda*” (Λ). Extending Omega with the $\varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ [98] extensions is a separate project, known as “*Aleph*” (\aleph) [44, 170] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ for Aleph is known as “*Lamed*” (\beth). There is an experimental system, named $\text{LUA}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ [196], which will regroup $\text{PDF}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, Aleph, $\varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and other developments. A promising development is $\text{X}_{\text{Y}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ [213] by Jonathan KEW, with $\text{X}_{\text{Y}}\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$.

open A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately before (*open*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 137.

P

package Packages¹¹ are a very important feature of $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. These are extensions to the basic $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty` and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

¹¹This info is taken from [224, page 12–13] and adapted.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the \LaTeX basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the \LaTeX 3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- \mathcal{AMS} - \LaTeX packages, published by the American Mathematical Society¹², should be in any installation¹³.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard \LaTeX usage, but all are useful.

pagestyle A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

partlof A list of figures for a part.

partlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

partlot A list of tables for a part.

partlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

parttoc A table of contents for a part.

parttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the parttoCs.

PDF Portable Document Format [159]. A descendant of the PostScript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.

placeins The placeins package [12] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flafter` package (described in [242] and [277, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 30.

placeins.txt A plain text file containing the documentation of the placeins package [12].

PLATEX A version of \LaTeX customized for the polish (`polski`) language. See [299, 380]. But the *same* name refers also to a version of \LaTeX customized for the japanese language, $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ [202, 211].

pmk An example of shell script to prepare the minitoc package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 10 on page 246.

¹²<http://www.ams.org>

¹³They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

W0031
W0032
W0084
W0085



PostScript A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.

preamble In the main file of a \LaTeX source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.

preparation The preparation commands of the minitoc package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are (see table 3.9 on page 87):

<code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , <code>\dopartlot</code> ,	(part level)
<code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominilof</code> , <code>\dominilot</code> ,	(chapter level)
<code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , <code>\dosectlot</code> ,	(section level)
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	(all levels)

proc A standard \LaTeX document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the article document class; see above.

pseudo-chapter Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the minitoc package. See section 1.3.4 on page 34.

Q

quotchap The quotchap package [361] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2 ϵ document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.39 on page 75).

W0087

R

README is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

report A standard \LaTeX document class [236]. It has sectionning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

rmk An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 10 on page 246.

romannum The `romannum` package [398] changes the numbers (for sectioning commands) generated by \LaTeX from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [383]. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.40 on page 76).

W0088

rotating The `rotating` [322] package performs all the different sorts of rotation one might like, including complete figures.

rotfloat The `packrotfloat` [343] package provides commands to define new floats of various styles (`plain`, `boxed`, `ruled`, and userdefined ones); the `rotating` package [322] provides new environments (`sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable`) which are rotated by 90° or 270° . But what about new rotated floats, e.g. a rotated ruled one? This package makes this possible; it builds a bridge between both packages and extend the commands from the `float` package to define rotated versions of the new floats, too.

I0053

rubber `rubber` [30] is a wrapper for \LaTeX and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a \LaTeX source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B μ T ϵ X**, **makeindex**, **Metapost**, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by `minitoc`.

S

scrartcl See KOMA-Script above.

scrbook See KOMA-Script above.

scrreprt See KOMA-Script above.

sectioning commands These are the \LaTeX commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectioning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectioning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the `minitoc` package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the `minitoc` commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the `minitoc` commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the `minitoc` package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the `minitoc` commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 27. In non-standard document classes, sectioning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the `minitoc` package.

sectlof A list of figures for a section.

sectlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlofs`.

sectlot A list of tables for a section.

sectlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlots`.

- sectsty** The `sectsty` package [266] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard L^AT_EX 2_ε document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328] `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.28 on page 70). W0037
- secttoc** A table of contents for a section.
- secttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the `secttocs`.
- sfheaders** The `sfheaders` package [256] (for L^AT_EX 2_ε) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.41 on page 76). W0089
- shell** In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).
- shorttext** An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 58. W0020
- shorttoc** The `shorttoc` package [133] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.
- SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [250, 251].
- S_LA_TE_X** A version of L^AT_EX customized for the swedish language. See [265].
- splitbib** A L^AT_EX package [263] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...
- stdclsdv** The `stdclsdv` package [383] is intended to be used by the authors of L^AT_EX packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.
- strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.
- subfig** The `subfig` package [118] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single `figure` or `table` environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.

subfigure The subfigure package [116] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [118].

suffix See “extension” above.

T

TDS The T_EX Directory Structure [364, 365]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent T_EX system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the T_EX files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.

T_EX T_EX is a computer program created by Donald E. KNUTH [219, 221]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the T_EX typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T_EX as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T_EX is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T_EX is converging to π and is now at 3.141592.

T_EX is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T_EX becomes TeX.

thailatex The thailatex package [267] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the GJK system [250, 251].

tight An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is loose.

titlesec The titlesec package [42] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.

titletoc The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.

The titletoc.sty file is not part of the titlesec package; it’s an independent package, but it’s described in the titlesec package documentation [42].

tmk A script file which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [364, 365] (to be adjusted to your system).

TOC, ToC Acronym for “table of contents”.



tocbibind The tocbibind package [389] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 50.

I0046

tocdepth This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.

tocloft The tocloft package [386] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 64 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.

I0047

TODO is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.

token A token¹⁴ is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “cat-code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T_EX’s tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T_EX to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For instance, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{₁’ already inside token lists of T_EX would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{₁₂’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. T_EX’s digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.



trivfloat The trivfloat package [401] (by Joseph A. WRIGHT) provides a quick method for defining new float types in L^AT_EX. A single command sets up a new float in the same style as the L^AT_EX kernel figure and table float types.

I0053

txfonts The txfonts package [332] provides the TX fonts, which consist of

1. virtual text roman fonts using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with some modified and additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
2. virtual text sans serif fonts using Adobe Helvetica (or URW NimbusSanL) with additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
3. monospaced typewriter fonts in the OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
4. math alphabets using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with modified metrics;

¹⁴This definition is taken from “The T_EXbook” [219, 221].

5. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of Computer Modern math fonts (CMSY, CMMI, CMEX, and Greek letters of CMR);
6. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of AmS fonts (MSAM and MSBM);
7. additional math fonts of various symbols.

All fonts are in the Type 1 format (in `.afm` and `.pfb` files). Necessary `.tfm` and `.vf` files together with \LaTeX 2_ϵ package files and font map files (`.map`) for dvips are provided.

U

UNIX A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the minitoc point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).

UNIX-like Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.

urlbst A PERL script, by Norman GRAY [167], to add a webpage \BibTeX entry type, and add support for general `url` and `lastchecked` fields, to (most) \BibTeX `.bst` files. Optionally adds basic support for `eprint` and `doi` fields, and \HyperTeX /`hyperref` support, too. See [313, 323].

UTF 8 UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with \TeX . See table 6.2 on page 211.

V

varsects The `varsects` package [357] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard \LaTeX 2_ϵ document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.33 on page 73).

W0038

W

wrapfig The `wrapfig` package [15] provides the `wrapfigure` and `wraptable` environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.



- xmk** An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.
- xr** The `xr` package [103] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David P. CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the `minitoc` package to implement the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc`). If you use also the `hyperref` package [323], use `xr-hyper` [106] in place of the `xr` package.

Chapter 7

Installation

Tables

7.1	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), first part	242
7.2	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), second part	243
7.3	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files	244

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #56).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.1`. See tables 7.1 on the next page and 7.2 on page 243. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.

- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself¹.

The table 1.7 on page 39 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a `language.mld` file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where \LaTeX 2_ϵ finds the `.sty` files.

- (2) Informative text files:

¹ The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the `minitoc` package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0034

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.l), first part

class (0) : -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx class (1) : -minitoc.sty -mtcoff.sty -mtcmess.sty -mtcpatchmem.sty -acadian.mld -acadien.mld -afrikaan.mld -afrikaans.mld -albanian.mld -american.mld -arab.mld -arab2.mld -arabi.mld -arabic.mld -armenian.mld -australian.mld -austrian.mld -bahasa.mld -bahasai.mld -bahasam.mld -bangla.mld -basque.mld -bengali.mld -bicig.mld -bicig2.mld -bicig3.mld -bithe.mld -brazil.mld -brazilian.mld -breton.mld -british.mld -bulgarian.mld -bulgarianb.mld -buryat.mld -buryat2.mld -canadian.mld -canadien.mld -castillan.mld -castillian.mld -catalan.mld -chinese1.ml[d o] -chinese2.ml[d o] -croatian.mld -czech.mld -danish.mld -devanagari.mld -dutch.mld -english.mld -english1.mld -english2.mld	-esperant.mld -esperanto.mld -estonian.mld -ethiopia.mld -ethiopian.mld -ethiopian2.mld -farsi1.ml[d o] -farsi2.ml[d o] -farsi3.mld -finnish.mld -finnish2.mld -francais.mld -french.mld -french1.mld -french2.mld -frenchb.mld -frenchle.mld -frenchpro.mld -galician.mld -german.mld -germanb.mld -germanb2.mld -greek.mld -greek-mono.mld -greek-polydemo.mld -greek-polykatha.mld -guarani.mld -hangul1.ml[d o] -hangul2.ml[d o] -hangul3.ml[d o] -hangul4.ml[d o] -hangul-u8.ml[d o] -hanja1.ml[d o] -hanja2.ml[d o] -hanja-u8.ml[d o] -hebrew.mld -hebrew2.mld -hindi.mld -hindi-modern.mld -hungarian.mld -icelandic.mld -indon.mld -indonesian.mld -interlingua.mld -irish.mld -italian.mld -italian2.mld -japanese.ml[d o] -japanese2.ml[d o] -japanese3.ml[d o] -japanese4.ml[d o] -japanese5.ml[d o] -japanese6.ml[d o] -kannada.mld -khalkha.mld -latin.mld	-latin2.mld -latinc.mld -latinc2.mld -latvian.mld -latvian2.mld -letton.mld -letton2.mld -lithuanian.mld -lithuanian2.mld -lowersorbian.mld -lsorbian.mld -magyar.mld -magyar2.mld -magyar3.mld -malay.mld -malayalam-b.mld -malayalam-keli.mld -malayalam-keli2.mld -malayalam-mr.mld -malayalam-omega.ml[d o] -malayalam-rachana.mld -malayalam-rachana2.mld -malayalam-rachana3.mld -manju.mld -meyalu.mld -mongol.mld -mongolb.mld -mongolian.mld -naustrian.mld -newzealand.mld -ngerman.mld -ngermanb.mld -ngermanb2.mld -norsk.mld -norsk2.mld -nynorsk.mld -nynorsk2.mld -polish.mld -polish2.mld -polski.mld -portuges.mld -portuguese.mld -romanian.mld -romanian2.mld -romanian3.mld -russian.mld -russianb.mld -russianc.mld -russian2m.mld -russian2o.mld -russian-cca.ml[d o] -russian-cca1.ml[d o] -russian-lh.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o]	-samin.mld -scottish.mld -serbian.mld -serbianc.mld -slovak.mld -slovene.mld -spanish.mld -spanish2.mld -spanish3.mld -spanish4.mld -swahili.mld -swedish.mld -swedish2.mld -thai.ml[d o] -turkish.mld -uighur.mld -uighur2.mld -uighur3.mld -UKenglish.mld -ukraineb.mld -ukrainian.mld -uppersorbian.mld -USenglish.mld -usorbian.mld -vietnam.mld -vietnamese.mld -welsh.mld -xalx.mld -xalx2.mld -xalx3.mld class (2) : -INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG -minitoc.l class (3) : -mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfx.tex
---	--	--	---

See continuation in table 7.2 on the next page.

Table 7.2: List of files (minitoc.l), second part

class (4) : -minitoc.bug -minitoc.sum class (5) : -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -minitoc.bib -minitoc.ist -minitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -en-mtc.bst class (6) : -acadien.pdf -afrsud-l.pdf -afrsud-p.pdf -albania.pdf -alba-eth.pdf -allemand.jpg -anglo.png -arabic.png -armeniar.jpg -baltes.pdf -bangla.pdf -bangla2.pdf -basquel.pdf -basque2.pdf -belgique.pdf -bosnia.pdf -brazil.pdf -brazilp.pdf -bretagne.pdf -bulgariar.jpg -bulgmap.png -buryatia.pdf -buryatia-l.pdf -canada.pdf -canada-l.pdf -canada-pe.png -canada-pf.pdf -canada1.pdf -catalan-d.pdf	-catalan-p.pdf -caucasus.pdf -chine1.pdf -chine2.pdf -croatie1.pdf -croatie2.pdf -cz1.pdf -cz3.png -danemark.jpg -ecosse1.pdf -ecosse2.pdf -ecosse3.pdf -espa-l.pdf -estonia-a.pdf -estonia-b.pdf -ethiolang.png -ethiopia.pdf -ethiopia-p.pdf -farsi.pdf -farsi-logo.png -feroe.jpg -finlande1.png -finlande2.pdf -finnishd.pdf -franco.png -fswahili.pdf -galicia-m.pdf -galicia-mp.pdf -galles1.pdf -galles2.pdf -grece1.pdf -grece2.pdf -greekm.jpg -hangul.png -hanja.png -hispano.png -hum-lang.png -hun1.png -hun2.jpg -inde1.pdf -inde2.jpg -indonesia1.pdf	-indonesia2.pdf -iranian.jpg -irish.png -irlande.pdf -islande.png -islandep.jpg -isrl.pdf -isr2.pdf -italian.pdf -italo1.png -japon1.pdf -japon2.jpg -karnataka.jpg -kerala.jpg -khalkha.pdf -korean1.png -korean2.jpg -lamed.pdf -lamed.tex -lettonie.pdf -lituanie.png -luso.jpg -malaysia1.pdf -malaysia2.pdf -malayalam.pdf -mondep.png -mongasie.pdf -mongolcy.png -mongolian.pdf -mongoltr.png -neder.pdf -norvege-c.pdf -norvege-t.pdf -paraguay.png -paraguayp.pdf -pologne.pdf -portugal.pdf -romanian.pdf -russian.png -russianlan.png -same.png -serbia1.pdf	-slovakia.pdf -slovenie.pdf -sorabe-1.jpg -sorabe-2.jpg -sorbian.jpg -spain.pdf -suede-a.pdf -suede-f.pdf -svenska.png -swahili.pdf -sweden.pdf -thai.pdf -turquie.pdf -uighur.pdf -ukraine.jpg -ukraine.pdf -ukraine.pdf -viet2.pdf -viet3.pdf -xinjiang.png -xinjiangc.png class (7) : -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx -fminitoc.bib -fminitoc.ist -fminitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty -fr-mtc.bst class (8) : -minitoc.pdf class (9) : -fminitoc.pdf class (10) : -cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk class (11) : -minitoc-tds.zip
---	--	--	---

- **INSTALL** is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).
- **minitoc.l** contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See tables 7.1 on the page before and 7.2.
- **README** is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
- **CATALOG** contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
- **TODO** lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.

Table 7.3: A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files

TDS Root Directory						
bibtex/		doc/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	(D)	(E)	minitoc/	minitoc/
(A)	(B)	(C)			(F)	(G)
		examples/	images/			
		(H)	(I)			

(A) fminitoc.bib, minitoc.bib;	
(B) en-mtc.bst, fr-mtc.bst;	
(C) INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG, fminitoc.lan, fminitoc.pdf, minitoc.bug, minitoc.l, minitoc.lan, minitoc.pdf, minitoc.pre, minitoc.sum, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty;	
(D) fminitoc.ist, minitoc.ist;	
(E) cmk, emk, fmk, ink, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk;	
(F) fminitoc.dtx, minitoc.dtx, minitoc.ins;	
(G) minitoc.sty, mtccoeff.sty, mtcmess.sty, mtcpatchmem.sty, *.mld, *.mlo;	
(H) mtc-2c.pdf, mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.pdf, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.pdf, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.pdf, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.pdf, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.pdf, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.pdf, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.pdf, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.pdf, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.pdf, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.pdf, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.pdf, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.pdf, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.pdf, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.pdf, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.pdf, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.pdf, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.pdf, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.pdf, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.pdf, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.pdf, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.pdf, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.pdf, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.pdf, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.pdf, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.pdf, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.pdf, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.pdf, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.pdf, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.pdf, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.pdf, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.pdf, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.pdf, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.pdf, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfc.pdf, mtc-tsfc.tex;	
(I) acadien.pdf, afrsud-1.pdf, afrsud-p.pdf, albania.pdf, alba-eth.pdf, allemand.jpg, anglo.png, arabic.png, armeniar.jpg, baltes.pdf, bangla.pdf, bangla2.pdf, basque1.pdf, basque2.pdf, belgique.pdf,	bosnia.pdf, brazil.pdf, brazilp.pdf, bretagne.pdf, bulgariar.jpg, bulgmap.png, buryatia-1.pdf, buryatia.pdf, canada.pdf, canada-1.pdf, canada-pe.png, canada-pf.pdf, canadal.pdf, catalan-d.pdf, catalan-p.pdf, caucasus.pdf, chine1.pdf, chine2.pdf, croatie1.pdf, croatie2.pdf, cz1.pdf, cz3.png, danemark.jpg, ecosse1.pdf, ecosse2.pdf, ecosse3.pdf, espa-1.pdf, estonia-a.pdf, estonia-b.pdf, ethiolang.png, ethiopia.pdf, ethiopia-p.pdf, farsi.pdf, farsi-logo.png, ferroe.jpg, finlandel.pdf, finlande2.pdf, finnishd.pdf, franco.png, fswahili.pdf, galicia-m.pdf, galicia-mp.pdf, galles1.pdf, galles2.pdf, grece1.pdf, grece2.pdf, greekm.jpg, hangul.png, hanja.png, hispano.png, hum-lang.png, hun1.png, hun2.jpg, inde1.pdf, inde2.jpg, indonesial.pdf, indonesia2.pdf, iranian.jpg, irish.png, irlande.pdf, islande.png, islandep.jpg, isr1.pdf, isr2.pdf, italian.pdf, italo1.png, japon1.pdf, japon2.jpg, karnataka.jpg, kerala.jpg, khalkha.pdf, korean1.png, korean2.jpg, lamed.pdf, lamed.tex, lettonie.pdf, lituanie.png, luso.jpg, malaysial.pdf, malaysia2.pdf, malayalam.pdf, mondep.png, mongasie.pdf, mongolcy.png, mongolian.pdf, mongoltr.png, neder.pdf, norvege-c.pdf, norvege-t.pdf, paraguay.png, paraguapp.pdf, pologne.pdf, portugal.pdf, romanian.pdf, russian.png, russianlan.png, same.png, serbia1.pdf, slovakia.pdf, slovenie.pdf, sorabe-1.jpg, sorabe-2.jpg, sorbian.jpg, spain.pdf, suede-a.pdf, suede-f.pdf, svenska.png, swahili.pdf, sweden.pdf, thai.pdf, turquie.pdf, uighur.pdf, ukraine.jpg, ukrainep.pdf, viet2.pdf, viet3.pdf, xinjiang.png, xinjiangc.png.

- (3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-3co.tex`, `mtc-add.bib`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fko.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mml.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-nom.tex`, `mtc-ocf.tex`, `mtc-ofs.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tlo.tex`, `mtc-tsfc.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated `.pdf` files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.
- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 56) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 80).
- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english. `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.
- (6) `acadien.pdf`, `afrsud-1.pdf`, `afrsud-p.pdf`, `albania.pdf`, `alba-eth.pdf`, `allemand.jpg`, `anglo.png`, `arabic.png`, `armeniar.jpg`, `baltes.pdf`, `bangla.pdf`, `bangla2.pdf`, `basque1.pdf`, `basque2.pdf`, `belgique.pdf`, `bosnia.pdf`, `brazil.pdf`, `brazilp.pdf`, `bretagne.pdf`, `bulgariar.jpg`, `bulgmap.png`, `buryatia-1.pdf`, `buryatia.pdf`, `canada.pdf`, `canada-1.pdf`, `canada-pe.png`, `canada-pf.pdf`, `canada1.pdf`, `catalan-d.pdf`, `catalan-p.pdf`, `caucasus.pdf`, `chine1.pdf`, `chine2.pdf`, `croatie1.pdf`, `croatie2.pdf`, `cz1.pdf`, `cz3.png`, `danemark.jpg`, `ecosse1.pdf`, `ecosse2.pdf`, `ecosse3.pdf`, `espa-1.pdf`, `estonia-a.pdf`, `estonia-b.pdf`, `ethiolang.png`, `ethiopia.pdf`, `ethiopia-p.pdf`, `farsi.pdf`, `farsi-logo.png`, `feroe.jpg`, `finlande1.png`, `finlande2.pdf`, `finnishd.pdf`, `franco.png`, `fswahili.pdf`, `galicia-m.pdf`, `galicia-mp.pdf`, `galles1.pdf`, `galles2.pdf`, `grece1.pdf`, `grece2.pdf`, `greekm.jpg`, `hangul.png`, `hanja.png`, `hispano.png`, `hum-lang.png`, `hun1.png`, `hun2.jpg`, `inde1.pdf`, `inde2.jpg`, `indonesia1.pdf`, `indonesia2.pdf`, `iranian.jpg`, `irish.png`, `irlande.pdf`, `islande.png`, `islande1.jpg`, `isr1.pdf`, `isr2.pdf`, `italian.pdf`, `italo1.png`, `japon1.pdf`, `japon2.jpg`, `karnataka.jpg`, `kerala.jpg`, `khalkha.pdf`, `korean1.png`, `korean2.jpg`, `lamed.pdf`, `lamed.tex` (`lamed.tex` is the source code²), `lettonie.pdf`, `lituanie.png`, `luso.jpg`, `malaysia1.pdf`, `malaysia2.pdf`, `malayalam.pdf`, `mondep.png`, `mongasie.pdf`, `mongolcy.png`, `mongolian.pdf`, `mongoltr.png`, `neder.pdf`, `norvege-c.pdf`, `norvege-t.pdf`, `paraguay.png`, `paraguayp.pdf`, `pologne.pdf`, `portugal.pdf`, `romanian.pdf`, `russian.png`, `russianlan.png`, `same.png`, `serbia1.pdf`, `slovakia.pdf`, `slovenie.pdf`, `sorabe-1.jpg`, `sorabe-2.jpg`, `sorbian.jpg`, `spain.pdf`, `suede-a.pdf`, `suede-f.pdf`, `svenska.png`, `swahili.pdf`, `sweden.pdf`, `thai.pdf`, `turquie.pdf`, `uighur.pdf`, `ukraine.jpg`, `ukraine1.pdf`, `viet2.pdf`, `viet3.pdf`, `xinjiang.png`, `xinjiangc.png`, are images to include.

² Compiling `lamed.tex` requires a specific hebrew font and a specific package (both obsolete), plus a conversion into PDF (or EPS); hence I prefer to provide also the graphic files.

- (7) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french³.
- (8) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (9) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.
- (10) `pmk` is a shell script⁴ to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’.imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’.tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts⁵ and a supplementary one, `cmk` (all to be adapted):
 - `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’.imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;
 - `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
 - `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
 - `tmk`, which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [364, 365] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.3 on page 244; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc-tds.zip`;
 - `cmk`, which converts the PDF documentation files into PostScript files.

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but the `cmk` script can prepare it from the documentation in PDF formate (recto-verso printing).

- (11) `minitoc-tds.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the `minitoc` package.

³ This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the file `minitoc.dtx`, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more any `fminitoc.ins` file.

⁴ You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

⁵ In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk` (but *not* `cmk`).

Some remarks about the `rmk`, `tmk` and `pmk` scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with `rmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files;
3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.sty` files;
4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7) and (10) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
5. the files of (8) and (9) must be installed as on-line documentation;
6. the directories created by the `rmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`rmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory.

- **with `tmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
3. the installation is much easier: you only need a `.zip` or a `.tar` (or `.tgz`) dump file⁶ of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the `tmk` script before using it;
4. the directories created by the `tmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
5. the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (11) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.



- **with `pmk`:**

1. the `pmk` script performs the actions of `imk` (preparation of the basic files), `emk` and `fmk` (preparation of the english and french documentation), `xmk` (preparation of the examples of documents), `rmk` and `tmk` (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
2. the directories created by the `pmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`rmk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’`.`tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
3. the *same precautions* as for `tmk` are needed.



The file `minitoc-tds.zip` contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the `minitoc` package. It has been prepared by the `pmk` or `tmk` scripts.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using `minitoc` with `hyperref`. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

⁶ The `tmk` script creates the `minitoc-tds.zip` file.

Chapter 8

Postface

Contents

8.1	The origins	248	8.9	Developments in 2000	250
8.2	New design in 1993	249	8.10	Developments in 2001	251
8.3	Developments in 1994	249	8.11	Developments in 2002	251
8.4	No developments in 1995	249	8.12	Developments in 2003	251
8.5	Developments in 1996	250	8.13	Developments in 2004	251
8.6	Developments in 1997	250	8.14	Developments in 2005	252
8.7	Developments in 1998	250	8.15	Developments in 2006	254
8.8	Developments in 1999	250	8.16	Developments in 2007	254

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page 639. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: minitoc used a `\newwrite`

command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under \LaTeX (in fact, by the underlying \TeX program itself). As some descriptors are already used by \LaTeX , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (minitocoff at this time) package and a rewrite of `minitoc` to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the forming of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, replacing the ageing $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$, some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *mini-toc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [48, 49], by Johannes L. BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, which avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

8.5 Developments in 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed `mtcoff` to keep its name short.

8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` commande is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [323], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS [372].

Some corrections about the starred sectionning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectionning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [389] is documented.

I0046

Aliases for some languages are added.

8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [12] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [396, 397, 399].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [11].

8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the `.mld` files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [388].

I0042

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the \mathcal{AMS} classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [387].

I0040

The `minitoc` package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (`sectsty` package [266], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

I0043

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [223, 288, 328] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class [396, 397, 399].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the `minitoc` auxiliary files, which can be removed after the \LaTeX compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir` used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [357].

W0038

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

I0043

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [167]).

Added the `mtcmess` package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

8.16 Developments in 2007

Removed the preparation of documentation in PostScript format.

Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format to PostScript format.

Added hints about the `fncychap` [254], `quotchap` [361], `romannum` [398], `sfheaders` [256], `aliumsec` [228], and `captcont` [117] packages.

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 90.

W0086

W0087

W0088

W0089

W0090

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`.

Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package [210].

W0092

Added (in the `memento`) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.

Added the `tnk` script and a table describing a TDS-compliant structure for `minitoc`.

Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

Added the file `minitoc-tds.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS-compliant hierarchy.

Indexing referenced commands (begin).

Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.

Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new T2 and X2 cyrillic encodings in `mongolb.mld`).

Added the `mtc-3co.tex` example file.

Added `mongolian.mld` (loads `mongolb.mld`).

Improved the layout of the index.

Indexing the names of authors.

Added the `mtc-fko.tex` example file.

Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.

Features in the index.

Added the “open” and “close” features.

Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.

Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.

Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.

Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and `siblings`, using `\mtc@toks`.

Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.

Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.

Added internal hyperlinks for messages.

Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.

Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.

Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.

Added flagging of macros in example files.

Added a clickable table of all messages.

Added a local `minitoc` in the “Jargon” chapter.

Added `lithuanian2.mld`.

Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.

Added a hint (warning `W0097`) about the `flowfram` [353, 354] package (incompatible).

W0097

Added a *hint* (`I0053`) about the `float` [255], `floatrow` [239], `trivfloat` [401], and `rotrfloat` [343] packages.

I0053

Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.

Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.

Changed the color of hyperlinks.

Revised the format of headers.

Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

Added `swahili.mld`.

Added stuff (files) for maps of areas of some languages.

Added the `bengali` language synonym of `bangla`.

Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 on page 242 and 7.2 on page 243).

Replaced the `.mtc1` extension by `.mtc0` in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing `\jobname.mtc1` file).

Corrected a problem with `\nofiles` (Andreas DEININGER).

The acknowledgements are moved to the “Complements” part.

Added a hint (warning W0099) about the `titlesec` [42] package.

W0099

Complete indexing of the messages.

Updated `lithuanian2.mld`.

Using the `chnpage` package [384] to make increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.

Renamed `\if@longextensions@` as `\if@mtc@longext@`.

Updated `czech.mld`.

Removed `\l@xsection`.

Graphic files are indexed separately.

Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.

Updated `galician.mld`, `lsorbian.mld`, `ukraineb.mld`, and `usorbian.mld`.

Added `malayalam-b.mld`, `malayalam-keli2.mld`, `malayalam-mr.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana3.mld`.

Updated `malayalam-omega.mlo`.

Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

Part II

Implementation

Contents of the Second Part

9	Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package	260
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	441
11	Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package	457
12	Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	458
13	Language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	460

Chapter 9

Commented code of the minitoc package

Contents

9.1	Introduction	264
9.2	Identification code	264
9.3	A file descriptor to write	264
9.4	Indentation and skip	265
9.5	Tests and flags	266
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	266
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	267
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	267
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats	268
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables	268
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	268
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used	269
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	270
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	271
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	271
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	272
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	272
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	272
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	272
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	273
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	274
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded	275

9.9.15	Check if the floatrow package is loaded	275
9.9.16	Check if the trivfloat package is loaded	276
9.9.17	Check if the rotfloating package is loaded	276
9.10	Is the memoir class loaded?	276
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	277
9.12	Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters	278
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	279
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	279
9.15	Section level macros	280
9.16	Corrections for numbering	280
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	280
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	281
9.19	Chapter level macros	281
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	281
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	282
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	282
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	283
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	284
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	285
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	285
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	288
9.28	Fake tables of contents	290
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	291
9.30	Chapter level commands	291
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	292
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	294
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	294
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	295
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code>, <code>\minilof</code>, and <code>\minilot</code> commands	295
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	295
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	298
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	302
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	305
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	305
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	306
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	306
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	307
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	310
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	314
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	315
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	317
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	317
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	320
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	321
9.45	Part level commands	321
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	322
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	323
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	324
9.49	The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code>, <code>\partlof</code>, and <code>\partlot</code>	325
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	325
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	328
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	331
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	334

9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	334
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	334
9.52.1	Processing macros for the <code>parttoes</code>	337
9.52.2	Processing macros for the <code>partlofs</code>	340
9.52.3	Processing macros for the <code>partlots</code>	343
9.53	Depth counters for <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code>	345
9.54	Section-level commands	345
9.55	Fonts commands for <code>secttoes</code> and <code>co.</code>	346
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	346
9.57	The <code>stc@verse</code> environment	347
9.58	The <code>\secttoc</code>, <code>\sectlof</code>, and <code>\sectlot</code> commands	347
9.58.1	The <code>\secttoc</code> command	347
9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command	350
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command	353
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	355
9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	356
9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	357
9.62	End of section-level commands	367
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	367
9.64	Use with <code>\nofiles</code>	368
9.65	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	369
9.66	The horizontal rules and their default values	369
9.67	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	370
9.67.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	370
9.67.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	372
9.67.3	The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	376
9.67.4	The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	378
9.67.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	379
9.67.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	383
9.67.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	386
9.67.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	388
9.67.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	390
9.67.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	392
9.68	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	393
9.69	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	395
9.70	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	397
9.71	Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC	398
9.72	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	399
9.73	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	400
9.74	The “coffee breaks”	400
9.75	Initialization of counters	401
9.76	Declarations for simple options	401
9.76.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	401
9.76.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	401
9.76.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	402
9.76.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	402
9.76.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	402
9.77	The <code>insection</code> option	402
9.78	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	403
9.79	Language options	403
9.80	The <code>hints</code> option	408
9.80.1	First part: <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	408
9.80.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	408
9.80.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	409

9.80.1.3	Hint about the tocibind package	409
9.80.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	409
9.80.1.5	Hint about the tocloft package	410
9.80.1.6	Hint about the titlesec package	410
9.80.1.7	Hint about the titletoc package	411
9.80.1.8	Hint about the placeins package	411
9.80.1.9	Hint about the memoir class	412
9.80.1.10	Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes	413
9.80.1.11	Hint about the amsbook class	413
9.80.1.12	Hint about the abstract package	413
9.80.1.13	Hint about the jura class	414
9.80.1.14	Hint about the flowfram package	414
9.80.1.15	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	414
9.80.1.15.1	Alteration of \part	415
9.80.1.15.2	Alteration of \chapter	415
9.80.1.15.3	Alteration of \section	416
9.80.1.16	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands	416
9.80.2	Final part: \mtc@hints@enddoc	417
9.80.2.1	Hint about \sect-lof lot and the insection option	417
9.80.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	418
9.80.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	420
9.80.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	422
9.80.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	424
9.80.2.6	Final part of the hint about the sectsty package	425
9.80.2.7	Final part of the hint about the varsects package	425
9.80.2.8	Final part of the hint about the fncychap package	426
9.80.2.9	Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package	426
9.80.2.10	Final part of the hint about the quotchap package	427
9.80.2.11	Final part of the hint about the romannum package	427
9.80.2.12	Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package	427
9.80.2.13	Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package	428
9.80.2.14	Final part of the hint about the captcont package	428
9.80.2.15	Final part of the hint about the caption package	428
9.80.2.16	Final part of the hint about the caption2 package	429
9.80.2.17	Final part of the hint about the ccaption package	429
9.80.2.18	Final part of the hint about the mcaption package	429
9.80.2.19	Final part of the hint about the float package	430
9.80.2.20	Final part of the hint about the floatrow package	430
9.80.2.21	Final part of the hint about the trivfloat package	430
9.80.2.22	Final part of the hint about the rotfloat package	431
9.80.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	431
9.80.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used	433
9.80.2.25	Check if some hints have been written	434
9.81	Processing of options	434
9.81.1	Processing the insection option	435
9.81.2	Processing the notoccite option	436
9.81.3	Processing the listfiles option	436
9.81.4	Processing the hints option	437
9.81.5	Saving the sectionning commands	437
9.82	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	438
9.83	The fmini.toc.dtx file	439

9.1 Introduction

This very long chapter presents the code of the minitoc package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file¹ are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
2486 <*minitoc>
```

<pre>\NeedsTeXFormat \ProvidesPackage \mtcPackageInfo \RequirePackage</pre>	<pre>This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is written in the <i>document.log</i> file. This package will not work with L^AT_EX2.09. 2487 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]% 2488 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}% 2489 [2007/12/04 v56 Package minitoc (JPFD)] % message I0000 2490 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14] 2491 \mtcPackageInfo[I0001]{minitoc}% 2492 {*** minitoc package, version 56 ***\@gobble}</pre>	<pre>I0000 I0001</pre>
---	--	------------------------

9.3 A file descriptor to write

<pre>\tf@mtc \newwrite</pre>	<pre>A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is \tf@mtc. The minitoc package uses only one file descriptor for writing. See section 9.23 on page 283.</pre>
------------------------------	---

```
2493 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

¹ The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

9.4 Indentation and skip

```

\mtcindent We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
\mtcskip   \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount (default:
\mtcskipamount \bigskipamount).
\parskip
\addvspace 2494 \newlength\mtcindent
           2495 \newskip\mtcskipamount
           2496 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
           2497 \def\mtcskip{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}

```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
\mtcgapafterheads
           2498 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
           2499 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

```

\@ifundefined We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The
\kernafterparttoc names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via
\kernafterpartlof \renewcommand.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 2500 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 2501 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 2502 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 2503 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 2504 }%
\kernafterminilot 2505 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
                2506 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
                2507 {%
                2508 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2509 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2510 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2511 }%
                2512 }%
                2513 {%
                2514 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                2515 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
                2516 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
                2517 }%

```

```

\@ifundefined We defines horizontal offets by which the margins in the mini-tables are corrected (added to
\ptcoffset the right margin and subtracted from the left margin). These are commands, not lengths2, to
\pfloffset be redefined by \renewcommand.
\pltoffset
\mtcoffset 2518 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\mlfoffset 2519 \def\ptcoffset{0pt}%
\mltoffset 2520 \def\plfoffset{0pt}%
\sltoffset 2521 \def\pltoffset{0pt}%
\sfloffset 2522 }%
\sltoffset 2523 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2524 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
2525 }%
2526 \def\stcoffset{0pt}%
2527 \def\slfoffset{0pt}%
2528 \def\sltoffset{0pt}%
2529 }%
2530 }%
2531 }%
2532 \def\mtcoffset{0pt}%
2533 \def\mlfoffset{0pt}%
2534 \def\mltoffset{0pt}%
2535 }%

```

9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags³ (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.80 on page 408) or to allow the definition of some minitoc commands).

9.5.1 Flags for the hints option

```

\if@mtc@hints@ But first, we define some flags for the hints option:
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `document.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `document.log` file.

² We avoid to allocate a precious length register.

³ Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native T_EX engine (much more with ϵ -T_EX [98], but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure and debug than a code programmed with counters, IMHO.

```

2536 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
2537 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
2538 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false

```

9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```

\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 2539 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false

```

9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is a
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ recent enough version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc).
\if@mtc@memoirnew@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 2540 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 2541 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
2542 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
2543 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
2544 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ We do the same for some caption-related packages:
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 2545 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 2546 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2547 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 2548 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2549 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 2550 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2551 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ 2552 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
2553 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
2554 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ And the varsects package and other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2555 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 2556 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2557 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2558 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2559 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 2560 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
2561 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
2562 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ And yet other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 2563 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 2564 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2565 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2566 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
2567 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
2568 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false

```

9.5.4 Flags for packages dealing with floats

```

\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ We must warn about a limitation with the float [255], floatrow [239], trivfloat [401], and
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ rotfloat [343] packages.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ 2569 \newif\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ \@mtc@floatLoaded@false
2570 \newif\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@false
2571 \newif\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@false
2572 \newif\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@false

```

9.5.5 Insertion of empty mini-tables

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2573 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2574 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2575 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2576 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2577 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2578 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2579 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
2580 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
2581 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

9.5.6 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ The part counter:

2582 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
2583 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```


`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` The chapter counter:

```
2584 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
2585 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}
```

`\if@mtc@section@def@` The section counter:

```
2586 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
2587 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}
```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The part counter:

```
2588 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
2589 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```
2590 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
2591 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
2592 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
2593 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

9.5.7 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.80 on page 408).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

`\if@partlof@used@`

`\if@partlot@used@` 2594 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false

`\if@doparttoc@used@` 2595 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false

`\if@dopartlof@used@` 2596 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false

`\if@dopartlot@used@` 2597 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false

2598 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false

2599 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false

```

\if@minitoc@used@   For the chapter level:
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 2600 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 2601 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 2602 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 2603 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
2604 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
2605 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false

```

```

\if@secttoc@used@   For the section level:
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 2606 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2607 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2608 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2609 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
2610 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
2611 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false

```

```

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 2612 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
2613 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
2614 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

9.5.8 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one. So we define a specific flag:

```
2615 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

2616 \AtBeginDocument{%
2617   \ifmtcsecondpart
2618     \global\mtcsecondparttrue
2619   \else
2620     \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
2621   \fi}

```

```

\AtEndDocument   At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:
\ifmtcsecondpart
  \@mainaux 2622 \AtEndDocument{%
            2623 \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
            2624 \mtcsecondparttrue
            2625 \else
            2626 \mtcsecondpartfalse
            2627 \fi
            2628 \if@files
            2629 \ifmtcsecondpart
            2630 \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2631 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
            2632 \else
            2633 \immediate\write\@mainaux
            2634 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
            2635 \fi
            2636 \fi}

```

So we need two \LaTeX runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.61 on page 510) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 92.

9.6 Preparation for the notoccite option

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command
\if@mtc@notoccite@ (redefinable command) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile, used by this option (this has been
                    requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [11]). See section 1.6 on page 52.

```

```

2637 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
2638 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
2639 {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}

```

9.7 Preparation for the tight and k-tight options

```

\iftightmtc We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and
\ifktightmtc k-loose options):

```

```

2640 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
2641 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse

```

9.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the hyperref package [323]. A flag is defined, then
`\if@mtc@hyper@used@` this preparation is performed in an `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This
`\@ifpackageloaded` action defines some commands for the hyperref package.

I0005

```

2642 \mtcPackageInfo[I0005]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
2643 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
2644 \AtBeginDocument{%
2645   \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
2646     \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
2647     \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
2648     \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
2649     \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
2650     \let\toclevel@starpert\toclevel@part
2651     \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
2652     \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
2653     \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
2654     \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
2655     \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
2656     \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
2657   }{}%

```

9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

9.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the sectsty package [266] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@` minitoc is loaded and also in an `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been
`\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@` loaded. See section 9.80.2.6 on page 425.
`\@ifpackageloaded`

```

2658 \@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}%
2659 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

`\@ifpackageloaded` We must test if the varsects package [357] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
`\AtBeginDocument` when minitoc is loaded and also in an `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@` been loaded. See section 9.80.2.7 on page 425.
`\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@`

```

2660 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
2661 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the fncychap package [254] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.8 on page 426.
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@

2662 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}%
2663 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the hangcaption package [210] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.80.2.9 on page 426.
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@

2664 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}%
2665 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the quotchap package [361] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.10 on page 427.
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

2666 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}%
2667 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [398] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.11 on page 427.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

2668 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}%
2669 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.7 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [256] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.12 on page 427.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

2670 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}%
2671 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.8 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [228] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.13 on page 428.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

2672 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}%
2673 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.9 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [117] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.14 on page 428.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

2674 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}%
2675 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.10 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption package [346] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\AtBeginDocument minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ loaded. See section 9.80.2.15 on page 428.
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@

2676 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}%
2677 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.11 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption2 package [344] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.16 on page 429.
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@

2678 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}%
2679 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the ccaption package [391] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.17 on page 429.
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

2680 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}%
2681 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the mcaption package [194] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.80.2.18 on page 429.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

2682 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}%
2683 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.14 Check if the float package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the float package [255] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.19 on page 430.
\if@mtc@floatLoaded@

2684 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{float}{\@mtc@floatLoaded@true}{}%

```

9.9.15 Check if the floatrow package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the floatrow package [239] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.20 on page 430.
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@

```

```
2685 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{floatrow}{\@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true}}}%
```

9.9.16 Check if the trivfloat package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the trivfloat package [401] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.21 on page 430.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
```

```
2686 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{trivfloat}{\@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true}}}%
```

9.9.17 Check if the rotfloat package is loaded

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the rotfloat package [343] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.80.2.22 on page 431.
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@
```

```
2687 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{rotfloat}{\@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true}}}%
```

9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

```
\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir [396, 397, 399] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ adjustments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ chapter 12 on page 458). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ memoir.cls.
```

```
2688 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
2689 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
2690 \mtcPackageInfo[I0030]{minitoc}%
2691 {the memoir class is loaded:
2692 \MessageBreak
2693 compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
2694 {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
2695 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
2696 \@ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
2697 {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[I0020]{minitoc}%
2698 {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2699 {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[I0027]{minitoc}%
2700 {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2701 \mtcPackageInfo[I0032]{minitoc}%
2702 {This version of the memoir class uses
2703 \MessageBreak
2704 a version of \string\chapter\space which is
2705 \MessageBreak
2706 incompatible with the minitoc package.
```

I0030

I0020

I0027

I0032


```

2707      \MessageBreak
2708      We try to patch\@gobble}%
2709  \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
2710 \fi

```

\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ And now the patch:

E0028

```

2711 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
2712 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
2713   \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
2714   \mtcPackageError[E0028]{minitoc}%
2715     {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
2716     {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
2717 \fi

```

9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

```

\mtc@ifmtarg Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package
\mtc@xifmtarg ifmtarg [400], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by
\mtc@EndWhile Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM [378, Vol III, page 408]). The group is necessary to keep local
\mtc@WhilePreCondition the catcode change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody
\mtc@While 2718 \begingroup
\mtc@While 2719 \catcode'\Q=3
\mtc@WhileNext 2720 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
2721 \mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
2722 \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
2723 \endgroup
2724 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
2725 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
2726   \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
2727   \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
2728   \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
2729   \mtc@@While
2730 }
2731 \def\mtc@@While{%
2732   \mtc@WhilePreCondition
2733   \mtc@WhileCondition
2734   \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
2735     \mtc@WhileBody
2736     \mtc@@While
2737   }%
2738   \else
2739   \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
2740   \fi
2741   \mtc@WhileNext
2742 }

```

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue
\if@mtc@FE if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the is file not empty. An inexistent file is empty.
\if@mtc@LI A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.
\mtc@While
\mtc@Body Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an
\mtc@EndWhile eternity (33 s for 106 lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.
\mtc@CkFile \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.
\mtc@CkStr
\mtc@Rline 2743 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
\tf@mtc 2744 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
\@inputcheck 2745 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
2746 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to \mtc@Rline\relax
2747 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2748 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
2749 \def\mtc@Rline{}
2750 \else
2751 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2752 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}{\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
2753 \fi}
2754 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
2755 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
2756 \if@mtc@checkfiles
2757 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
2758 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
2759 \mtc@While{}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}{\mtc@Body}\mtc@EndWhile}%
2760 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
2761 \else
2762 \@mtc@FEfalse%
2763 \fi}
2764 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
2765 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
2766 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2767 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
2768 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2769 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
2770 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2771 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

```

\mtc@onebackpart It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These
\mtc@onebackchapter macros are:
\mtc@onebacksection
\addtocounter 2772 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
2773 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
2774 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

```

9.13 Patching the `\part` command

`\part` If the `\part` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and
`\mtc@svspart` a warning is displayed⁴. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@part` (for the unstarred version)
`\mtc@svpart` or `\@spart` (for the starred version, `\part*`): we add `\stepcounter{ptc}` to increment the
`\@spart` parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 334.
`\@part`
`\stepcounter` The code of the next section (section 9.14) is also skipped if `\part` is not defined.

W0018
I0023

```

2775 \@ifundefined{part}{%
2776   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0018]{minitoc}%
2777   {part level macros NOT available}
2778 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
2779   \mtcPackageInfo[I0023]{minitoc}%
2780   {part level macros available\@gobble}
2781   \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
2782   \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
2783   \let\mtc@svpart\@part
2784   \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an
`\mtc@ifmtarg` optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.
`\contentsline`
`\addcontentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omit-
`\adjustptc` ted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty,
`\l@xpart` we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a
`\l@part` `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the ptc
 counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 321). Using `xpart` as first argument
 of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the
 entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never
 be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2785 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
2786   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
2787   {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
2788   \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
2789   \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
2790   \adjustptc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```

2791 }%

```

⁴ Document classes with sectioning commands but no `\part` command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the minitoc package with the class of your document.

I0004

I0029

W0017

I0028

```

2792 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0004]{minitoc}%
2793     {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2794   \@ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0029]{minitoc}%
2795     {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2796   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0017]{minitoc}%
2797     {no section or chapter level macros available
2798     \MessageBreak
2799     PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
2800 {\mtcPackageInfo[I0028]{minitoc}%
2801     {section level macros available\@gobble}%

```

9.16 Corrections for numbering

`\mtc@onebacksect` As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement the secttoc counter (stc) via `\mtc@onebacksect` when the corresponding commands are executed. Hence we patch these commands.

`\tableofcontents`

`\listoffigures`

`\listoftables`

```

\mtcsv@tableofcontents 2802   \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 2803   \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 2804   \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
2805   \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
2806   \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
2807   \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}

```

9.17 Patching the `\section` command

`\mtc@svsection` If the `\section` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@sect` (for the unstarred version) or `\@ssect` (for the starred version, `\section*`): we add `\stepcounter{stc}` to increment the secttoc counter stc, only in the unstarred case⁵.

`\@sect`

`\section`

```

\stepcounter 2808   \let\mtc@svsection\section
2809   \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
2810   \let\mtc@svss\@ssect

```

⁵ Version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter.

9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

`\mtcaddsection` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the `\mtcaddsection` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xsect}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we `\l@xsect` add a `\contentsline{section}{title...}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@section` `\contentsline{xsect}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `stc` counter, via `\adjuststc` (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 345). Using `xsect` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xsect` will be invoked in place of `\l@section` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xsect` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
2811 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][]{%
2812   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
2813   {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
2814   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}%
2815   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}%
2816   \adjuststc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```
2817 }{}%
```

9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like book or report. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\ifundefined{chapter}`.

I0003

```
2818 \mtcPackageInfo[I0003]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}
```

9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two `\@chapter` branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\mtc@svchapter` `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\stepcounter` Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 305).

```
2819 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}
```

9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC.

`\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we

`\contentsline` add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a

`\adjustmtc` `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment

`\l@xchapter` the `mtc` counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 292). Using `xchapter`

`\l@chapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
2820 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][]{%
2821   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}{%
2822     {\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
2823   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
2824   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
2825   \adjustmtc}%
2826 }%
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 280.

9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

`\newread` The `\newread` command must be redeclared as being `\outer` (as Donald ARSENEAU told me).

`\newtoks` We need a token register (`\mtc@toks`), a temporary string (`\mtc@string`), struts (two kinds,

`\mtc@toks` each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to

`\mtc@string` zero (`\mtc@zrule`) and a command discouraging page breaks (`\mtc@BBR`, for “bad break”).

`\mtc@strut` For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to

`\mtc@strutbox` follow the current font.

`\mtc@hstrut`

`\mtc@hstrutbox` 2827 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@@n}

`\mtc@v` 2828 \newtoks\mtc@toks

`\mtc@zrule` 2829 \def\mtc@string{\relax}

`\mtc@BBR` 2830 \newbox\mtc@strutbox

2831 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}

2832 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox

2833 \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}

2834 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox

2835 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}

2836 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox

2837 \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}

2838 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}

2839 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}

2840 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}

Table 9.1: Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc0</code>	TRUE	TRUE	*
	<code>\jobname.mtc</code>		FALSE	
OS with short extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc(0)</code>	TRUE	FALSE	*

9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a trick to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files⁶. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the *document.log* file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

```

\newif (0) First, a message and a new flag:
\if@mtc@longext@ 2841 \mtcPackageInfo[I0002]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 2842 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
\immediate 2843 \newif\if@mtc@longext@\@mtc@longext@false
\openout
\write (1) We write "\@mtc@longext@true" in \jobname.mtc0. But if the OS has short
\closeout extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
\input 2844 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
\jobname 2845 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@true}
2846 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(2) We write "\@mtc@longext@false" in \jobname.mtc.

2847 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2848 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@false}
2849 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(3) We read \jobname.mtc0. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

2850 \input{\jobname.mtc0}

```

I0002

(4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from `\jobname.mtc0`, but false if we read from

I0012

I0031

W0019

⁶ It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the *document.log* file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the *.toc*, *.lof* and *.lot* files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TEX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the *document.log* file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectionning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

\jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

```

2851 \if@mtc@longext@
2852 \mtcPackageInfo[I0012]{minitoc}%
2853 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used@gobble}
2854 \mtcPackageInfo[I0031]{minitoc}%
2855 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
2856 \MessageBreak
2857 \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names@gobble}%
2858 \else
2859 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0019]{minitoc}%
2860 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
2861 \MessageBreak
2862 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
2863 \MessageBreak
2864 \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
2865 \fi

```

- (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because \jobname.mtc is also used later as a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 277).

```

2866 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2867 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2868 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
2869 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L^AT_EX

\@inputcheck This code detects old versions of the L^AT_EX kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L^AT_EX commands, \@inputcheck and \reset@font. If you get one of these messages, you are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L^AT_EX installation, which is just rusting since... a lot of years!



```

2870 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
2871 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0021]{minitoc}%
2872 {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
2873 \MessageBreak
2874 Trying to continue..}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}}
2875 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
2876 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0022]{minitoc}%
2877 {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
2878 \MessageBreak
2879 Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
2880 \let\reset@font\relax}{}}

```


9.25 Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

```

\@undottedtocline The (internal) macro \@undottedtocline is a modified version of the standard command
\ifundottedmtc \@dottedtocline. It will be used in customization macros.
\undottedmtcfalse

2881 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
2882 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
2883   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
2884     \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
2885     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
2886      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
2887      \interlinepenalty\@M
2888      \leavevmode
2889      \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
2890     \hskip -\leftskip
2891     #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
2892     \null\par}%
2893   \fi}

```

9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [396, 397, 399] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```
2894 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers

2895 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
2896   \cftpagenumberon{section}
2897   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
2898   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
2899   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
2900   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
2901 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
2902   \cftpagenumberoff{section}
2903   \cftpagenumberoff{subsection}
2904   \cftpagenumberoff{subsubsection}
2905   \cftpagenumberoff{paragraph}
2906   \cftpagenumberoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\stcpagenumbers For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
    2907 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
    2908   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
    2909   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
    2910   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
    2911   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
    2912 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
    2913   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
    2914   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
    2915   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
    2916   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:
\noptcpagenumbers
    2917 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
    2918   \cftpagenumberson{chapter}
    2919   \cftpagenumberson{section}
    2920   \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
    2921   \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
    2922   \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
    2923   \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
    2924 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
    2925   \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
    2926   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
    2927   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
    2928   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
    2929   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
    2930   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
    \slfpagenumbers 2931 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 2932 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
    \plfpagenumbers 2933 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 2934 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
    2935 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
    2936 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
    \sltpagenumbers 2937 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 2938 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
    \pltpagenumbers 2939 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 2940 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
    2941 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
    2942 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```
2943 \else
```

```
\mtcpagenumbers  First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2944 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\nomlfpagenumbers 2945 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2946 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2947 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
2948 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
2949 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mlfpagenumbers  Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2950 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\nomlfpagenumbers 2951 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2952 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2953 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
2954 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
2955 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mltpagenumbers  Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 2956 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2957 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2958 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2959 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
2960 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
2961 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
2962 \fi
```

```
\ptcpagenumbers  Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 2963 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 2964 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2965 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 2966 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 2967 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 2968 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 2969 \stcpagenumbers
2970 \slfpagenumbers
2971 \sltpagenumbers
```

9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has five “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature, an “open” feature, an “close” feature, and a “pagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each `parttoc`. Usually such features contain only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

An “open” feature contains code to be executed just before the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either prepare some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

An “close” feature contains code to be executed just after the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either finish some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

A “pagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “pagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “pagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter   If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 2972 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 2973   \let\beforeparttoc\empty
                2974   \let\beforepartlof\empty
                2975   \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```

2976   {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
2977   \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
2978   \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

`\beforeinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforeminilof`

```
\beforeminilot 2979 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
                2980 \let\beforeminilof\empty
                2981 \let\beforeminilot\empty
```

`\beforesecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforesectlof`

```
\beforesectlot 2982 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
                2983 \let\beforesectlof\empty
                2984 \let\beforesectlot\empty
```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterparttoc`

```
\afterpartlof 2985 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 2986     \let\afterparttoc\empty
                2987     \let\afterpartlof\empty
                2988     \let\afterpartlot\empty}%
```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```
                2989     {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
                2990     \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
                2991     \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\afterminitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterminilof`

```
\afterminilot 2992 \let\afterminitoc\empty
                2993 \let\afterminilof\empty
                2994 \let\afterminilot\empty
```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\aftersectlof`

```
\aftersectlot 2995 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
                2996 \let\aftersectlof\empty
                2997 \let\aftersectlot\empty
```

```

\openparttoc By default, the “open” and “close” features do nothing:
\openpartlof
\openpartlot 2998 \let\openparttoc\empty \let\closeparttoc\empty
\openminitoc 2999 \let\openpartlof\empty \let\closepartlof\empty
\openminilof 3000 \let\openpartlot\empty \let\closepartlot\empty
\openminilot 3001 \let\openminitoc\empty \let\closeminitoc\empty
\opensecttoc 3002 \let\openminilof\empty \let\closeminilof\empty
\opensectlof 3003 \let\openminilot\empty \let\closeminilot\empty
\opensectlot 3004 \let\opensecttoc\empty \let\closesecttoc\empty
3005 \let\opensectlof\empty \let\closesectlof\empty
3006 \let\opensectlot\empty \let\closesectlot\empty

```

```

\thispagestyle By default, all the “pagestyle” features (at part level) use the empty page style. It affects only
\thispageparttocstyle the first page of the mini-table. If \chapter is not defined, there is no default “pagestyle”
\thispagepartlofstyle features at the part level.
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageinitocstyle 3007 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 3008 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 3009 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 3010 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofstyle 3011 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 3012 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}
3013 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}}
3014 \def\thispageinitocstyle{\empty}
3015 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
3016 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
3017 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
3018 \def\thispagesectlofstyle{\empty}
3019 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 9.67.8 on page 388, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is a much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

9.28 Fake tables of contents

```

\faketableofcontents If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, with-
\fakeistoffigures out inserting it into your document. This \faketableofcontents command is a stripped off
\fakeistoftables version of the standard command \tableofcontents. We define in the same way the anal-
\fake@starttoc og commands \fakeistoffigures and \fakeistoftables, using in fact just a stripped
\if@files w version \fake@starttoc of \@starttoc. But it is nice to reset to zero the ptc, mtc, and
\newwrite stc counters now, if they are defined7.
\immediate
\openout

```

⁷ Remember the infamous “stc0” bug.

```

3020 \def\fakeableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
3021   \ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
3022   \ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
3023   \ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
3024   }
3025 \def\fakeistofffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
3026 \def\fakeistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
3027 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup \makeatletter
3028   \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
3029   \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
3030   \jobname.#1\relax \fi
3031   \global\@nobreakfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create the necessary new counters:
  \newcounter      minilofdepth and minilofdepth. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the
  \setcounter      loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument block:
  \c@lofdepth
  \c@lotdepth
3032 \AtBeginDocument{%
3033   \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
3034     {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
3035   \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
3036     {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
3037 }%

```

9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

```

\mtc@markboth First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
  \@mkboth
3038 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
3039 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth

```

9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

```

\addst@rred We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: \part*, \chapter*
\addcontentsline and \section*. The section-level is different depending on the presence of the \chapter
\stepcounter command. Eventually, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the .toc file, with
\c@ptc the right depth to print it (see \l@star... later, in section 9.65 on page 369).
\c@mtc
\c@stc
3040 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
3041   \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
3042   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
3043     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
3044       \stepcounter{ptc}%
3045     \fi
3046   }%
3047   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
3048     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
3049       \stepcounter{mtc}%
3050     \fi
3051     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix\relax
3052       \stepcounter{mtc}%
3053     \fi
3054   }%
3055   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
3056     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
3057   %%       \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
3058     \stepcounter{stc}%
3059   \fi
3060   }%
3061 }%

\addstarredsection If \chapter is not defined, we just define \addstarredsection:
\chapter
\addst@rred 3062 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
3063 \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
3064 }%

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of
\@ifundefined{chapter}):

3065 {%

```


W0003

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
\if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\newcounter command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\setcounter mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\adjustmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\decrementmtc
\incrementmtc 3066 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\themtc 3067 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\columnwidth 3068 {\mtcPackageWarning[W0003]{minitoc}%
3069 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete (ignored)
3070 \MessageBreak
3071 command}%
3072 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
3073 \newcounter{mtc}
3074 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3075 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
3076 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
3077 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
3078 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
3079 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
3080 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}

\mtc@rule We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mlf@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlt@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\plf@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 3081 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
\slt@rule 3082 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
\mtcindent 3083 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
3084 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
3085 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
3086 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
3087 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
3088 \mtcindent=24\p@

```

9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

```

\mtcfont We define these commands with full NFSS [245] descriptions. These definitions are effective
\mtcSfont if \chapter is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the \mtcsetfont
\mtcSSfont macro (section 9.67.2 on page 372) and the \mtcsetttitlefont macro later (section 9.67.3 on
\mtcSSSfont page 376).
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 3089 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 3090 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 3091 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 3092 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont 3093 \let\mlffont\mtcfont \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
\mtifont 3094 \let\mltfont\mtcfont \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
3095 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

\coffeeont And \coffeeont is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [253].

```
3096 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}
```

9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

\df@mtitc The commands \miniXXX and \dominiXXX accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a \dominiXXX command is global and memorized in \df@mtitc, \do@mtitc \df@mtilf or \df@mtilt; the choice made in a \miniXXX command is local and stored in \do@mtitc, \do@mtilf or \do@mtilt. See the \minitoc@ macro later (section 9.35.1 on the next page). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\c@mti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti 3097 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti 3098 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti 3099 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3100 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3101 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\l@mti Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 3102 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 3103 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 3104 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 3105 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt

```

```

3106 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
3107 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

9.34 The mtc@verse environment

`mtc@verse` Each minitoc is placed inside a `mtc@verse` environment. This environment is analog to the standard `verse` environment and hence defined via two commands: `\mtc@verse` and `\endmtc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\list` `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to `\mtcindent`. `\endmtc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break. The `mtc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\mtcoffset`).

```

\topsep
\parsep
\mtcindent 3108 \def\mtc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
3109 \list{}}%
3110 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \partopsep=\z@
3111 \listparindent=\itemindent \topsep=lex
3112 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
3113 \leftmargin=\mtcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
3114 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+1}%
3115 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-1}%
3116 }%
3117 \item[]
3118 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

9.35.1 The \minitoc command

`\minitoc` The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no automatic minitoc).

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minitoc@` the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\ifnextchar` `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3119 \def\minitoc{\ifnextchar[{ \minitoc@}{\minitoc@d]}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called
 (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.80.2.2 on page 418).

```
3120 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
3121 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mtc` (long extensions) or `.M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute
 number of the minitoc.

```
3122 \if@mtc@longext@
3123   \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
3124 \else
3125   \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
3126 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested).
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

I0006

```
3127   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3128   \if@mtc@FE
3129   \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3130     {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3131   \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
3132   \else
```

`\thispageminitletyle` We call `\thispageminitletyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because,
 by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually
 there is no new page for a minitoc.

```
3133   \thispageminitletyle
3134 %%   \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%
```

```

\beforeminitoc We call \beforeminitoc, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page
samepage breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
\do@mtitc corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules
\e@mti are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
\nc@mti top rule). The font is set to \mtcfont.
\c@mti
\l@mti 3135 \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 3136 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3137 \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3138 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\nc@mti
\mtctitle 3139 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3140 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 3141 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 3142 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
\mtc@rule 3143 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3144 \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
3145 \raggedright
tabular 3146 \parskip=\z@%
3147 \reset@font\mtcfont%
3148 \parindent=\z@%
3149 \nopagebreak[4]%
3150 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3151 \par\noindent %
3152 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
3153 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3154 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
3155 \end{tabular}%
3156 \else
3157 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3158 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\ \hline
3159 \end{tabular}%
3160 \fi

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
\mtc@BBR begin an mtc@verse environment:
\mtcindent
\mtc@offset 3161 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3162 \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3163 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3164 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3165 \begin{mtc@verse}{\mtc@offset}%

\c@tocdepth We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth
\c@minitocdepth (\c@minitocdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where
\\ tocdepth has been forced to minitocdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low
\mtc@BBR enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

3166 \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
3167 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\mtc@pgno We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the
\@dottedtocline minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
\@undottedtocline by Donald ARSENEAU for his notocite package [11]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile macro \mtc@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
\mtc@setform \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
\openminitoc The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
\closeminitoc file.
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 3168 \begingroup
3169 \makeatletter
3170 \@ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
3171 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3172 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3173 \mtc@setform%
3174 \openminitoc
3175 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3176 \closeminitoc
3177 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3178 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3179 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminitoc. The blank line (\) is
\  essential.
samepage
\afterminitoc 3180 \end{mtc@verse}%
3181 \kernafterminitoc
3182 \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3183 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3184 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}

\mtc@bottom@rule And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 3185 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
3186 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
3187 \vskip -2.5ex
3188 \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}

```

9.35.2 The \minilof command

\minilof The \minilof command is very similar to the \minitoc command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic minilof).

`\chapter`

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3189 \def\minilof{\ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@d}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.80.2.2 on page 418).

```
3190 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
3191 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlf (long extensions) or .F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
3192 \if@mtc@longext@%
3193   \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
3194 \else
3195   \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
3196 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

```
3197   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3198   \if@mtc@FE
3199   \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3200     {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3201   \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
3202   \else
```

I0006

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```

3203      \thispageminilofstyle
3204 %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.

```

\l@mti 3205      \beforeminilof
\r@mti 3206      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3207      \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3208      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 3209      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3210      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 3211      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 3212      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 3213      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3214      \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3215      \raggedright
3216      \parskip=\z@
3217      \reset@font\mlffont
3218      \parindent=\z@
3219      \noprogrambreak[4]%
3220      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\noprogrambreak[4]%
3221      \par\noindent
3222      \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
3223      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3224      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
3225      \end{tabular}%
3226      \else
3227      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3228      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
3229      \end{tabular}%
3230      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```

\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
\mlfoffset 3231      \noprogrambreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\
mtc@verse 3232      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3233      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3234      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3235      \begin{mtc@verse}{\mlfoffset}%

```


`\c@lofdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3236 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3237 {\c@lofdepth=\c@minilofdepth
3238 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3239 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [11]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlf@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
`\openminilof` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
`\closeminilof` file.
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3240 \begingroup
3241 \makeatletter
3242 \ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
3243 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3244 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3245 \mlf@setform
3246 \openminilof
3247 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3248 \closeminilof
3249 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
3250 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3251 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilof`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilof 3252 \end{mtc@verse}%
3253 \kernafterminilof
3254 \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3255 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3256 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi%
```

9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic
`\chapter` minilot).

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set ear-
`\minilot` lier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has
itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`.
The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tor-
tuorous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via
the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3257 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{ \minilot@}]{ \minilot@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by
brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called
(this will be used by a hint later, section 9.80.2.2 on page 418).

```
3258 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
3259 \global\@minilot@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlt (long extensions) or .T (short extensions) followed by the absolute
number of the minilot.

```
3260 \if@mtc@longext@%
3261   \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
3262 \else
3263   \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
3264 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).
`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

I0006

```

3265     \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3266     \if@mtc@FE
3267     \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3268         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3269     \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
3270     \else

```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```

3271     \thispageminilotstyle
3272 %     \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page
`samepage` breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
`\do@mtitc` corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules
`\e@mti` are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
`\n@mti` top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.
`\c@mti`

```

\l@mti 3273     \beforeminilot
\r@mti 3274     \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3275     \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3276     \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 3277     \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3278     \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 3279     \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 3280     \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
\mlt@rule 3281     \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3282     \mtc@CkStr{\mltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3283     \raggedright
3284     \parskip=\z@%
3285     \reset@font\mltfont%
3286     \parindent=\z@%
3287     \nopagebreak[4]%
3288     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3289     \par\noindent
3290     \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
3291     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3292     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
3293     \end{tabular}%
3294     \else
3295     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3296     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\ \hline
3297     \end{tabular}%
3298     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

`\mtcindent`

```
\mltoffset 3299      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3300      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
           3301      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
           3302      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
           3303      \begin{mtc@verse}\mltoffset}%
```

`\c@lotdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilotdepth` (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `lotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3304      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3305      {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
3306      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3307      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputing the
`\@dottedtocline` minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [11]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlt@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
`\openminilot` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
`\closeminilot` file.
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3308 \begingroup
           3309   \makeatletter
           3310   \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
           3311   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
           3312   \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
           3313   \mlt@setform
           3314   \openminilot
           3315   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
           3316   \closeminilot
           3317   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
           3318   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
           3319   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilot`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilot 3320      \end{mtc@verse}%
           3321      \kernafterminilot
```

```

3322 \nopagebreak[4]\mlt@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3323 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3324 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot{\fi}%

```

9.36 Patching the `\chapter` command, continued

`\l@xchapter` First, we define `\l@xchapter` which is like `\l@chapter`, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its
`\dottedtocline` printing (except if you cheat):
`\l@chapter`
`\xchapter`

```

3325 \def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}
3326 \def\xchapter{xchapter}

```

<code>\@chapter</code> <code>\sv@chapter</code> <code>\addcontentsline</code> <code>\ignorespaces</code>	Then we patch <code>\@chapter</code> (the non-starred branch of <code>\chapter</code>) to add pseudo-chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the <code>\dominiXXX</code> commands to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).
---	---

```

3327 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
3328 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[#1]#2\relax%
3329   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
3330   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
3331   \ignorespaces}

```

<code>\mtc@schapter</code> <code>\@schapter</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\chapterbegin</code> <code>\chapterend</code>	We also patch <code>\@schapter</code> (the starred branch of <code>\chapter</code>) to add marks in the TOC to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the <code>\dominiXXX</code> commands to take slices from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as <code>\relax</code> , they should not perturbate other packages.
--	---

```
3332 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
3333 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
3334 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
3335 \let\chapterbegin\relax
3336 \let\chapterend\relax
```

9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

<code>\addstarredsection</code>	If the command <code>\chapter</code> is undefined, we define the command <code>\addstarredsection</code>
<code>\addstarredchapter</code>	(only if <code>\section</code> is defined). If the command <code>\chapter</code> is defined, we define the com-
<code>\addstarredpart</code>	mand <code>\addstarredchapter</code> . If the command <code>\part</code> is defined, we define the command
<code>\chapter</code>	<code>\addstarredpart</code> . We use the utility command <code>\addst@rred</code> defined in section 9.31 on
<code>\section</code>	page 292 .
<code>\part</code>	
<code>\addst@rred</code>	

```

3337 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3338   {\@ifundefined{section}%
3339     {\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
3340     {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
3341 \@ifundefined{part}%
3342   {\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}

```

9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro `\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

3343 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3344   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3345     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3346     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3347      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3348      \interlinepenalty\@M
3349      \leavevmode
3350      \@tempdima #3\relax
3351      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3352      {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak \nobreak\null
3353      \par}%
3354   \fi}

```

`\@Undottedtoclinep` The same but with the page number:

```

3355 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
3356   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3357     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3358     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3359      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3360      \interlinepenalty\@M
3361      \leavevmode
3362      \@tempdima #3\relax
3363      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3364      {#4}\nobreak \hfill \nobreak\null
3365      \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
3366      \par}%
3367   \fi}

```

9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

`\minitoc@` This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).
`\minilof@` We alter the commands `\minitoc@`, `\minilof@`, etc., to test the flag `\ifundottedmtc` and,
`\minilot@`
`\@dottedtocline`
`\@Undottedtoclinep`
`\sv@minitoc@`
`\sv@minilof@`
`\sv@minilot@`

if true, replace locally `\@dottedtocline` by its dotless version `\@Undottedtoclinep`. Of course, we must also test the availability of the `\chapter`, `\part` and `\section` commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.

```

3368 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
3369   \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@
3370   \def\minitoc#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3371     \sv@minitoc#[1]}%
3372   \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@
3373   \def\minilof#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3374     \sv@minilof#[1]}%
3375   \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@
3376   \def\minilot#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3377     \sv@minilot#[1]}%

```

`\sv@parttoc@` For the part level:

`\sv@partlof@`

`\sv@partlot@` 3378 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%

`\ifundottedmtc` 3379 \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@

`\parttoc@` 3380 \def\parttoc#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

`\partlof@` 3381 \sv@parttoc#[1]}%

`\partlot@` 3382 \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@

3383 \def\partlof#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3384 \sv@partlof#[1]}%

3385 \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@

3386 \def\partlot#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3387 \sv@partlot#[1]}%

`\sv@secttoc@` For the section level:

`\sv@sectlof@`

`\sv@sectlot@` 3388 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%

`\ifundottedmtc` 3389 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%

`\secttoc@` 3390 \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@

`\sectlof@` 3391 \def\secttoc#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

`\sectlot@` 3392 \sv@secttoc#[1]}%

3393 \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@

3394 \def\sectlof#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3395 \sv@sectlof#[1]}%

3396 \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@

3397 \def\sectlot#[1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

3398 \sv@sectlot#[1]}%}

9.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course,
`\dominilof` very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and
`\dominilot`
`\contentsline`
`\chapbegin`
`\starchapter`

`\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous \LaTeX run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

```
\dominitoc As \dominitoc has an optional argument, whose default value is "l" (left), it calls
\dominitoc@ \dominitoc@ with a argument delimited by brackets.
@@dominitoc
@ifdominitoc@used@ The macros are \dominitoc (user interface), which calls \dominitoc@[1] (or with the
optional argument of \dominitoc). Then \dominitoc@[1] processes its argument and
calls @@dominitoc. @@dominitoc calls \dominitoc (passing \jobname as argument)
then close the minitoc file written. @@dominitoc reset to zero the counter of mini-tables,
calls \MTC@next#1.toc (where #1 is the value of \jobname), then reset again to zero
the counter of mini-tables. Each call to \dominitoc@ (i.e., to \dominitoc) sets the flag
\dominitoc@used@true. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have
correctly called \minitoc after \dominitoc and that both or neither have been called). See
section 9.80.2.2 on page 418. The code is similar for \dominilof and \dominilot.
```

```
\dominitoc The \dominitoc command extracts information from the .toc file and create the minitocs
\dominitoc files, with the adequate extension.
\MTC@next
@ifnextchar 3399 \def\dominitoc#1{%
3400 \makeatletter
3401 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3402 \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3403 \def\dominitoc{\ifnextchar[{\dominitoc@}{\dominitoc@[1]}}
```

```
\dominilof The \dominilof command extracts information from the .lof file and create the minilofs
\dominilof files, with the adequate extension.
\MLF@next
@ifnextchar 3404 \def\dominilof#1{%
3405 \makeatletter
3406 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3407 \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3408 \def\dominilof{\ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[1]}}
```

```
\dominilot The \dominilot command extracts information from the .lot file and create the minilots
\dominilot files, with the adequate extension.
\MLT@next
@ifnextchar 3409 \def\dominilot#1{%
3410 \makeatletter
3411 \setcounter{mtc}{0}}
```



```

3412 \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3413 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}

```

\if@dominitoc@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\df@mtitc 3414 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 3415 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 3416 \if@dominitoc@used@
  \c@mti 3417 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \l@mti 3418 {The \string\dominitoc \space command
  \r@mti 3419 \MessageBreak
  @@dominitoc 3420 has been invoked more than once
  3421 \MessageBreak}
  3422 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
  3423 \fi
  3424 \fi
  3425 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
  3426 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\e@mti%
  3427 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
  3428 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
  3429 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
  3430 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
  3431 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
  3432 @@dominitoc}

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\df@mtilf 3433 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 3434 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 3435 \if@dominilof@used@
  \c@mti 3436 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \l@mti 3437 {The \string\dominilof \space command
  \r@mti 3438 \MessageBreak
  @@dominilof 3439 has been invoked more than once
  3440 \MessageBreak}
  3441 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
  3442 \fi
  3443 \fi
  3444 \global\@dominilof@used@true
  3445 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\e@mti%
  3446 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
  3447 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
  3448 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
  3449 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
  3450 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
  3451 @@dominilof}

```

```

\if@dominilot@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilt 3452 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\e@mti 3453 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3454 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 3455 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3456 {The \string\dominilot \space command
\r@mti 3457 \MessageBreak
@@dominilot 3458 has been invoked more than once
3459 \MessageBreak}
3460 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3461 \fi
3462 \fi
3463 \global\@dominilot@used@true
3464 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
3465 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
3466 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
3467 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
3468 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
3469 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3470 @@dominilot}

@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file
@@dominilof descriptor.
@@dominilot
\tf@mtc 3471 \def@@dominitoc{ \@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3472 \def@@dominilof{ \@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3473 \def@@dominilot{ \@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

I0045

9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros ⁸:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 3474 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3475 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
3476 \MTC@loop{#1}%
3477 }

```

⁸ This code is derived from the xr package [103], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission. Some modifications were made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of hyperref, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the hyperlink argument in the contents lines.

```

\MTC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 3478 \def\MTC@toc{%
              3479   \ifx\MTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
              3480 }

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
                  \arabic   esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
                  \chapter  but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
                  \themtc
                  \tf@mtc 3481 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
                          3482   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
                          3483   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
                          3484     \stepcounter{mtc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
                  \themtc  it (after closing the file descriptor):
                  \mtcname
                  \tf@mtc 3485   \if@mtc@longext@%
\closeout 3486     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\openout 3487     {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
              3488     \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
              3489     \else
              3490     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              3491     {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
              3492     \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
              3493     \fi
              3494     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              3495     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
              3496     \fi

\if@mtc@longext@ We need a similar code to detect TOC entries for appendices in the memoir class9:
                  \themtc
                  \mtcname 3497   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
                  \tf@mtc 3498     \stepcounter{mtc}%
\closeout 3499   \if@mtc@longext@%
\openout 3500     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              3501     {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
              3502     \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
              3503     \else
              3504     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              3505     {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
              3506     \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
              3507     \fi
              3508     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              3509     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
              3510     \fi

```

I0033

I0033

⁹ Tim ARNOLD has signaled the problem; thanks!

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register `\mtc@toks` is used as a verbatim memory.

```
3511 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with the standard sectionning commands, below `\chapter`:

`\section`

```
\subsection 3512 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
```

```
\paragraph 3513 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
\subparagraph 3514 \fi
```

```
3515 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
```

```
3516 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3517 \fi
```

```
3518 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
```

```
3519 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3520 \fi
```

```
3521 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
```

```
3522 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3523 \fi
```

```
3524 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
```

```
3525 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3526 \fi
```

`\coffee` A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for `\coffee`:

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`

```
3527 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
```

```
3528 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
```

```
3529 \fi
```

`\starchapter` If it is `\starchapter` (for a starred chapter), we increment the `mtc` counter, build a new minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.

I0033

`\if@mtc@longext@`

```
\mtcname 3530 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
```

```
\themtc 3531 \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

```
\tf@mtc 3532 \if@mtc@longext@
```

```
\closeout 3533 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
```

```
\openout 3534 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3535 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
```

```
3536 \else
```

```
3537 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
```

```
3538 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3539 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
```

```
3540 \fi
```

```
3541 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

```
3542 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
```

```
3543 \fi
```

```

\starsection For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 3544 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 3545 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 3546 \fi
3547 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
3548 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
3549 \fi
3550 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
3551 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3552 \fi
3553 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
3554 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
3555 \fi
3556 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
3557 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3558 \fi
3559 }

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to
\MTC@next process the first one:
\MTC@list
3560 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\openin process the next entry in the list.
\@inputcheck
\MTC@toc 3561 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read 3562 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3563 \mtcPackageWarning[W0010]{minitoc}%
3564 {No file #1.
3565 \MessageBreak
3566 MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
3567 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3568 \else
3569 \mtcPackageInfo[I0024]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
3570 \expandafter\MTC@read
3571 \fi
3572 }

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
\read
\@inputcheck 3573 \def\MTC@read{%
\MTC@line 3574 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

```

```

\MTC@test The ..... make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:
\MTC@line
  \MTC@ 3575 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC@%
        3576 }%

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit
\MTC@contentsline chapters10:

\MTC@test Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\MTC@contentsline the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\contentsline the next file in the list.
\mtc@string
  \@input 3577 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{%
\MTC@list 3578 \ifx#1\contentsline
\chapterend 3579 \let\mtc@string\string
\closeout 3580 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\tf@mtc 3581 \let\mtc@string\relax
\openout 3582 \else\ifx#1\@input
\chapterbegin 3583 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
\addtocounter 3584 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MTC@toc 3585 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
\MTC@read 3586 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3587 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3588 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3589 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3590 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3591 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3592 \else
3593 \expandafter\MTC@read
3594 \fi
3595 }%

```

9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

¹⁰The macro \MTC@test has been patched to call \MTC@contentsline with four parameters instead of three (thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS). The same remark applies to similar macros.

9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
`\MLF@list`
`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
3596 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3597   \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
3598   \MLF@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:
`\MLF@list`
`\MLF@explist` 3599 `\def\MLF@lof{%`
 3600 `\ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}`

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new minilof file is created.

```
3601 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3602   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3603   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3604     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@mtc@longext@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

I0033

```
\themtc
\mlfname 3605   \if@mtc@longext@%
\closeout 3606     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3607     {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}
\openout 3608     \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
3609     \else
3610       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3611       {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}
3612       \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
3613     \fi
3614     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3615     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
3616   \fi
```

`\figure` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. If we found a `\figure` entry, we copy it into the minilof file:

```
\subfigure
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3617 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
3618   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3619   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
```

```

3620 \fi
3621 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
3622 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3623 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
3624 \fi
3625 }

```

```

\MLF@explist The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLF@next to process the
\MLF@next first one:
\MLF@list
3626 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

```

\MLF@loop And now, we scan the .lof file:
\openin
\@inputcheck 3627 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLF@lof 3628 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLF@read 3629 \mtcPackageWarning[W0008]{minitoc}%
3630 {No file #1.
3631 \MessageBreak
3632 MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
3633 \expandafter\MLF@lof
3634 \else
3635 \mtcPackageInfo[I0034]{minitoc}%
3636 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
3637 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

```

W0008
I0034

```

\MLF@read Read the next entry in the .lof file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3638 \def\MLF@read{%
3639 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

```

```

\MLF@line The . . . . . make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:
\MLF@test
\MLF@ 3640 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line. . . . \MLF@%
3641 }%

```

```

\MLF@test The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit
chapters.

```



```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 3642 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{%
\chapterend 3643 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3644 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3645 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3646 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3647 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3648 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 3649 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 3650 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3651 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3652 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3653 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3654 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3655 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
3656 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

```

\MLT@next This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
\MLT@list
\MLT@loop Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

3657 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3658 \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
3659 \MLT@loop{#1}}

\MLT@lot Checks if the list is empty:
\MLT@list
\MLT@explist 3660 \def\MLT@lot{%
3661 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}

```

`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the `mtc` counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```
3662 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3663   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3664   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3665     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@mtc@longext@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

I0033

```
\themtc
\mltname 3666 \if@mtc@longext@
\closeout 3667 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3668 {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc@gobble}%
\openout 3669 \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
3670 \else
3671 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3672 {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc@gobble}%
3673 \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
3674 \fi
3675 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3676 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
3677 \fi
```

`\table` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. If we found a `\table` entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

```
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3678 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
3679 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3680 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
3681 \fi
3682 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
3683 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3684 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
3685 \fi
3686 }
```

`\MLT@explist` The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLT@next` to process the first one:

```
\MLT@next
\MLT@list
3687 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}
```

`\MLT@loop` And now, we scan the `.lot` file:

```
\openin
\@inputcheck 3688 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLT@lot 3689 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLT@read
```

W0009

I0037

```

3690 \mtcPackageWarning[W0009]{minitoc}%
3691 {No file #1.
3692 \MessageBreak
3693 MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
3694 \expandafter\MLT@lot
3695 \else
3696 \mtcPackageInfo[I0037]{minitoc}%
3697 {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
3698 \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

```

```

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3699 \def\MLT@read{%
3700 \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

```

```

\MLT@line The . . . . make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:
\MLT@test
\MLT@ 3701 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line. . . . \MLT@%
3702 }%

```

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 3703 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{%
\chapterend 3704 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3705 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3706 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3707 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3708 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3709 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 3710 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 3711 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3712 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3713 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3714 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3715 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3716 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
3717 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a \@ifundefined{chapter} alternative).

```

3718 }%

```

9.43 Macro to write a contents line

`\mtc@dot` The `\MTC@WriteContentsline` macro makes the definition of `\MTC@contentsline` shorter.
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` An extra `\edef` level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):
`\mtc@param`
`\write` The arguments of `\MTC@WriteContentsline` are:
`\tf@mtc`
`\@resetfont` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\mtc@string` #2: font shorthand =: `\csname #2font\endcsname`;
`\contentsline` #3: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\mtc@toks` #4: the #4 argument of `\MTC@contentsline` (hyperlink).

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`.

```

3719 \def\mtc@dot{.}
3720 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3721   \def\mtc@param{#4}%
3722   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3723     {\string\resetfont
3724       \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3725       \string\mtc@string
3726       \string\contentsline{#1}%
3727       {\the\mtc@toks}%
3728       {\string\resetfont
3729         \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3730         \space #3%
3731       }%
3732       \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
3733       \else
3734         {#4}%
3735       \fi
3736     }%
3737   }%
3738 }
```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:
`\write`
`\tf@mtc`
`\@resetfont` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\coffeeFont` #2: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`.
`\mtc@string`
`\mtc@toks`

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`. Le registre *token* `\mtc@toks` est utilisé pour passer l’entrée à `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`.

```

3739 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3740   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3741     {\string\reset@font \string\coffefont \string\mtc@string
3742     {\the\mtc@toks}%
3743     {\string\reset@font \string\coffefont \space #3%
3744     }%
3745   }%
3746 }%
3747 }

```

9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: `partlofdepth` and `partlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\newcounter
\setcounter
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth
3748 \AtBeginDocument{%
3749   \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3750   {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
3751   \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3752   {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
3753 }%

```

9.45 Part level commands

`\xpart` If `\part` is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (`ptc`) for the parttocs and related commands (`\theptc`, `\Thepart`, `\adjustptc`, `\decrementptc`, `\incrementptc`), the obsolete command `\firstpartis`, and the depth counter `parttocdepth`.

```

\theptc
\Thepart
\adjustptc
\decrementptc
\incrementptc
\firstpartis
\firstpartis
\if@firstpartis@used@
3754 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
3755 {%
3756 \def\xpart{xpart}
3757 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
3758 \def\firstpartis#1%
3759   {\mtcPackageWarning[W0004]{minitoc}%
3760   {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
3761   \MessageBreak
3762   command}%
3763   \@firstpartis@used@true}
3764 \newcounter{ptc}
3765 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
3766 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
3767 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
3768 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
3769 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}

```

W0004

```

3770 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
3771 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}

```

`\ptc@rule` But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is `\columnwidth` `\chapter` defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of `\ptc@rule` is empty except if `\chapter` is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots for books. You should redeclare `\ptc@rule` if you want these rules.

```

3772 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3773   {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
3774   {\let\ptc@rule\relax}

```

`\ptcindent` And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```

3775 \newlength\ptcindent
3776 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}

```

9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

`\ptcfont` We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if `\chapter` is defined
`\ptcSfont` (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):
`\ptcSSfont`

```

\ptcSSSfont 3777 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\ptcPfont 3778   \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSPfont 3779   \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
\plffont 3780   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\plfSfont 3781   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
\pltfont 3782   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
\pltSfont 3783   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
\ptifont 3784   \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
3785   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
3786   \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
3787   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
3788   \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3789 }%

```

`\ptcfont` If `\chapter` is defined, the fonts are larger and `\ptcCfont` must be defined:
`\ptcCfont`
`\ptcSfont` 3790 {%
`\ptcSSfont` 3791 \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
`\ptcSSSfont` 3792 \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
`\ptcPfont` 3793 \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
`\ptcSPfont` 3794 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
`\plffont` 3795 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
`\plfSfont`
`\pltfont`
`\pltSfont`
`\ptifont`

```

3796 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
3797 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
3798 \let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
3799 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
3800 \let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
3801 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
3802 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3803 }

```

9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

`\parttoc` We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables
`\partlof` (`\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot`). This formatting is different if `\chapter` is defined or
`\partlot` undefined.

`\c@pti` If `\chapter` is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or
`\l@pti` empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).
`\r@pti`

```

\@pti 3804 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\n@pti 3805 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3806 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
3807 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
3808 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3809 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}}%

```

`\@pti` But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more
`\n@pti` complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

3810 {%
3811 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}} \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

`\l@pti` For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3812 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@l{#1}]%
\@afterheading 3813 \else \@makehead@l{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\ptifont 3814 \def\@makehead@l#1{%
\@makehead@l 3815 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3816 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3817 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3818 }}

```

```

\l@pti For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3819 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@r{#1}]
\@makehead@r 3820 \else \@makehead@r{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 3821 \def\@makehead@r#1{%
\ptifont 3822 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3823 {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3824 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3825 }}

```

```

\c@pti For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3826 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]}%
\@makehead@c 3827 \else \@makehead@c{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 3828 \def\@makehead@c#1{%
\ptifont 3829 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3830 {\parindent \z@ \centering \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3831 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3832 }}%
3833 }

```

```

\l@pti By default, titles are on left:
\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 3834 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 3835 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilf 3836 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti \let\df@ptilt\l@pti
\do@ptilt
\df@ptilt

```

9.48 The ptc@verse environment

```

ptc@verse Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to
\ptc@verse the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and
\endptc@verse \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then
\ call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent,
\@centercr \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is
\list active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight
\itemsep option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to
\itemindent \ptcindent. \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break. The
\listparindent ptc@verse environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like
\topsep \ptcoffset).
\parsep
\parskip 3837 \def\ptc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
\partopsep 3838 \list{}}%
\ptcindent 3839 \topsep=\lex \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@
\iftightmtc 3840 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
\ifktightmtc 3841 \leftmargin=\ptcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin

```



```

3842 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
3843 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
3844 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}
3845 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}
3846 }%
3847 \item[]}
3848 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they should be placed after a `\part` command to produce a parttoc, a partlof or a partlot, and the formatting is different and depends on the availability of the `\chapter` command (for the fonts and the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The `\partlof` and `\partlot` commands are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` use page styles, because `\beforepart...` and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually a `\clear[double]page` command, and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a parttoc (no automatic parttoc). First, `\parttoc@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

3849 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[\parttoc@]{\parttoc@}{\parttoc@d}}

```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the parttoc file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 3850 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
3851 \global\@parttoc@used@true
3852 \if@mtc@longext@%
3853 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
3854 \else
3855 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
3856 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile
3857      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3858      \if@mtc@FE
3859      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3860          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3861      \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
3862      \else

```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```

3863      \beforeparttoc

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle
3864      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase
3865      \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
\ptctitle
3866      \thispageparttocstyle
3867      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}}%

```

`\do@ptitc` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```

\@pti
\@npti
\@cpti
3868      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@lpti
3869      \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\@e@pti
\@rpti
3870      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\@n@pti
\@dfpti
3871      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr
3872      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\@l@pti
\ptctitle
3873      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE
3874      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\@df@ptitc
3875      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage
3876      \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```

\parskip
\ptcfont
3877      \raggedright \reset@font\ptcfont \parskip=\z@ \parindent=\z@%
3878      \nopagebreak[4]\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3879      \par\noindent \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\ptc@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the parttoc.

```

\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptitc 3880      \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v 3881      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle 3882      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
\hline 3883      \end{tabular}%
3884      \else
3885      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3886      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\ \hline
3887      \end{tabular}%
3888      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position close the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
3889      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
3890      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
3891      \itemindent=\z@ \labelwidth=\z@ \labelsep=\z@ \listparindent=\z@

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `parttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

\c@parttocdepth
\mtc@BBR 3892      \begin{ptc@verse}{\ptc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
3893      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\ptc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke `\l@chapter` ignoring the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\ptc@setform`. Then the parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\closeparttoc
\@tocfile 3894 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 3895 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 3896 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
3897     {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3898 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
3899     {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
3900     \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}}{}
3901 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3902 \ptc@setform
3903 \openparttoc
3904 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3905 \closeparttoc

```

```

3906 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
3907 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3908 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
3909 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

```

\ptc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter
\mtc@zrule is not defined), and \afterparttoc.
samepage
\afterparttoc 3910 \kernafterparttoc
3911 \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3912 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3913 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
3914 \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

9.49.2 The \partlof command

`\partlof` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, `\partlof@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

3915 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\partlof@]{\partlof@d}}

```

```

\partlof@ The \partlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@partlof@used@ (for
\if@partlof@used@ a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the
\if@mtc@longext@ partlof file):
\@tocfile
\Thepart 3916 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
3917 \global\@partlof@used@true
3918 \if@mtc@longext@%
3919 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%
3920 \else
3921 \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
3922 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3923 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3924 \if@mtc@FE
3925 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3926 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3927 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
3928 \else

```

I0006

`\beforepartlof` If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```
3929 \beforepartlof
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:
`\@mkboth`

```
\thispagepartlofstyle 3930 \ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\MakeUppercase 3931 {\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plftitle 3932 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
3933 \thispagepartlofstyle
3934 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
3935 }%
```

`\do@ptilf` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti 3936 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 3937 \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\e@pti
\r@pti 3938 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\n@pti
\df@pti 3939 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 3940 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\plftitle 3941 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 3942 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\df@ptilf
samepage 3943 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
3944 \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\e@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```
\parskip
\plffont
3945 \raggedright
3946 \parskip=\z@%
3947 \reset@font\plffont%
```

`\plf@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlof.

```
\ptifont
\do@ptilf 3948 \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 3949 \nolimits[4]%
\plftitle 3950 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nolimits[4]%
\hline 3951 \par\noindent
3952 \ifx\plf@rule\relax
3953 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3954 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
```

```

3955      \end{tabular}%
3956      \else
3957      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3958      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\ \hline
3959      \mtc@hstrut\\
3960      \end{tabular}%
3961      \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
 \mtc@BBR
 \ptcindent

```

3962      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
3963      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
3964      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3965      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

ptc@verse We enter in a ptc@verse environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to partlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.
 \plfoffset
 \mtc@BBR

```

3966      \begin{ptc@verse}{\plfoffset}%
3967      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3968      {\c@lofdepth=\c@partlofdepth
3969      \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3970      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\plf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
 \@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
 \@undottedtocline are activated via \plf@setform. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
 \plf@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
 \openpartlof

```

\closepartlof 3971 \beginngroup
  \@tocfile 3972 \makeatletter
  \mtc@strut 3973 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
  ptc@verse 3974 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
  3975 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  3976 \plf@setform
  3977 \openpartlof
  3978 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  3979 \closepartlof
  3980 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
  3981 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
  3982 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
  3983 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\plf@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterpartlof`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.

`\mtc@zrule`

`samepage`

```

\afterpartlof 3984      \kernafterpartlof
                3985      \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
                3986      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
                3987      \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
                3988      \afterpartlof\fi

```

9.49.3 The `\partlot` command

`\partlot` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, `\partlot@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

3989 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\partlot@}{\partlot@d}}

```

`\partlot@` The `\partlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

`\if@partlot@used@`

`\if@mtc@longext@`

`\@tocfile`

`\Thepart`

```

3990 %
3991 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
3992 \global\@partlot@used@true
3993 \if@mtc@longext@%
3994   \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
3995 \else
3996   \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
3997 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

I0006

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3998      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
                3999      \if@mtc@FE
                4000      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
                4001      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
                4002      \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
                4003      \else

```

`\beforepartlot` If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlot`, of course:

```

4004      \beforepartlot

```

```

\mtc@markboth If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:
  \@mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 4005 \ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\MakeUppercase 4006 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plttitle 4007 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
4008 \thispagepartlotstyle
4009 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
4010 }%

```

```

\do@ptilt A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the
  \e@pti partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.
  \n@pti
  \c@pti 4011 \relax\begin{samepage}%
  \l@pti 4012 \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\e@pti
  \r@pti 4013 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\n@pti
  \df@pti 4014 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4015 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
\plttitle 4016 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4017 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@ptilt
4018 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
  samepage 4019 \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\e@pti\relax\fi

```

```

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot,
  \parskip then we set the font:
  \pltfont
4020 \raggedright
4021 \parskip=\z@%
4022 \reset@font\pltfont%
4023 \parindent=\z@%
4024 \nopagebreak[4]%
4025 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
4026 \par\noindent

```

```

\plt@rule The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
  tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\columnwidth the partlot.
  \ptifont
\do@ptilt 4027 \ifx\plt@rule\relax
  \mtc@v 4028 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 4029 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
  \hline 4030 \end{tabular}%
4031 \else
4032 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4033 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
4034 \mtc@hstrut\\
4035 \end{tabular}%
4036 \fi

```


`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:
`\ptcindent`

```

4037      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4038      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4039      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4040      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is
`\pltoffset` forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
`\mtc@BBR`

```

4041      \begin{ptc@verse}{\pltoffset}%
4042      \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4043      {\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
4044       \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4045      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its
`\@dottedtocline` undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat`
`\@undottedtocline` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
`\plt@setform` before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
`\openpartlot`

```

\closepartlot 4046 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4047 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4048 \ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
ptc@verse 4049 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4050 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4051 \plt@setform
4052 \openpartlot
4053 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4054 \closepartlot
4055 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4056 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4057 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4058 \end{ptc@verse}%
```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter`
`\mtc@zrule` is not defined), and `\afterpartlot`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.
`samepage`

```

\afterpartlot 4059 \kernafterpartlot
4060 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4061 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4062 \par\ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4063 \afterpartlot\fi}
```

9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

`\@dottedtocline` The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These commands are similar to `\l@subsection`, only the arguments have been altered:

```

\l@xpart
\l@pchapter
\l@psect
\pchapter
\psect
4064 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect 4065 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4066 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4067 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
4068 \def\psect{psect}
```

9.51 Patching the `\part` command, continued

`\sv@part` We patch both branches of the `\part` command: `\@part` (unstarred `\part`) and `\@spart` (`\part*`). We add the incrementation of the `ptc` counter to both branches. In the unstarred branch, we add `xpart` entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we add a `\partbegin` line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real (`\relax`).

```

\sv@spart
\mtc@svpart
\@part
\addtocontents
\sv@spart
\ptc@spart
\@spart
4069 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 4070 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]#2}\relax
\partbegin 4071 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend 4072 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
4073 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
4074 \stepcounter{ptc}
4075 \let\sv@spart\@spart
4076 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
4077 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
4078 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
4079 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
4080 \let\partend\relax
4081 \let\partbegin\relax
```

9.52 The `\doparttoc` command and its siblings

`\doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command works like the `\dominitoc` command, `\dopartlof` like `\dominiloof` and `\dopartlot` like `\dominilot`.

`\@doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `.ptc`(N)
`\PTC@next` files (`.ptc` becomes `.P` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4082 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
4083   \makeatletter
4084   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4085   \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlof` The `\dopartlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.plf`(N)
`\PLF@next` files (`.plf` becomes `.G` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4086 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
4087   \makeatletter
4088   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4089   \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\@dopartlot` The `\dopartlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.plt`(N)
`\PLT@next` files (`.plt` becomes `.U` on MS-DOS).
`\setcounter`

```
4090 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
4091   \makeatletter
4092   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4093   \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\doparttoc` We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dopartlof`

```
\dopartlot 4094 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
\@ifnextchar 4095 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
4096 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}
```

`\doparttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\doparttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\if@doparttoc@used@`
`\@mtc@hints@given@true` 4097 \def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
`\df@ptitc` 4098 \if@mtc@hints@
`\e@pti` 4099 \if@doparttoc@used@
`\n@pti` 4100 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
`\c@pti` 4101 {The \string\doparttoc \space command
`\l@pti` 4102 \MessageBreak
`\r@pti` 4103 has been invoked more than once
4104 \MessageBreak}
4105 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4106 \fi
4107 \fi
4108 \global\@doparttoc@used@true
4109 \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\e@pti%

```

4110 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
4111 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
4112 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
4113 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
4114 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4115 \@@doparttoc}

```

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true 4116 \def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
\df@ptilf 4117 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4118 \if@dopartlof@used@
\n@pti 4119 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4120 {The \string\dopartlof \space command
\l@pti 4121 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4122 has been invoked more than once
4123 \MessageBreak}
4124 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4125 \fi
4126 \fi
4127 \global\@dopartlof@used@true
4128 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\@pti%
4129 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
4130 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
4131 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
4132 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
4133 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4134 \@@dopartlof}

```

We treat the optional argument of `\dopartlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true 4135 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 4136 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4137 \if@dopartlot@used@
\n@pti 4138 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4139 {The \string\dopartlot \space command
\l@pti 4140 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4141 has been invoked more than once
4142 \MessageBreak}
4143 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4144 \fi
4145 \fi
4146 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
4147 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\@pti%
4148 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
4149 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
4150 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
4151 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%

```

We treat the optional argument of `\dopartlot` (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

4152 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4153 \@@dopartlot}

```

```

\@@doparttoc  These macros invoke the @dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
\@@dopartlof  file descriptor.
\@@dopartlot
  \tf@mtc 4154 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4155 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
          4156 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

```

\PTC@next  Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
\PTC@list
\PTC@loop  4157 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          4158   \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
          4159   \PTC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\PTC@toc  Check if the list is empty:
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist  4160 \def\PTC@toc{%
          4161   \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}

```

```

\PTC@contentsline  The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
  \part           esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
  \theptc         created.
  \tf@mtc
  \ptcname 4162 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4163   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
          4164     \stepcounter{ptc}%
          4165     \if@mtc@longext@%
          4166       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4167       {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
          4168       \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
          4169     \else
          4170       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4171       {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
          4172       \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
          4173     \fi
          4174     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          4175     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
          4176     \fi
          4177     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
          4178       \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

I0033

`\if@mtc@longext@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
`\ptcname` it:

```

4179 \if@mtc@longext@%
4180 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4181 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4182 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4183 \else
4184 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4185 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
4186 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
4187 \fi
4188 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4189 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
4190 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```

4191 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters,
`\chapter` sections, etc.:

```

\pchapter
\section 4192 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
\coffee 4193 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subsection 4194 \fi
\subsubsection 4195 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
\paragraph 4196 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 4197 \fi
4198 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
4199 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
4200 \fi
4201 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4202 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4203 \fi
4204 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
4205 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
4206 \fi
4207 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
4208 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4209 \fi
4210 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4211 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4212 \fi
4213 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4214 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4215 \fi
4216 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4217 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4218 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` And for the starred sectionning commands:

```

\starchapter
\starsection 4219 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 4220 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubsubsection 4221 \fi
\starparagraph 4222 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starsubparagraph 4223 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4224 \fi
4225 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
4226 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4227 \fi
4228 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4229 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4230 \fi
4231 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
4232 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4233 \fi
4234 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
4235 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4236 \fi
4237 }
```

`\PTC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\PTC@next` to process the first one:

`\PTC@next`

`\PTC@list`

```
4238 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}
```

`\PTC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

`\PTC@toc`

`\PTC@read`

```

4239 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4240 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4241 \mtcPackageWarning[W0013]{minitoc}%
4242 {No file #1
4243 \MessageBreak
4244 PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
4245 \expandafter\PTC@toc
4246 \else
4247 \mtcPackageInfo[I0025]{minitoc}%
4248 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
4249 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}
```

`\PTC@read` Read the next entry of the .toc file.

`\PTC@line`

```

4250 \def\PTC@read{%
4251 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line
```

W0013

I0025

\PTC@test The make sure that \PTC@test has enough arguments:
 \PTC@line

```
4252 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line. . . . .\PTC@%
4253 }%
```

\PTC@test The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
 \mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
 \PTC@list the next file in the list.

```
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read 4254 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{%
\partend 4255 \ifx#1\contentsline
4256 \let\mtc@string\string
4257 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4258 \let\mtc@string\relax
4259 \else\ifx#1\@input
4260 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
4261 \else\ifx#1\partend
4262 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4263 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4264 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4265 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4266 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4267 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
4268 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

```

9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

\PLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\PLF@list
\PLF@loop 4269 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4270 \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
4271 \PLF@loop{#1}}
```

\PLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

```
\PLF@list
\PLF@explist 4272 \def\PLF@lof{%
4273 \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}
```



```

\PLF@contentsline The macro \PLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects inter-
  \part           esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
  \theptc         created.
  \tf@mtc
  \plfname 4274 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\PLF@WriteContentsLine 4275 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
  4276 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
  \plfname it:

```

I0033

```

4277 \if@mtc@longext@%
4278 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4279 {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4280 \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4281 \else
4282 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4283 {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
4284 \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
4285 \fi
4286 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4287 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
4288 \fi

```

```

\figure The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\subfigure we filter the relevant contents lines:
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4289 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
4290 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4291 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
4292 \fi
4293 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
4294 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4295 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfs}{#3}{#4}%
4296 \fi
4297 }

```

```

\PLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \PLF@next to
  \PLF@next process the first one:
  \PLF@list
  4298 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

```

\PLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
  \PLF@lof process the next entry in the list.
  \PLF@read

```

W0011

I0035

```

4299 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4300   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4301     \mtcPackageWarning[W0011]{minitoc}%
4302     {No file #1
4303       \MessageBreak
4304       PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4305   \expandafter\PLF@lof
4306 \else
4307   \mtcPackageInfo[I0035]{minitoc}%
4308   {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
4309   \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}

```

\PLF@read Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\PLF@line

```

4310 \def\PLF@read{%
4311   \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line

```

\PLF@test The make sure that \PLF@test has enough arguments:

\PLF@line

```

4312   \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line. . . . \PLF@%
4313 }%

```

\PLF@test The \PLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

\PLF@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\PLF@list the next file in the list.
\PLF@lof
\PLF@read 4314 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{%
\partend 4315   \ifx#1\contentsline
4316     \let\mtc@string\string
4317     \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4318     \let\mtc@string\relax
4319   \else\ifx#1\@input
4320     \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
4321   \else\ifx#1\partend
4322     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4323     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4324   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4325     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4326     \fi\fi\fi\fi
4327   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
4328   \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%

```

9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

`\PLT@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

`\PLT@list`

```
\PLT@loop 4329 \def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          4330   \edef\PLT@list{#2}%
          4331   \PLT@loop{#1}}
```

`\PLT@lot` Check if the list is empty:

`\PLT@list`

```
\PLT@explist 4332 \def\PLT@lot{%
          4333   \ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}
```

`\PLT@contentsline` The macro `\PLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlot file is created.

`\tf@mtc`

`\plname` 4334 `\def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%`

```
\PLT@WriteContentsLine 4335   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
          4336   \stepcounter{ptc}%
```

`\if@mtc@longext@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

`\plname`

```
          4337   \if@mtc@longext@%
          4338     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4339     {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
          4340     \def\plname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
          4341   \else
          4342     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          4343     {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
          4344     \def\plname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
          4345   \fi
          4346   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          4347   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plname
          4348   \fi
```

I0033

`\table` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

`\subtable`

`\mtc@toks`

```
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4349   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
          4350     \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
          4351     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
          4352   \fi
          4353   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
```

```

4354 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4355 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
4356 \fi
4357 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:
 \PLT@next
 \PLT@list

```

4358 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}

```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \PLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
 \PLT@read

W0012
I0038

```

4359 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4360 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4361 \mtcPackageWarning[W0012]{minitoc}%
4362 {No file #1
4363 \MessageBreak
4364 PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4365 \expandafter\PLT@lot
4366 \else
4367 \mtcPackageInfo[I0038]{minitoc}%
4368 {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
4369 \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}

```

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```

4370 \def\PLT@read{%
4371 \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line

```

\PLT@test The make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

\PLT@line

```

4372 \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line.....\PLT@%
4373 }%

```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.
 \mtc@string
 \PLT@list
 \PLT@lot
 \PLT@read
 \partend

```

4374 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{%
4375   \ifx#1\contentsline
4376     \let\mtc@string\string
4377     \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4378     \let\mtc@string\relax
4379   \else\ifx#1\@input
4380     \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
4381   \else\ifx#1\partend
4382     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4383     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4384   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4385     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4386     \fi\fi\fi\fi
4387   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
4388   \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 321):

```

4389 }%

```

9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create new counters for the depths of the corresponding mini-tables: `sectlofdepth` and `sectlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\setcounter
4390 \AtBeginDocument{%
4391   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4392   {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
4393   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4394   {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
4395 }%

```

9.54 Section-level commands

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The section-level commands are defined only if `\chapter` is *not* defined, hence in article-like document classes, and only if `\section` is defined:

```

4396 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \if@mtc@section@def@

```

```

\firstsectionis We define the obsolete command \firstsectionis (with its harmless warning), the counter
\adjuststc stc of secttocs, the \adjuststc, \decrementstc and \incrementstc commands, the
\decrementstc depth counter secttocdepth and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections),
\incrementstc the horizontal rule \stc@rule (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both
\stc@rule sides) \stcindent for the secttocs (with its default values).
\stcindent
\columnwidth 4397 \def\firstsectionis#1{\mtcPackageWarning[W0005]{minitoc}%
4398 {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
4399 \MessageBreak
4400 command}%
4401 \@firstsectionis@used@true}
4402 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
4403 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
4404 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
4405 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
4406 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
4407 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
4408 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

W0005

9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4409 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 4410 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 4411 \let\stcSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 4412 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 4413 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 4414 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 4415 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont 4416 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
4417 \let\sltSfont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
4418 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles

```

9.56 Internal macros for title positioning

```

\l@sti Some internal macros for title positioning, from the optional arguments of \dosecttoc and
\c@sti \secttoc commands (and siblings). Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a
\r@sti vertical correction for empty titles, from Frank MITTELBACH):
\e@sti
\n@sti 4419 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
4420 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
4421 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
4422 \def\e@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
4423 \def\n@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\do@stitle By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stitle
\do@stilf 4424 \let\do@stitle\l@sti
\df@stilf 4425 \let\df@stitle\l@sti
\do@stilt 4426 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
\df@stilt 4427 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
\l@sti 4428 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
4429 \let\df@stilt\l@sti

```

9.57 The stc@verse environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored. The `stc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\stcoffset`).

```

4430 \def\stc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
4431 \list{}}%
4432 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \topsep=1ex
4433 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
4434 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
4435 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
4436 \leftmargin=\stcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
4437 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}%
4438 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}%
4439 }%
4440 \item[]}%
4441 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.58 The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands

These three commands are very similar.

9.58.1 The \secttoc command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4442 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\secttoc@}{\secttoc@d}}

```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the `\if@mtc@longext@` secttoc file):

```
\@tocfile
\thestic 4443 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
4444 \global\@secttoc@used@true
4445 \if@mtc@longext@%
4446 \def\@tocfile{stc\thestic}%
4447 \else
4448 \def\@tocfile{S\thestic}%
4449 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

I0006

```
\@tocfile
4450 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4451 \if@mtc@FE
4452 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4453 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4454 \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
4455 \else
```

`\beforesecttoc` If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
4456 \beforesecttoc
4457 \thispagesecttocstyle
```

`\do@sttc` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, `\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```
\n@sti
\c@sti 4458 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
\l@sti 4459 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\r@sti 4460 \if #1e\let\do@sttc\e@sti
\df@sti 4461 \else\if #1n\let\do@sttc\n@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4462 \else\if #1c\let\do@sttc\c@sti
\stctitle 4463 \else\if #1l\let\do@sttc\l@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4464 \else\if #1r\let\do@sttc\r@sti
samepage 4465 \else\if #1d\let\do@sttc\df@sttc
4466 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4467 \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@sttc\e@sti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc, `\parskip` then we set the font: `\stcfont`


```

4468     \raggedright
4469     \parskip=\z@%
4470     \reset@font\stcfont%
4471     \parindent=\z@%
4472     \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.

```

\stifont
\do@sttc 4473     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4474     \par\noindent
\stctitle 4475     \nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4476     \ifx\stc@rule\relax
4477         \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4478         \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
4479         \end{tabular}%
4480     \else
4481     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4482     \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
4483     \end{tabular}%
4484     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\stcindent
4485     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4486     \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4487     \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4488     \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\stc@tocdepth
\c@secttocdepth 4489     \begin{stc@verse}{\stc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
\mtc@BBR 4490     \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\stc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\opensecttoc
\closesecttoc 4491 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4492     \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4493     \stc@setform%
stc@verse

```

```

4494 \ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
4495 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4496 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4497 \stc@setform%
4498 \opensecttoc
4499 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4500 \closesecttoc
4501 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
4502 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4503 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4504 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
samepage
\aftersecttoc 4505 \kernaftersecttoc
4506 \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\@null\leavevmode\%
4507 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4508 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

9.58.2 The \sectlof command

\sectlof The \sectlof command must be used after \section if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of \minilof (but simpler). First, \sectlof detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4509 \def\sectlof{\ifnextchar[\sectlof@]{\sectlof@[d]}}

```

\sectlof@ The \sectlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestic 4510 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
4511 \global\@sectlof@used@true
4512 \if@mtc@longext@%
4513 \def\@tocfile{slf\thestic}%
4514 \else
4515 \def\@tocfile{H\thestic}%
4516 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not
`\if@mtc@FE` here or is empty:
`\@tocfile`

I0006

```

4517      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4518      \if@mtc@FE
4519      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4520          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4521      \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
4522      \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
`\thispagesectlofsty` code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4523      \thispagesectlofsty
4524      %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
4525      \beforesectlof

```

`\do@stilf` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.
`\n@sti`

```

      \c@sti 4526      \relax\begin{samepage}%
      \l@sti 4527      \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
      \r@sti 4528      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
      \df@sti 4529      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
      \mtc@CkStr 4530      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
      \slftitle 4531      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
      \if@mtc@FE 4532      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
      4533      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
      samepage 4534      \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof,
`\parskip` then we set the font:
`\slffont`

```

4535      \raggedright
4536      \parskip=\z@%
4537      \reset@font\slffont%
4538      \parindent=\z@%
4539      \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\slf@rule` The sectlof title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of
`\stifont` the sectlof.

```

\columnwidth
      \do@stilf 4540      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
      \mtc@v 4541      \par\noindent
      \slftitle
      \hline

```

```

4542 \ifx\slf@rule\relax
4543 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4544 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
4545 \end{tabular}%
4546 \else
4547 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4548 \mtc@hstrut
4549 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
4550 \end{tabular}%
4551 \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
 \mtc@BBR
 \stcindent

```

4552 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4553 \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4554 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4555 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced (locally) to sectlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
 \slfoffset
 \c@tocdepth
 \c@sectlofdepth 4556 \begin{stc@verse}{\slfoffset}%
 \mtc@BBR 4557 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
 4558 {\c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth
 4559 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
 4560 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
 \@dottedtocline are activated via \slf@setform. Then the sectlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
 \@undottedtocline the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
 \slf@setform
 \opensectlof

```

\closesectlof 4561 \begingroup
  \@tocfile 4562 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4563 \ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
  stc@verse 4564 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{%
  4565 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  4566 \slf@setform%
  4567 \opensectlof
  4568 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  4569 \closesectlof
  4570 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
  4571 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.
samepage
\aftersectlof 4572      \kernaftersectlof
                4573      \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
                4574      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
                4575      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%

```

9.58.3 The \sectlot command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlot (no automatic sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4576 \def\sectlot{\ifnextchar{\sectlot@}\sectlot@d}}
```

```

\sectlot@ The \sectlot@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlot@used@ (for a
\if@sectlot@used@ consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot
\if@mtc@longext@ file):
\@tocfile
\thestc 4577 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
        4578 \global\@sectlot@used@true
        4579 \if@mtc@longext@%
        4580 \def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%
        4581 \else
        4582 \def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%
        4583 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:
`\if@mtc@FE`
`\@tocfile`

```

4584      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4585      \if@mtc@FE
4586      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4587      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4588      \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
4589      \else

```

I0006

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:
`\thispagesectlotstyle`

```

4590      \thispagesectlotstyle
4591      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
4592      \beforesectlot

```

```

\do@stilt We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
\@sti we simulate the “e” positionning.
\n@sti
\c@sti 4593 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 4594 \if #1e\let\do@stilt\@sti
\r@sti 4595 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
\df@sti 4596 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4597 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\sltttitle 4598 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4599 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
samepage 4600 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4601 \mtc@CkStr{\sltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot,
\parskip then we set the font:
\sltfont
4602 \raggedright
4603 \parskip=\z@%
4604 \reset@font\sltfont%
4605 \parindent=\z@%
4606 \nopagebreak[4]%

\stc@rule The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\stifont the sectlot.
\columnwidth
\do@stilt 4607 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4608 \par\noindent
\sltttitle 4609 \ifx\stc@rule\relax
\hline 4610 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4611 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4612 \end{tabular}%
4613 \else
4614 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4615 \mtc@hstrut
4616 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4617 \end{tabular}%
4618 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
\mtc@BBR parameters:
\stcindent
4619 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4620 \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4621 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4622 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced (locally)
\c@tocdepth to sectlotdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR 4623 \begin{stc@verse}{\sltoffset}%
4624 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4625 {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
4626 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4627 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slt@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
\@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
\@undottedtocline are activated via \slt@setform. Then the sectlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
\slt@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
\opensectlot
\closesectlot 4628 \begingroup
\@tocfile 4629 \makeatletter
\mtc@strut 4630 \@ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
stc@verse 4631 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
4632 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
4633 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4634 \slt@setform%
4635 \opensectlot
4636 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4637 \closesectlot
4638 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4639 \end{stc@verse}%

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlot.
samepage
\aftersectlot 4640 \kernaftersectlof
4641 \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4642 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4643 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi%
```

9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

```

\l@xsect We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and
\@dottedtocline LOF and LOT files). The depth of xsect is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line
\l@schapter (except if you cheat).
\l@schapter
\l@schapter 4644 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4645 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4646 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4647 \def\xsect{xsect} \def\schapter{schapter}
```

9.60 Patching the `\section` command (continued)

`\@sect` We patch the both branches of the `\section` command: `\@sect` for the unstarred version and `\addcontentsline` `\@ssect` for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (`\@sect`), we add a `xsect` contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test `\ifnum #2=1` restricts the action to the section level macros (because `\@sect` is also used by `\subsection` and below, which have no mini-tables).

```
4648 \let\sv@sect\@sect
4649 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4650 \ifnum #2=1\relax
4651   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4652   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4653 \fi
4654 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
```

`\section` If it is a section (unstarred or starred via `\starsection`), we add a `xsect` entry in the LOF
`\starsection` and in the LOT.
`\addcontentsline`

```
4655 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
4656 \expandafter
4657 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
4658   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4659   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4660 \fi
4661 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
4662   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4663   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4664 \fi
```

`\@svsec` And the remainder of the section header formatting:
`\refstepcounter`
`\@tempskipa` 4665 `\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
`\@hangfrom` 4666 `\let\@svsec\@empty`
`\addcontentsline` 4667 `\else`
`\numberline` 4668 `\refstepcounter{#1}%`
`\@svsechd` 4669 `\edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%`
`\@xsect` 4670 `\fi`
4671 `\@tempskipa #5\relax`
4672 `\ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@`
4673 `\begingroup #6\relax`
4674 `\@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%`
4675 `{\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%`
4676 `\endgroup`
4677 `\csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline`
4678 `{toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
4679 `\else`
4680 `\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%`


```

4681             \fi
4682             #7}%
4683 \else
4684   \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
4685   \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
4686   {#7}\addcontentsline
4687   {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4688           \else
4689           \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}
4690           \fi
4691   #7}}%
4692 \fi
4693 \@xsect{#5}}

```

\@sect Then we patch the unstarred branch (\@sect). We define also the delimiting commands \sectbegin and \sectend commands. We do not add \sectbegin if it is a subsection or deeper.

```

\stc@sect
\addtocontents 4694 \let\stc@sect\@sect
4695 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4696   \ifnum #2<1 \relax
4697   \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
4698   \fi
4699   \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
4700 \let\sectend\relax
4701 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

9.61 The \dosecttoc command and siblings

The \dosecttoc command is very similar to \dominitoc.

\dosecttoc The \dosecttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .stc(N) files (.stc becomes .S on MS-DOS).

```

\STC@next
4702 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
4703   \makeatletter
4704   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4705   \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

\dosectlof The \dosectlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .slf(N) files (.slf becomes .H on MS-DOS).

```

\SLF@next
4706 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
4707   \makeatletter
4708   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4709   \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlot` The `\dosectlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.slt`(*N*) files (`.slt` becomes `.V` on MS-DOS).
`\@dosectlot`
`\PLT@next`

```
4710 \def\dosectlot#1{%
4711   \makeatletter
4712   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4713   \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` 4714 `\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}`
`\@ifnextchar` 4715 `\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}`
4716 `\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}`

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

I0045

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 4717 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stitle 4718 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 4719   \if@dosecttoc@used@
\n@sti 4720   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 4721   {The \string\dosecttoc \space command
\l@sti 4722   \MessageBreak
\r@sti 4723   has been invoked more than once
4724   \MessageBreak}
4725   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4726   \fi
4727 \fi
4728 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
4729 \if #1e\let\df@stitle\@sti%
4730 \else\if #1n\let\df@stitle\n@sti%
4731 \else\if #1c\let\df@stitle\c@sti%
4732 \else\if #1l\let\df@stitle\l@sti%
4733 \else\if #1r\let\df@stitle\r@sti%
4734 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4735 \@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

I0045

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 4736 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 4737 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 4738   \if@dosectlof@used@
\n@sti 4739   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 4740   {The \string\dosectlof \space command
\l@sti 4741   \MessageBreak
\r@sti 4742   has been invoked more than once
4743   \MessageBreak}
```

```

4744 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4745 \fi
4746 \fi
4747 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
4748 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\e@sti%
4749 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
4750 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
4751 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
4752 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
4753 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4754 \@@dosectlof}

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
 \if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

I0045

```

\if@dosectlot@used@ 4755 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
\df@stilt 4756 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 4757 \if@dosectlot@used@
\@sti 4758 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@sti 4759 {The \string\dosectlot \space command
\@sti 4760 \MessageBreak
\@sti 4761 has been invoked more than once
\@sti 4762 \MessageBreak}
4763 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4764 \fi
4765 \fi
4766 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
4767 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%
4768 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%
4769 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%
4770 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%
4771 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%
4772 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4773 \@@dosectlot}

```

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
 \@@dosectlof file descriptor.
 \@@dosectlot

```

\tf@mtc 4774 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4775 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4776 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

```

\STC@loop 4777 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4778 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
4779 \STC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\STC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\STC@list
\STC@explist 4780 \def\STC@toc{%
              4781   \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

\STC@contentsline The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4782 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\stcname 4783   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4784   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
              4785     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\stcname         it:

              4786   \if@mtc@longext@
              4787     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4788     {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
              4789     \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
              4790   \else
              4791     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4792     {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
              4793     \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
              4794   \fi
              4795   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              4796   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
              4797   \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline or
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline \MTC@WriteCoffeeline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\coffee 4798   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subsection 4799   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsubsection 4800     \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\paragraph 4801   \fi
\subparagraph 4802   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
              4803     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
              4804   \fi
              4805   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
              4806     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
              4807   \fi
              4808   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
              4809     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
              4810   \fi
              4811   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
              4812     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
              4813   \fi

```

I0033

`\starsection` A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:

```

\stepcounter
  \thetc 4814 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \arabic 4815 \stepcounter{stc}%
\if@mtc@longext@ 4816 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
  \stcname 4817 \if@mtc@longext@%
  \closeout 4818 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  \openout 4819 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  4820 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thetc}%
  4821 \else
  4822 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
  4823 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thetc}%
  4824 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thetc}%
  4825 \fi
  4826 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  4827 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
  4828 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 4829 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  \starparagraph 4830 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 4831 \fi
  4832 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  4833 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
  4834 \fi
  4835 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
  4836 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
  4837 \fi
  4838 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
  4839 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
  4840 \fi
  4841 }

```

`\STC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\STC@next` to process the first one.

```

\STC@next
\STC@list
4842 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

`\STC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\STC@read
4843 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4844 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4845 \mtcPackageWarning[W0016]{minitoc}%
4846 {No file #1
4847 \MessageBreak
4848 SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%

```

W0016

I0026

```

4849 \expandafter\STC@toc
4850 \else
4851 \mtcPackageInfo[I0026]{minitoc}%
4852 {PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM #1}%
4853 \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```

\STC@line
4854 \def\STC@read{%
4855 \read\inputcheck to\STC@line

```

\STC@test The make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

```

\STC@line
4856 \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line. . . . \STC@%
4857 }%

```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

```

\mtc@string
\STC@list 4858 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{%
\STC@toc 4859 \ifx#1\contentsline
\STC@read 4860 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4861 \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4862 \let\mtc@string\relax
4863 \else\ifx#1\@input
4864 \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
4865 \else\ifx#1\sectend
4866 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4867 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4868 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4869 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4870 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4871 \ifeof\inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
4872 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%

```

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```

\SLF@list
\SLF@loop 4873 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4874 \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
4875 \SLF@loop{#1}}

```

```

\SLF@lof    Check if the list is empty:
\SLF@list
\SLF@explist 4876 \def\SLF@lof{%
              4877   \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}

```

```

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is
\section          found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4878 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\slfname 4879   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4880   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
                        4881   \stepcounter{stc}%

```

```

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\slfname         it:

```

I0033

```

4882   \if@mtc@longext@%
4883     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4884     {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
4885     \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
4886   \else
4887     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4888     {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
4889     \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
4890   \fi
4891   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4892   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
4893 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\MTC@WriteContentsline we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

```

\figure
\subfigure 4894   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
            4895   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
            4896   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
            4897   \fi
            4898   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
            4899   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
            4900   \fi
            4901 }

```

```

\SLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \SLF@next to
\SLF@next     process the first one.
\SLF@list

```

```

4902 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

\SLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \SLF@lof process the next entry in the list.

W0014

I0036

```
\SLF@read
4903 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4904   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4905     \mtcPackageWarning[W0014]{minitoc}%
4906       {No file #1
4907         \MessageBreak
4908         SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4909     \expandafter\SLF@lof
4910   \else
4911     \mtcPackageInfo[I0036]{minitoc}%
4912       {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
4913     \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}
```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:

```
\SLF@test
\SLF@line 4914 \def\SLF@read{%
4915   \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
4916   \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF@%
4917   }%
```

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit
 \SLF@contentsline sections;

```
\mtc@string
\SLF@list 4918 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{%
\SLF@lof 4919   \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 4920     \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4921     \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4922     \let\mtc@string\relax
4923     \else\ifx#1\@input
4924       \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
4925     \else\ifx#1\sectend
4926       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4927       \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4928     \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4929       \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4930     \fi\fi\fi\fi
4931     \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
4932     \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%
```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\SLT@list
\SLT@loop 4933 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4934   \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
4935   \SLT@loop{#1}}
```



```

\SLT@lot    Check if the list is empty:
\SLT@list
\SLT@explist 4936 \def\SLT@lot{%
              4937   \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is
\section         found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4938 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\sltname 4939   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4940   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
              4941     \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\sltname         it:

              4942   \if@mtc@longext@%
              4943     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4944       {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
              4945     \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
              4946   \else
              4947     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
              4948       {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
              4949     \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
              4950   \fi
              4951   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
              4952   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
              4953   \fi

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\MTC@WriteContentsline we filter the relevant contents lines:
\table
\subtable 4954   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
              4955   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
              4956     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
              4957   \fi
              4958   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
              4959     \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
              4960   \fi
              4961 }

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to
\SLT@next     process the first one.
\SLT@list
              4962 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

I0033

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
 \SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
 \SLT@read

W0015
I0039

```

4963 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4964   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4965     \mtcPackageWarning[W0015]{minitoc}%
4966       {No file #1
4967         \MessageBreak
4968         SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4969     \expandafter\SLT@lot
4970   \else
4971     \mtcPackageInfo[I0039]{minitoc}%
4972       {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
4973     \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\SLT@read The make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:
 \SLT@test
 \SLT@line 4974 \def\SLT@read{%
 4975 \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
 4976 \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@%
 4977 }%

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
 \SLT@contentsline sections;

```

\mtc@string
\SLT@list 4978 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{%
\SLT@lot 4979   \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 4980     \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4981     \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4982     \let\mtc@string\relax
4983   \else\ifx#1\@input
4984     \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
4985   \else\ifx#1\sectend
4986     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4987     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4988   \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4989     \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4990   \fi\fi\fi\fi
4991   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
4992   \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{section}`, the *true* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{chapter}` and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```
4993 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
4994 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
```

9.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

```
\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 4995 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\{\mtcprepare@\}\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 4996 \def\mtcprepare@[#1]{%
  \jobname 4997 \@ifundefined{part}}}%
  \doparttoc 4998 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}}}%
  \dopartlof 4999 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}}}%
  \dopartlot 5000 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}}}%
  \dominitoc 5001 }%
  \dominilof 5002 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
  \dominilot 5003   \@ifundefined{section}}}%
  \dosecttoc 5004   {%
  \dosectlof 5005 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}}}%
  \dosectlot 5006 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}}}%
  \dosectlot 5007 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}}}%
\mtcPackageInfo 5008   }%
  5009 }}%
  5010 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}}}%
  5011 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}}}%
  5012 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}}}%
  5013 }%
  5014 \if@mtc@hints@
  5015   \@mtc@hints@given@true
  5016   \mtcPackageInfo[I0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
  5017     {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
  5018       \MessageBreak
  5019       hints about the preparation commands,
  5020       \MessageBreak
  5021       because it invokes ALL the preparation
  5022       \MessageBreak
  5023       commands allowed by the document class,
  5024       \MessageBreak
  5025       without any previous check\@gobble}%
  5026 \fi
  5027 }
```

I0048

9.64 Use with `\nofiles`

`\nofiles` In case the document uses the `\nofiles` command (in its preamble), the auxiliary files for the mini-tables should not be overwritten by the preparation commands, so these ones must be just faked; as these commands may have an optional argument, they will be faked using the internal \LaTeX macro `\@ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`. Problem signaled by Andreas DEININGER.

```
5028 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

`\AtBeginDocument` A test is placed in a `\AtBeginDocument` and gives a warning if `\nofiles` is used:

```
\if@filesw
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 5029 \AtBeginDocument{\if@filesw\relax\else
5030     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0098]{minitoc}%
5031     {--- You have used the \string\nofiles\space command
5032     \MessageBreak
5033     in your preamble; all preparation commands
5034     \MessageBreak
5035     in the body of the document will be ignored}}
```

Since `\nofiles` has been used, we must disable all the preparation commands:

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for part level mini-tables:

```
\doparttoc
\dopartlof 5036 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dopartlot 5037 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
5038 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
```

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for chapter level mini-tables:

```
\dominitoc
\dominilof 5039 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 5040 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
5041 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
```

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for section level mini-tables:

```
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 5042 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 5043 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
5044 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
```

```

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
5045 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

End of the inhibition of the preparation commands and of the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
5046 \fi}
```

9.65 Necessary \l@... commands

```

\l@listof  Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
\l@starpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection 5047 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
\l@starsubsection 5048 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
\l@starsubsubsection 5049 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starparagraph 5050 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starsubparagraph 5051 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
                    5052 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
                    5053 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
                    5054 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
                    5055 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

9.66 The horizontal rules and their default values

```

\columnwidth We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the various
\noptcrule kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding hor-
\nomtcrule izontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules. We begin with rules for mini-tables of
\nostcrule contents.
\ptcrule
\ptc@rule 5056 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\mtcrule 5057 \def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\mtc@rule 5058 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\stcrule 5059 \def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\stc@rule 5060 \def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
                    5061 \def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
                    5062 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
                    5063 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
                    5064 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

```

\columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of figures:
\noplfrule
\nomlfrule 5065 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
\noslfrule 5066 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
\plfrule 5067 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\plf@rule 5068 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlf@rule 5069 \def\mlf@rule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\slf@rule 5070 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5071 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5072 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5073 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

\columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of tables:
\nopltrule
\nomltrule 5074 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
\nosltrule 5075 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
\pltrule 5076 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
\plt@rule 5077 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mltrule 5078 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\slt@rule 5079 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5080 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5081 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5082 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

9.67 The `\mtcset...` commands

These commands¹¹ have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

9.67.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

¹¹The general concept of the `\mtcset...` commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.

`\@namedef` We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
5083 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
5084 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
5085 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
5086 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
5087 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
5088 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
5089 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
5090 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
5091 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

`\@namedef` Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
5092 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
5093 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
5094 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
5095 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
5096 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
5097 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
5098 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
5099 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
5100 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms¹² and meaning false or true¹³:

```
5101 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
5102 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
5103 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
5104 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
5105 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
5106 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
5107 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
5108 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
5109 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
5110 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
5111 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
5112 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
5113 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
5114 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
5115 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
5116 \@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
5117 %
5118 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{}\def\mtc@YN@on{}
5119 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{}\def\mtc@YN@ON{}
```

¹²This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter\csname ... \endcsname`.

¹³O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

```

5120 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{}\def\mtc@YN@yes{}
5121 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{}\def\mtc@YN@YES{}
5122 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{}\def\mtc@YN@y{}
5123 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{}\def\mtc@YN@Y{}
5124 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{}\def\mtc@YN@true{}
5125 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{}
5126 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{}\def\mtc@YN@t{}
5127 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{}\def\mtc@YN@T{}
5128 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{}
5129 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{}
5130 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{}\def\mtc@YN@v{}
5131 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{}\def\mtc@YN@V{}
5132 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{}
5133 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{}\def\mtc@YN@oui{}
5134 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{}\def\mtc@YN@O{}
5135 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{}\def\mtc@YN@o{}
5136 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{}
5137 \@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{}

```

9.67.2 The `\mtcsetfont` command

`\@namedef` We define the sectionning level keywords (note that `part` is not a member of this family (`sectlevel`), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, `part` being the highest sectionning level); “*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

5138 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
5139 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
5140 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
5141 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
5142 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
5143 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
5144 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
5145 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{}\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{}
5146 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{}\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{}
5147 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{S}
5148 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{S}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`, the *level-name* is a sectionning level like `subsection` (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [245] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5149 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
5150 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family. The `\if@mtc@setfont@` result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`. `\@nameuse`

E0013

```
5151 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5152 \@mtc@setfont@true
5153 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5154   \@mtc@setfont@false
5155   \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5156   \mtcPackageError[E0013]{minitoc}%
5157     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
5158       \MessageBreak
5159       (#1).
5160       \MessageBreak
5161       It should be a mini-table type
5162       \MessageBreak
5163       (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5164   {Correct the source code.
5165     \MessageBreak
5166     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5167 \else
5168   \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5169 \fi
```

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph keyword, we get SP. `\if@mtc@setfont@` `\@nameuse`

E0014

```
5170 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5171 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
5172   \@mtc@setfont@false
5173   \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5174   \mtcPackageError[E0014]{minitoc}%
5175     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
5176       \MessageBreak
5177       (#2).
5178       \MessageBreak
5179       It should be a sectionning level
5180       \MessageBreak
```

```

5181      (part...subparagraph) or * }%
5182      {Correct the source code.
5183      \MessageBreak
5184      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5185 \else
5186   \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
5187 \fi

```

```

\mtc@tmp@name Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev 5188 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

```

Example: if #1 is minitoc and #2 is subsection, we get mtcSSfont, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a \csname ... \endcsname pair to apply the constructed command).

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the
mini-table, and the kind14 of the entry must be consistent with that of the mini-table), so we
must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (quarks) with
@mtcqk at the end of their names).

```

```

5189 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
5190 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
5191 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}
5192 \def\partlof@mtcqk{partlof@mtcqk}
5193 \def\minilof@mtcqk{minilof@mtcqk}
5194 \def\sectlof@mtcqk{sectlof@mtcqk}
5195 \def\partlot@mtcqk{partlot@mtcqk}
5196 \def\minilot@mtcqk{minilot@mtcqk}
5197 \def\sectlot@mtcqk{sectlot@mtcqk}
5198 \def\part@mtcqk{part@mtcqk}
5199 \def\chapter@mtcqk{chapter@mtcqk}
5200 \def\appendix@mtcqk{appendix@mtcqk}
5201 \def\section@mtcqk{section@mtcqk}
5202 \def\subsection@mtcqk{subsection@mtcqk}
5203 \def\subsubsection@mtcqk{subsubsection@mtcqk}
5204 \def\paragraph@mtcqk{paragraph@mtcqk}
5205 \def\subparagraph@mtcqk{subparagraph@mtcqk}
5206 \def\figure@mtcqk{figure@mtcqk}
5207 \def\table@mtcqk{table@mtcqk}
5208 \def\subfigure@mtcqk{subfigure@mtcqk}
5209 \def\subtable@mtcqk{subtable@mtcqk}
5210 \@mtc@setfont@true
5211 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\parttoc@mtcqk\relax
5212   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5213   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5214   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5215   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

¹⁴ “Kind” being sectionning, (sub-)figure, or (sub-)table.

```

5216 \fi
5217 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlof@mtcck\relax
5218   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5219   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5220 \fi
5221 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlot@mtcck\relax
5222   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5223   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5224 \fi
5225 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minitoc@mtcck\relax
5226   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5227   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5228   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5229   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5230   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5231   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5232   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5233 \fi
5234 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
5235   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5236   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5237   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5238   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5239   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5240 \fi
5241 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilot@mtcck\relax
5242   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5243   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5244   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5245   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5246   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5247 \fi
5248 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
5249   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5250   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5251   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5252   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5253   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5254   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5255   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5256   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5257 \fi
5258 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
5259   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5260   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5261   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5262   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5263   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5264   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5265 \fi
5266 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
5267   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5268   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5269   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

```

5270 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5271 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5272 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5273 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed
 \mtc@tmp@name macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of \mtcsetfont and we log
 \mtc@mta@abbrev that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*); if the
 \mtc@level@abbrev combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.
 \mtc@toks

I0015
E0024

```

5274 \if@mtc@setfont@
5275 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
5276 \mtc@toks{#3}
5277 \mtcPackageInfo[I0015]{minitoc}%
5278 {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
5279 \MessageBreak
5280 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5281 \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5282 \else
5283 \mtcPackageError[E0024]{minitoc}%
5284 {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
5285 \MessageBreak
5286 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5287 {Correct the source code.
5288 \MessageBreak
5289 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5290 \fi}

```

9.67.3 The \mtcsetttitlefont command

\mtcsetttitlefont This command is very similar to the \mtcsetfont command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetttitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

\if@mtc@setttitlefont@ The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [245] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5291 \newif\if@mtc@setttitlefont@\@mtc@setttitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsettitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
5292 \newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetitle` family, then the result is stored
`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

E0022

```
5293 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5294 \@mtc@settitlefont@true
5295 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
5296   \mtc@settitlefont@false
5297   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5298   \mtcPackageError[E0022]{minitoc}%
5299     {\string\mtcsettitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
5300      \MessageBreak
5301      (#1).
5302      \MessageBreak
5303      It should be a mini-table type
5304      \MessageBreak
5305      (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5306   {Correct the source code.
5307    \MessageBreak
5308    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5309 \else
5310   \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
5311 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:
`\mtc@tmptf@name`

I0018

E0034

```
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 5312 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
\mtc@toks 5313   \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
5314   \mtc@toks{#2}%
5315   \mtcPackageInfo[I0018]{minitoc}%
5316   {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
5317    \MessageBreak
5318    "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
5319    \MessageBreak
5320    "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5321   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5322 \else
5323   \mtcPackageError[E0034]{minitoc}%
5324   {The macro \string\mtcsettitlefont\space uses
5325    \MessageBreak
5326    an illegal type of table (#1)}}%
5327   {Correct the source code.
5328    \MessageBreak
5329    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5330 \fi
5331 }
```

9.67.4 The `\mtcsettitle` command

`\mtcsettitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5332 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
5333 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in

E0021

`\if@mtc@settitle@` `\mtc@mtati@abbrev:`

`\@nameuse`

```
5334 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5335 \@mtc@settitle@true
5336 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5337   \@mtc@settitle@false
5338   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5339   \mtcPackageError[E0021]{minitoc}%
5340     {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
5341       \MessageBreak
5342       (#1).
5343       \MessageBreak
5344       It should be a mini-table type
5345       \MessageBreak
5346       (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5347     {Correct the source code.
5348       \MessageBreak
5349       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5350 \else
5351   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5352 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitle@` And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

`\mtc@tmpti@name`

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` 5353 `\if@mtc@settitle@`

`\mtc@toks` 5354 `\def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}%`

5355 `\mtc@toks{#2}%`

I0017

E0033

```

5356 \mtcPackageInfo[I0017]{minitoc}%
5357   {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
5358     \MessageBreak
5359     "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
5360     \MessageBreak
5361     "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5362 \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5363 \else
5364 \mtcPackageError[E0033]{minitoc}%
5365   {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
5366     \MessageBreak
5367     an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5368   {Correct the source code.
5369     \MessageBreak
5370     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5371 \fi
5372 }

```

9.67.5 The `\mtcsetformat` command

`\@namedef` We define first the keywords (family `formatparam`) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```

5373 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
5374 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}
5375 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
5376 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
5377 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
5378 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
5379 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
5380 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available

```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `\mtcsetformat` command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```

5381 \AtBeginDocument{%

```

```

\@pnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwidth for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcpnumwidth
\stcpnumwidth 5382 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 5383 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 5384 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 5385 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 5386 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 5387 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 5388 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 5389 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
5390 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%

```

```

\@tocrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:
\ptctocrmarg
\mtclofrmarg 5391 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrarg 5392 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 5393 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlflofrmarg 5394 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slflotrarg 5395 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 5396 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltlofrmarg 5397 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlotrarg 5398 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
5399 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%

```

```

\@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 5400 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 5401 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 5402 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 5403 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 5404 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 5405 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 5406 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 5407 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
5408 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
5409 }%
```

```

\mtcsetformat The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the mtc@verse-like
environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by
\mtcsetformat.

```

```

\ptc@setform The \ptc@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:
ptc@verse

```

```

5410 \def\ptc@setform{%
5411 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
5412 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
5413 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
5414 }

```

```

\mtc@setform The \mtc@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:
mtc@verse

```

```

5415 \def\mtc@setform{%
5416 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
5417 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
5418 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
5419 }

```


`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5420 \def\stc@setform{%
5421 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
5422 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
5423 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
5424 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5425 \def\plf@setform{%
5426 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5427 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5428 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5429 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5430 \def\mlf@setform{%
5431 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
5432 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
5433 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
5434 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5435 \def\slf@setform{%
5436 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
5437 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
5438 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
5439 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5440 \def\plt@setform{%
5441 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
5442 \let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
5443 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
5444 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5445 \def\mlt@setform{%
5446 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
```

```

5447 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5448 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5449 }

```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```

5450 \def\slt@setform{%
5451 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5452 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5453 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5454 }

```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, with has the following syntax:
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```

5455 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
5456 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

```

5457 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5458 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5459 \@mtc@setformat@true
5460 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5461 \@mtc@setformat@false
5462 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5463 \mtcPackageError[E0015]{minitoc}%
5464   {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
5465   \MessageBreak
5466   (#1).
5467   \MessageBreak
5468   It should be a mini-table type
5469   \MessageBreak
5470   (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5471 {Correct the source code.
5472 \MessageBreak
5473 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5474 \else \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5475 \fi

```

`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

E0016

```

5476 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5477 \@mtc@setformat@false
5478 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5479 \mtcPackageError[E0016]{minitoc}%
5480   {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
5481     \MessageBreak
5482     (#2).
5483     \MessageBreak
5484     It should be a formatting param choosen from:
5485     \MessageBreak
5486     pagewidth, totrightmargin, dotinterval}%
5487   {Correct the source code.
5488     \MessageBreak
5489     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5490 \else
5491   \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}%
5492 \fi

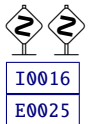
```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value (*via* `\edef`
`\mtc@tmpfm@name` because it can contain some complex code):
`\mtc@mtf@abbrev`

```

\mtc@fparam@abbrev 5493 \if@mtc@setformat@
5494   \mtc@toks{#3}%
5495   \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}%
5496   \mtcPackageInfo[I0016]{minitoc}%
5497   {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
5498     \MessageBreak
5499     "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
5500   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5501 \else
5502   \mtcPackageError[E0025]{minitoc}%
5503     {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
5504       \MessageBreak
5505       first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5506     {Correct the source code.
5507       \MessageBreak
5508       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5509 \fi
5510 }

```



I0016

E0025

9.67.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

`\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@` We define some flags:
`\if@mtc@spn@ok@`

```
5511 \newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5512 \newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@
```

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
`\ifundefined` `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro
`\mtcsetpagenumbers@` only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```
5513 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
5514   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5515   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5516   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}
5517    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}
5518    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
5519   \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5520   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}
5521    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
5522    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
5523   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5524   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}
5525    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
5526    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
5527   \else
5528    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
5529   \fi
5530 }
```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

```
5531 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in
`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`:

E0017

```
5532 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5533 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
5534 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
5535 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5536   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5537   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5538   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5539   \mtcPackageError[E0017]{minitoc}{%
```

```

5540     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
5541       \MessageBreak
5542       argument (#1)}%
5543     {It should be a mini-table type
5544       \MessageBreak
5545       (parttoc...sectlot)
5546       \MessageBreak
5547       Correct the source code.
5548       \MessageBreak
5549       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5550 \else
5551   \edef\mtc@mttptn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5552 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result into a macro
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@pns@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttptn@abbrev
\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 5553 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 5554 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
5555   \@mtc@spn@ok@false
5556   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5557   \def\mtc@mttptn@abbrev{X}
5558   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5559   \def\mtc@mttptn@abbrev{X}
5560   \mtcPackageError[E0018]{minitoc}%
5561     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
5562       \MessageBreak
5563       argument (#2)}%
5564     {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
5565       \MessageBreak
5566       Correct the source code.
5567       \MessageBreak
5568       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5569 \else
5570   \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5571   \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
5572   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5573   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mttptn@abbrev pagenumbers}
5574   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5575     \mtcPackageInfo[I0022]{minitoc}%
5576     {Page numbers are inhibited
5577       \MessageBreak
5578       for the #1s}
5579   \else
5580     \mtcPackageInfo[I0021]{minitoc}%
5581     {Page numbers are activated
5582       \MessageBreak for the #1s}
5583   \fi
5584   \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5585 \fi
5586 }

```

E0018

I0022

I0021

9.67.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```
\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
5587 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
5588 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
\mtcsetrules We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
\@ifundefined \mtcsetrules@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only
\mtcsetrules@ once, for the specified type of mini-table.
```

```
5589 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
5590   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5591   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5592   {\mtcsetrules@{parttoc}{#2}}
5593   \mtcsetrules@{partlof}{#2}
5594   \mtcsetrules@{partlot}{#2}}
5595   \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5596   {\mtcsetrules@{minitoc}{#2}}
5597   \mtcsetrules@{minilof}{#2}
5598   \mtcsetrules@{minilot}{#2}}
5599   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5600   {\mtcsetrules@{secttoc}{#2}}
5601   \mtcsetrules@{sectlof}{#2}
5602   \mtcsetrules@{sectlot}{#2}}
5603   \else
5604   \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
5605   \fi
5606 }
```

```
\mtcsetrules@ Then the \mtcsetrules@ internal macro, which has two arguments:
```

```
5607 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttru@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family and store the result in a macro `\mtc@mttru@abbrev`:
`\if@mtc@setrules@`
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev`

E0019

```

\@nameuse 5608 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5609 \@mtc@setrules@true
5610 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
5611 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5612   \@mtc@setrules@false
5613   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5614   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5615   \mtcPackageError[E0019]{minitoc}%
5616     {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
5617     \MessageBreak
5618     (#1)}%
5619   {It should be a mini-table type
5620   \MessageBreak
5621   (parttoc...sectlot)
5622   \MessageBreak
5623   Correct the source code.
5624   \MessageBreak
5625   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5626 \else
5627   \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5628 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@sru@ok@` Then the second argument, a keyword of the `YN` family, and store the result in a macro
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev` `\mtc@rusw@abbrev`. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
`\mtc@mttru@abbrev`

E0020

I0008

I0007

```

if@setrules@false 5629 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
\mtc@noX 5630 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 5631   \@mtc@sru@ok@false
5632   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5633   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5634   \@mtc@setrules@false
5635   \mtcPackageError[E0020]{minitoc}%
5636     {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
5637     \MessageBreak
5638     (#2)}%
5639     {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
5640     \MessageBreak
5641     Correct the source code.
5642     \MessageBreak
5643     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5644 \else
5645   \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5646   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
5647   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5648   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
5649   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5650     \mtcPackageInfo[I0008]{minitoc}%
5651     {Horizontal rules are inhibited
5652     \MessageBreak

```

```

5653         for the #1s}
5654     \else
5655         \mtcPackageInfo[I0007]{minitoc}%
5656         {Horizontal rules are activated
5657         \MessageBreak
5658         for the #1s}
5659     \fi
5660     \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5661 \fi
5662 }

```

9.67.8 The `\mtcsetfeature` command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “pagestyle” is used.

A family (`ltypetable`) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```

5663 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
5664 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
5665 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
5666 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
5667 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
5668 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
5669 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
5670 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
5671 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

5672 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
5673     \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
5674 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
5675     \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
5676 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@open}{open}%
5677     \def\mtc@featureparam@open{open}
5678 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@close}{close}%
5679     \def\mtc@featureparam@close{close}
5680 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
5681     \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

5682 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
5683 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
5684 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@open}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@open\endcsname{}
5685 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@close}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@close\endcsname{}
5686 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
5687     \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```


The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

```
\if@mtc@setfeature@ We define a flag and the \mtcsetfeature command, with three arguments:
\mtcsetfeature
```

```
5688 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
5689 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%
```

```
\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the ltypetable family, and store the result in
\mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev:
```

E0011

```
5690 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5691 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5692 \@mtc@setfeature@true
5693 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5694   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5695   \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5696   \mtcPackageError[E0011]{minitoc}%
5697     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
5698     \MessageBreak
5699     (#1).
5700     \MessageBreak
5701     It should be a mini-table type
5702     \MessageBreak
5703     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5704   {Correct the source code.
5705   \MessageBreak
5706   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5707 \else
5708   \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5709 \fi
```

```
\if@mtc@setfeature@ The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in
\mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted
\mtc@featparam@third as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third.
\@nameuse
```

E0012

```
5710 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5711   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5712   \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5713   \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
5714   \mtcPackageError[E0012]{minitoc}%
5715     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
```

```

5716     \MessageBreak
5717     (#2).
5718     \MessageBreak
5719     It should be a feature param
5720     \MessageBreak
5721     (before, after, open, close, pagestyle)}%
5722     {Correct the source code.
5723     \MessageBreak
5724     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5725 \else
5726     \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
5727     \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
5728 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces
\mtc@tmpfeat@name (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third
\mtc@featparam@abbrev respectively), then this macro is executed:
\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev
\mtc@featparam@third

I0014

E0023

```

5729 \if@mtc@setfeature@
5730     \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
5731         {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}%
5732         \mtc@toks{#3}}%
5733     \mtcPackageInfo[I0014]{minitoc}%
5734     {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
5735     \MessageBreak
5736     "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as
5737     \MessageBreak
5738     "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5739     \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5740 \else
5741     \mtcPackageError[E0023]{minitoc}%
5742     {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
5743     \MessageBreak
5744     first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5745     {Correct the source code.
5746     \MessageBreak
5747     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5748 \fi}

```

9.67.9 The \mtcsetdepth command

This command is very similar to the \mtcsettitle command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the subfig package [118]).



\if@mtc@setdepth@ First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5749 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

\mtcsetdepth Then we define the \mtcsetdepth command, with two arguments:

```
5750 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mtade@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the ltypetable family. The result is stored in

E0009

\if@mtc@setdepth@ \mtc@mtade@abbrev:

\@nameuse

```
5751 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5752 \@mtc@setdepth@true
5753 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5754   \@mtc@setdepth@false
5755   \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5756   \mtcPackageError[E0009]{minitoc}%
5757     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
5758       \MessageBreak
5759       (#1).
5760       \MessageBreak
5761       It should be a mini-table type
5762       \MessageBreak
5763       (parttoc...sectlot))}%
5764   {Correct the source code.
5765     \MessageBreak
5766     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5767 \else
5768   \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5769 \fi
```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:

E0008

\mtc@tmpde@name

I0013

```
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 5770 \if@mtc@setdepth@
  \mtc@toks 5771   \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
  \setcounter 5772   \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
  5773     {\mtcPackageError[E0008]{minitoc}%
  5774       {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
  5775         \MessageBreak
  5776         an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
  5777       {Correct the source code.
  5778         \MessageBreak
  5779         Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}}%
  5780   \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
  5781   \mtcPackageInfo[I0013]{minitoc}%
  5782     {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
  5783       \MessageBreak
  5784       "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
  5785   \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
  5786 \else
```

E0010

```

5787 \mtcPackageError[E0010]{minitoc}%
5788     {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
5789     {Correct the source code.
5790     \MessageBreak
5791     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
5792 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

9.67.10 The `\mtcsetoffset` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{value}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *value* is the offset value for a mini-table.

`\if@mtc@setoffset@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5793 \newif\if@mtc@setoffset@\@mtc@setoffset@true
```

`\mtcsetoffset` Then we define the `\mtcsetoffset` command, with two arguments:

```
5794 \newcommand{\mtcsetoffset}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtaof@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in `\if@mtc@setoffset@` `\mtc@mtaof@abbrev:`

E0042

`\@nameuse`

```

5795 \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
5796 \@mtc@setoffset@true
5797 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5798     \@mtc@setoffset@false
5799     \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
5800     \mtcPackageError[E0042]{minitoc}%
5801     {\string\mtcsetoffset \space has a wrong first argument
5802     \MessageBreak
5803     (#1).
5804     \MessageBreak
5805     It should be a mini-table type
5806     \MessageBreak
5807     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5808     {Correct the source code.
5809     \MessageBreak
5810     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5811 \else
5812     \edef\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5813 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setoffset@ And we construct the name of the effective offset and gave it the value:
  \mtc@tmpof@name
\mtc@mtaof@abbrev 5814 \if@mtc@setoffset@
  \mtc@toks 5815 \def\mtc@tmpof@name{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset.}
  \setcounter 5816 \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset}%
    5817 {\mtcPackageError[E0041]{minitoc}%
    5818 {\string\mtcsetoffset \space attempts to use
    5819 \MessageBreak
    5820 an undefined offset (\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset).}%
    5821 {Correct the source code.
    5822 \MessageBreak
    5823 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}{%
    5824 \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
    5825 \mtcPackageInfo[I0052]{minitoc}%
    5826 {\string\mtcsetoffset\space redefines
    5827 \MessageBreak
    5828 "\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
    5829 \expandafter\def\csname \mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset\endcsname{#2}}%
    5830 \else
    5831 \mtcPackageError[E0043]{minitoc}%
    5832 {\string\mtcsetoffset:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
    5833 {Correct the source code.
    5834 \MessageBreak
    5835 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
    5836 \fi}% end of \mtcsetoffset

```

E0041
I0052
E0043

9.68 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@ The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```
5837 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false
```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth.
\mtc@restoretocdepth Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands
  mtchideinmaintoc of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and
  \if@mtc@Himtoc@ restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the
  \mtc@sv@tocdepth entries in the main TOC.
  \arabic
\addtocontents 5838 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
  \setcounter 5839 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
    5840 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
    5841 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[E0005]{minitoc}%
    5842 {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
    5843 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
    5844 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
    5845 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
    5846 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%

```

E0005
E0031

```

5847 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@else\mtcPackageError[E0031]{minitoc}%
5848      {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
5849      {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
5850 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
5851 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

\AtBeginDocument The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must verify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these environments. This must be done *after* the loading of the packages.

```

\mtc@savelofdepth
\empty First, for the list of figures:
\mtc@sv@lofdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 5852 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\mtc@svf@tocdepth 5853 \AtBeginDocument{%
\arabic 5854 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
\addtocontents 5855 \providecommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\empty}
\setcounter 5856 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5857 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
5858 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5859 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5860 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5861 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5862 \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5863 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5864 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5865 {\if@mtc@Himlof@else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
5866 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5867 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5868 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
5869 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5870 }}%
5871 {%
5872 \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
5873 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
5874 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5875 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
5876 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5877 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5878 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5879 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
5880 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5881 {\if@mtc@Himlof@else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
5882 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5883 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
5884 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
5885 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}%

```

E0003

E0029

```

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 5886 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@savelotdepth 5887 \AtBeginDocument{%
  \empty 5888 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 5889 \providecommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\empty}
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 5890 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth 5891 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
  5892 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
  \arabic 5893 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
\addtocontents 5894 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
\setcounter 5895 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
  5896 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
  5897 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
  5898 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
  5899 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
  5900 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
  5901 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
  5902 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
  5903 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
  5904 }}%
  5905 {%
  5906 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
  5907 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
  5908 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
  5909 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
  5910 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
  5911 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
  5912 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
  5913 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
  5914 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
  5915 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
  5916 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
  5917 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
  5918 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
  5919 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}

```

E0004

E0030

9.69 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

```

\ifundefined Depending on the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred
\mtc@glofix@level chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional
argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@glofix@level. This is done
by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

W0001

E0001

W0006

```

5920 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
5921   \@ifundefined{section}%
5922     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0001]{minitoc}%
5923      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
5924       \MessageBreak
5925       Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
5926       \MessageBreak
5927       optional argument [part]}}%
5928   \@ifundefined{part}%
5929     {\mtcPackageError[E0001]{minitoc}%
5930      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5931      {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
5932   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0006]{minitoc}%
5933    {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
5934     \MessageBreak
5935     with the [part] optional argument,
5936     \MessageBreak
5937     which becomes the default}%
5938    \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}}%
5939   }%
5940   {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
5941 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

`\if@mtcfixglossary@` Then we define a flag (`\if@mtcfixglossary@`) and the command `\mtcfixglossary`, which
`\mtcfixglossary` adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.
`\addcontentsline`

E0026

```

5942 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \mtcfixglossary@false
5943 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
5944   \@mtcfixglossary@false
5945   \expandafter%
5946   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5947   \expandafter%
5948   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5949   \expandafter%
5950   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5951   \if@mtcfixglossary@
5952     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5953     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5954     \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
5955   \else
5956     \mtcPackageError[E0026]{minitoc}%
5957       {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
5958        \MessageBreak
5959        is wrong}%
5960       {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
5961   \fi
5962 }%

```


9.70 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@ixfix@level Depending on the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@ixfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0002

W0007

E0002

```
5963 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
5964   \@ifundefined{section}%
5965     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0002]{minitoc}%
5966      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
5967       \MessageBreak
5968       Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
5969       \MessageBreak
5970       optional argument [part]}}%
5971   \@ifundefined{part}%
5972     {\mtcPackageError[E0002]{minitoc}%
5973      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5974      {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
5975   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0007]{minitoc}%
5976    {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
5977     \MessageBreak
5978     the [part] optional argument,
5979     \MessageBreak
5980     which becomes the default}}%
5981   \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}}%
5982   }%
5983   {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
5984 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

\if@mtcfixindex@ \mtcfixindex \addcontentsline Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixindex, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

E0027

```
5985 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
5986 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
5987   \@mtcfixindex@false
5988   \expandafter%
5989   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
5990   \expandafter%
5991   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
5992   \expandafter%
5993   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
5994   \if@mtcfixindex@
5995     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}}%
```

```

5996 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
5997 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
5998 \else
5999 \mtcPackageError[E0027]{minitoc}%
6000 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
6001 \MessageBreak
6002 is wrong}%
6003 {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6004 \fi
6005 }%

```

9.71 Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@nomenclfix@level Depending on the document class, the “Nomenclature” entry¹⁵ in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@nomenclfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0095

E0039

W0096

```

6006 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6007 \ifundefined{section}%
6008 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0095]{minitoc}%
6009 {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6010 \MessageBreak
6011 Cannot use \string\mtcfixnomenclature \space without
6012 \MessageBreak
6013 optional argument [part]}%
6014 \@ifundefined{part}%
6015 {\mtcPackageError[E0039]{minitoc}%
6016 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6017 {\string\mtcfixnomclature\space not usable}}%
6018 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0096]{minitoc}%
6019 {\string\mtcfixnomenclature\space can only be used with
6020 \MessageBreak
6021 the [part] optional argument,
6022 \MessageBreak
6023 which becomes the default}%
6024 \def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{part}%
6025 }}%
6026 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{section}}}%
6027 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{chapter}}

```

¹⁵If you are using the nomencl package [374] or nomencl package [139] (nomencl calls nomenclbl).

```

\if@mtcfixnomclature@ Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixnomenclature, which adds the necessary
\mtcfixnomenclature lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.
\addcontentsline

6028 \newif\if@mtcfixnomenclature@ \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
6029 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\mtc@nomenclfix@level]{%
6030   \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
6031   \expandafter%
6032   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
6033   \expandafter%
6034   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
6035   \expandafter%
6036   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
6037   \if@mtcfixnomenclature@
6038     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
6039     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
6040     \csname mtcadd\mtc@nomenclfix@level\endcsname\relax
6041   \else
6042     \mtcPackageError[E0040]{minitoc}%
6043       {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixnomenclature
6044         \MessageBreak
6045         is wrong}%
6046       {It must be omitted (\mtc@nomenclfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6047   \fi
6048 }%

```

E0040

9.72 The \mtcselectlanguage command

```

\mtcselectlanguage This command loads a minitoc language definition file language.mld to set the language-
\if@mtc@insellang@ dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag
\IfFileExists \if@mtc@insellang@ is true while we are in this macro.
\@input

6049 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
6050 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
6051   \@mtc@insellang@true
6052   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6053     {\mtcPackageInfo[I0010]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
6054       \MessageBreak
6055     }}%
6056     {\mtcPackageError[E0006]{minitoc}%
6057       {#1 is not a known language,
6058         \MessageBreak
6059         #1.mld not found.
6060         \MessageBreak
6061         Command ignored}%
6062       {See the minitoc documentation.
6063         \MessageBreak
6064         Correct the source using a valid language name.
6065         \MessageBreak
6066         Press RETURN}}%

```

I0010

E0006

```
6067 \@mtc@insellang@false
6068 }
```

9.73 The `\mtcloadmlo` internal command

`\mtcloadmlo` This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used only in some .mld files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of minitoc.dtx. The .mlo files are generated by filecontents environments in the minitoc.ins file. But first, we verify that this .mlo file exists.

This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag `\if@mtc@insellang@`.



I0011
E0007
E0032

```
6069 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
6070   \if@mtc@insellang@
6071   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6072     {\mtcPackageInfo[I0011]{minitoc}%
6073      {#1 minitoc language object selected.
6074       \MessageBreak}}%
6075     {\mtcPackageError[E0007]{minitoc}%
6076      {#1 is not a known minitoc
6077       \MessageBreak
6078       language object file (.mlo),
6079       \MessageBreak
6080       #1.mlo not found.
6081       \MessageBreak
6082       Command ignored}%
6083      {See the minitoc documentation.
6084       \MessageBreak
6085       Correct the source using a valid language name.
6086       \MessageBreak
6087       Press RETURN}}%
6088   \else
6089     \mtcPackageError[E0032]{minitoc}%
6090     {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
6091     \MessageBreak
6092     outside of a .mld file}%
6093     {It will be ignored}
6094     \@mtc@insellang@false
6095   \fi}
```

9.74 The “coffee breaks”

`\addcoffeeline` For the minutes package [253] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we

`\addtocontents`

`\coffeeline`

`\l@coffee`

`\@Undottedtocline`

define `\addcoffeeline`, `\coffeeline` and `\l@coffee`, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

```
6096 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
6097   \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
6098 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
6099 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
```

9.75 Initialization of counters

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and sections, if they are defined.
`\ifundefined`
`\setcounter`

```
6100 \AtBeginDocument{%
6101   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
6102   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
6103   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}}
```

9.76 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

9.76.1 Options `tight` and `loose`, `k-tight` and `k-loose`

`\DeclareOption` These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.
`\iftightmtc`
`\ifktightmtc` 6104 `\DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}`
6105 `\DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default`
6106 `\DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}`
6107 `\DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default`

9.76.2 Options `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles`

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.
`\if@mtc@checkfiles`
6108 `\DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default`
6109 `\DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}`

9.76.3 Options dotted and undotted

```
\DeclareOption These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.
\ifundottedmtc
6110 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
6111 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default
```

9.76.4 Option notoccite

```
\DeclareOption This option will later load the notoccite package [11].
\if@mtc@notoccite@
6112 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

9.76.5 Option shorttext

```
\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@mtc@longext@
6113 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{%
6114   \@mtc@longext@false
6115   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0020]{minitoc}%
6116   {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

W0020

9.77 The insection option

```
\if@mtc@ss@insection@ This option is available only if \chapter is not defined and \section defined. It is to be
  \@ifundefined revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the
  \DeclareOption far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)16.
```

E0035

```
6117 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
6118 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6119   \@ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
6120     \mtcPackageError[E0035]{minitoc}%
6121     {You have used the 'insection' option in
6122       \MessageBreak
6123       a document where chapters are defined.
6124       \MessageBreak
6125       This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
6126     {Remove this option.
6127       \MessageBreak
6128       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}
```

¹⁶Please, do not dream too much!

```

6129             }}%
6130         {%
6131         \DeclareOption{insection}%
6132             {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
6133         }%
6134     }{}

```

9.78 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named *document.maf*. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```

6135 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
6136 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
6137 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}

```

9.79 Language options

`\@gobblethree` First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@addmisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

```

\mtc@LML
\MessageBreak
6138 \def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
6139 \def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
6140 \def\mtc@addmisslanguage#1{%
6141     \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
6142     \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}

```

`\if@mtc@misslang` Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding *.mld* file exists, and, if necessary, that the corresponding *.mlo* file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag `\mtc@setlangopt` and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available, we define the language option.

```

\DeclareOption
\mtc@addmisslanguage
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
6143 \newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
6144 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
6145     \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6146         {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6147         {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6148         \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6149         \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
6150             {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6151             \MessageBreak

```

I0050

I0051

```

6152         The "#1" language option
6153         \MessageBreak
6154         will not be available.
6155         \MessageBreak
6156         Please install it from a recent distribution
6157         \MessageBreak
6158         or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
6159 }%
6160 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
6161   \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6162   {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
6163   {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6164     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mlo}
6165     \mtcPackageInfo[I0051]{minitoc}%
6166     {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
6167       \MessageBreak
6168       The "#1" language option
6169       \MessageBreak
6170       will not be available.
6171       \MessageBreak
6172       Please install it from a recent distribution
6173       \MessageBreak
6174       or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6175   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}}}%
6176   {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6177     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6178     \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
6179     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6180       \MessageBreak
6181       The "#1" language option will not be available.
6182       \MessageBreak
6183       Please install it from a recent distribution
6184       \MessageBreak
6185       or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6186   }%
6187 }%
6188 }%

```

```

\if@mtc@misslang Some .mld files are mandatory (english.mld because english is the default language), so
\mtc@setlangoptm their absence is a serious error:
  \IfFileExists
    \DeclareOption 6189 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
\mtcPackageError 6190   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6191     {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6192     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6193       \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6194       \mtcPackageError[E0038]{minitoc}%
6195       {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
6196         \MessageBreak
6197         A mandatory minitoc language object file,
6198         \MessageBreak
6199         #1.mld, is not found.

```




```

6200      \MessageBreak
6201      We will try to continue with
6202      \MessageBreak
6203      current/default values}%
6204      {See the minitoc documentation.
6205      \MessageBreak
6206      Please fix your minitoc installation.
6207      \MessageBreak
6208      Press <return> to continue}%

```

\providecommand We must define the default titles (english):

```

\ptctitle
\plftitle 6209      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
\plttitle 6210      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
\mtctitle 6211      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
\mlftitle 6212      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
\mlttitle 6213      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
\stctitle 6214      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
\slftitle 6215      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
\slttitle 6216      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
6217      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
6218 }}%

```

```

\AtEndDocument If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document, with also the full
\if@mtc@misslang list of the missing language files:
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
\MessageBreak 6219 \AtEndDocument{%
\mtc@listmisslanguages 6220 \if@mtc@misslang
\@gobblethree 6221 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0093]{minitoc}%
6222 {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
6223 \MessageBreak
6224 in your installation.
6225 \MessageBreak
6226 Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
6227 \MessageBreak
6228 in the \string\jobname.log file.
6229 \MessageBreak
6230 The full list of the missing language files
6231 \MessageBreak
6232 is given in the W0094 warning message.
6233 \MessageBreak
6234 Please install the missing files from
6235 \MessageBreak
6236 a recent distribution
6237 \MessageBreak
6238 or from the CTAN archives}%
6239 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0094]{minitoc}%
6240 {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
6241 \MessageBreak
6242 \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%

```

W0093

W0094

```
6243 \fi
6244 }%
```

`\DeclareOption` Each language option reads the corresponding *language.mld* file via the specialized macro `\mtc@setlangopt` `\mtcselectlanguage`, after verification by `\mtc@setlangopt` or `\mtc@setlangopto` (when a *.mlo* file is required), by `\mtc@setlangoptm` when the language is mandatory. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should be a *language.mld* file for each language option, given that this file may load another one (as *american.mld* loads *english.mld*).

```
6245 \mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
6246 \mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
6247 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
6248 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%
6249 \mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
6250 \mtc@setlangopt{american}%
6251 \mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
6252 \mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%
6253 \mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
6254 \mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
6255 \mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
6256 \mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
6257 \mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
6258 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
6259 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
6260 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
6261 \mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
6262 \mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
6263 \mtc@setlangopt{bengali}%
6264 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
6265 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
6266 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
6267 \mtc@setlangopt{bi the}%
6268 \mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
6269 \mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
6270 \mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
6271 \mtc@setlangopt{british}%
6272 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
6273 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
6274 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
6275 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
6276 \mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
6277 \mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%
6278 \mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
6279 \mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
6280 \mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
6281 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese1}%
6282 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese2}%
6283 \mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
6284 \mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
6285 \mtc@setlangopt{danish}%

```

```
6286 \mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
6287 \mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
6288 \mtc@setlangoptm{english}%
6289 \mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
6290 \mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
6291 \mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
6292 \mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
6293 \mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
6294 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
6295 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
6296 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
6297 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi1}%
6298 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi2}%
6299 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
6300 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
6301 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
6302 \mtc@setlangopt{francais}%
6303 \mtc@setlangopt{french}%
6304 \mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
6305 \mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
6306 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
6307 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
6308 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
6309 \mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
6310 \mtc@setlangopt{german}%
6311 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
6312 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
6313 \mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
6314 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
6315 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
6316 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
6317 \mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
6318 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul1}%
6319 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul2}%
6320 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul3}%
6321 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul4}%
6322 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul-u8}%
6323 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja1}%
6324 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja2}%
6325 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja-u8}%
6326 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%

```

```

6327 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
6328 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
6329 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
6330 \mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
6331 \mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
6332 \mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
6333 \mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
6334 \mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
6335 \mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
6336 \mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
6337 \mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
6338 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese}%
6339 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese2}%
6340 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese3}%
6341 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese4}%
6342 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese5}%
6343 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese6}%
6344 \mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
6345 \mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
6346 \mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
6347 \mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
6348 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc}%
6349 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc2}%
6350 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
6351 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian2}%
6352 \mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
6353 \mtc@setlangopt{letton2}%
6354 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
6355 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian2}%
6356 \mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
6357 \mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
6358 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
6359 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
6360 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
6361 \mtc@setlangopt{malay}%
6362 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-b}%
6363 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%
6364 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli2}%
6365 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-mr}%
6366 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-omega}%
6367 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
6368 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
6369 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana3}%
6370 \mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
6371 \mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
6372 \mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
6373 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolb}%
6374 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolian}%
6375 \mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
6376 \mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
6377 \mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
6378 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
6379 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
6380 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
6381 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
6382 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
6383 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
6384 \mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
6385 \mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
6386 \mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
6387 \mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
6388 \mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
6389 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
6390 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
6391 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
6392 \mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
6393 \mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
6394 \mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
6395 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
6396 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
6397 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca}%
6398 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca1}%
6399 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lh}%
6400 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyralt}%
6401 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
6402 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrwin}%
6403 \mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
6404 \mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
6405 \mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
6406 \mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
6407 \mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
6408 \mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
6409 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
6410 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
6411 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
6412 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
6413 \mtc@setlangopt{swahili}%
6414 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
6415 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%
6416 \mtc@setlangopt{thai}%
6417 \mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%
6418 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%
6419 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%
6420 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%
6421 \mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%
6422 \mtc@setlangopt{ukraineb}%
6423 \mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%
6424 \mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%
6425 \mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
6426 \mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
6427 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
6428 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
6429 \mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
6430 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
6431 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%
6432 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%

```

9.80 The hints option

`\DeclareOption` We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:
`\if@mtc@hints@`

```
6433 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
6434 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}
```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` The hints option is made of three parts: the first, `\mtc@hints@begindoc`, is executed via
`\AtBeginDocument` `\AtBeginDocument` and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The third and last part, `\mtc@hints@enddoc`, is executed via `\AtEndDocument` and examines
`\AtEndDocument` the flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the `document.log` file and/or warnings on the screen and in the `document.log` file. The hints option *does not signal errors*, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the \LaTeX run.



9.80.1 First part: `\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for an `\AtBeginDocument`
`\mtc@hints@begindoc` block):

I0049

```
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6435 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6436 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
6437 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
6438 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
6439 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
6440 \mtcPackageInfo[I0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
6441   {==> You requested the hints option
6442     \MessageBreak
6443     Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%
```

9.80.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [96]), and emit a warning,
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

```
6444 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
6445   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6446     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0025]{minitoc(hints)}%
```



W0025

```

6447      {--- The alphanum package is loaded.
6448      \MessageBreak
6449      It is incompatible
6450      \MessageBreak
6451      with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.80.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the appendix package [388]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0042

```

6452 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
6453   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6454     \mtcPackageInfo[I0042]{minitoc(hints)}}%
6455     {--- The appendix package is loaded.
6456     \MessageBreak
6457     See the minitoc package documentation
6458     \MessageBreak
6459     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.80.1.3 Hint about the tocbibind package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the tocbibind package [389]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0046

```

6460 \@ifpackageloaded{tocbibind}%
6461   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6462     \mtcPackageInfo[I0046]{minitoc(hints)}}%
6463     {--- The tocbibind package is loaded.
6464     \MessageBreak
6465     See the minitoc package documentation
6466     \MessageBreak
6467     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.80.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [223, 288, 328]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0043

```

6468 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
6469   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6470     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}}%
6471     {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
6472     \MessageBreak
6473     See the minitoc package documentation
6474     \MessageBreak
6475     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

```

6476 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
6477   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6478     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6479     {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
6480       \MessageBreak
6481       See the minitoc package documentation
6482       \MessageBreak
6483       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6484 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
6485   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6486     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6487     {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
6488       \MessageBreak
6489       See the minitoc package documentation
6490       \MessageBreak
6491       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.80.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocloft package [386]:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0047

```

6492 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
6493   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6494     \mtcPackageInfo[I0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
6495     {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
6496       \MessageBreak
6497       See the minitoc package documentation
6498       \MessageBreak
6499       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.80.1.6 Hint about the titlesec package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the titlesec package [42], and emit a warning, because this package is
 \if@mtc@hints@given@ *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6500 \@ifpackageloaded{titlesec}%
6501   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6502     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0099]{minitoc(hints)}%
6503     {--- The titlesec package is loaded.
6504       \MessageBreak
6505       It is incompatible
6506       \MessageBreak
6507       with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.80.1.7 Hint about the titletoc package

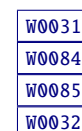
`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the titletoc package [42], and emit a warning, because this package is
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:



```
6508 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
6509   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6510     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6511     {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
6512       \MessageBreak
6513       It is incompatible
6514       \MessageBreak
6515       with the minitoc package}}}%
```

9.80.1.8 Hint about the placeins package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test if the placeins package [12] is loaded and, if yes, we check if the selected options are
`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` correct (see section 1.3.3 on page 30):



```
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6516 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
6517   {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
6518     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
6519   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6520     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0031]{minitoc(hints)}%
6521     {--- The placeins package is loaded
6522       \MessageBreak
6523       without the section option,
6524       \MessageBreak
6525       but minitoc used the insection option
6526       \MessageBreak
6527       which implies it. Try to inverse the
6528       \MessageBreak
6529       loading order and use consistent options.
6530       \MessageBreak
6531       You may have got a message
6532       \MessageBreak
6533       ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
6534     }%
6535   \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
6536   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6537     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0084]{minitoc(hints)}%
6538     {--- The placeins package is loaded
6539       \MessageBreak
6540       with the above option,
6541       \MessageBreak
6542       but minitoc used the insection option
6543       \MessageBreak
6544       which is incompatible with it.
6545       \MessageBreak
6546       Try to remove the above option
```

```

6547         \MessageBreak
6548         and use consistent options}%
6549     }{}%
6550 \ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
6551 { \@mtc@hints@given@true
6552   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0085]{minitoc(hints)}%
6553   {--- The placeins package is loaded
6554     \MessageBreak
6555     with the below option,
6556     \MessageBreak
6557     but minitoc used the insection option
6558     \MessageBreak
6559     which is incompatible with it.
6560     \MessageBreak
6561     Try to remove the below option
6562     \MessageBreak
6563     and use consistent options}%
6564   }{}%
6565 \fi
6566 \ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
6567   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6568   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0032]{minitoc(hints)}%
6569   {--- The placeins package loaded is
6570     \MessageBreak
6571     too old. You should use a version
6572     \MessageBreak
6573     dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
6574 }%
6575 }{}%

```

9.80.1.9 Hint about the memoir class

\ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [396, 397, 399] is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@

I0044

```

6576 \ifclassloaded{memoir}%
6577 { \@mtc@hints@given@true
6578   \mtcPackageInfo[I0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
6579   {--- The memoir class is loaded.
6580     \MessageBreak
6581     See the minitoc package documentation
6582     \MessageBreak
6583     for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
6584 }{}%

```

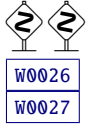

9.80.1.10 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6585 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
6586   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6587     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0026]{minitoc(hints)}%
6588     {--- The amsart class is loaded.
6589       \MessageBreak
6590       It is incompatible
6591       \MessageBreak
6592       with the minitoc package}}}%
6593 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
6594   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6595     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0027]{minitoc(hints)}%
6596     {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
6597       \MessageBreak
6598       It is incompatible
6599       \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

**9.80.1.11 Hint about the amsbook class**

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsbook class is loaded:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6600 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
6601   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6602     \mtcPackageInfo[I0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
6603     {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
6604       \MessageBreak
6605       See the minitoc package documentation
6606       \MessageBreak
6607       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6608   }%

```

I0041

9.80.1.12 Hint about the abstract package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the abstract package [387], then its options:
`\@ifpackagewith`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6609 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
6610   {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
6611     \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
6612     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6613       \mtcPackageInfo[I0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6614       {The ‘abstract’ package has been
6615       \MessageBreak

```

I0040

```

6616         loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
6617         \MessageBreak
6618         You need to look at the
6619         \MessageBreak
6620         documentation to adjust.
6621         \MessageBreak}
6622     }}{}

```

9.80.1.13 Hint about the jura class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is *incompatible* with
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` minitoc:

```

6623 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
6624     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6625     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0029]{minitoc(hints)}%
6626     {--- The jura class is loaded.
6627     \MessageBreak
6628     It is incompatible
6629     \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%

```



9.80.1.14 Hint about the flowfram package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the flowfram package [353, 354], and emit a warning, because this
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6630 \@ifpackageloaded{flowfram}%
6631     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6632     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0097]{minitoc(hints)}%
6633     {--- The flowfram package is loaded.
6634     \MessageBreak
6635     It is incompatible
6636     \MessageBreak
6637     with the minitoc package}}{}%

```



9.80.1.15 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands

`\part` To check if the sectionning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have been
`\chapter` altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing an
`\section` `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when
`\AtBeginDocument` it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For
`\mtc@hints@part` each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its
`\mtc@hints@chapter` unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the `hyperref` package [323] may interfere,
`\mtc@hints@section` hence the formal precautions in the messages.

9.80.1.15.1 Alteration of \part

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \part, \@part and \@spart:
\@ifundefined
  \part 6638 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@part 6639 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax
  \@part 6640   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@part 6641 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@part\relax
  \@spart 6642   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@spart 6643 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax
6644   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6645 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6646   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0030]{minitoc(hints)}%
6647   {--- The \string\part\space command is altered
6648   \MessageBreak
6649   after minitoc}
6650   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6651   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
6652   {--- It may be the consequence
6653   \MessageBreak
6654   of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6655   \fi
6656 \fi

```

W0030
W0023

9.80.1.15.2 Alteration of \chapter

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
\@ifundefined
  \chapter 6657 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 6658 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
  \@chapter 6659   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 6660 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
  \@schapter 6661   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 6662 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
6663   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6664 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6665   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0028]{minitoc(hints)}%
6666   {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
6667   \MessageBreak
6668   after minitoc}
6669   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6670   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
6671   {--- It may be the consequence
6672   \MessageBreak
6673   of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6674   \fi
6675 \fi

```

W0028
W0023

9.80.1.15.3 Alteration of \section

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
\@ifundefined
  \section 6676 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 6677 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
  \@sect 6678 {\@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@sect 6679 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \@ssect 6680 {\@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@ssect 6681 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6682 {\@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6683 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
6684 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6685 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0039]{minitoc(hints)}%
6686 {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
6687 \MessageBreak
6688 after minitoc}
6689 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6690 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
6691 {--- It may be the consequence
6692 \MessageBreak
6693 of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
6694 \fi
6695 \relax\else\fi}%

```

W0039
W0023

9.80.1.16 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like \doparttoc, \parttoc and \[fake]tableofcontents, and similar: to be able to use \parttoc, a table of contents file must have been created via \[fake]tableofcontents and splitted into parttoc files via \doparttoc.

```

\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6696 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6697 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
6698 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
6699 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First,
\tableofcontents the commands for the main summaries:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 6700 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 6701 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6702 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 6703 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 6704 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@

```

```

6705   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
6706 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
6707 \def\listoftables%
6708   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}

```

`\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents` Then, their “fake” siblings:

```

\fakeableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6709 \let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\fakeableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 6710 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6711   {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6712 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fakeableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoftables 6713 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6714   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6715 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fakeableofcontents
\fakeableofcontents 6716 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6717   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
6718 \fi

```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` And the `\mtc@hints@begindoc` definition is finished (it begins in section 9.80.1 on page 408):

```

6719 }

```

9.80.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```

6720 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%

```

9.80.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

`\if@mtc@sect@floats@` We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.

```

\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6721 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 6722 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 6723 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 6724 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
6725 \if@mtc@section@def@

```

```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ If yes, we verify that the placeins package [12] has been loaded with the correct options or that
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ the insetion option of the minitoc package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6726 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
6727 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
6728 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0056]{minitoc(hints)}%
6729 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
6730 \MessageBreak
6731 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
6732 \MessageBreak
6733 hence the ‘insetion’ package
6734 \MessageBreak
6735 option is recommended}%
6736 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
6737 \fi
6738 \fi

```

W0056

9.80.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if \parttoc has been used without \doparttoc, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 6739 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6740 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6741 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6742 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0062]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6743 {You have used \string\parttoc,
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6744 \MessageBreak
6745 but not \string\doparttoc}
6746 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6747 \fi
6748 \fi
6749 \if@partlof@used@
6750 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
6751 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0060]{minitoc(hints)}%
6752 {You have used \string\partlof,
6753 \MessageBreak
6754 but not \string\dopartlof}
6755 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6756 \fi
6757 \fi
6758 \if@partlot@used@
6759 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
6760 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0061]{minitoc(hints)}%
6761 {You have used \string\partlot,
6762 \MessageBreak
6763 but not \string\dopartlot}

```

W0062

W0060

W0061

```

6764 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6765 \fi
6766 \fi
6767 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
  \if@minitoc@used@
    \if@dominitoc@used@ 6768 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6769 \if@minitoc@used@
  \if@minilof@used@ 6770 \if@dominitoc@used@ \else
\if@dominilof@used@ 6771 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0059]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@minilot@used@ 6772 {You have used \string\minitoc,
\if@dominilot@used@ 6773 \MessageBreak
6774 but not \string\dominitoc}
6775 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6776 \fi
6777 \fi
6778 \if@minilof@used@
6779 \if@dominilof@used@ \else
6780 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0057]{minitoc(hints)}%
6781 {You have used \string\minilof,
6782 \MessageBreak
6783 but not \string\dominilof}
6784 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6785 \fi
6786 \fi
6787 \if@minilot@used@
6788 \if@dominilot@used@ \else
6789 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0058]{minitoc(hints)}%
6790 {You have used \string\minilot,
6791 \MessageBreak
6792 but not \string\dominilot}
6793 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6794 \fi
6795 \fi
6796 \fi

```

W0059

W0057

W0058

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
  \if@secttoc@used@
    \if@dosecttoc@used@ 6797 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6798 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 6799 \if@dosecttoc@used@ \else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6800 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0065]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 6801 {You have used \string\secttoc,
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6802 \MessageBreak
6803 but not \string\dosecttoc}
6804 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6805 \fi
6806 \fi
6807 \if@sectlof@used@

```

W0065

W0063

W0064

```

6808 \if@dosectlof@used@\else
6809 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0063]{minitoc(hints)}%
6810 {You have used \string\sectlof,
6811 \MessageBreak
6812 but not \string\dosectlof}
6813 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6814 \fi
6815 \fi
6816 \if@sectlot@used@
6817 \if@dosectlot@used@\else
6818 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0064]{minitoc(hints)}%
6819 {You have used \string\sectlot,
6820 \MessageBreak
6821 but not \string\dosectlot}
6822 \fi
6823 \fi
6824 \fi

```

9.80.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6825 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6826 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6827 \if@parttoc@used@\else
\if@partlof@used@ 6828 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0075]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6829 {You have used \string\doparttoc,
\if@partlot@used@ 6830 \MessageBreak
6831 but not \string\parttoc}
6832 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6833 \fi
6834 \fi
6835 \if@dopartlof@used@
6836 \if@partlof@used@\else
6837 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0076]{minitoc(hints)}%
6838 {You have used \string\dopartlof,
6839 \MessageBreak
6840 but not \string\partlof}
6841 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6842 \fi
6843 \fi
6844 \if@dopartlot@used@
6845 \if@partlot@used@\else
6846 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0077]{minitoc(hints)}%
6847 {You have used \string\dopartlot,
6848 \MessageBreak
6849 but not \string\partlot}

```

W0075

W0076

W0077


```

6850 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6851 \fi
6852 \fi
6853 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 6854 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6855 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 6856 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 6857 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0078]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 6858 {You have used \string\dominitoc,
\if@minilot@used@ 6859 \MessageBreak
6860 but not \string\minitoc}
6861 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6862 \fi
6863 \fi
6864 \if@dominilof@used@
6865 \if@minilof@used@\else
6866 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0079]{minitoc(hints)}%
6867 {You have used \string\dominilof,
6868 \MessageBreak
6869 but not \string\minilof}
6870 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6871 \fi
6872 \fi
6873 \if@dominilot@used@
6874 \if@minilot@used@\else
6875 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0080]{minitoc(hints)}%
6876 {You have used \string\dominilot,
6877 \MessageBreak
6878 but not \string\minilot}
6879 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6880 \fi
6881 \fi
6882 \fi

```

W0078
W0079
W0080

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@secttoc@used@ 6883 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6884 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6885 \if@secttoc@used@\else
\if@sectlof@used@ 6886 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0081]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6887 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
\if@sectlot@used@ 6888 \MessageBreak
6889 but not \string\secttoc}
6890 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6891 \fi
6892 \fi
6893 \if@dosectlof@used@

```

W0081
W0082
W0083

```

6894 \if@sectlof@used@\else
6895 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0082]{minitoc(hints)}%
6896 {You have used \string\dosectlof,
6897 \MessageBreak
6898 but not \string\sectlof}
6899 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6900 \fi
6901 \fi
6902 \if@dosectlot@used@
6903 \if@sectlot@used@\else
6904 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0083]{minitoc(hints)}%
6905 {You have used \string\dosectlot,
6906 \MessageBreak
6907 but not \string\sectlot}
6908 \fi
6909 \fi
6910 \fi
6911 \fi

```

9.80.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6912 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6913 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6914 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6915 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0071]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6916 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6917 \MessageBreak
6918 \string\tableofcontents
6919 \MessageBreak
6920 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
6921 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6922 \fi
6923 \fi
6924 \if@partlof@used@
6925 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6926 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0069]{minitoc(hints)}%
6927 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
6928 \MessageBreak
6929 \string\listoffigures
6930 \MessageBreak
6931 nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
6932 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6933 \fi
6934 \fi

```

W0071
W0069
W0070

```

6935 \if@partlot@used@
6936   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6937     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0070]{minitoc(hints)}%
6938     {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
6939       \MessageBreak
6940       \string\listoftables
6941       \MessageBreak
6942       nor \string\fakelistoftables}
6943   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6944 \fi
6945 \fi
6946 \fi

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@minitoc@used@ 6947 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6948 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6949   \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6950     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0068]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6951     {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6952       \MessageBreak
6953       \string\tableofcontents
6954       \MessageBreak
6955       nor \string\aketableofcontents}
6956   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6957 \fi
6958 \fi
6959 \if@minilof@used@
6960   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6961     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0066]{minitoc(hints)}%
6962     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
6963       \MessageBreak
6964       \string\listoffigures
6965       \MessageBreak
6966       nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
6967   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6968 \fi
6969 \fi
6970 \if@minilot@used@
6971   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6972     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0067]{minitoc(hints)}%
6973     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
6974       \MessageBreak
6975       \string\listoftables
6976       \MessageBreak
6977       nor \string\fakelistoftables}
6978   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6979 \fi
6980 \fi
6981 \fi

```

W0068

W0066

W0067

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
  \if@secttoc@used@ 6982 \if@mtc@section@def@
    \ifmtc@toc@used@ 6983 \if@secttoc@used@
      \if@sectlof@used@ 6984 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
        \ifmtc@lof@used@ 6985 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0074]{minitoc(hints)}%
          \if@sectlot@used@ 6986 {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
            \ifmtc@lot@used@ 6987 \MessageBreak
              6988 \string\tableofcontents
              6989 \MessageBreak
              6990 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
            6991 \@mtc@hints@given@true
            6992 \fi
          6993 \fi
        6994 \if@sectlof@used@
          6995 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
            6996 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0072]{minitoc(hints)}%
              6997 {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
                6998 \MessageBreak
                6999 \string\listoffigures
                7000 \MessageBreak
                7001 nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
              7002 \@mtc@hints@given@true
              7003 \fi
            7004 \fi
          7005 \if@sectlot@used@
            7006 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
              7007 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0073]{minitoc(hints)}%
                7008 {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
                  7009 \MessageBreak
                  7010 \string\listoftables
                  7011 \MessageBreak
                  7012 nor \string\fake\listoftables}
                7013 \@mtc@hints@given@true
                7014 \fi
              7015 \fi
            7016 \fi

```

W0074
W0072
W0073

9.80.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created,
  \if@mtc@longext@ the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100 has its name
  \if@mtc@part@def@ truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to
    \value signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a
\if@mtc@hints@given@true better operating system 17, either redesign the document.
  \if@mtc@chapter@def@
  \if@mtc@section@def@ 7017 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
                        7018 \if@mtc@longext@

```

W0054
W0053
W0055

¹⁷On the long term, a good investment.

```

7019 \else
7020   \if@mtc@part@def@
7021     \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
7022       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0054]{minitoc(hints)}%
7023       {You have used short extensions
7024       \MessageBreak
7025       and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
7026   \fi
7027 \fi
7028 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
7029   \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
7030     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7031     {You have used short extensions
7032     \MessageBreak
7033     and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
7034   \fi
7035 \else
7036   \if@mtc@section@def@
7037     \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
7038       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0055]{minitoc(hints)}%
7039       {You have used short extensions
7040       \MessageBreak
7041       and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
7042     \fi
7043   \fi
7044 \fi
7045 \fi}
7046 \mtc@hints@checklongext

```

9.80.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0037
 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ section 9.9.1 on page 272.
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7047 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \else
7048   \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
7049     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0037]{minitoc(hints)}%
7050     {The sectsty package should be
7051     \MessageBreak
7052     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7053     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7054   \fi
7055 \fi

```

9.80.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0038
 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

section 9.9.2 on page 272.

```

7056 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \else
7057   \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
7058     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0038]{minitoc(hints)}%
7059     {The varsects package should be
7060      \MessageBreak
7061      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7062   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7063 \fi
7064 \fi

```

9.80.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0086
 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ section 9.9.3 on page 273.
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7065 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \else
7066   \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
7067     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0086]{minitoc(hints)}%
7068     {The fncychap package should be
7069     \MessageBreak
7070     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7071   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7072 \fi
7073 \fi

```

9.80.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0092
 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ section 9.9.4 on page 273.
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7074 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \else
7075   \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
7076     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0092]{minitoc(hints)}%
7077     {The hangcaption package should be
7078     \MessageBreak
7079     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7080   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7081 \fi
7082 \fi

```

9.80.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@` We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.5](#) on page 273. W0087

`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7083 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@\else
7084   \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
7085     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0087]{minitoc(hints)}%
7086     {The quotchap package should be
7087       \MessageBreak
7088       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7089     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7090   \fi
7091 \fi

```

9.80.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@` We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.6](#) on page 273. W0088

`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7092 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@\else
7093   \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
7094     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0088]{minitoc(hints)}%
7095     {The romannum package should be
7096       \MessageBreak
7097       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7098     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7099   \fi
7100 \fi

```

9.80.2.12 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.7](#) on page 274. W0089

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7101 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
7102   \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
7103     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0089]{minitoc(hints)}%
7104     {The sfheaders package should be
7105       \MessageBreak
7106       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7107     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7108   \fi
7109 \fi

```

9.80.2.13 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See `\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@` section 9.9.8 on page 274. `\if@mtc@hints@given@`

W0090

```

7110 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
7111   \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
7112     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0090]{minitoc(hints)}%
7113     {The alnumsec package should be
7114       \MessageBreak
7115       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7116     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7117   \fi
7118 \fi

```

9.80.2.14 Final part of the hint about the captcont package

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See `\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@` section 9.9.9 on page 274. `\if@mtc@hints@given@`

W0091

```

7119 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
7120   \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
7121     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0091]{minitoc(hints)}%
7122     {The captcont package should be
7123       \MessageBreak
7124       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7125     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7126   \fi
7127 \fi

```

9.80.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See `\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@` section 9.9.10 on page 274. `\if@mtc@hints@given@`

W0033

```

7128 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@\else
7129   \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
7130     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0033]{minitoc(hints)}%
7131     {The caption package should be
7132       \MessageBreak
7133       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7134     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7135   \fi
7136 \fi

```


9.80.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.11](#) on page 275. W0034

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7137 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@\else
7138   \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
7139     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0034]{minitoc(hints)}%
7140     {The caption2 package should be
7141       \MessageBreak
7142       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7143     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7144   \fi
7145 \fi

```

9.80.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.12](#) on page 275. W0035

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7146 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@\else
7147   \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
7148     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0035]{minitoc(hints)}%
7149     {The ccaption package should be
7150       \MessageBreak
7151       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7152     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7153   \fi
7154 \fi

```

9.80.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@` We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See [section 9.9.13](#) on page 275. W0036

`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7155 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@\else
7156   \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
7157     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0036]{minitoc(hints)}%
7158     {The mcaption package should be
7159       \MessageBreak
7160       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7161     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7162   \fi
7163 \fi

```

9.80.2.19 Final part of the hint about the float package

`\if@mtc@floatLoaded@` We test if float has been loaded. See section 9.9.14 on page 275.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7164 \if@mtc@floatLoaded@
7165   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7166   {You have loaded the float package;
7167   \MessageBreak
7168   please be aware that the minitoc package
7169   \MessageBreak
7170   facilities can not be used for new types
7171   \MessageBreak
7172   of floats defined by the float package\@gobble}
7173   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7174 \fi

```

9.80.2.20 Final part of the hint about the floatrow package

`\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@` We test if floatrow has been loaded. See section 9.9.15 on page 275.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7175 \if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@
7176   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7177   {You have loaded the floatrow package;
7178   \MessageBreak
7179   please be aware that the minitoc package
7180   \MessageBreak
7181   facilities can not be used for new types
7182   \MessageBreak
7183   of floats defined by the floatrow package\@gobble}
7184   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7185 \fi

```

9.80.2.21 Final part of the hint about the trivfloat package

`\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@` We test if trivfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.16 on page 276.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7186 \if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
7187   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7188   {You have loaded the trivfloat package;
7189   \MessageBreak
7190   please be aware that the minitoc package
7191   \MessageBreak
7192   facilities can not be used for new types
7193   \MessageBreak
7194   of floats defined by the trivfloat package\@gobble}
7195   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7196 \fi

```

9.80.2.22 Final part of the hint about the rotfloat package

`\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@` We test if rotfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.17 on page 276.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7197 \if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@
7198   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7199   {You have loaded the rotfloat package;
7200   \MessageBreak
7201   please be aware that the minitoc package
7202   \MessageBreak
7203   facilities can not be used for new types
7204   \MessageBreak
7205   of floats defined by the rotfloat package\@gobble}
7206   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7207 \fi

```

9.80.2.23 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` For parttocs:

W0046

```

7208 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
7209   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
7210   {You have attempted to insert
7211   \MessageBreak
7212   empty parttocs}
7213   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7214 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlof@` For partlofs:

W0044

```

7215 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
7216   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
7217   {You have attempted to insert
7218   \MessageBreak
7219   empty partlofs}
7220   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7221 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

W0045

```

7222 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
7223   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
7224   {You have attempted to insert

```

```

7225 \MessageBreak
7226 empty partlots}
7227 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7228 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ For minitocs:

W0043

```

7229 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
7230 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
7231 {You have attempted to insert
7232 \MessageBreak
7233 empty minitocs}
7234 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7235 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilofs@ For minilofs:

W0041

```

7236 \if@mtc@empty@minilofs@
7237 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
7238 {You have attempted to insert
7239 \MessageBreak
7240 empty minilofs}
7241 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7242 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilots@ For minilots:

W0042

```

7243 \if@mtc@empty@minilots@
7244 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
7245 {You have attempted to insert
7246 \MessageBreak
7247 empty minilots}
7248 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7249 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ For secttocs:

W0049

```

7250 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
7251 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
7252 {You have attempted to insert
7253 \MessageBreak
7254 empty secttocs}
7255 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7256 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@` For sectlofs:

W0047

```

7257 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
7258   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
7259   {You have attempted to insert
7260   \MessageBreak
7261   empty sectlofs}
7262   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7263 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@` For sectlots:

W0048

```

7264 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
7265   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
7266   {You have attempted to insert
7267   \MessageBreak
7268   empty sectlots}
7269   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7270 \fi

```

9.80.2.24 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document.log* file.

`\if@firstpartis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstpartis`:

W0051

```

7271 \if@firstpartis@used@
7272   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0051]{minitoc(hints)}%
7273   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7274   \MessageBreak
7275   command: \string\firstpartis}
7276   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7277 \fi

```

`\if@firstchapteris@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstchapteris`:

W0050

```

7278 \if@firstchapteris@used@
7279   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0050]{minitoc(hints)}%
7280   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7281   \MessageBreak
7282   command: \string\firstchapteris}
7283   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7284 \fi

```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

W0052

```

7285 \if@firstsectionis@used@
7286   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0052]{minitoc(hints)}%
7287   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7288    \MessageBreak
7289    command: \string\firstsectionis}
7290   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7291 \fi

```

9.80.2.25 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the `hints` option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the `document.log` file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

W0024

I0019

```

7292 \if@mtc@hints@given@
7293   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0024]{minitoc(hints)}%
7294   {Some hints have been written
7295    \MessageBreak
7296    in the \jobname.log file}
7297 \else
7298   \mtcPackageInfo[I0019]{minitoc(hints)}%
7299   {No hints have been written
7300   \MessageBreak
7301   in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
7302 \fi
7303 }

```

9.81 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, `english`:
`\ExecuteOptions`

```

7304   \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
7305   {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%

```



```

\mtcPackageError Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:
\providecommand
  \ptctitle 7306      {\mtcPackageError[E0036]{minitoc}%
  \plftitle 7307      {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
  \plttitle 7308      \MessageBreak
  \mtctitle 7309      The minitoc language object file (.mld),
  \mlftitle 7310      \MessageBreak
  \mlttitle 7311      english.mld is not found.
  \stctitle 7312      \MessageBreak
  \slftitle 7313      We will try to continue with default values}%
  \slttitle 7314      {See the minitoc documentation.
  \slttitle 7315      \MessageBreak
  7316      Please fix your minitoc installation.
  7317      \MessageBreak
  7318      Press <return> to continue}%
  7319      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  7320      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  7321      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  7322      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  7323      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  7324      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  7325      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  7326      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  7327      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  7328      }%

```

\ProcessOptions* Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
7329 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

9.81.1 Processing the insection option

```

\if@mtc@ss@insection@ For the insection option, we load the placeins package [12] with its options verbose and
  \RequirePackage section, after the flafter package (described in [242] and [277, page 286]); the correct loading
  \@ifpackageloaded is verified:
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
  7330 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
  7331   \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
  7332   \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
  7333   \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
  7334   {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
  7335 \fi

```

9.81.2 Processing the notoccite option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [11]:
`\RequirePackage`

```
7336 \if@mtc@notoccite@
7337   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
7338 \fi
```

9.81.3 Processing the listfiles option

I0009

`\mtc@maf` We define the `\mtc@maf` macro which closes `\tf@mtc` and reopens it to write into the file `document.maf`. It calls `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` (long or short extensions),
`\tf@mtc` then closes `\tf@mtc`. `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` writes the names of the exist-
`\if@mtc@longext@` ing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes `docu-`
`\mtc@maf@long` `ment.mtc` in the list (but *not* the `document.maf`¹⁸ file). We must also check the existence of
`\mtc@maf@short` `\jobname.mtc` if long extensions are used.
`\mtc@addtomaf` `\IfFileExists`
`\jobname`

```
7339 \def\mtc@maf{%
7340   \mtcPackageInfo[I0009]{minitoc}%
7341   {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
7342   \MessageBreak
7343   Creating the \jobname.maf file \@gobble}
7344   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
7345   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
7346   \if@mtc@longext@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
7347   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
7348 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
7349   \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
7350 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
7351   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7352   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc0}
7353   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@ \relax
7354     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
7355     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
7356     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
7357     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne \repeat}
7358   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@ \relax
7359     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
7360     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
7361     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
7362     \advance\c@mtc\m@ne \repeat}
7363   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@ \relax
7364     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
7365     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
7366     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
7367     \advance\c@stc\m@ne \repeat}}
```

¹⁸ Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it must not be in the list.


```

7369 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
7370     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7371 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7372     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
7373     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
7374     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
7375     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7376 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7377     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
7378     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
7379     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
7380     \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7381 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7382     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
7383     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
7384     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
7385     \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}

```

```

\if@mtc@listfiles@ If this option is active, we call \mtc@maf in an \AtEndDocument block.
\AtEndDocument
\mtc@maf 7386 \if@mtc@listfiles@\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi

```

9.81.4 Processing the hints option

```

\if@mtc@hints@ For the hints option, we set its first part in an \AtBeginDocument block and its third (last)
\AtBeginDocument part in an \AtEndDocument block:
\mtc@hints@begindoc
\AtEndDocument 7387 \if@mtc@hints@
\mtc@hints@enddoc 7388 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
7389 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
7390 \fi

```

9.81.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the hints option executed in the preamble):

```

\@ifundefined For the \part command:
\mtc@hints@part
\part 7391 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 7392 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
\@part 7393 \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@spart
\@spart

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
\chapter 7394 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter 7395 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
\@chapter 7396 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@schapter
\@schapter

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
\section 7397 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@@sect 7398 \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
\@sect 7399 \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@ssect
\@ssect

```

9.82 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

\mtc@classck It may happen that you use a preparation command (like \dominitoc) or an insertion command (like \dominitoc) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like article). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in an \AtBeginDocument block.

E0037

```

7400 \def\mtc@classck#1{%
7401   \mtcPackageError[E0037]{minitoc}%
7402     {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
7403       \MessageBreak
7404       with the document class}%
7405     {Correct the source code.
7406       \MessageBreak
7407       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
7408 }%

```

\AtBeginDocument An \AtBeginDocument bloc:

```
7409 \AtBeginDocument{%
```

\providecommand Part-level preparation commands:

```

\doarttoc
\doartlof 7410 \providecommand{\doarttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doarttoc}}%
\doartlot 7411 \providecommand{\doartlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doartlof}}%
7412 \providecommand{\doartlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doartlot}}%

```

```

\dominitoc Chapter-level preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 7413 \providecommand{\dominitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominitoc}}%
           7414 \providecommand{\dominilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilof}}%
           7415 \providecommand{\dominilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilot}}%

\dosecttoc Section-level preparation commands:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 7416 \providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosecttoc}}%
           7417 \providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlof}}%
           7418 \providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlot}}%

\parttoc Part-level insertion commands:
\partlof
\partlot 7419 \providecommand{\parttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{parttoc}}%
          7420 \providecommand{\partlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlof}}%
          7421 \providecommand{\partlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlot}}%

\minitoc Chapter-level insertion commands:
\minilof
\minilot 7422 \providecommand{\minitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minitoc}}%
          7423 \providecommand{\minilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilof}}%
          7424 \providecommand{\minilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilot}}%

\secttoc Section-level insertion commands:
\sectlof
\sectlot 7425 \providecommand{\secttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{secttoc}}%
          7426 \providecommand{\sectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlof}}%
          7427 \providecommand{\sectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlot}}%
          7428 }

And the package is terminated.

7429 </minitoc>

```

9.83 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

```

\jobname This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set \jobname
\input   to fminitoc in place of minitoc. As minitoc.ins generates the minitoc.lan and
         fminitoc.lan files which set a language number \LANG, and minitoc.dtx reads then the
         \jobname.lan file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here)
         in minitoc.dtx, the language being selected by \ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ...
         \fi constructs. The \relax primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```

```
7430 <fminitoc>
7431 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}%
7432           [2007/12/04 minitoc v56 french documentation start file]
7433 \input{minitoc.dtx}
7434 </fminitoc>
```

Chapter 10

Commented code of the mtcoff package

Contents

10.1	Why mtcoff?	442
10.2	Identification of the package	442
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	443
10.4	Faking simple commands	446
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	447
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	448
10.7	Disabling the font commands	448
10.8	Disabling the \mtcset... commands	450
10.9	Disabling the new \l@... commands	450
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	450
10.11	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands	450
10.12	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	451
10.13	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	451
10.14	Disabling the mini-table features commands	452
10.15	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	453
10.16	Caution for some commands	453
10.17	Disabling commands for “coffee”	455
10.18	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments	455
10.19	Inhibition of the \mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth internal commands	455
10.20	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command	455
10.21	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command	456
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixnomenclature command	456
10.23	Disabling the \addstarred... commands	456

10.1 Why mtcoff?

The minitoc package [134, 135] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, mtcoff (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the minitoc package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the minitoc package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of minitoc. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of \LaTeX ¹; we need the mtcmess package
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
7435 (*mtcoff)
7436 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
7437 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2007/12/04 v56 The mtcoff package]
7438 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

¹ This checking is not really useful for the mtcoff package itself, but it is good to check that your version of \LaTeX is not too old to support minitoc.

10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

```

\count@ As minitoc declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using \count@
\dimen@ or \dimen@. For \mtcskipamount, we must use its default definition, \bigskipamount.
\c@minitocdepth
\mtcindent 7439 \let\c@minitocdepth\count@
\mtcskipamount 7440 \let\mtcindent\dimen@
\bigskipamount 7441 \let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount
\c@parttocdepth 7442 \let\c@parttocdepth\count@
\mtcindent 7443 \let\ptcindent\dimen@
\c@secttocdepth 7444 \let\c@secttocdepth\count@
\stcindent 7445 \let\stcindent\dimen@

```

```

\c@mtc The basic mini-table counters are provided by \count@:
\c@ptc
\c@stc 7446 \let\c@mtc\count@ \let\c@ptc\count@ \let\c@stc\count@

```

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:
\mtcgapafterheads
7447 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@} \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before
\kernafterparttoc the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros
\kernafterpartlof is used.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 7448 \@ifundefined{part}{%
\kernaftersectlof 7449 \def\kernafterparttoc{%
\kernaftersectlot 7450 \mtcoffwarn@true
\kernafterminitoc 7451 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
\kernafterminilof 7452 {The macro \string\kernafterparttoc
7453 \MessageBreak
7454 should not be used out of context
7455 \MessageBreak}%
7456 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7457 \def\kernafterpartlof{%
7458 \mtcoffwarn@true
7459 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7460 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlof
7461 \MessageBreak
7462 should not be used out of context
7463 \MessageBreak}%
7464 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7465 \def\kernafterpartlot{%
7466 \mtcoffwarn@true
7467 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7468 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot

```

F0008

```

7469         \MessageBreak
7470         should not be used out of context
7471         \MessageBreak}%
7472     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7473     }%
7474 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
7475     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
7476     {%
7477     \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
7478         \mtcoffwarn@true
7479         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7480         {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
7481         \MessageBreak
7482         should not be used out of context
7483         \MessageBreak}%
7484         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7485     \def\kernaftersectlof{%
7486         \mtcoffwarn@true
7487         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7488         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
7489         \MessageBreak
7490         should not be used out of context
7491         \MessageBreak}%
7492         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7493     \def\kernaftersectlot{%
7494         \mtcoffwarn@true
7495         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7496         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
7497         \MessageBreak
7498         should not be used out of context
7499         \MessageBreak}%
7500         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7501         }%
7502     }%
7503     {%
7504     \def\kernafterminitoc{%
7505         \mtcoffwarn@true
7506         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7507         {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
7508         \MessageBreak
7509         should not be used out of context
7510         \MessageBreak}%
7511         \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7512     \def\kernafterminilof{%
7513         \mtcoffwarn@true
7514         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7515         {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
7516         \MessageBreak
7517         should not be used out of context
7518         \MessageBreak}%
7519         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7520     \def\kernafterminilot{%
7521         \mtcoffwarn@true
7522         \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%

```



```

7523             {The macro \string\kernafterminilot
7524             \MessageBreak
7525             should not be used out of context
7526             \MessageBreak}%
7527         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7528     }%

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the horizontal offsets of the mini-tables. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros is used.

F0009

```

\ptcoffset
\plfoffset
\pltoffset 7529 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\stcoffset 7530     \def\ptcoffset{%
\slfoffset 7531         \mtcoffwarn@true
\sltoffset 7532         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
\mtcoffset 7533         {The macro \string\ptcoffset
7534         \MessageBreak
7535         should not be used out of context
7536         \MessageBreak}%
7537         \opt}%
7538     \def\plfoffset{%
7539     \mtcoffwarn@true
7540     \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7541     {The macro \string\plfoffset
7542     \MessageBreak
7543     should not be used out of context
7544     \MessageBreak}%
7545     \opt}%
7546     \def\pltoffset{%
7547     \mtcoffwarn@true
7548     \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7549     {The macro \string\pltoffset
7550     \MessageBreak
7551     should not be used out of context
7552     \MessageBreak}%
7553     \opt}%
7554     }%
7555 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
7556 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
7557     {%
7558     \def\stcoffset{%
7559         \mtcoffwarn@true
7560         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7561         {The macro \string\stcoffset
7562         \MessageBreak
7563         should not be used out of context
7564         \MessageBreak}%
7565         \opt}%
7566     \def\slfoffset{%
7567         \mtcoffwarn@true
7568         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7569         {The macro \string\slfoffset
7570         \MessageBreak

```

```

7571             should not be used out of context
7572             \MessageBreak}%
7573         Opt}%
7574     \def\sltoffset{%
7575         \mtcoffwarn@true
7576         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7577         {The macro \string\sltoffset
7578         \MessageBreak
7579         should not be used out of context
7580         \MessageBreak}%
7581     Opt}%
7582         }%
7583     }%
7584     {%
7585     \def\mtcoffset{%
7586         \mtcoffwarn@true
7587         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7588         {The macro \string\mtcoffset
7589         \MessageBreak
7590         should not be used out of context
7591         \MessageBreak}%
7592     Opt}%
7593     \def\slfoffset{%
7594         \mtcoffwarn@true
7595         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7596         {The macro \string\slfoffset
7597         \MessageBreak
7598         should not be used out of context
7599         \MessageBreak}%
7600     Opt}%
7601     \def\mltoffset{%
7602         \mtcoffwarn@true
7603         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7604         {The macro \string\mltoffset
7605         \MessageBreak
7606         should not be used out of context
7607         \MessageBreak}%
7608     Opt}%
7609         }%

```

10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\fakeableofcontents Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeinfofigures
\fakeinfoftables 7610 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\mtcskip 7611 \let\fakeinfofigures\relax
7612 \let\fakeinfoftables\relax
7613 \let\mtcskip\relax

```

```

\adjustptc Basic adjustment commands are also easy:
\adjustmtc
\adjuststc 7614 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 7615 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 7616 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 7617 \let\decrementptc\relax \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementptc 7618 \let\decrementmtc\relax \let\incrementmtc\relax
\incrementmtc 7619 \let\decrementstc\relax \let\incrementstc\relax
\incrementstc

\partend The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 7620 \let\partend\relax \let\partbegin\relax
\sectend 7621 \let\chapterend\relax \let\chapterbegin\relax
\sectbegin 7622 \let\sectend\relax \let\sectbegin\relax

```

10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

`\gobbleopt@` The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal \LaTeX macro `\ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`.

```
7623 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doparttoc
\dopartlof 7624 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dopartlot 7625 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\parttoc 7626 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlof 7627 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlot 7628 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7629 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

```

\@ifnextchar Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilof 7630 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 7631 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minitoc 7632 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilof 7633 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilot 7634 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7635 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@]{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 7636 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 7637 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 7638 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof 7639 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlot 7640 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7641 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
7642 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

10.6 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo  We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or
\tf@mtc     \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc 7643 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter 7644 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapter 7645 \let\appendixmtc\relax
\pchapter 7646 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\psect 7647 \let\chapter\relax
\l@xpart 7648 \let\pchapter\relax
\part 7649 \let\psect\relax
\l@xsect 7650 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\sect 7651 \let\part\relax
7652 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
7653 \let\xsect\relax

```

10.7 Disabling the font commands

\empty We disable the minitoc font commands (like \mtcSSfont) with \empty, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use \relax here.

```

\ptcfont  Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 7654 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 7655 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 7656 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 7657 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 7658 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 7659 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 7660 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 7661 \let\plffont\empty
\pltSfont 7662 \let\plfSfont\empty
\ptifont 7663 \let\pltfont\empty
          7664 \let\pltSfont\empty
          7665 \let\ptifont\empty

```

```

\mtcfont  Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 7666 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 7667 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 7668 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 7669 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 7670 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 7671 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 7672 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 7673 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 7674 \let\mltfont\empty
          7675 \let\mltSfont\empty
          7676 \let\mtifont\empty

```

```

\stcfont  Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 7677 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont 7678 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont 7679 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont 7680 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont 7681 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont 7682 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont 7683 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont 7684 \let\sltfont\empty
          7685 \let\sltSfont\empty
          7686 \let\stifont\empty

```

```

\coffeeFont  Font for “coffee” ☕ lines:

          7687 \let\coffeeFont\empty

```

10.8 Disabling the `\mtcset...` commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetoffset 7688 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfont 7689 \let\mtcsetoffset\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 7690 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 7691 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 7692 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 7693 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 7694 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 7695 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
7696 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

10.9 Disabling the new `\l@...` commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred
\l@starchapter sectionning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 7697 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 7698 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 7699 \@ifundefined{section}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 7700 \@ifundefined{subsection}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
7701 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
7702 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
7703 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

10.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 7704 \let\firstpartis\@gobble \let\firstchapteris\@gobble \let\firstsectionis\@gobble
\firstsectionis

```

10.11 Disabling the `\mtcselectlanguage` and `\mtcloadmlo` commands

```

\@gobble These command have one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
\mtcloadmlo 7705 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

10.12 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule   These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule   7706 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 7707 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule   7708 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 7709 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule   7710 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 7711 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule   7712 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 7713 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule   7714 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 7715 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule   7716 \let\slfrule\relax
\nopltrule 7717 \let\pltrule\relax
\mltrule   7718 \let\nopltrule\relax
\nomltrule 7719 \let\mltrule\relax
\sltrule   7720 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule 7721 \let\sltrule\relax
           7722 \let\nosltrule\relax
           7723 \let\nosltrule\relax

```

10.13 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```

\ptcpagenumbers These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 7724 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 7725 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers 7726 \let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 7727 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers 7728 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 7729 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers 7730 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 7731 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers 7732 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 7733 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 7734 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7735 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\mltpagenumbers 7736 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\nomltpagenumbers 7737 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\sltpagenumbers 7738 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\nosltpagenumbers 7739 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 7740 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7741 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax

```

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	7757 <code>\let\beforeminitoc\empty</code>
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	7758 <code>\let\beforeminilof\empty</code>
<code>\afterminilof</code>	7759 <code>\let\beforeminilot\empty</code>
<code>\afterminilot</code>	7760 <code>\let\afterminitoc\empty</code>
<code>\openminitoc</code>	7761 <code>\let\afterminilof\empty</code>
<code>\openminilof</code>	7762 <code>\let\afterminilot\empty</code>
<code>\openminilot</code>	7763 <code>\let\openminitoc\empty</code>
<code>\closeminitoc</code>	7764 <code>\let\openminilof\empty</code>
<code>\closeminilof</code>	7765 <code>\let\openminilot\empty</code>
<code>\closeminilot</code>	7766 <code>\let\closeminitoc\empty</code>
	7767 <code>\let\closeminilof\empty</code>
<code>\thispageminitletstyle</code>	7768 <code>\let\closeminilot\empty</code>
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	7769 <code>\let\thispageminitletstyle\empty</code>
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	7770 <code>\let\thispageminilofstyle\empty</code>
	7771 <code>\let\thispageminilotstyle\empty</code>


```

\beforesecttoc  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 7772 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc  7773 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof  7774 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot  7775 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\opensecttoc   7776 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\opensectlof   7777 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\opensectlot   7778 \let\opensecttoc\empty
\closesecttoc  7779 \let\opensectlof\empty
\closesectlof  7780 \let\opensectlot\empty
\closesectlot  7781 \let\closesecttoc\empty
\closesectlof  7782 \let\closesectlof\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 7783 \let\closesectlot\empty
\thispagesectlofstyle 7784 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 7785 \let\thispagesectlofstyle\empty
                  7786 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

10.15 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@mtc@longext@ There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
  \iftightmtc
  \ifktightmtc 7787 \newif\if@mtc@longext@ \@mtc@longext@true
  \ifundottedmtc 7788 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
    \l@listof 7789 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\ifmtcsecondpart 7790 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
  \chapter 7791 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
            7792 \let\l@listof\chapter

```

10.16 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and an `\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:

```

7793 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
7794 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
7795   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[F0007]{mtcoff}%
7796   {You should scan (backwards) your .log
7797     \MessageBreak
7798     file to find some commands needing
7799     \MessageBreak
7800     to be replaced if you decide to
7801     \MessageBreak
7802     DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this

```



F0007

```

7803      \MessageBreak
7804      document. It is more wise to keep the
7805      \MessageBreak
7806      \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
7807      \MessageBreak
7808      and to comment out only one of them}
7809 \fi}

```

```

\mtcaddchapter Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the
\mtcaddsection line number):
\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@ 7810 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
\mtc@ck 7811 \mtcPackageWarning[F0004]{mtcoff}%
\addcontentsline 7812 {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
7813 \MessageBreak
7814 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7815 \MessageBreak}
7816 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7817 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7818 \else
7819 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
7820 \fi}
7821 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7822 \mtcPackageWarning[F0006]{mtcoff}%
7823 {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
7824 \MessageBreak
7825 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7826 \MessageBreak}
7827 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7828 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7829 \else
7830 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7831 \fi}
7832 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7833 \mtcPackageWarning[F0005]{mtcoff}%
7834 {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
7835 \MessageBreak
7836 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7837 \MessageBreak}
7838 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7839 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7840 \else
7841 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7842 \fi}

```

F0004

F0006

F0005

10.17 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 7843 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 7844 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
7845 \let\l@coffee\relax
7846 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
7847 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

10.18 Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 7848 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
7849 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
7850 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}

```

10.19 Inhibition of the \mtc@[save|restore]XXXdepth internal commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding
\mtc@savelofdepth commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package
\mtc@savelotdepth to the mtcff package.
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth 7851 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelotdepth 7852 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
7853 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
7854 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
7855 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
7856 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

10.20 Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command

```

\mtcfixglossary This command accepts one optional argument:
7857 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax}

```

10.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7858 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]
```

10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixnomenclature` command

`\mtcfixnomenclature` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7859 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\relax]
```

10.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but mtcff simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

`\addstarredpart`

`\addstarredchapter`

`\addstarredsection`

`\addcontentsline`

```
7860 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7861   \mtcPackageWarning[F0002]{mtcoff}%
7862   {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
7863     \MessageBreak
7864     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7865     \MessageBreak}
7866   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
7867 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7868   \mtcPackageWarning[F0001]{mtcoff}%
7869   {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
7870     \MessageBreak
7871     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7872     \MessageBreak}
7873   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
7874 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7875   \mtcPackageWarning[F0003]{mtcoff}%
7876   {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
7877     \MessageBreak
7878     \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7879     \MessageBreak}
7880   \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

F0002

F0001

F0003

And the mtcff package is terminated.

```
7881 \end{mtcoff}
```

Chapter 11

Commented code of the mtcmess package

```
\mtcPackageInfo  To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 7882 <(*mtcmess>
\PackageWarningNoLine 7883 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 7884 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 7885 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][[]%
7886     {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7887 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][[]%
7888     {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7889 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][[]%
7890     {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7891 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][[]%
7892     {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
7893 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

¹ For instance, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

Chapter 12

Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an *incompatibility* of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.



```
7894 (*mtcpatchmem)
7895 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
7896 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
7897   [2007/12/04 v56 Package mtcpatchmem]
7898 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
7899 \mtcPackageInfo[M0001]{mtcpatchmem}%
7900   {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
7901 \renewcommand{\@m@chapter}[1][ ]{%
7902   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
7903   \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
7904 }
7905 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
7906 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use #2| as
7907 % entry for all fields.
7908   \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
7909     \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
7910     \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
7911   \else
7912 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If|#1| is empty then only
7913 % one was found.
7914     \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
7915     \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
7916       \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
7917     \else
7918       \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
7919     \fi
7920   \fi
7921   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth > \m@ne \relax
7922     \if@mainmatter
7923       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

7924     \fi
7925   \fi
7926   \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
7927   \ifartopt
7928     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7929     \@afterheading
7930   \else
7931     \insertchapterspace
7932     \if@twocolumn
7933       \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
7934     \else
7935       \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7936     \fi
7937     \@afterheading
7938   \fi
7939   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
7940     \if@mainmatter
7941       \ifanappendix
7942         \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
7943           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7944       \else
7945         \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
7946           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7947       \fi
7948     \else
7949       \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7950     \fi
7951   \else
7952     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7953   \fi
7954   \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
7955 }
7956 </mtcpatchmem>

```

Chapter 13

Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

Contents

13.1	“Acadian” language: acadian.mld	467
13.2	“Acadien” language: acadien.mld	467
13.3	“Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld	468
13.4	“Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld	469
13.5	“Albanian” language: albanian.mld	469
13.6	“American” language: american.mld	470
13.7	“Arab” language: arab.mld	470
13.8	“Arab2” language: arab2.mld	471
13.9	“Arabi” language: arabi.mld	472
13.10	“Arabic” language: arabic.mld	472
13.11	“Armenian” language: armenian.mld	473
13.12	“Australian” language: australian.mld	474
13.13	“Austrian” language: austrian.mld	474
13.14	“Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld	474
13.15	“Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld	474
13.16	“Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld	475
13.17	“Bangla” language: bangla.mld	476
13.18	“Basque” language: basque.mld	477
13.19	“Bengali” language: bengali.mld	478
13.20	“Bicig” language: bicig.mld	478
13.21	“Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld	479
13.22	“Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld	480
13.23	“Bithe” language: bithe.mld	480
13.24	“Brazil” language: brazil.mld	481
13.25	“Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld	482
13.26	“Breton” language: breton.mld	482
13.27	“British” language: british.mld	483
13.28	“Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld	483
13.29	“Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld	484
13.30	“Buryat” language: buryat.mld	485

13.31	“Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld	486
13.32	“Canadian” language: canadian.mld	486
13.33	“Canadien” language: canadien.mld	489
13.34	“Castillan” language: castillan.mld	489
13.35	“Castillian” language: castillian.mld	489
13.36	“Catalan” language: catalan.mld	490
13.37	“Chinese1” language: chinese1.ml[d o]	491
13.38	“Chinese2” language: chinese2.ml[d o]	491
13.39	“Croatian” language: croatian.mld	492
13.40	“Czech” language: czech.mld	493
13.41	“Danish” language: danish.mld	494
13.42	“Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld	495
13.43	“Dutch” language: dutch.mld	495
13.44	“English” language: english.mld	496
13.45	“English1” language: english1.mld	497
13.46	“English2” language: english2.mld	498
13.47	“Esperant” language: esperant.mld	498
13.48	“Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld	499
13.49	“Estonian” language: estonian.mld	499
13.50	“Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld	500
13.51	“Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld	502
13.52	“Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld	502
13.53	“Farsi1” language: farsi1.ml[d o]	502
13.54	“Farsi2” language: farsi2.ml[d o]	504
13.55	“Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld	505
13.56	“Finnish” language: finnish.mld	505
13.57	“Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld	507
13.58	“Francais” language: francais.mld	508
13.59	“French” language: french.mld	508
13.60	“French1” language: french1.mld	509
13.61	“French2” language: french2.mld	510
13.62	“Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld	510
13.63	“Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld	511
13.64	“Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld	511
13.65	“Galician” language: galician.mld	511
13.66	“German” language: german.mld	512
13.67	“Germanb” language: germanb.mld	514
13.68	“Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld	514
13.69	“Greek” language: greek.mld	515
13.70	“Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld	515
13.71	“Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld	517
13.72	“Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld	518
13.73	“Guarani” language: guarani.mld	519
13.74	“Hangul1” language: hangul1.ml[d o]	520
13.75	“Hangul2” language: hangul2.ml[d o]	522
13.76	“Hangul3” language: hangul3.ml[d o]	522
13.77	“Hangul4” language: hangul4.ml[d o]	523
13.78	“Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.ml[d o]	523
13.79	“Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld.ml[d o]	524
13.80	“Hanja2” language: hanja2.ml[d o]	524
13.81	“Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.ml[d o]	525
13.82	“Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld	525
13.83	“Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld	527

13.84	“Hindi” language: hindi.mld	527
13.85	“Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	528
13.86	“Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	529
13.87	“Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	529
13.88	“Indon” language: indon.mld	530
13.89	“Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	530
13.90	“Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	531
13.91	“Irish” language: irish.mld	531
13.92	“Italian” language: italian.mld	532
13.93	“Italian2” language: italian2.mld	534
13.94	“Japanese” language: japanese.ml[d o]	534
13.95	“Japanese2” language: japanese2.ml[d o]	535
13.96	“Japanese3” language: japanese3.ml[d o]	536
13.97	“Japanese4” language: japanese4.ml[d o]	536
13.98	“Japanese5” language: japanese5.ml[d o]	537
13.99	“Japanese6” language: japanese6.ml[d o]	538
13.100	“Kannada” language: kannada.mld	538
13.101	“Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld	539
13.102	“Latin” language: latin.mld	539
13.103	“Latin2” language: latin2.mld	540
13.104	“Latinc” language: latinc.mld	540
13.105	“Latinc2” language: latinc2.mld	541
13.106	“Latvian” language: latvian.mld	541
13.107	“Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld	542
13.108	“Letton” language: letton.mld	543
13.109	“Letton2” language: letton2.mld	543
13.110	“Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	543
13.111	“Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld	544
13.112	“Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	545
13.113	“Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	546
13.114	“Magyar” language: magyar.mld	548
13.115	“Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	548
13.116	“Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	549
13.117	“Malay” language: malay.mld	549
13.118	“Malayalam-b” language: malayalam-b.mld	550
13.119	“Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	551
13.120	“Malayalam-keli2” language: malayalam-keli2.mld	551
13.121	“Malayalam-mr” language: malayalam-mr.mld	552
13.122	“Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.ml[d o]	553
13.123	“Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	553
13.124	“Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	554
13.125	“Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld	554
13.126	“Manju” language: manju.mld	555
13.127	“Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	555
13.128	“Mongol” language: mongol.mld	555
13.129	“Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld	557
13.130	“Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld	558
13.131	“Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	558
13.132	“Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	558
13.133	“Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	559
13.134	“Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	559
13.135	“Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	560
13.136	“Norsk” language: norsk.mld	560

13.137 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	561
13.138 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	562
13.139 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	562
13.140 “Polish” language: polish.mld	563
13.141 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld	563
13.142 “Polski” language: polski.mld	564
13.143 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld	565
13.144 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	565
13.145 “Romanian” language: romanian.mld	566
13.146 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld	567
13.147 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld	568
13.148 “Russian” language: russian.mld	570
13.149 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld	570
13.150 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld	571
13.151 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld	572
13.152 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld	573
13.153 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.ml[d o]	573
13.154 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.ml[d o]	574
13.155 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.ml[d o]	574
13.156 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o]	575
13.157 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o]	575
13.158 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o]	576
13.159 “Samin” language: samin.mld	576
13.160 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld	577
13.161 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld	578
13.162 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld	579
13.163 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld	580
13.164 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld	580
13.165 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld	581
13.166 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld	584
13.167 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld	584
13.168 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld	585
13.169 “Swahili” language: swahili.mld	585
13.170 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld	587
13.171 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld	587
13.172 “Thai” language: thai.ml[d o]	589
13.173 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld	590
13.174 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld	591
13.175 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld	592
13.176 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld	592
13.177 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld	592
13.178 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld	593
13.179 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld	593
13.180 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld	595
13.181 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld	595
13.182 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld	595
13.183 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld	596
13.184 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld	597
13.185 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld	597
13.186 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld	598
13.187 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld	599
13.188 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld	600

Figures

13.1	Language families in the world . . .	465	13.42	Languages in India	528
13.2	Political world	465	13.43	Iceland	529
13.3	Acadia today	467	13.44	Ireland	532
13.4	Areas of the afrikaans language . . .	468	13.45	Italy	533
13.5	Areas of the albanian language . . .	469	13.46	Italophone areas in Europa	533
13.6	Areas of the arabic language	471	13.47	Japon	535
13.7	Armenia and the languages in the Caucasus	473	13.48	Areas of the kannada language . . .	538
13.8	Indonesia	475	13.49	Baltic languages and Latvia	542
13.9	Malaysia	476	13.50	Baltic languages and Lithuania . . .	544
13.10	Areas of the bangla (or bengali) language	477	13.51	Lusace and the Sorbians	546
13.11	The Basque country	478	13.52	Areas of the sorbian dialects	547
13.12	Brazil	481	13.53	Hungaria and magyar speaking areas	548
13.13	Brittany	482	13.54	Areas of the malayalam language . .	550
13.14	Bulgaria	484	13.55	Areas of the mongol language . . .	556
13.15	Republic of Buryatia	485	13.56	General linguistic map of the mongol language	556
13.16	Official languages in Canada	487	13.57	Languages in Norway	561
13.17	Canada	487	13.58	Poland	563
13.18	Political map of Canada	488	13.59	Portugal	565
13.19	Linguistic map of Canada	488	13.60	Lusophone areas	566
13.20	Areas of the catalan language	490	13.61	Areas of the romanian language . .	567
13.21	Languages in China	491	13.62	Areas of the russian language	569
13.22	Minorities in Croatia	492	13.63	Areas where the russian language is official or spoken	569
13.23	Czech Republic	493	13.64	Areas of the Sámi dialects	577
13.24	Denmark and Faeroe Islands	494	13.65	Scotland and the scottish language .	577
13.25	Languages in the Netherlands and in Belgium	495	13.66	Serbia and Bosnia-Herzegovina . . .	578
13.26	Anglophone areas	496	13.67	Slovakia	580
13.27	Estonia	499	13.68	Slovenia	581
13.28	Areas of the ethiopian languages . .	501	13.69	The 17 autonomous communities in Spain	582
13.29	Areas of the farsi language	503	13.70	Languages in Spain	583
13.30	Iranian tongues	504	13.71	Hispanophone areas	583
13.31	Finland	506	13.72	Area of the swahili language	586
13.32	Finnish dialects	507	13.73	Areas of the swedish language . . .	588
13.33	Francophone areas	508	13.74	Area of the thai language	589
13.34	Areas of the galician language . . .	512	13.75	Turkey	590
13.35	Germanophone areas	513	13.76	Areas of the uighur language	591
13.36	Greece	516	13.77	Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region	591
13.37	Dialects of modern Greek	516	13.78	Languages in Ukraine	594
13.38	Paraguay	519	13.79	Ukraine	594
13.39	Areas of the korean language	521	13.80	Vietnam	596
13.40	Hangûl and hanja characters	521	13.81	Wales	598
13.41	Israël	526	13.82	Areas of the khalkha language . . .	599

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details.

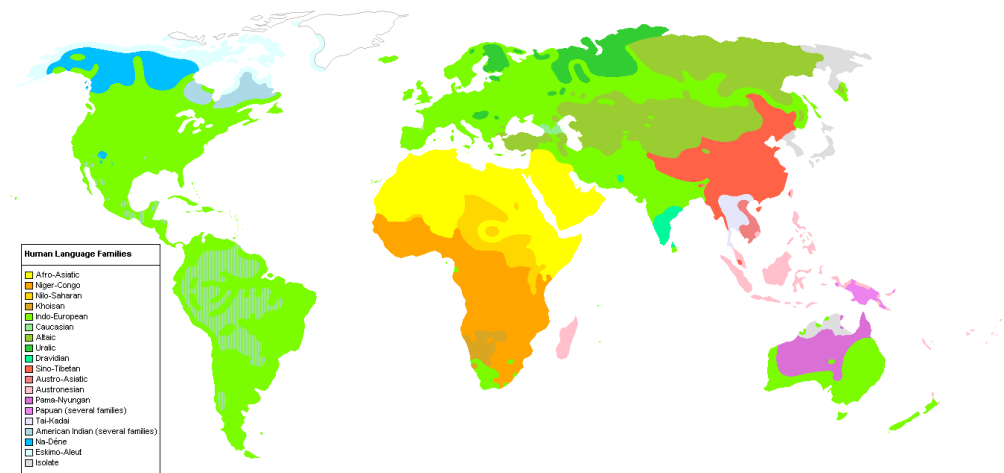


Figure 13.1: Language families in the world
(From http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Atlas_of_the_world)



Figure 13.2: Political world
(From <http://www.populationdata.net/cartes/monde/monde-politique-moyen.php>)

For some languages, I have added a map of the country or area where the language is spoken, if it is not trivial. The origin of each map is given by an URL to the graphic file or to the WEB page where I found it. Note that the [248] and [195] Web sites are useful sources. Maps from [195] are under the Creative Commons License, see http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en_GB. The site <http://www.expatries.senat.fr/pays.html> allows to look at the maps of many countries (except France, in particular!). The Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection [326] (The University of Texas at Austin, <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps>) contains countless maps.

A .mld file is loaded either via a package option in the `\usepackage` command for the minitoc package (or a global option for the document), either via the command:

```
\mtcselectlanguage      \mtcselectlanguage{\language}
```

`\ptctitle` Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

<code>\plftitle</code>	<code>\pltttitle</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code>	<code>\stctitle</code>
<code>\mlftitle</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code>	<code>\slftitle</code>
<code>\stctitle</code>	<code>\slftitle</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code>	<code>\sltttitle</code>

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the `babel` package [47–49, 67], the CJK system [250, 251], the `HiATEX` system [222, in korean], the Antomega system [226], the `ArabTEX` [230, 231], `BangTEX` [304], `Devanāgarī` for `TEX` [306], `ethiop` [39], `FarsiTEX` [140]¹, `guarani` [41], `malayalam` [4] et `omal` [5], `MonTEX` [119, 122], or `ArmTEX` [123] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.

But for some oriental languages², the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file³, not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via `\mtcselectlanguage`.

To go around this limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses `filecontents` environments to generate the .mlo files.

Since version #49, the minitoc package checks the presence of the *language*.mld file (and of the *language*.mlo file if necessary) for each language option of the package, before validating the option. If a .mld or .mlo is missing, the corresponding language option is not enabled and a warning message is written in the *document.log* file. But the presence of the *english*.mld file is mandatory, because english is the default language. If some .mld or .mlo files are missing, the list of this files is given in the .log file.

¹ By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiT_{EX} Project Group. See the FarsiT_{EX} site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

² Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

³ The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.



I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0034

13.1 “Acadian” language: `acadian.mld`

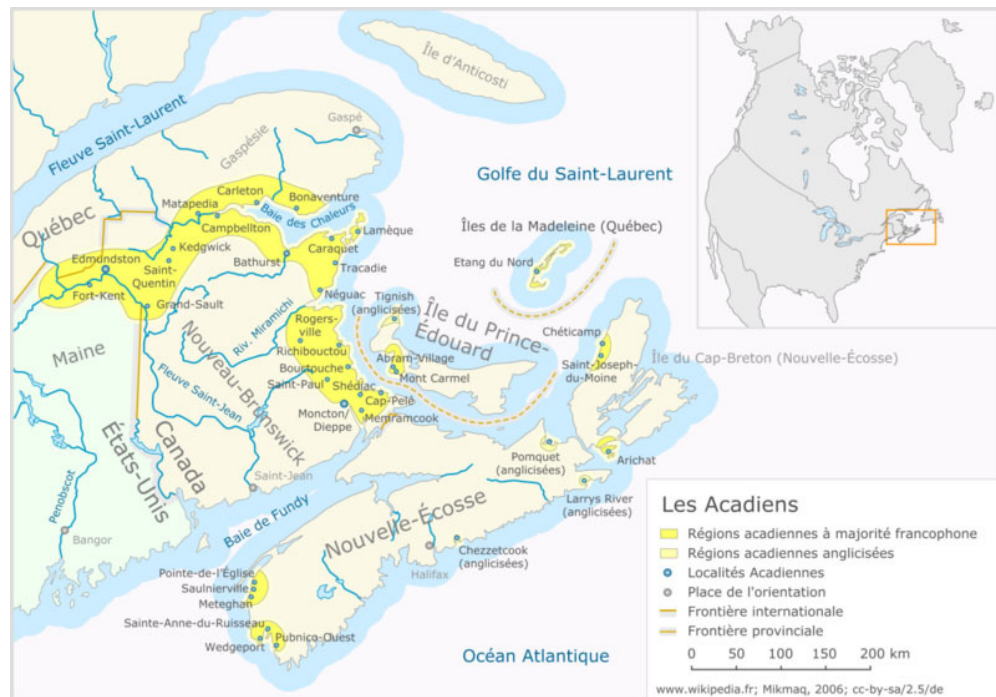


Figure 13.3: Acadia today

(From http://www.cyberacadie.com/acadie_pays.htm)

`\mtcselectlanguage` The acadian language⁴ is just french, so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.59 on page 508):

```
7957 (*acadian)
7958 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
7959 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7960 (/acadian)
```

13.2 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “acadien” language⁴ is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.59 on page 508):

```
7961 (*acadien)
7962 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
```

⁴ Spoken in Acadia (see figure 13.3) and some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

```

7963 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7964 </acadien>

```

13.3 “Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld

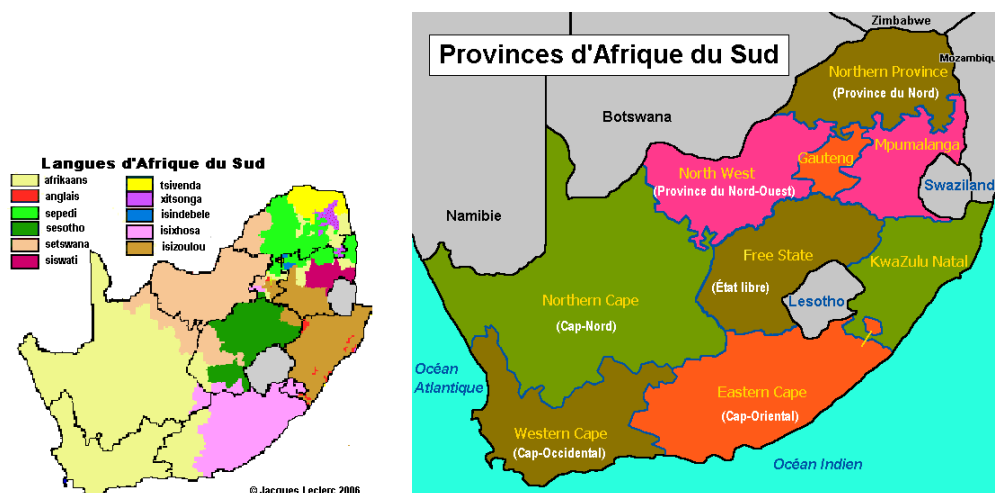


Figure 13.4: Areas of the afrikaans language
(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/afriquesud.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “afrikaan” language⁵ come from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Stoffel LOMBARD) in the `babel` package [48–50]:

```

7965 (*afrikaan)
7966 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]
7967 %% Afrikaan(s) titles for minitoc.sty
7968 %% from dutch.dtx (babel) by Braams, Johannes~L.
7969 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7970 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
7971 \def\pltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7972 %%
7973 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7974 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
7975 \def\mltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7976 %%
7977 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7978 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
7979 \def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7980 </afrikaan>

```

⁵ Spoken in South Africa and Namibia, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.43 on page 495. See also <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/afrikaans.htm> in [248]. See figure 13.4.

13.4 “Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The term “afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load afrikaan.mld (see section 13.3 on the preceding page):

```
7981 <afrikaans>
7982 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]
7983 \mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
7984 </afrikaans>
```

13.5 “Albanian” language: albanian.mld

The albanian language is spoken in Albania and some regions of Macedonia, Montenegro, Serbia and Kosovo; see figure 13.5. The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the albanian.dtx file (with a contribution of Adi ZAIMI) in the babel package [48, 49, 94]:



Figure 13.5: Areas of the albanian language
(From http://www.tlq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/carte_albanophone.htm and <http://www.tlq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/albaniecarte.htm> in [248])

```

7985 <*albanian>
7986 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
7987 %% Albanian titles for minitoc.sty.
7988 %% from albabian.dtx (babel)
7989 %% Contribution of Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com).
7990 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7991 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
7992 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%
7993 %%
7994 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7995 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
7996 \def\mltitle{Tabelat}%
7997 %%
7998 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7999 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
8000 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
8001 </albanian>

```

13.6 “American” language: american.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “american” language is just like “english”⁶, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.44 on page 496):

```

8002 <*american>
8003 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]
8004 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8005 </american>

```

13.7 “Arab” language: arab.mld

The titles for the “arab” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [230, 231] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

8006 <*arab>
8007 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]
8008 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty
8009 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
8010 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
8011 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8012 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8013 \def\plttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}
8014 %%
8015 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%

```

⁶ It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

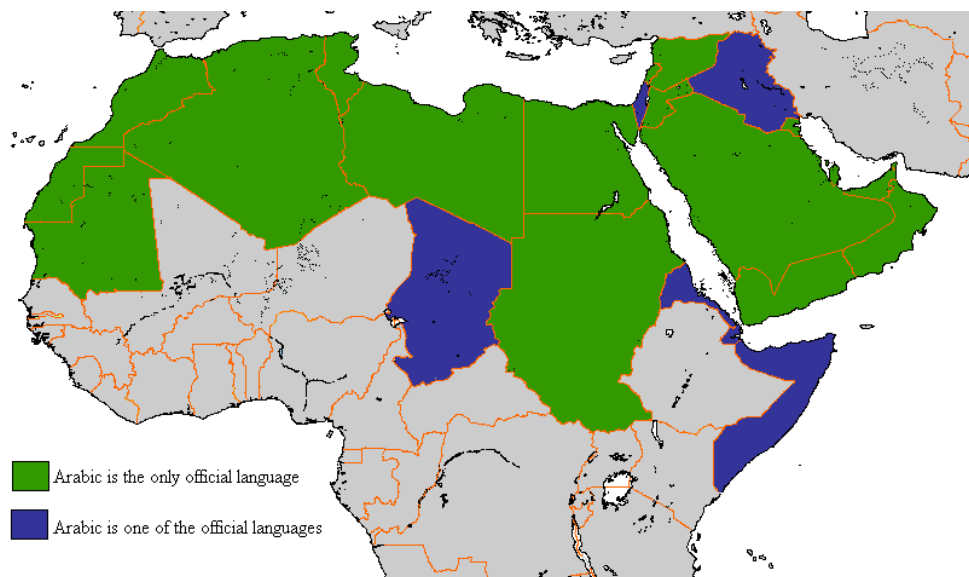


Figure 13.6: Areas of the arabic language
(From <http://www.muslimtents.com/learningarabic/home.html>)

```

8016 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8017 \def\mltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8018 %%
8019 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8020 \def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8021 \def\sltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8022 \</arab>

```

13.8 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

\mtcArabTok @tok The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [230, 231] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab” language.

```

8023 \<arab2>
8024 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]
8025 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
8026 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
8027 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
8028 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\@tok}%
8029 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8030 \def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8031 \def\pltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8032 %%
8033 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%

```

```

8034 \def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8035 \def\mltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8036 %%
8037 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8038 \def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8039 \def\sltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8040 </arab2>

```

13.9 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

\R The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the *Arabi* package [204] (by Youssef JABRI), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

8041 <*arabi>
8042 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]
8043 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty.
8044 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package, by Youssef Jabri)
8045 %% (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
8046 \def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8047 \def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8048 \def\pltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8049 %%
8050 \def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8051 \def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8052 \def\mltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8053 %%
8054 \def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8055 \def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8056 \def\sltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8057 %%
8058 </arabi>

```

13.10 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “arabic” language is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.7 on page 470):

```

8059 <*arabic>
8060 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]
8061 \mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
8062 </arabic>

```

13.11 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

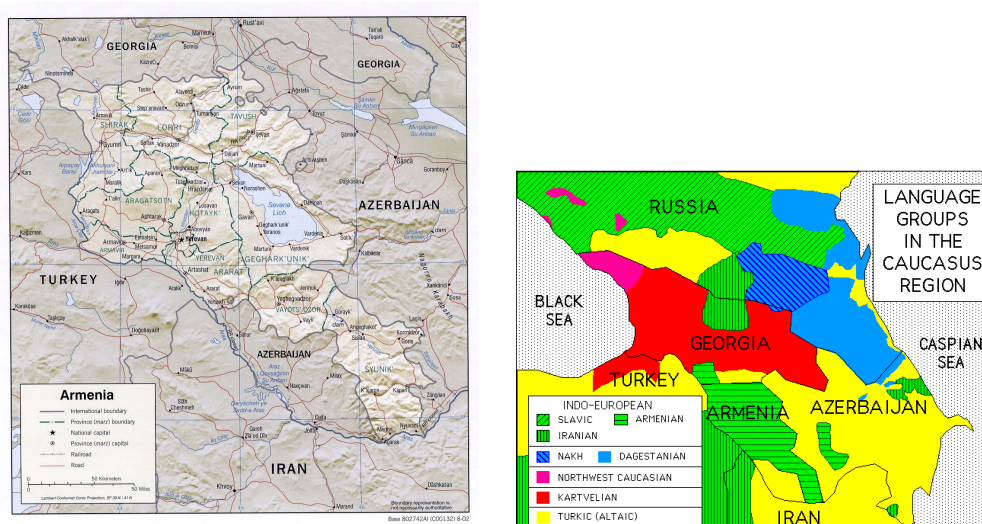


Figure 13.7: Armenia and the languages in the Caucasus

(From <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/armenia.html> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [326] – and <http://linguistics.buffalo.edu/people/faculty/dryer/dryer/dryer.htm> by Matthew S. DRYER, link found from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Caucasian_languages)

The titles for the “armenian” language are taken from the ArmTeX package [123] (by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN), which should be used, with the associated fonts. The armenian language is spoken in Armenia, in a part of Azerbaidjan and in the armenian diaspora; see figure 13.7.

```

8063 (*armenian)
8064 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]
8065 %% Armenian titles for minitoc.sty
8066 %% from ArmTeX
8067 %% Sergueï Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr)
8068 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8069 \def\plftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
8070 \def\pltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
8071 %%
8072 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8073 \def\mlftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
8074 \def\mltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
8075 %%
8076 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8077 \def\slftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
8078 \def\sltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
8079 \</armenian>

```

13.12 “Australian” language: `australian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.44 on page 496):

```
8080 <*australian>
8081 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]
8082 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8083 </australian>
```

13.13 “Austrian” language: `austrian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load `german.mld` (see section 13.66 on page 512):

```
8084 <*austrian>
8085 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8086 \mtcselectlanguage{german}%
8087 </austrian>
```

13.14 “Bahasa” language: `bahasa.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15):

```
8088 <*bahasa>
8089 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]
8090 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8091 </bahasa>
```

13.15 “Bahasai” language: `bahasai.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language⁷ (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file `bahasa.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN and Terry MART) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 75]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.16 on the following page. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.14, 13.88 on page 530, and 13.89 on page 530.

⁷ Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant. See http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-1_langues.htm in [248].

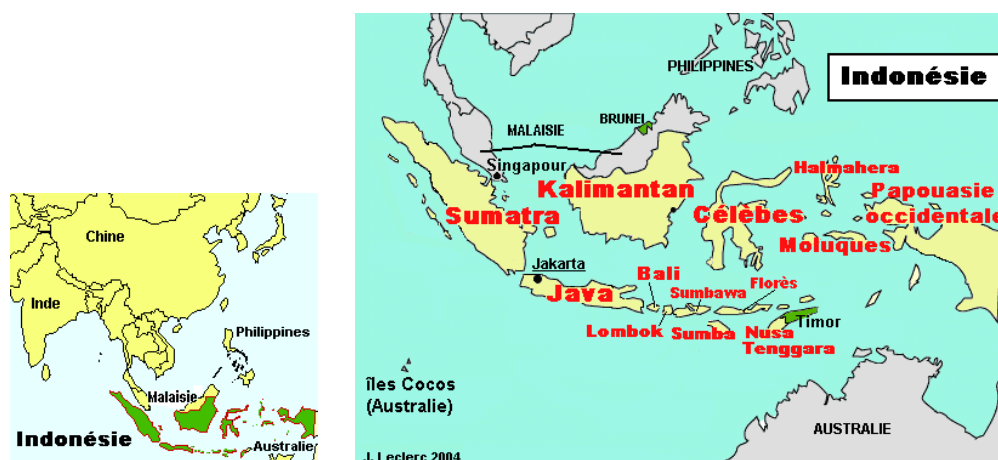


Figure 13.8: Indonesia

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-1_langues.htm and http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-3_Pol_ling.htm in [248])

```

8092 (*bahasai)
8093 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]
8094 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles for minitoc.sty
8095 %% From bahasa.dtx in the babel package
8096 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
8097 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8098 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8099 \def\plttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8100 %%
8101 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8102 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8103 \def\mlttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8104 %%
8105 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8106 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8107 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8108 \end{bahasai}

```

13.16 “Bahasam” language: `bahasam.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)⁸ are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART and Bob MARGOLIS) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 76]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.14 on the preceding page. For other names for this language, see sections 13.117 on page 549 and 13.127 on page 555.

⁸ Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.



Figure 13.9: Malaysia

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/malaysia.htm> in [248])

```

8109 <(*bahasam>
8110 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]
8111 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles for minitoc.sty
8112 %% From bahasam.dtx in the babel package
8113 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry and Margolis, Bob
8114 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
8115 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8116 \def\pltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8117 %%
8118 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
8119 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8120 \def\mltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8121 %%
8122 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
8123 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8124 \def\sltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8125 </bahasam>

```

13.17 “Bangla” language: bangla.mld

The titles for the “bangla” (bengali) language⁹ are taken from the BangTeX package [304] (by Palash Baran PAL); they need specific fonts (the bengali alphabet is derived from sanskrit).

```

8126 <(*bangla>
8127 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]
8128 %% Bangla titles for minitoc.sty
8129 %% from BangTeX
8130 %% Needs specific fonts
8131 \def\ptctitle{suu\*c*ipotRo}%

```

⁹ Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India, like Occidental Bengal (19), Orissa (21), Assam (18), Bihar (10) and Tripura (16); see figure 13.10 on the next page.

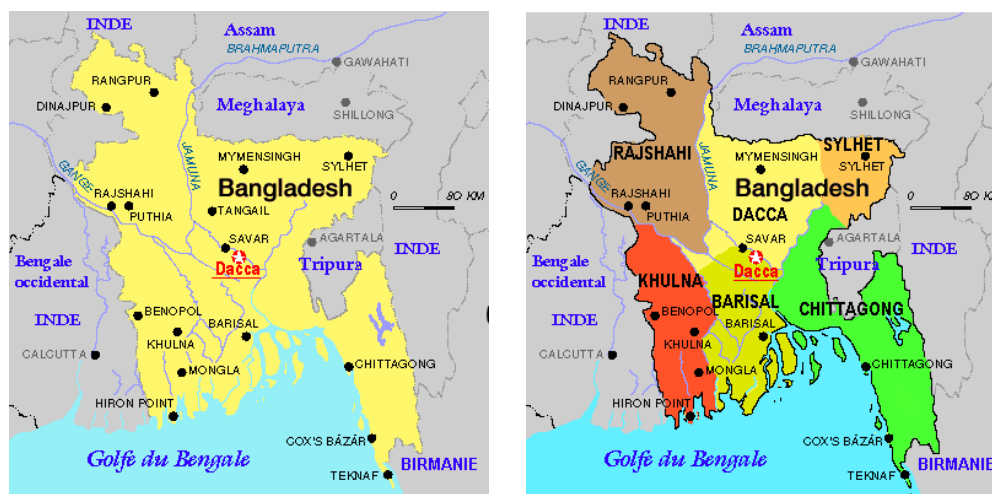


Figure 13.10: Areas of the bangla (or bengali) language
(From <http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/Bangladesh.htm> in [248])

```

8132 \def\plftitle{cho\b*ir ta\l*ika}%
8133 \def\pltttitle{cho\k*er ta\l*ika}%
8134 %%
8135 \def\mtctitle{suu\c*i}%
8136 \def\mlftitle{cho\b*ir ta\l*ika}%
8137 \def\mltttitle{cho\k*er ta\l*ika}%
8138 %%
8139 \def\stctitle{suu\c*i}%
8140 \def\slftitle{cho\b*ir ta\l*ika}%
8141 \def\sltttitle{cho\k*er ta\l*ika}%
8142 </bangla>

```

13.18 “Basque” language: basque.mld

The titles for the “basque” language¹⁰ are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [48, 49, 55], by Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA and Julio SÁNCHEZ, with help from Zunbeltz IZAOLA. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

```

8143 <*\basque>
8144 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]
8145 %% Basque titles for minitoc.sty
8146 %% from basque.dtx (babel)
8147 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. and Sanchez, Julio
8148 %% Needs special fonts
8149 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%

```

¹⁰Spoken in the basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France; see figure 13.11 on the following page.

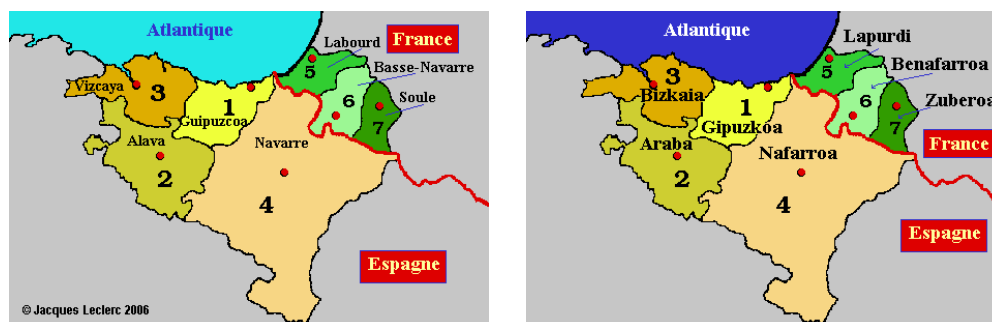


Figure 13.11: The Basque country

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnebasque.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnenavarre.htm> in [248])

```

8150 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8151 \def\plttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8152 %%
8153 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8154 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8155 \def\mlttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8156 %%
8157 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8158 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8159 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8160 </basque>

```

13.19 “Bengali” language: bengali.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “bengali” language is a synonym for the “bangla” language, so we load the file `bangla.mld` (see section 13.17 on page 476):

```

8161 <{*bengali}>
8162 \ProvidesFile{bengali.mld}[2007/07/23]
8163 \mtcselectlanguage{bangla}%
8164 </bengali>

```

13.20 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

`\bcg` The titles for the “bicig” language¹¹ are taken from the `MonTeX` package [119, 122]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.128 on page 555, 13.21 on the following page, and 13.22 on page 480.

¹¹The `bicig` is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as `Uighur`. See also section 13.174 on page 591.

```

8165 <*bicig>
8166 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]
8167 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles for minitoc.sty
8168 %% needs mongol fonts
8169 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8170 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8171 \def\pltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8172 %%
8173 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8174 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8175 \def\mltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8176 %%
8177 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8178 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8179 \def\sltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8180 </bicig>

```

13.21 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language¹² are taken from the MonTeX package [119, 122]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.128 on page 555, 13.20 on the preceding page, and 13.22 on the next page.

```

8181 <*bicig2>
8182 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]
8183 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8184 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8185 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8186 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8187 %%
8188 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8189 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8190 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8191 %%
8192 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8193 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8194 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8195 </bicig2>

```

¹²The `bicig`, or `uighur`, is a written form of the mongolian language, `bicig2` is a variant. See also section 13.175 on page 592.

13.22 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language¹³ are taken from the MonTeX package [119, 122]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.128 on page 555, 13.20 on page 478 and 13.21 on the page before.

```

8196 <{*bicig3}
8197 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]
8198 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8199 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
8200 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8201 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8202 %%
8203 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
8204 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8205 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8206 %%
8207 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
8208 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8209 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8210 </bicig3>

```

13.23 “Bithe” language: bithe.mld

The titles for the “bithe” language¹⁴ are taken from the MonTeX package [119, 122]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.126 on page 555 and 13.128 on page 555. The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to eliminate all the ambiguities of Mongolian.

```

8211 <{*bithe}
8212 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]
8213 %% Manju (bithe) titles for minitoc.sty (needs mongol fonts)
8214 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8215 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8216 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8217 %%
8218 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8219 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8220 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8221 %%
8222 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8223 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8224 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8225 </bithe>

```

¹³The *bicig*, or *uighur*, is a written form of the mongolian language, *bicig3* is a variant. See also section 13.176 on page 592.

¹⁴The *bithe* is a written form of the manju variant of the mongolian language.

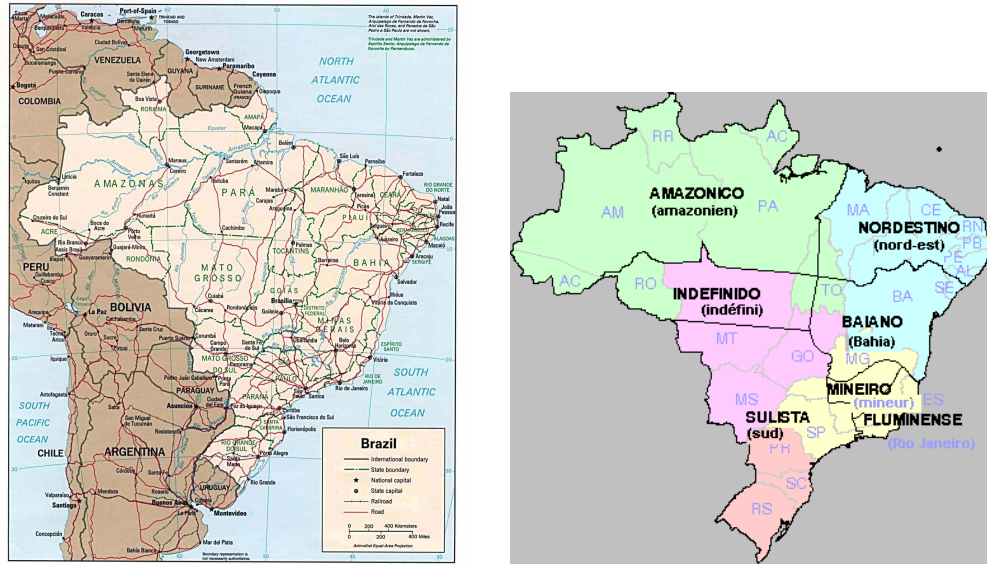
13.24 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

Figure 13.12: Brazil

(From <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/americas/brazil.jpg> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [326] – and <http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/amsudant/bresimapa-lingua.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “brazil” language¹⁵ are taken from the `portugues.dtx` file (for portuguese titles by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 85]:

```

8226 (*brazil)
8227 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]
8228 %% Portugues (brazil) titles for minitoc.sty, from portugues.dtx (babel)
8229 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro and "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
8230 \def\ptctitle{Sum\`ario}%
8231 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8232 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8233 %%
8234 \def\mtctitle{Sum\`ario}%
8235 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8236 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8237 %%
8238 \def\stctitle{Sum\`ario}%
8239 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8240 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8241 (/brazil)

```

¹⁵It is the main portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. Note that these titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brazilian translations. See section 13.144 on page 565.

13.25 “Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.24 on the page before):

```
8242 <(*brazilian)
8243 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]
8244 \mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
8245 </(*brazilian)
```

13.26 “Breton” language: breton.mld

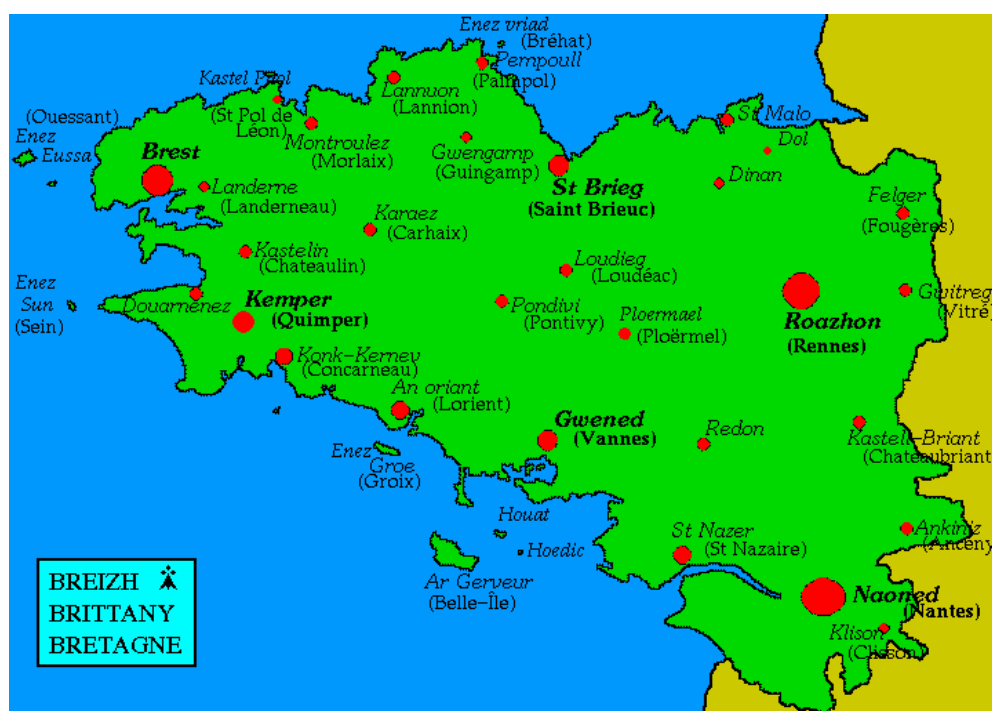


Figure 13.13: Brittany

(From <http://www.bretagnenet.com/scb/fgeo.html>)

The titles for the “breton” language¹⁶ are taken from the `breton.dtx` file (by Christian ROLLAND) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 86]:

```
8246 <(*breton)
8247 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]
8248 %% Breton titles for minitoc.sty from breton.dtx (babel) by Rolland, Christian
```

¹⁶Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany; see figure 13.13.

```

8249 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
8250 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\`u}%
8251 \def\plttitle{Listenn an taolennno\`u}%
8252 %%
8253 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
8254 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\`u}%
8255 \def\mlttitle{Listenn an taolennno\`u}%
8256 %%
8257 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
8258 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\`u}%
8259 \def\slttitle{Listenn an taolennno\`u}%
8260 </breton>

```

13.27 “British” language: `british.mld`

```
\mtcselectlanguage The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see
section 13.44 on page 496):
```

```
8261 <(*british)
8262 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]
8263 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8264 </british>
```

13.28 “Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld

`\cyr` The titles for the “bulgarian” language are taken from the `bulgarian.dtx` (adapted from russian by Georgi N. BOSHNAKOV) file in the `babel` package [48, 49, 60]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.29 on the following page.

```

8265 {*bulgarian}
8266 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2007/03/08]
8267 %% Bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
8268 %% From bulgarian.dtx (babel) (needs special cyrillic fonts)
8269 %% by Boshnakov, Georgi N. <georgi.boshnakov at umist.ac.uk>
8270 \def\ptctitle{%
8271   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8272 \def\plftitle{%
8273   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8274     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8275 \def\plttitle{%
8276   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8277     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8278 %%
8279 \def\mtctitle{%
8280   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%

```



(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_Bulgaria and <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/bulgaria.html> – *Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin* [326] –)

```
8281 \def\mlfttitle{%  
8282     {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cysr\cyrhdsn\cyrk\ %  
8283         \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%  
8284 \def\mltttitle{%  
8285     {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cysr\cyrhdsn\cyrk\ %  
8286         \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%  
8287 %%  
8288 \def\stctitle{%  
8289     {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhdsn\cyrd\cyrhdsn\cyrr\cyrz\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%  
8290 \def\slfttitle{%  
8291     {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cysr\cyrhdsn\cyrk\ %  
8292         \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%  
8293 \def\sltttitle{%  
8294     {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cysr\cyrhdsn\cyrk\ %  
8295         \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%  
8296 </bulgarian>
```

13.29 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

`\cyr` The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA) of the `babel` package [48, 49, 77, 240]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.28 on the page before.


```

8297 <*bulgarianb>
8298 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]
8299 %% Upper bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
8300 %% From russianb.dtx
8301 %% Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian
8302 \def\ptctitle{%
8303   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8304 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
8305   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8306 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
8307   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8308 %%
8309 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8310   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8311 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
8312   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8313 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
8314   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8315 %%
8316 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8317   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8318 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
8319   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8320 \def\slttitle{% Tablici
8321   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8322 </bulgarianb>

```

13.30 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld



Figure 13.15: Republic of Buryatia
(From http://russiatrek.org/rp_buryatia.shtml)

\mnr The titles for the “buryat” language¹⁷ are taken from the MonTeX package [119, 122]. This
\sh language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.128 on page 555.

¹⁷Spoken in some regions of Mongolia and in the Buryatia republic, near Lake Baikal. See figure 13.15.

```

8323 <*buryat>
8324 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]
8325 %% Buryat titles for minitoc.sty
8326 %% Needs special fonts
8327 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8328 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8329 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8330 %%
8331 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8332 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8333 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8334 %%
8335 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8336 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8337 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8338 </buryat>

```

13.31 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.30 on the preceding page) are taken from the MonTeX package [119, 122]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.128 on page 555.

```

8339 <*buryat2>
8340 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]
8341 %% Buryat2 titles for minitoc.sty
8342 %% Needs special fonts
8343 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8344 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8345 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8346 %%
8347 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8348 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8349 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8350 %%
8351 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8352 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8353 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8354 </buryat2>

```

13.32 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file english.mld (see section 13.44 on page 496):



Province	Official language(s)
Alberta	english
British-Columbia	english
Island-of-Prince-Edward	english
Manitoba	english
New-Brunswick	english-french
New-Scotland	english
Ontario	english
Québec	french
Satatchewan	english
Newfoundland	english
Federal territories	english-french
Federal government	english-french



Figure 13.16: Official languages in Canada
(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/amnord/canada.htm> in [248])



Figure 13.17: Canada
(From <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/canada.html#country.html> – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [326])



Figure 13.18: Political map of Canada
 (From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Provinces_and_territories_of_Canada)

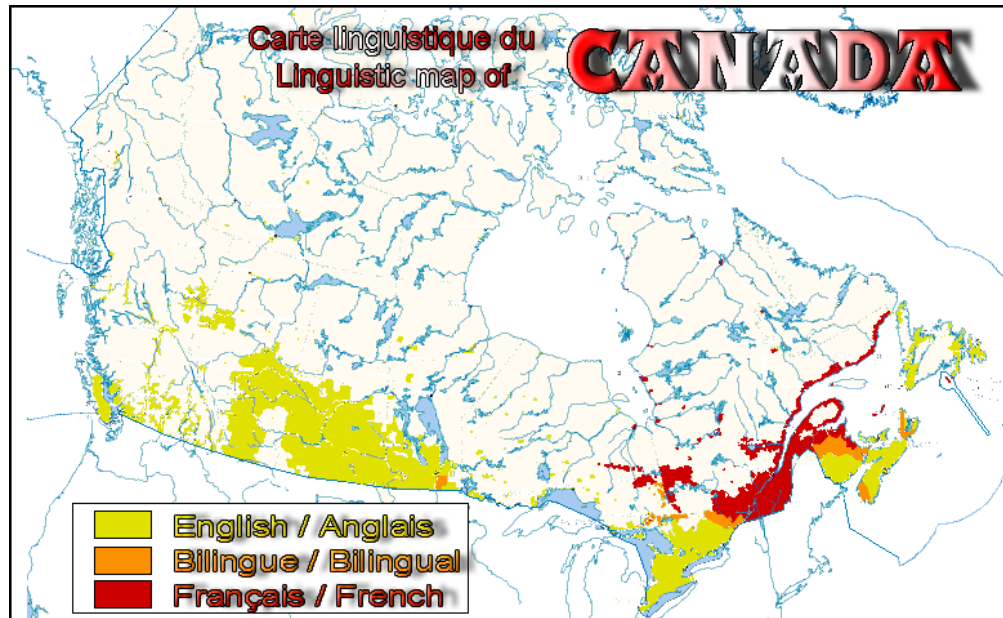


Figure 13.19: Linguistic map of Canada
 (From http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bilinguisme_au_Canada)

```

8355 <*canadian>
8356 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8357 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8358 </canadian>

```

13.33 “Canadien” language: `canadien.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.59 on page 508):



```

8359 <*canadien>
8360 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
8361 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8362 </canadien>

```

13.34 “Castillan” language: `castillan.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “castillan” language is better known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.165 on page 581):

```

8363 <*castillan>
8364 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]
8365 %% Castillan (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8366 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8367 </castillan>

```

13.35 “Castillian” language: `castillian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` “Castillian” is just the english name for “castillan”, so we just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.165 on page 581):

```

8368 <*castillian>
8369 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]
8370 %% Castillian (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8371 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8372 </castillian>

```

13.36 “Catalan” language: catalan.mld

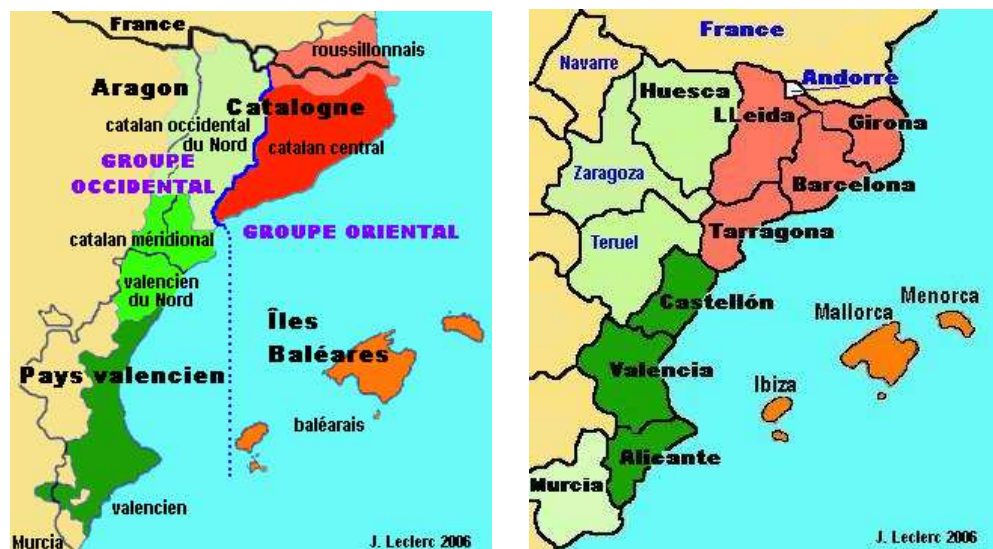


Figure 13.20: Areas of the catalan language

(From <http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnecatalogne.htm> in [248]; see also http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Catalan_language#Geographic_distribution)

The titles for the “catalan” language¹⁸ are taken from the catalan.dtx file (adapted from spanish by Gonçal BADENES and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the babel package [48, 49, 57]:

```

8373 (*catalan)
8374 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]
8375 %% Catalan titles for minitoc.sty from catalan.dtx (babel) (Badenes, Gonçal)
8376 \def\ptctitle{\'Index}%
8377 \def\plftitle{\'Index de figures}%
8378 \def\plttitle{\'Index de taules}%
8379 %%
8380 \def\mtctitle{\'Index}%
8381 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8382 \def\mlttitle{Taules}%
8383 %%
8384 \def\stctitle{\'Index}%
8385 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8386 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
8387 </catalan>

```

¹⁸Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona, and in Roussillon, in France. See figure 13.20.

13.37 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.ml[d|o]

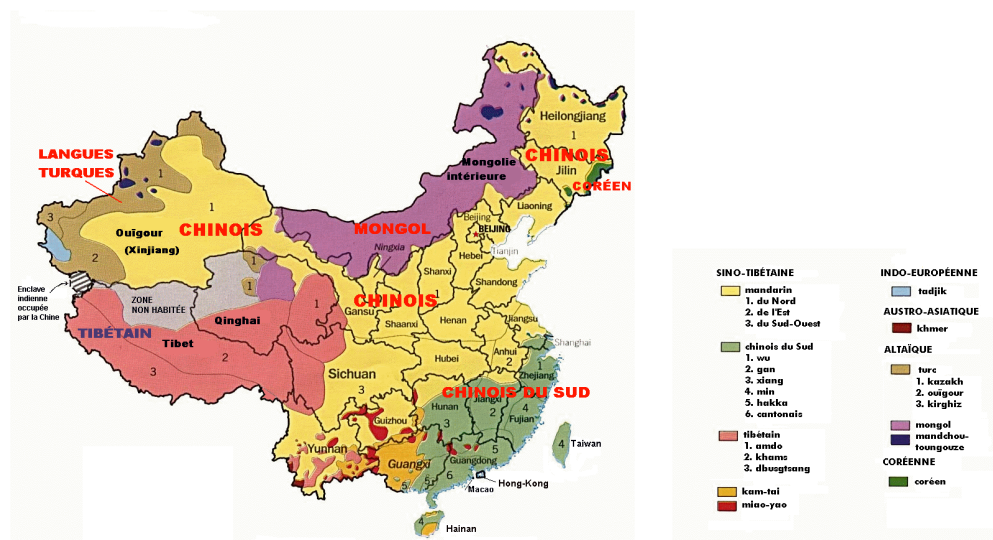


Figure 13.21: Languages in China

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/chine-map-langues.htm> in [248])

\mtcloadmlo There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.38. See [341] about the history of China and the chinese language.

The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```
8388 (*chinese1)
8389 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]
8390 %% From the file file Bg5.cap of the CJK package
8391 %%   for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8392 %%   created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org> Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8393 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
8394 %%
8395 \mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
8396 \end{chinese1}
```

13.38 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.ml[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.37.

The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese2.mlo.

```

8397 <*chinese2>
8398 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]
8399 %% From the file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package
8400 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8401 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8402 %%
8403 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8404 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
8405 %%
8406 \mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
8407 </chinese2>

```

13.39 “Croatian” language: croatian.mld

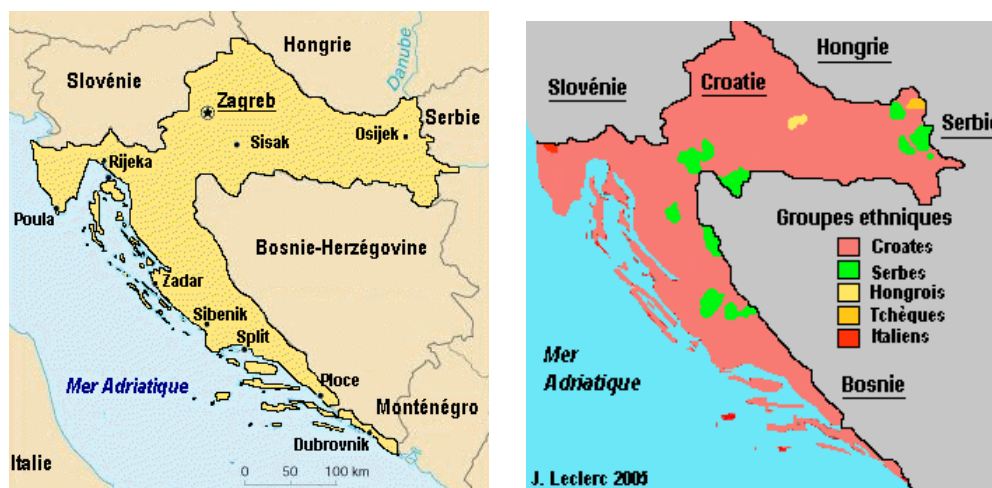


Figure 13.22: Minorities in Croatia
(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/croatieinfos.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “croatian” language are taken from the file croatian.dtx file (by Alan Paić) in the babel package [48, 49, 82]:

```

8408 <*croatian>
8409 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8410 %% Croatian titles for minitoc.sty
8411 %% from croatian.dtx (babel)
8412 %% Pai\'{c}, Alan
8413 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\'{v}{z}aj}%
8414 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
8415 \def\pltttitle{Tablice}%

```



```

8416 %%
8417 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8418 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
8419 \def\mltttitle{Tablice}%
8420 %%
8421 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8422 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
8423 \def\sltttitle{Tablice}%
8424 \</croatian>

```

13.40 “Czech” language: czech.mld

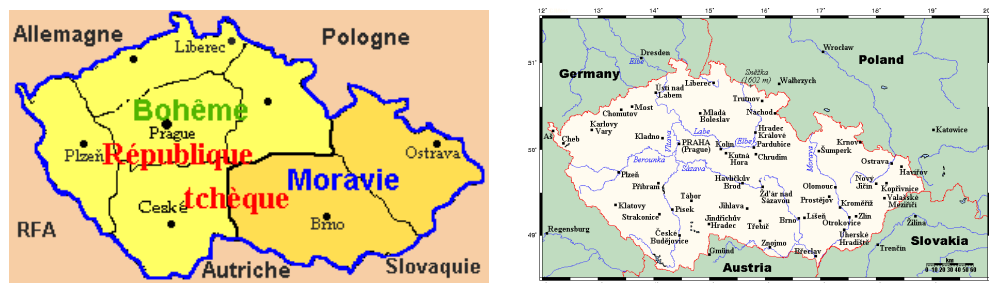


Figure 13.23: Czech Republic

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/reptcheque.htm> in [248] and http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_the_Czech_Republic)

The titles for the “czech” language are taken from the file `czech.dtx` (contributions by Miloš V. LOKAJČEK) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 80]:

```

8425 \<{*czech}>
8426 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2007/12/04]
8427 %% Czech titles for minitoc.sty
8428 %% from czech.dtx (babel)
8429 %% Lokaj{\'\{i}\}\v{c}ek, Milo\v{s} V.
8430 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
8431 \def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
8432 \def\pltttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8433 %%
8434 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
8435 \def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
8436 \def\mltttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8437 %%
8438 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
8439 \def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
8440 \def\sltttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8441 \</czech>

```

13.41 “Danish” language: danish.mld

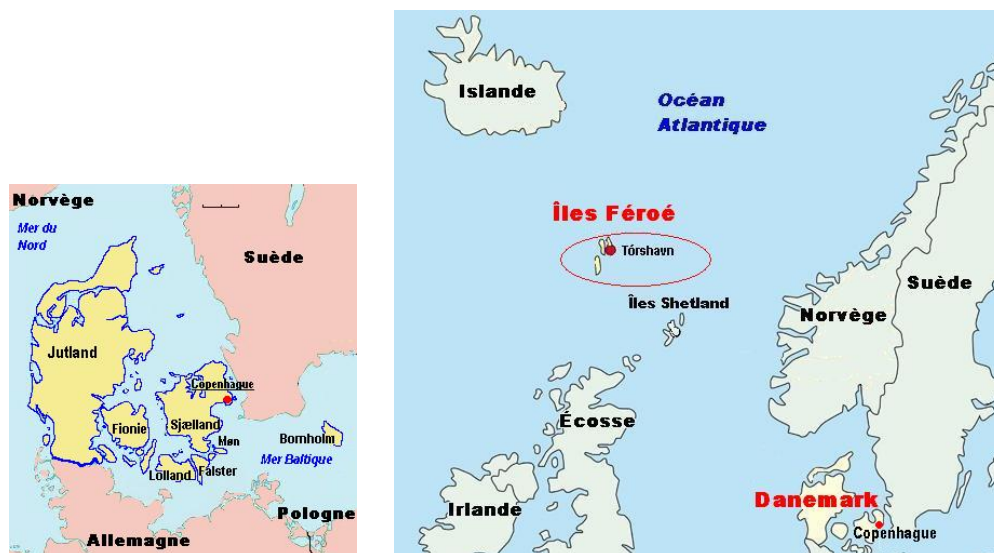


Figure 13.24: Denmark and Faeroe Islands

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/danemarkcarte.htm> and http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/feroe_carte1.htm in [248])

The titles for the “danish” language¹⁹ are taken from the `danish.dtx` file (by Henning LARSEN) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 78]:

```

8442 (*danish)
8443 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2006/01/13]
8444 %% Danish titles for minitoc.sty
8445 %% from danish.dtx (babel)
8446 %% Larsen, Henning
8447 \def\ptctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8448 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
8449 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
8450 %%
8451 \def\mtctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8452 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
8453 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
8454 %%
8455 \def\stctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8456 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
8457 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
8458 (/danish)

```

¹⁹The danish language is spoken in Denmark, in the Faeroe Islands and in Greenland.

13.42 “Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld

\dn The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the devanagari.sty file
 \qva (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY,
 \re Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [306] (Devanāgarī).
 \rs See also section 13.84 on page 527. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the
 \8 package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>. See also [128] about the hindi language.

```

8459 (*devanagari)
8460 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]
8461 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles for minitoc.sty from devanagari.sty by
8462 %% Pandey, Anshuman and Radhakrishnan, C.~V. and Wagner, Zden\v{e}k and
8463 %% Smith, John and Carmody, Kevin and Mahoney, Richard and Wujastyk, Dominik
8464 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8465 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8466 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8467 %%
8468 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8469 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8470 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8471 %%
8472 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8473 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8474 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8475 </devanagari>

```

13.43 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

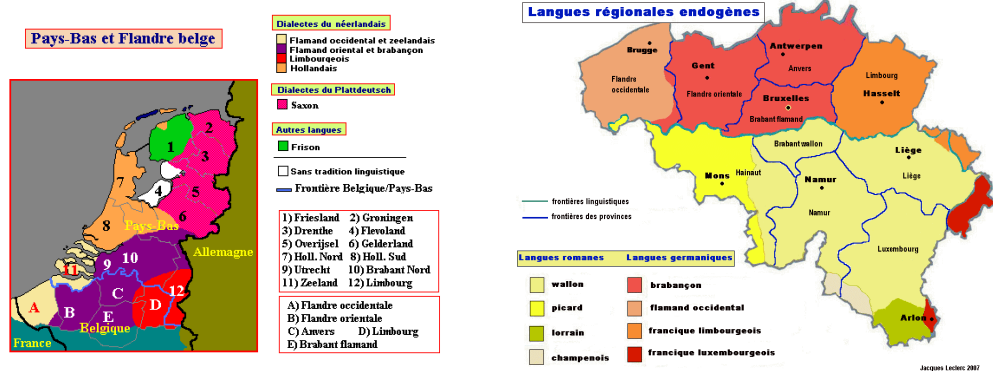


Figure 13.25: Languages in the Netherlands and in Belgium
 (From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/paysbas_Ing_Map.htm and
http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/belgique_Ing-regionales.htm in [248])

The titles for the “dutch” language²⁰ are taken from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [48–50]:

```

8476 <{*dutch}
8477 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2006/01/13]
8478 %% Dutch titles for minitoc.sty from dutch.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8479 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8480 \def\plftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8481 \def\plttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8482 %%
8483 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8484 \def\mlftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8485 \def\mlttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8486 %%
8487 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8488 \def\slftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8489 \def\slttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8490 </dutch>

```

13.44 “English” language: `english.mld`

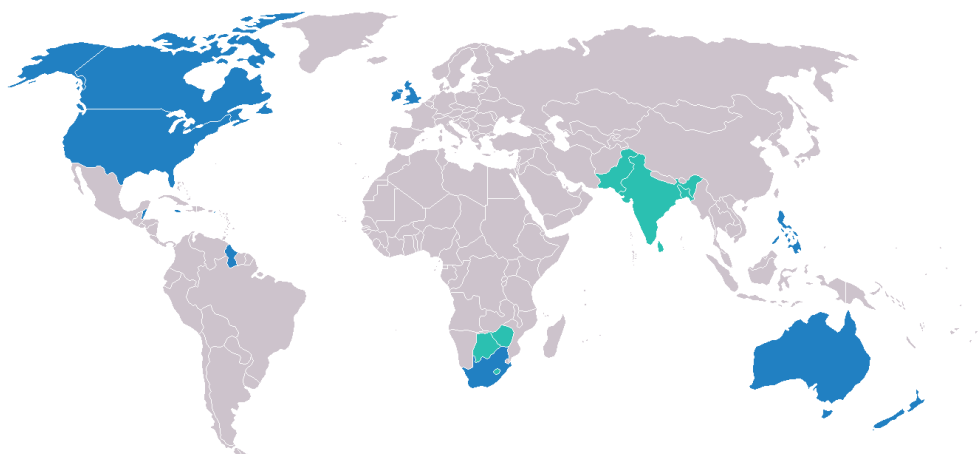


Figure 13.26: Anglophone areas

(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_language#Geographical_distribution)

The titles for the “english” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 51]. *The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory, because english is the default language.*

See also sections 13.6 on page 470, 13.12 on page 474, 13.27 on page 483, 13.32 on page 486, 13.132 on page 558, 13.177 on page 592, and 13.181 on page 595.

²⁰The dutch language is spoken in the Netherlands and a part of Belgium; see figure 13.25 on the preceding page.

```

8491 <*english>
8492 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]
8493 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8494 %% from english.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8495 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
8496 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
8497 \def\plttitle{List of Tables}%
8498 %%
8499 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8500 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8501 \def\mlttitle{Tables}%
8502 %%
8503 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8504 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8505 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8506 </english>

```

13.45 “English1” language: english1.mld

\ifnum The titles for the “english1” language come from the english.dtx file (written by
\value Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [48, 49, 51], with some adaptations for the
\Roman part-level titles.

```

8507 <*english1>
8508 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]
8509 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8510 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8511 %% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPDFD)
8512 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8513   Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
8514   \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8515 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8516   List of Figures in the First Part\relax
8517   \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8518 \def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8519   List of Tables in the First Part\relax
8520   \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8521 %%
8522 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8523 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8524 \def\mlttitle{Tables}%
8525 %%
8526 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8527 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8528 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8529 </english1>

```

13.46 “English2” language: english2.mld

`\mtcEnglishIIpart` The titles for the “english2” language are again taken from the `english.dtx` file (written by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 51], with some adaptations for the titles at the part level.

`\value`

`\Roman`

```

8530 <*english2>
8531 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]
8532 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8533 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8534 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFd)
8535 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8536 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or
8537 the Third Part\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or
8538 the Sixth Part\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or
8539 the Ninth Part\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or
8540 the Twelfth Part\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part\or
8541 the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part\or the Seventeenth Part\or
8542 the Eighteenth Part\or the Nineteenth Part\or
8543 the Twentieth Part\else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
8544 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8545 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8546 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8547 %%
8548 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8549 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8550 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8551 %%
8552 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8553 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8554 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8555 </english2>

```

13.47 “Esperant” language: esperant.mld

The titles for the “esperant” (esperanto) language are taken from the `esperanto.dtx` file (by Marti RUIZ-ALTABA and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 87]. The esperanto (artificial) language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF²¹ (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```

8556 <*esperant>
8557 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]
8558 %% Esperanto titles for minitoc.sty from esperanto.dtx (babel)
8559 %% Ruiz-Altaba, Marti and Knappen. Jörg
8560 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
8561 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%

```

²¹ See <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information.

```

8562 \def\pltttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8563 %%
8564 \def\mtcttitle{Enhavo}%
8565 \def\mlfttitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8566 \def\mltttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8567 %%
8568 \def\stcttitle{Enhavo}%
8569 \def\slfttitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8570 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8571 \esperant

```

13.48 “Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.47 on the preceding page):

```

8572 \*esperanto
8573 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]
8574 \mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
8575 \esperanto

```

13.49 “Estonian” language: estonian.mld



Figure 13.27: Estonia

(From <http://www.estonica.org/eng/maps/index-eng.html>, under the Creative Commons License, see http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en_GB.)

The titles for the “estonian” language²² are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file (by Enn SAAR) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 88]:

²²Estonian is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.

```

8576 (*estonian)
8577 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8578 %% Estonian titles for minitoc.sty from estonian.dtx (babel) Saar, Enn
8579 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
8580 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%
8581 \def\pltttitle{Tabelid}%
8582 %%
8583 \def\mtctitle{Sisukord}%
8584 \def\mlftitle{Joonised}%
8585 \def\mltttitle{Tabelid}%
8586 %%
8587 \def\stctitle{Sisukord}%
8588 \def\slftitle{Joonised}%
8589 \def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
8590 </estonian>

```

13.50 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

`\eth@doaltchar` The titles for the “ethiopia” language are taken from the `ethiop` package [39] (written by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.52 on page 502. See figure 13.28 on the following page for the repartition of the various ethiopian dialects.

```

8591 (*ethiopia)
8592 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]
8593 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty
8594 %% Needs special fonts
8595 \def\ptctitle{yezate}%
8596 \def\plftitle{%
8597   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8598 \def\pltttitle{%
8599   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8600 %%
8601 \def\mtctitle{yezate}%
8602 \def\mlftitle{%
8603   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8604 \def\mltttitle{%
8605   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8606 %%
8607 \def\stctitle{yezate}%
8608 \def\slftitle{%
8609   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8610 \def\slttitle{%
8611   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8612 </ethiopia>

```

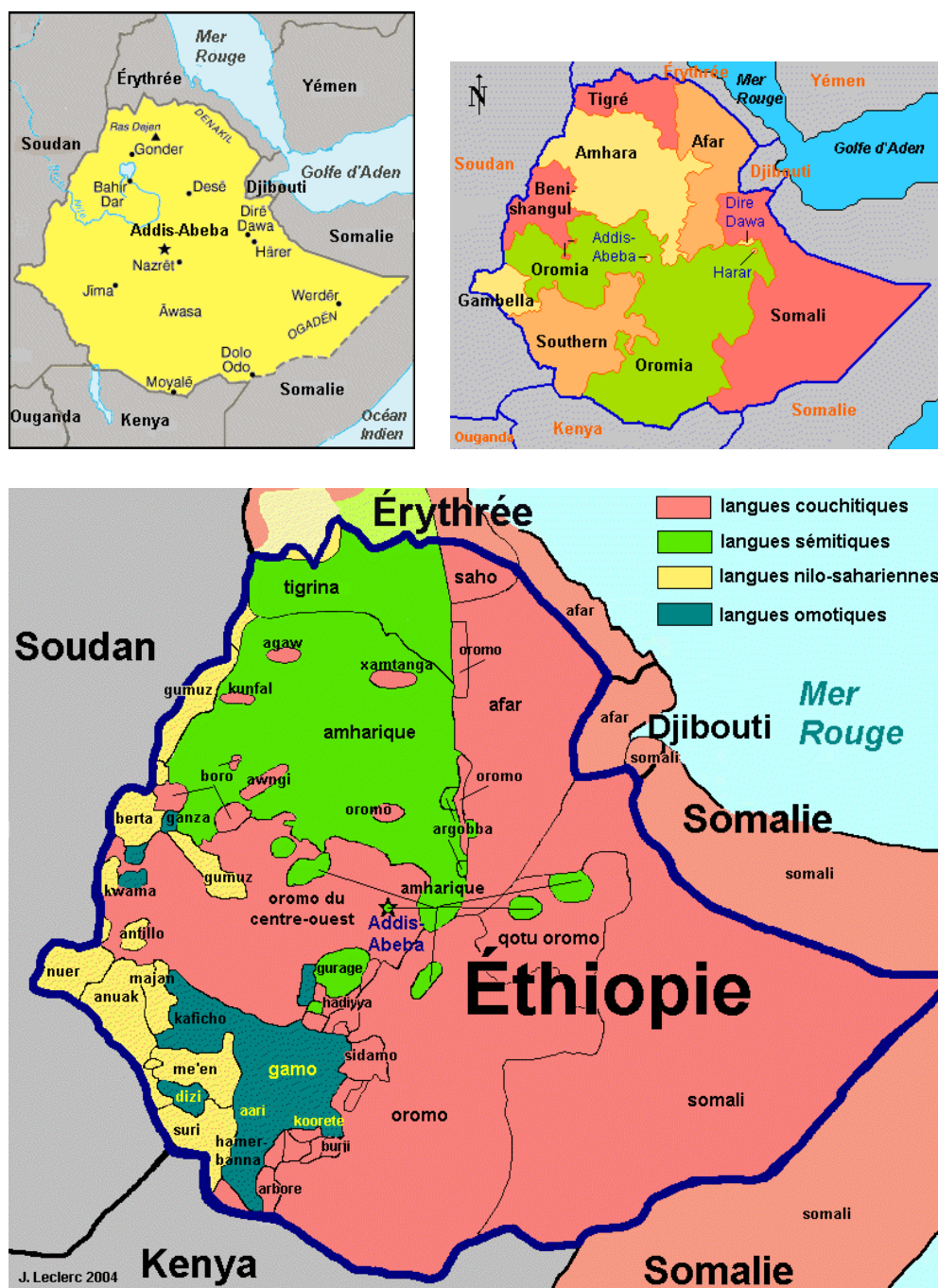



Figure 13.28: Areas of the ethiopian languages
 (From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/ethiopie-prov.htm> and
<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/ethiopie.htm> in [248]; See also
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_Ethiopia)

13.51 “Ethiopian” language: `ethiopian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.50 on page 500). See also section 13.50 on page 500.

```
8613 <*ethiopian>
8614 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8615 %% Needs ethiopian special fonts
8616 \mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
8617 </ethiopian>
```

13.52 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [39] (by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.50 on page 500.

```
8618 <*ethiopian2>
8619 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]
8620 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty with Omega.
8621 %% Needs special fonts
8622 \def\ptctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
8623 \def\plftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
8624   ^121b^12cd^132b}%
8625 \def\pltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1320^1228^12e5
8626   ^121b^12cd^132b}%
8627 %%
8628 \def\mtctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
8629 \def\mlftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
8630   ^121b^12cd^132b}%
8631 \def\mltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1320^1228^12e5
8632   ^121b^12cd^132b}%
8633 %%
8634 \def\stctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
8635 \def\slftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
8636   ^121b^12cd^132b}%
8637 \def\sltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1320^1228^12e5
8638   ^121b^12cd^132b}%
8639 </ethiopian2>
```

13.53 “Farsi1” language: `farsi1.ml[d|o]`

`\mtcloadmlo` There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan (see figure 13.29 on the following page). The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the

فارسی تک

farsi.sty file in the FarsiT_EX [140] system²³, by Mohammad GHODSI, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.54 on the next page.



Figure 13.29: Areas of the farsi language
(From <http://www.farsinet.com/farsi>; see also
http://www.farsinet.com/farsi/linguistic_composition_of_iran.html.)

The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load farsi1.mlo.

²³ By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiT_EX Project Group. See the FarsiT_EX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

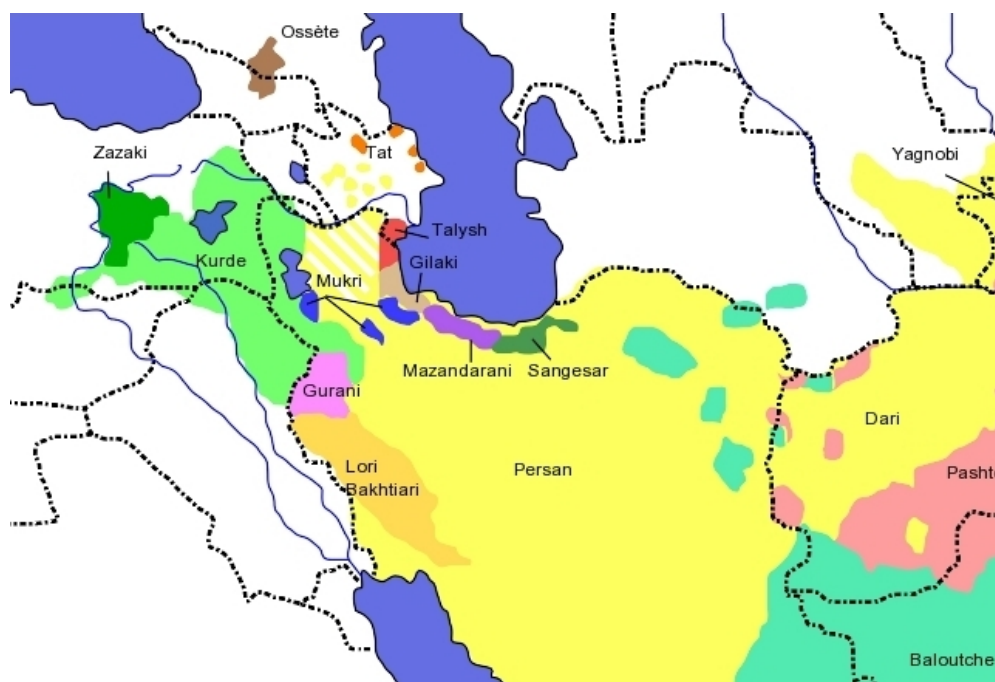


Figure 13.30: Iranian tongues

(From <http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Persan>)

```

8640 (*farsi1)
8641 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]
8642 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8643 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu), Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
8644 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8645 \mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
8646 \end{farsi1}

```

13.54 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.ml[d|o]

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan (see figure 13.29 on the preceding page). The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the farsi.sty file in the FarsiTeX system [140]²⁴, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.53 on page 502.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load farsi2.mlo.

²⁴By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

```

8647 <farsi2>
8648 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]
8649 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8650 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi, Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8651 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others. Site: http://www.farsitex.org
8652 \mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
8653 </farsi2>

```

13.55 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

\FR There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan (see figure 13.29 on page 503). The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the farsi.ldf file in the *Arabi* system[204], by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```

8654 <farsi3>
8655 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]
8656 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system
8657 %% by Youssef Jabri.
8658 \def\ptctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8659 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8660 \def\pltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8661 %%
8662 \def\mtctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8663 \def\mlftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8664 \def\mltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8665 %%
8666 \def\stctitle{\FR{fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8667 \def\slftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8668 \def\sltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8669 </farsi3>

```

13.56 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

The titles for the “finnish” language are taken from the finnish.dtx file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the babel package [48, 49, 73]. See also section 13.57 on page 507.

```

8670 <finnish>
8671 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]
8672 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty
8673 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
8674 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8675 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8676 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
8677 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8678 %%

```

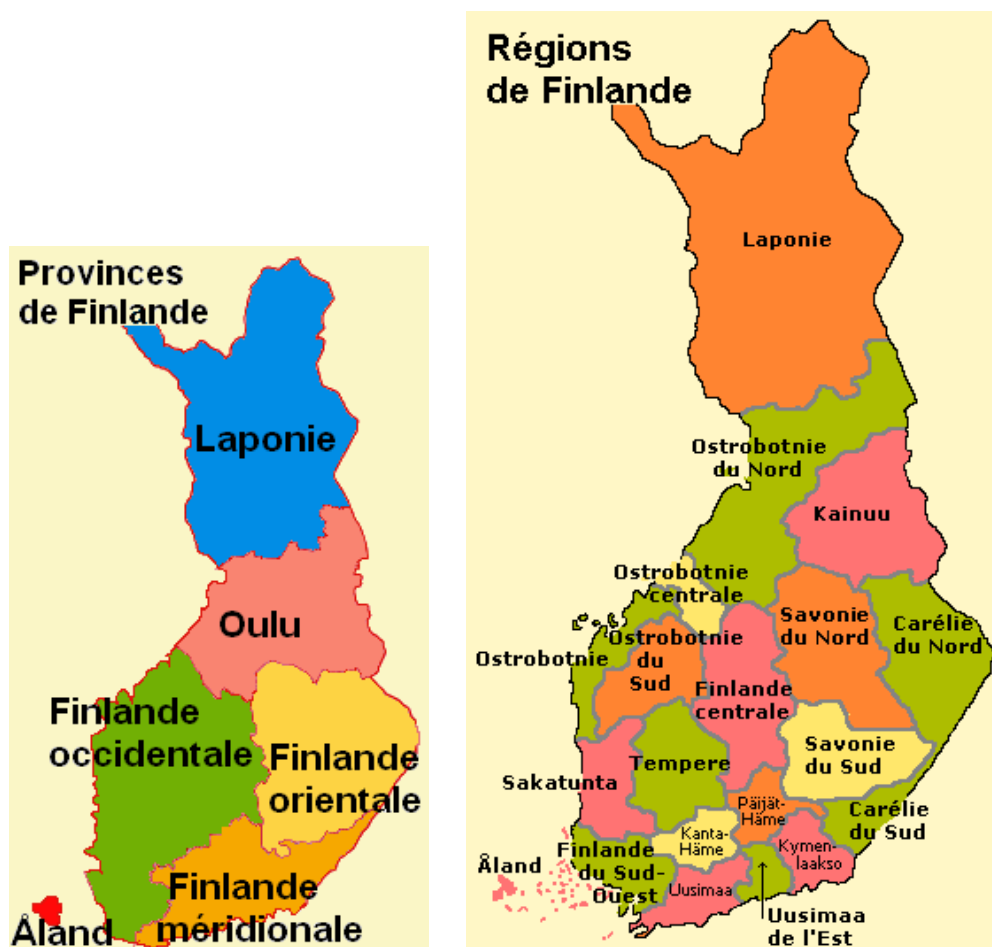


Figure 13.31: Finland

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/finlande_regions.htm in [248]; see also http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltic-Finnic_languages)

```

8679 \def\mtctitle{Sis\alt{o}%
8680 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
8681 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8682 %%
8683 \def\stctitle{Sis\alt{o}%
8684 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
8685 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
8686 </finnish>

```

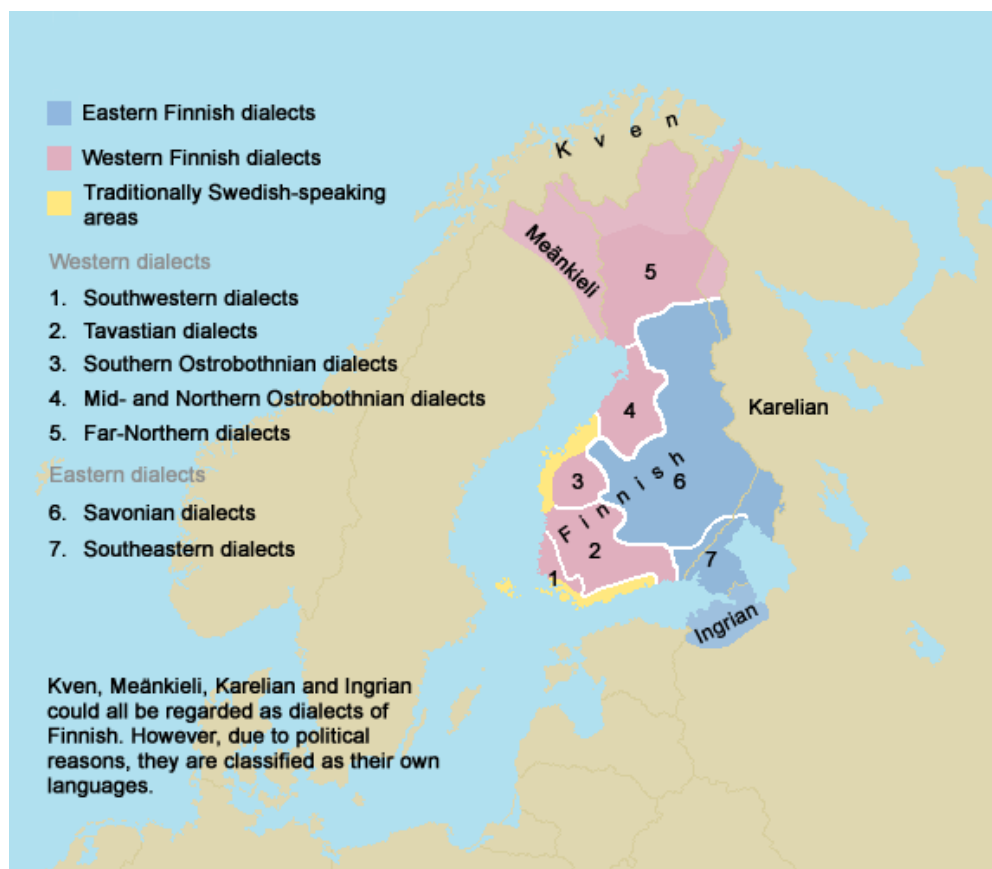



Figure 13.32: Finnish dialects

(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Finnish_language)

13.57 “Finnish2” language: `finnish2.mld`

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 73]. See also section 13.56 on page 505.

```

8687 (*finnish2)
8688 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13] %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8689 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty, (variant) from finnish.dtx (babel)
8690 \def\ptctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
8691 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
8692 \def\plttitle{Taulukot}%
8693 %%
8694 \def\mtctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
8695 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
8696 \def\mlttitle{Taulukot}%
8697 %%
8698 \def\stctitle{Sis\ "allys}%

```

```

8699 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
8700 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
8701 </finnish2>

```

13.58 “Francais” language: `francais.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “`francais`”²⁵ language is a synonym for the “`french`” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.59):

```

8702 <(*francais)
8703 \ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]
8704 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8705 </francais>

```

13.59 “French” language: `french.mld`

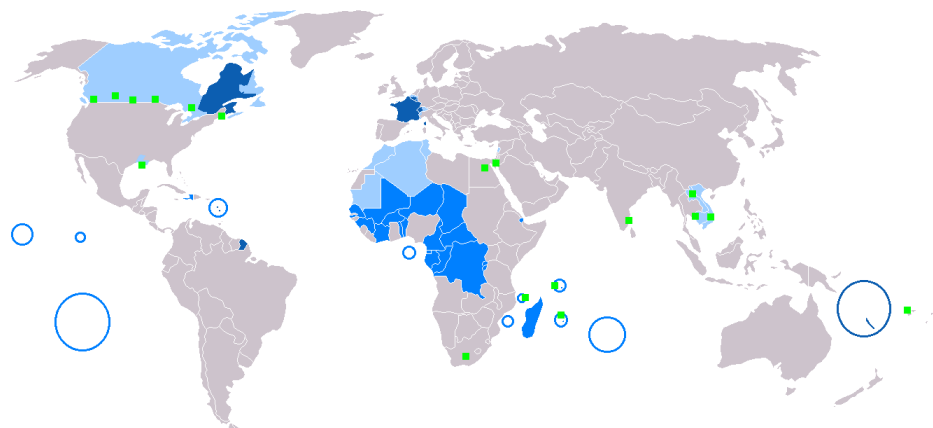


Figure 13.33: Francophone areas

(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_language#Geographic_distribution; see also http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/langues_de_France.htm in [248]).

The titles for the “`french`” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 68]. See also sections 13.1 on page 467, 13.2 on page 467, 13.33 on page 489, 13.58, 13.62 on page 510, 13.63 on page 511, and 13.64 on page 511.

```

8706 <(*french)
8707 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]
8708 %% French titles for minitoc.sty

```

²⁵The right spelling is “`français`”, but I did not dare using a cedilla in a file name.


```

8709%% from frenchb.dtx (babel)
8710%% Flipo, Daniel
8711\def\ptctitle{Table des mati\`eres}%
8712\def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
8713\def\plttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
8714%%
8715\def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8716\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8717\def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
8718%%
8719\def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8720\def\slftitle{Figures}%
8721\def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8722</french>

```

13.60 “French1” language: french1.mld

`\ifnum` The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` (by Daniel FLIPO) file
`\value` in the `babel` package [48, 49, 68], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

`\Roman`

```

8723(*french1)
8724\ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]
8725%% French titles for minitoc.sty
8726%% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
8727%% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
8728\def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8729  Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8730  \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8731\def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8732  Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8733  \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8734\def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8735  Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8736  \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8737%%
8738\def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8739\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8740\def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
8741%%
8742\def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8743\def\slftitle{Figures}%
8744\def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8745</french1>

```

13.61 “French2” language: french2.mld

`\mtcFrenchIIpart` The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file (by Daniel Flipo) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 68], with some adaptations for the part-level titles²⁶. See also `\ifmtcsecondpart` section 9.5.8 on page 270, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See `\ifnum` the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 92.

`\value`

`\Roman`

```

8746 <{*french2}
8747 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]
8748 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
8749 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
8750 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
8751 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8752 \or premi\`ere partie\or
8753 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\`eme\fi} partie\or
8754 troisi\`eme partie\or quatri\`eme partie\or cinqui\`eme partie\or
8755 sixi\`eme partie\or septi\`eme partie\or huiti\`eme partie\or
8756 neuvi\`eme partie\or dixi\`eme partie\or onzi\`eme partie\or
8757 douzi\`eme partie\or treizi\`eme partie\or quatorzi\`eme partie\or
8758 quinzi\`eme partie\or seizi\`eme partie\or dix-septi\`eme partie\or
8759 dix-huiti\`eme partie\or dix-neuvi\`eme partie\or
8760 vingti\`eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8761 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8762 Sommaire \else
8763 Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
8764 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8765 Liste des figures\else
8766 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
8767 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8768 Liste des tableaux\else
8769 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}%
8770 %%
8771 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8772 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8773 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8774 %%
8775 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8776 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8777 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
8778 </french2>

```

13.62 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the `french.mld` file. See section 13.59 on page 508.

²⁶This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

```

8779 <(*frenchb>
8780 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]
8781 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8782 </frenchb>

```

13.63 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the `french.mld` file. See section 13.59 on page 508. See also [155].

```

8783 <(*frenchle>
8784 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]
8785 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8786 </frenchle>

```

13.64 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the `french.mld` file. See section 13.59 on page 508. See also [156, 157].

```

8787 <(*frenchpro>
8788 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]
8789 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8790 </frenchpro>

```

13.65 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language²⁷ are taken from the `galician.dtx` file, derived from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS) (by Manuel CARRIBA and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 63, 64]:

```

8791 <(*galician>
8792 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2007/12/04]
8793 %% Galician titles for minitoc.sty
8794 %% from galician.dtx (babel)
8795 %% Carriba, Manuel (mcarriba@eunetcom.net)
8796 %% Javier A. Música de Rivera (jmugica@digi21.net)
8797 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax

```

²⁷ Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela; see figure 13.34 on the following page.

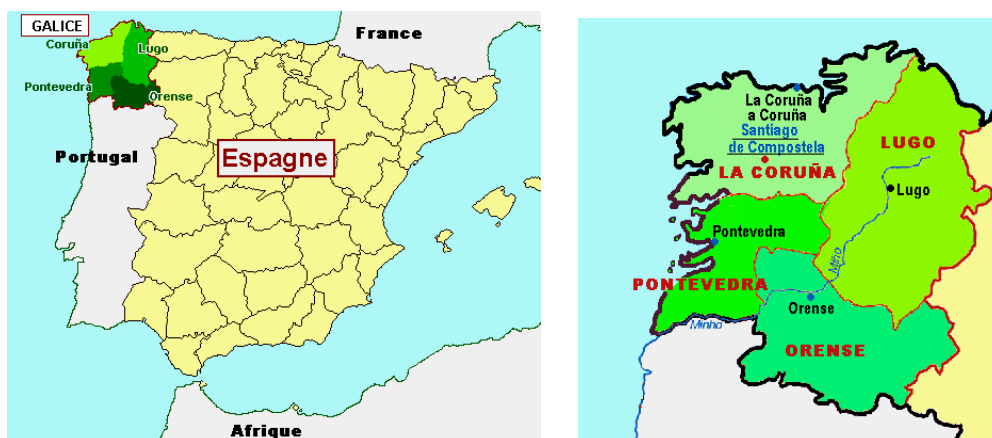


Figure 13.34: Areas of the galician language
 (From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagnegalice_carte.htm in [248])

```

8798 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
8799 \else
8800 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice xeral}%
8801 \fi
8802 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8803 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cadros}%
8804 %%
8805 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8806 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
8807 \else
8808 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice xeral}%
8809 \fi
8810 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8811 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cadros}%
8812 %%
8813 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8814 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
8815 \else
8816 \def\stctitle{\'Indice xeral}%
8817 \fi
8818 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8819 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cadros}%
8820 </galician>

```

13.66 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language are taken from the babel package [48, 49]. See also the section 13.13 on page 474.



Figure 13.35: Germanophone areas

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/allemand-aire-Ing.htm> in [248]; see also http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/Allemagne_dialectes.htm in [248].)

```

8821 (*german)
8822 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]
8823 %% German titles for minitoc.sty
8824 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8825 \def\plftitle{Figuren}%
8826 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
8827 %%
8828 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8829 \def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
8830 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
8831 %%
8832 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8833 \def\slftitle{Figuren}%
8834 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
8835 </german>

```

13.67 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “`germanb`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 83]:

```

8836 <*germanb>
8837 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
8838 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
8839 %% from germanb.dtx (babel)
8840 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Raichle, Bernd
8841 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8842 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8843 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8844 %%
8845 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8846 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8847 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8848 %%
8849 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8850 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8851 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8852 </germanb>

```

13.68 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “`germanb2`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language, with short titles. See also section 13.67. The titles are taken from the file `germanb.dtx` (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [48, 49]:

```

8853 <*germanb2>
8854 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
8855 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
8856 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
8857 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
8858 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
8859 %%
8860 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
8861 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
8862 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8863 %%
8864 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8865 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8866 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8867 </germanb2>

```

13.69 “Greek” language: greek.mld

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek) are taken from the `greek.dtx` file (by Apostolos SYROPOULOS) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 91]. Greek fonts are required.

```

8868 <*greek>
8869 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2006/01/13]
8870 %% Greek titles for minitoc.sty
8871 %% from greek.dtx (babel) by Syropoulos, Apostolos
8872 %% Needs greek fonts.
8873 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8874 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8875 \def\pltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8876 %%
8877 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8878 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8879 \def\mltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8880 %%
8881 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8882 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8883 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8884 </greek>

```

13.70 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

`\localgreek` The titles for the “greek-mono” language²⁸ are taken from the `omega-greek.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [226]:

```

8885 <*greek – mono>
8886 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]
8887 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
8888 %% Needs Omega
8889 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
8890 %%
8891 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8892 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^03cc^^^^03bc%
8893  ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
8894 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8895 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8896  ^^^^03c2  ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^03ac^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
8897  ^^^^03bd}}%
8898 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8899 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8900  ^^^^03c2  ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^03ac^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
8901 %%
8902 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%

```

²⁸ Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

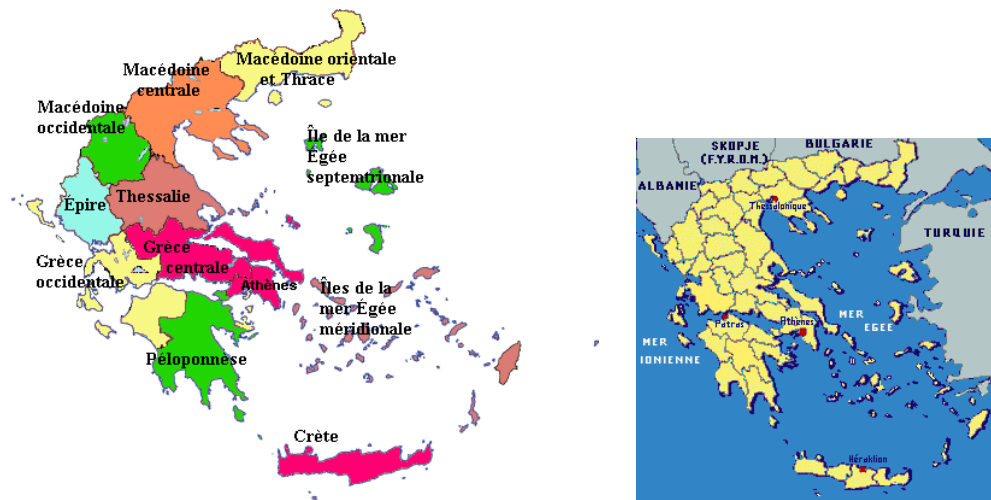


Figure 13.36: Greece

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/grece-admin-map.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/grece.htm> in [248])

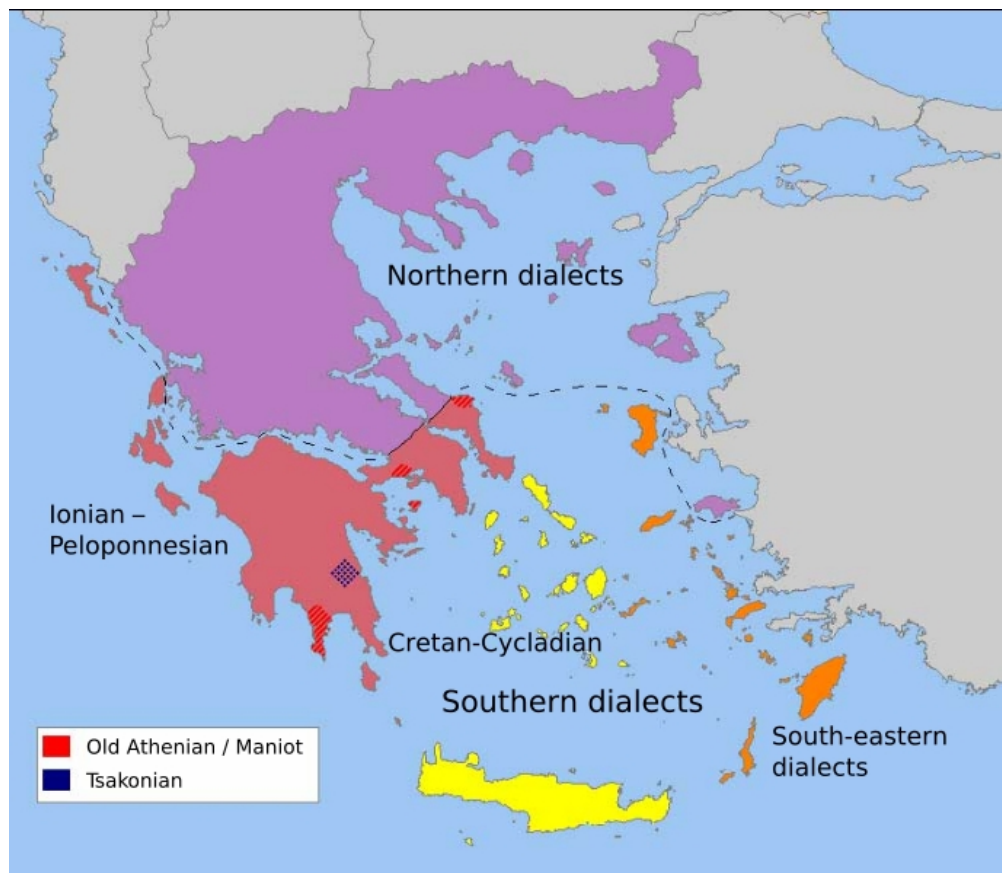


Figure 13.37: Dialects of modern Greek

(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Modern_Greek)


```

8903 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8904 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8905 \def\mlftitle%\localgreek%
8906 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8907 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8908 ^03bd}}%
8909 \def\mlftitle%\localgreek%
8910 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8911 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8912 %%
8913 \def\stctitle%\localgreek%
8914 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8915 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8916 \def\slftitle%\localgreek%
8917 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8918 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8919 ^03bd}}%
8920 \def\slftitle%\localgreek%
8921 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8922 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8923 </greek – mono>

```

13.71 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language²⁹ are taken from the file omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [226]:

```

8924 (*greek – polydemo)
8925 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]
8926 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
8927 %% Needs Omega
8928 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
8929 %%
8930 \def\ptctitle%\localgreek%
8931 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8932 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8933 \def\plftitle%\localgreek%
8934 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8935 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8936 ^03bd}}%
8937 \def\pltttitle%\localgreek%
8938 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8939 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8940 %%
8941 \def\mtctitle%\localgreek%
8942 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8943 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8944 \def\mlftitle%\localgreek%

```

²⁹ Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

```

8945 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8946 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8947 ^03bd}}%
8948 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8949 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8950 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8951 %%
8952 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8953 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8954 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8955 \def\slfttitle{\localgreek%
8956 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8957 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8958 ^03bd}}%
8959 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
8960 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8961 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8962 </greek – polydemo>

```

13.72 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language³⁰ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [226]:

```

8963 (*greek – polykatha)
8964 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]
8965 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
8966 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
8967 %%
8968 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8969 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8970 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8971 \def\plfttitle{\localgreek%
8972 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8973 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8974 ^03bd}}%
8975 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
8976 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8977 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8978 %%
8979 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8980 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8981 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8982 \def\mlfttitle{\localgreek%
8983 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%

```

³⁰Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios KORAI, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```

8984 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
8985 ^^^^03bd}}}%
8986 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8987 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8988 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}}%
8989 %%
8990 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8991 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
8992 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}}%
8993 \def\slfttitle{\localgreek%
8994 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8995 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
8996 ^^^^03bd}}}%
8997 \def\slttitle{\localgreek%
8998 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8999 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}}%
9000 </greek – polykatha>

```

13.73 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld



Figure 13.38: Paraguay

(From http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/americas/paraguay_pol98.pdf – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [326] – and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/amsudant/paraguay.htm> in [248])

The “guarani” language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guarani and Spanish, known as Jopara, is spoken. The titles are taken from the guarani .ldf file by Javier Bezos [41]. A special input encoding (win-gn.def) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

9001 ⟨*guarani⟩
9002 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]
9003 %% Guarani titles for minitoc.sty from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos.
9004 %% Input encoding win-gn.def is needed.
9005 %%
9006 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice general}%
9007 \def\plftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
9008 \def\plttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
9009 %%
9010 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice general}%
9011 \def\mlftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
9012 \def\mlttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
9013 %%
9014 \def\stctitle{\`Indice general}%
9015 \def\slftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
9016 \def\slttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
9017 ⟨/guarani⟩

```

13.74 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.ml[d|o]

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [371]. See [180, page 150], [182] and [307]. See figure 13.40 on the next page.

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.75 on page 522, 13.76 on page 522, 13.77 on page 523, 13.78 on page 523, 13.79 on page 524, 13.80 on page 524, and 13.81 on page 525.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```

9018 ⟨*hangul1⟩
9019 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]
9020 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package
9021 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9022 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9023 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
9024 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
9025 %%
9026 \mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
9027 ⟨/hangul1⟩

```

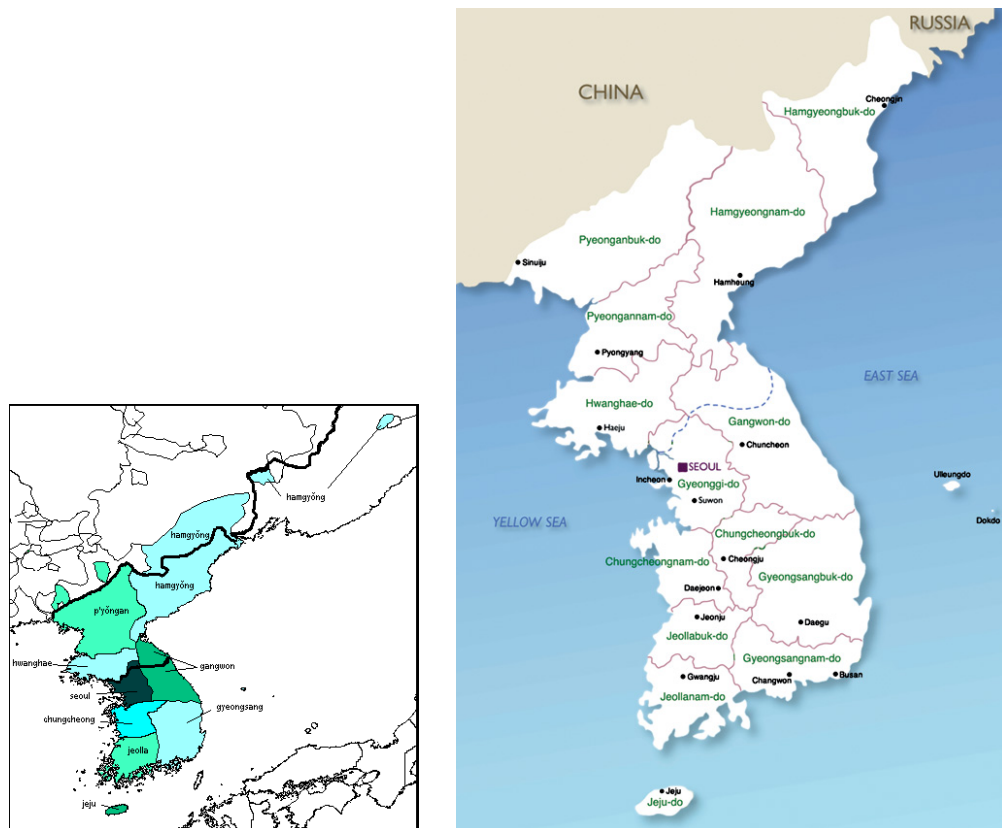


Figure 13.39: Areas of the Korean language

(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Korean_Language and
http://www.korea.net/korea/kor_loca.asp?code=A0102)

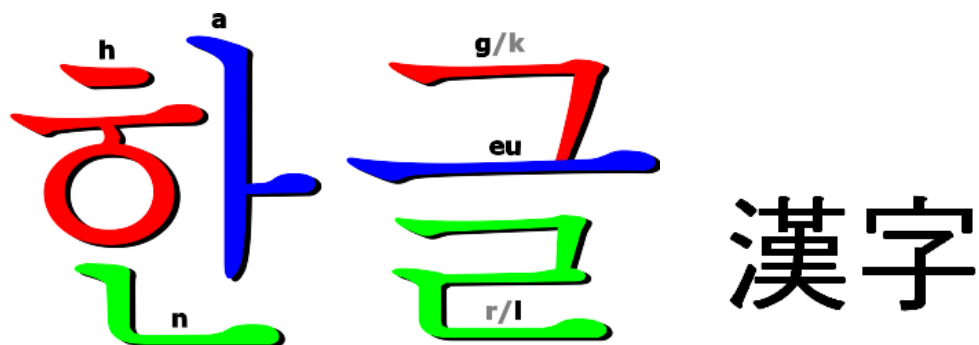


Figure 13.40: Hangul and hanja characters

(From <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hangul> and <http://wiki.galbijim.com/Hanja>; see also
<http://wiki.galbijim.com/Korean>)

13.75 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file hangul.cpx of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.74 on page 520, 13.76, 13.77 on the next page, 13.78 on the following page, 13.79 on page 524, 13.80 on page 524, and 13.81 on page 525. hangul2.mlo.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul2.mlo.

```

9028 \(*hangul2)
9029 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]
9030 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package
9031 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9032 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9033 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
9034 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9035 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
9036 %%
9037 \mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
9038 \(/hangul2)

```

13.76 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cap of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74 on page 520, 13.75, 13.77 on the following page, 13.78 on the next page, 13.79 on page 524, 13.80 on page 524, and 13.81 on page 525.

The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

```

9039 \(*hangul3)
9040 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]
9041 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package
9042 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9043 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9044 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2
9045 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
9046 %%

```

```
9047 \mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
9048 \hangul3
```

13.77 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74 on page 520, 13.75 on the preceding page, 13.76 on the page before, 13.78, 13.79 on the next page, 13.80 on the following page, and 13.81 on page 525.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```
9049 (*hangul4)
9050 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]
9051 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package
9052 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9053 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9054 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2,
9055 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9056 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
9057 %%
9058 \mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
9059 \hangul4
```

13.78 “Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file u8hangul.tex of the H_AT_EX system [222, in korean] by Un KOAUNGH. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.74 on page 520, 13.75 on the page before, 13.76 on the preceding page, 13.77, 13.79 on the following page, 13.80 on the next page, and 13.81 on page 525. See [180, page 150], [182] and [307].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul-u8.mlo.

```

9060 <*hangul – u8>
9061 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
9062 %% From the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX package
9063 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
9064 %% Hangul captions for Lambda
9065 %%
9066 \mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
9067 </hangul – u8>

```

13.79 “Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See figure 13.40 on page 521. See also sections 13.74 on page 520, 13.75 on page 522, 13.76 on page 522, 13.77 on the page before, 13.78 on the preceding page, 13.80, and 13.81 on the following page.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```

9068 <*hanja1>
9069 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]
9070 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package
9071 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9072 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9073 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9074 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9075 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
9076 %%
9077 \mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
9078 </hanja1>

```

13.80 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cap` of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74 on page 520, 13.75 on page 522, 13.76 on page 522, 13.77 on the preceding page, 13.78 on the page before, 13.79, and 13.81 on the next page.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja2.mlo`.


```

9079 <*hanja2>
9080 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]
9081 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package
9082 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9083 %% created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>
9084 %% Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
9085 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9086 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
9087 %%
9088 \mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
9089 </hanja2>

```

13.81 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld[o]

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the $\text{H}\text{L}\text{A}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$ system [222, in korean] by Un KOAUNGHU. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 13.74 on page 520, 13.75 on page 522, 13.76 on page 522, 13.77 on page 523, 13.78 on page 523, 13.79 on the page before, and 13.80 on the preceding page. See [180, page 150], [182] and [307].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja-u8.mlo`.

```

9090 <*hanja - u8>
9091 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
9092 %% From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
9093 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
9094 %% Hanja captions for Lambda
9095 %%
9096 \mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
9097 </hanja - u8>

```

13.82 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld

The titles for the “hebrew” language are taken from the $\text{Arab}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$ package [230, 231] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. See also section 13.83 on page 527. See the hebrew alphabet (or *alefbet*) here: <http://www.jewfaq.org/graphics/hebrew.gif>.

```

9098 <*hebrew>
9099 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]
9100 %% Hebrew titles for minitoc.sty. Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
9101 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9102 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%

```



Figure 13.41: Israël

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/israel_carte1.htm in [248])

```

9103 \def\pltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9104 %%
9105 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9106 \def\mlfttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9107 \def\mltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9108 %%
9109 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9110 \def\slfttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9111 \def\sltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9112 /</hebrew>

```

13.83 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld

\@ensure@R The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris LAVVA and Rama PORRAT) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 79], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.82 on page 525.

```

9113 <*hebrew2>
9114 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]
9115 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package. Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
9116 %% Need hebrew fonts.
9117 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9118   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
9119   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9120 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9121   \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9122   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9123 \def\plttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9124   \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9125   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9126 %%
9127 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
9128   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9129 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9130   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9131 \def\mlttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9132   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9133 %%
9134 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
9135   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9136 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
9137   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9138 \def\slttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
9139   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9140 </hebrew2>

```

13.84 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load `devanagari.mld` (see section 13.42 on page 495):

```

9141 <*hindi>
9142 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]
9143 \mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
9144 </hindi>

```

13.85 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

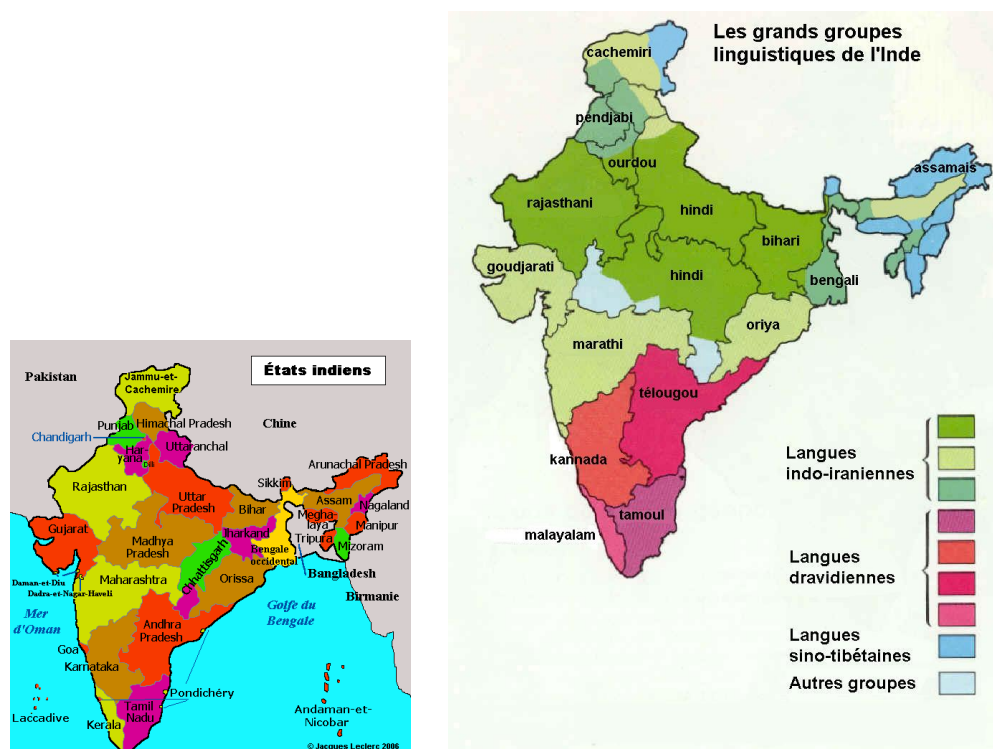


Figure 13.42: Languages in India

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde-carte-etats2.htm> and http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde_linguistique.htm in [248]; see also http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/inde_cartepol.htm in [248])

\dn The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by
 \qva Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY,
 \re Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [306] (Devanāgarī)
 \rs after conversion. See also section 13.42 on page 495. Specific fonts are required. The
 \2 home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.
 \8

```

9145 (*hindi – modern)
9146 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]
9147 %% Hindi modern titles for minitoc.sty
9148 %% from captions.dn in “Devanagari for TeX” by
9149 %% Pandey, Anshuman and Radhakrishnan, C.~V. and Wagner, Zden\v{e}k and
9150 %% Smith, John and Carmody, Kevin and Mahoney, Richard and
9151 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
9152 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9153 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9154 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAEIkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9155 %%
9156 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
```

```

9157 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9158 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAEIkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9159 %%
9160 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9161 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9162 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAEIkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9163 </hindi – modern>

```

13.86 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.114 on page 548.

```

9164 <*\hungarian>
9165 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9166 \mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
9167 </hungarian>

```

13.87 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld



Figure 13.43: Iceland

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/islandecarte.htm> in [248] and http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/europe/iceland_pol81.jpg – Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin [326]); see also <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iceland>)

The titles for the “icelandic” language are taken from the `icelandic.dtx` file (by Einar ÁRNASON) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 56]. See also [201].

```

9168 <*icelandic>
9169 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2006/01/13]
9170 %% Icelandic titles for minitoc.sty from icelandic.dtx (babel)
9171 %% Árnason, Einar (needs inputenc with 8-bits encoding)
9172 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9173 \def\plftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9174 \def\plttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9175 %%
9176 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9177 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9178 \def\mlttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9179 %%
9180 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9181 \def\slftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9182 \def\slttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9183 </icelandic>

```

13.88 “Indon” language: `indon.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 474):

```

9184 <*indon>
9185 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]
9186 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9187 </indon>

```

13.89 “Indonesian” language: `indonesian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 474):

```

9188 <*indonesian>
9189 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9190 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9191 </indonesian>

```

13.90 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 74]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English’s than to neolatin languages³¹. See also:

- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua>, <http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua>,
- Union Interlinguiste de France: <http://www.interlingua.com.fr/>
- interlingua-english dictionary: <http://www.interlingua.com/ied/>
- interlingua grammar (in french): <http://filip.ouvaton.org/ia/gram/entra1.html>
- some sites in interlingua: <http://www.dmoz.org/World/Interlingua>
- other sites about interlingua: <http://www.cle.unicamp.br/wcp3/interlingua.htm>

```

9192 (*interlingua)
9193 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2006/01/13]
9194 %% Interlingua titles for minitoc.sty from interlingua.dtx (babel)
9195 %% Kleiweg, Peter
9196 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
9197 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9198 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabellas}%
9199 %%
9200 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
9201 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
9202 \def\mlttitle{Tabellas}%
9203 %%
9204 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
9205 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
9206 \def\slttitle{Tabellas}%
9207 </interlingua>

```

13.91 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`

The titles for the “irish” language come from the `irish.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 52]:

```

9208 (*irish)
9209 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]
9210 %% Irish titles for minitoc.sty from irish.dtx (babel)

```

³¹ The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it.

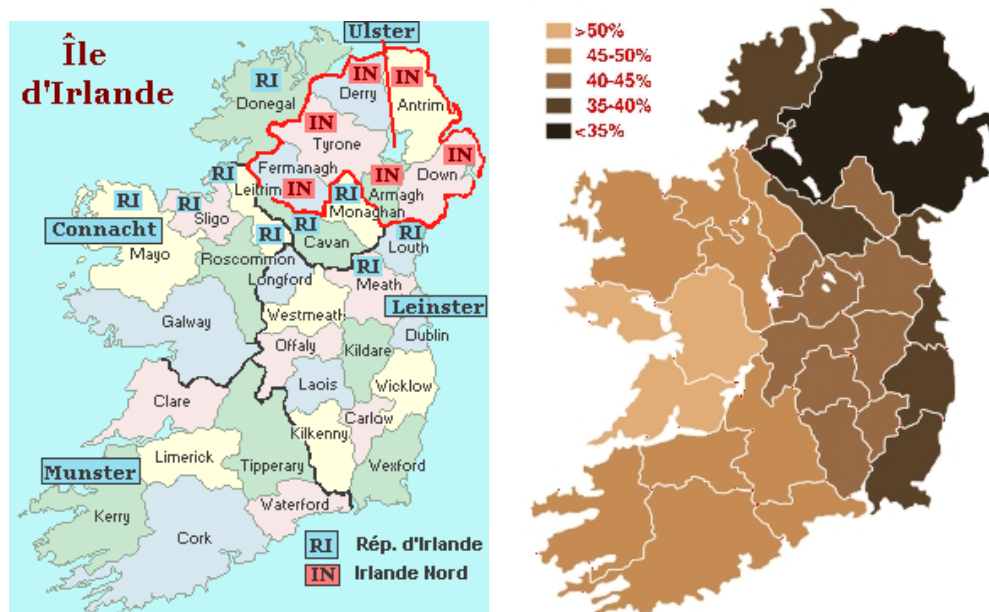


Figure 13.44: Ireland

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/irlande-comtes.htm> in [248] and http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Irish_language)

```

9211 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Gunn, Marion and Grant, Fraser
9212 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9213 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9214 \def\pltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9215 %%
9216 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9217 \def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9218 \def\mltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9219 %%
9220 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9221 \def\slftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9222 \def\slttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9223 \end{irish}

```

13.92 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language come from the file `italian.dtx` (by Maurizio CODOGNO and Claudio BECCARI) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 66]. See also section 13.93 on page 534.

```

9224 (*italian)
9225 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9226 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty from italian.dtx (babel)
9227 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)

```




Figure 13.45: Italy
(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/italieetat.htm> in [248])



Figure 13.46: Italophone areas in Europa
(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Italian_language)

```
9228 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9229 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
9230 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9231 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9232 %%
9233 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
9234 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
```

```

9235 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9236 %%
9237 \def\stcttitle{Indice}%
9238 \def\slfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9239 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9240 \end{italian}

```

13.93 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.92 on page 532.

```

9241 \begin{italian2}
9242 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9243 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty. Variant, from italian.dtx (babel)
9244 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
9245 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9246 \def\ptcttitle{Contenuto}%
9247 \def\plfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9248 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9249 %%
9250 \def\mtcttitle{Contenuto}%
9251 \def\mlfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9252 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9253 %%
9254 \def\stcttitle{Contenuto}%
9255 \def\slfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9256 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9257 \end{italian2}

```

13.94 “Japanese” language: `japanese.ml[d|o]`

There are several variants for the Japanese titles. The titles for a first variant of the “japanese” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³².

But see also other variants in sections 13.95 on the following page, 13.96 on page 536, 13.97 on page 536, 13.98 on page 537, and 13.99 on page 538.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

³² <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

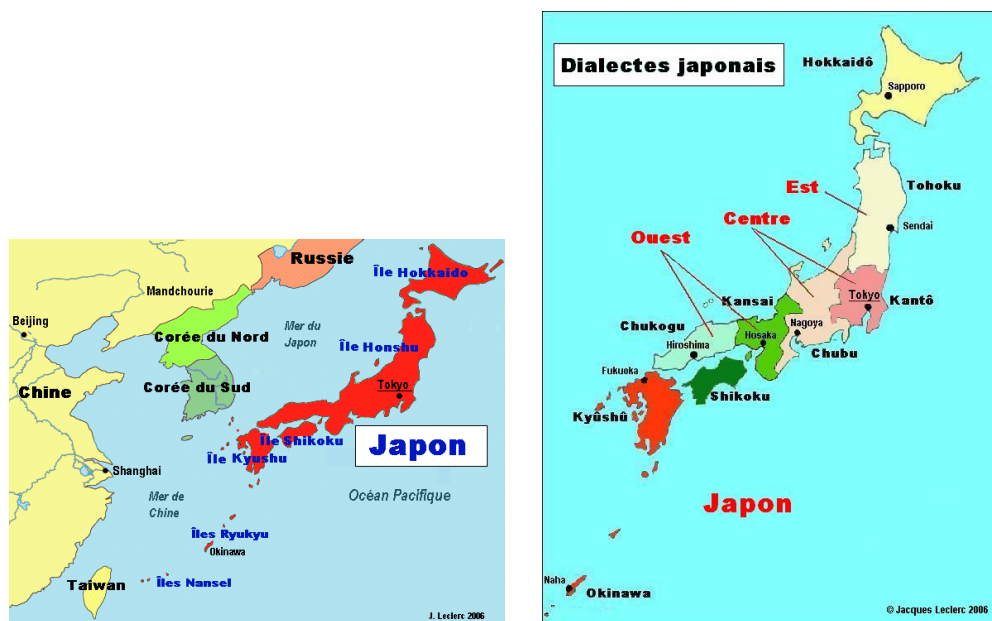


Figure 13.47: Japon

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/japoncarte.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/famjapon.htm> in [248])

```

9258 <{*japanese>
9259 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]
9260 %% Japanese titles for minitoc.sty
9261 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9262 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9263 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
9264 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9265 \mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
9266 </japanese>

```

13.95 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese2” language (japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.94 on the page before, 13.96 on the following page, 13.97 on the next page, 13.98 on page 537, and 13.99 on page 538.

```

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “japanese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated,
             hence we load japanese2.mlo.

```

```

9267 <*japanese2>
9268 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9269 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
9270 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9271 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9272 %%
9273 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9274 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9275 %% encoding: EUC
9276 %%
9277 \mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
9278 </japanese2>

```

13.96 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file `JIS.cpx` of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG).

Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.94 on page 534, 13.95 on the page before, 13.97, 13.98 on the next page, and 13.99 on page 538. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```

9279 <*japanese3>
9280 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]
9281 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
9282 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9283 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9284 %%
9285 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9286 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990)
9287 %% encoding: EUC, preprocessed
9288 %%
9289 \mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
9290 </japanese3>

```

13.97 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.94 on page 534, 13.95 on the preceding page, 13.96, 13.98 on the following page, and 13.98 on the next page.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.

```

9291 <*japanese4>
9292 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]
9293 %% From the file SJIS.cap of the CJK package
9294 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9295 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9296 %%
9297 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9298 %% Japanese captions
9299 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
9300 %%
9301 \mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
9302 </japanese4>

```

13.98 “Japanese5” language: `japanese5.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file `SJIS.cpx` of the CJK system [250, 251] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.94 on page 534, 13.95 on page 535, 13.96 on the preceding page, 13.97 on the page before, and 13.99 on the following page. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

```

9303 <*japanese5>
9304 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]
9305 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
9306 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9307 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9308 %%
9309 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9310 %% Japanese captions
9311 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9312 %% encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
9313 %%
9314 \mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
9315 </japanese5>

```

13.99 “Japanese6” language: `japanese6.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese6” (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³³.

See also sections 13.94 on page 534, 13.95 on page 535, 13.96 on page 536, 13.97 on page 536, and 13.98 on the page before.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese6” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese6.mlo`.

```

9316 <(*japanese6>
9317 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]
9318 %% Japanese6 titles for minitoc.sty
9319 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9320 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9321 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
9322 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9323 \mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
9324 </japanese6>

```

13.100 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`



Figure 13.48: Areas of the kannada language
(From <http://www.pinkmoose.ic24.net/india/kabini.htm>; see also <http://kstdc.nic.in/pix/karnatmap.jpg> and figure 13.42 on page 528).

The Kannada (“kannada”) (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state (main town: Bangalore) of India. The titles are taken from the `kanlel.sty` package file from the KannadaT_EX project [402]³⁴ by C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM.

³³ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

³⁴ <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex>

Specific fonts are required. See the alphabet here: <http://www.omniglot.com/writing/kannada.htm>.

```

9325 < *kannada >
9326 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2007/02/22]
9327 %% from kanlel.sty of Kannadatex
9328 %% (C. S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in yogacs@users.sarovar.org)
9329 %% (K. K. Subramaniam subbuk@users.sarovar.org)
9330 %%
9331 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}%
9332 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9333 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9334 %%
9335 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}%
9336 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9337 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9338 %%
9339 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}%
9340 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9341 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9342 < /kannada >

```

13.101 “Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` “khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load xalx.mld (see sections 13.186 on page 598, 13.187 on page 599, and 13.188 on page 600):

```

9343 < *khalkha >
9344 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]
9345 \mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
9346 < /khalkha >

```

13.102 “Latin” language: latin.mld

The titles for the “latin” language (medieval) are taken from the latin.dtx file (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the babel package [48, 49, 58]. See also section 13.103 on the following page.

```

9347 < *latin >
9348 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]
9349 %% Latin (medieval) titles for minitoc.sty
9350 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9351 %% Beccari, Claudio and Tabacco, Raffalla and {\.Zelechowski}, Konrad
9352 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9353 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%

```

```

9354 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9355 %%
9356 \def\mtcttitle{Index}%
9357 \def\mlfttitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9358 \def\mltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9359 %%
9360 \def\stcttitle{Index}%
9361 \def\slfttitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9362 \def\slttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9363 \end{latin}

```

13.103 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

\ae The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, medieval, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [48, 49, 58], but abbreviated. See also section 13.102 on the page before.

```

9364 \begin{latin2}
9365 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2007/04/06]
9366 %% Latin (medieval) titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
9367 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9368 %% Beccari, Claudio and Tabacco, Raffalla and {\Zelechowski}, Konrad
9369 \def\ptcttitle{Index}%
9370 \def\plfttitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9371 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9372 %%
9373 \def\mtcttitle{Index}%
9374 \def\mlfttitle{Descriptiones}%
9375 \def\mltttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9376 %%
9377 \def\stcttitle{Index}%
9378 \def\slfttitle{Descriptiones}%
9379 \def\slttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9380 \end{latin2}

```

13.104 “Latinc” language: latinc.mld

The titles for the “latinc” language (classical) are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 58]. See also section 13.105 on the following page.

```

9381 \begin{latinc}
9382 \ProvidesFile{latinc.mld}[2007/04/13]
9383 %% Latin (classic) titles for minitoc.sty
9384 %% from latin.dtx (babel)

```



```

9385 %% Beccari, Claudio and {\Zezechowski}, Konrad
9386 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9387 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9388 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9389 %%
9390 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9391 \def\mlftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9392 \def\mlttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9393 %%
9394 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9395 \def\slftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9396 \def\slttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9397 </latinc>

```

13.105 “Latinc2” language: latinc2.mld

The titles for the “latinc2” language (classical, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [48, 49, 58], but abbreviated. See also section 13.104 on the page before.

```

9398 <*latinc2>
9399 \ProvidesFile{latinc2.mld}[2007/04/06]
9400 %% Latin (classical) titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
9401 %% from latin.dtx (babel) by Beccari, Claudio and {\Zezechowski}, Konrad
9402 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9403 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9404 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9405 %%
9406 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9407 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9408 \def\mlttitle{Tabvlae}%
9409 %%
9410 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9411 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9412 \def\slttitle{Tabvlae}%
9413 </latinc2>

```

13.106 “Latvian” language: latvian.mld

The titles for the “latvian” language³⁵ come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [226]. See also section 13.108 on page 543.

³⁵Note that “latvian” is the original name for “letton”.

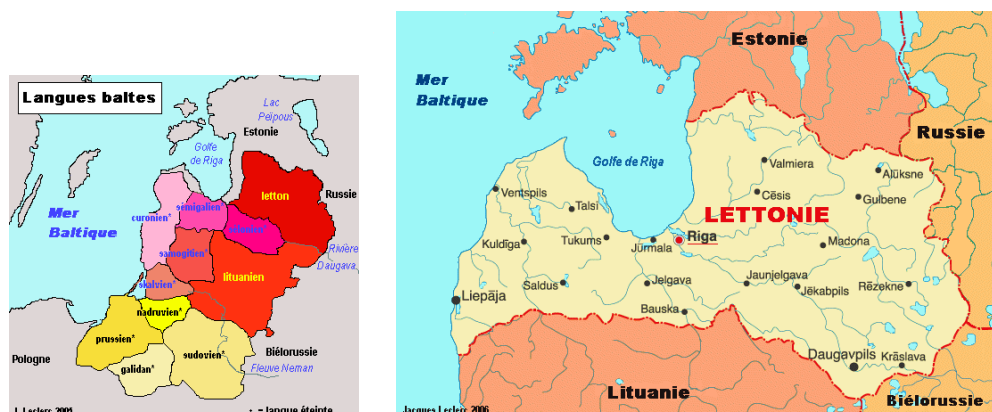


Figure 13.49: Baltic languages and Latvia

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/langues_baltes.htm and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/lettoniecarte.htm> in [248]; note that the estonian language is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.)

```

9414 (*latvian)
9415 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]
9416 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega
9417 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9418 %%
9419 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
9420 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^}\0113lu saraksts}}%
9421 \def\pltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9422 %%
9423 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
9424 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^}\0113lu saraksts}}%
9425 \def\mltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9426 %%
9427 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
9428 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^}\0113lu saraksts}}%
9429 \def\sltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9430 (/latvian)

```

13.107 “Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld

The titles for the “latvian2” language come from the latvian.ldf file (by Andris LASIS and Ivars DRIKIS) at <http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf>. See also section 13.106 on the page before.

```

9431 (*latvian2)
9432 \ProvidesFile{latvian2.mld}[2007/06/05]
9433 % Andris Lasis (andris_lasis@simms.lv) Ivars Drikis (drikis@lanet.lv)
9434 % http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf
9435 %%

```

```

9436 \def\ptctitle{Saturdays}%
9437 \def\plftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9438 \def\plttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9439 %%
9440 \def\mtctitle{Saturdays}%
9441 \def\mlftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9442 \def\mlttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9443 %%
9444 \def\stctitle{Saturdays}%
9445 \def\slftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9446 \def\slttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
9447 \</latvian2>

```

13.108 “Letton” language: letton.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.106 on page 541.

```

9448 \<letton>
9449 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]
9450 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
9451 \</letton>

```

13.109 “Letton2” language: letton2.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “letton2” language is a synonym for the “latvian2” language, so we just load `latvian2.mld`. See section 13.107 on the page before.

```

9452 \<letton2>
9453 \ProvidesFile{letton2.mld}[2007/06/05]
9454 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian2}%
9455 \</letton2>

```

13.110 “Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian” language are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file³⁶ (by Sigita Tolušis) for the `babel` package [48, 49]. See also section 13.111 on the following page.

³⁶Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip>.

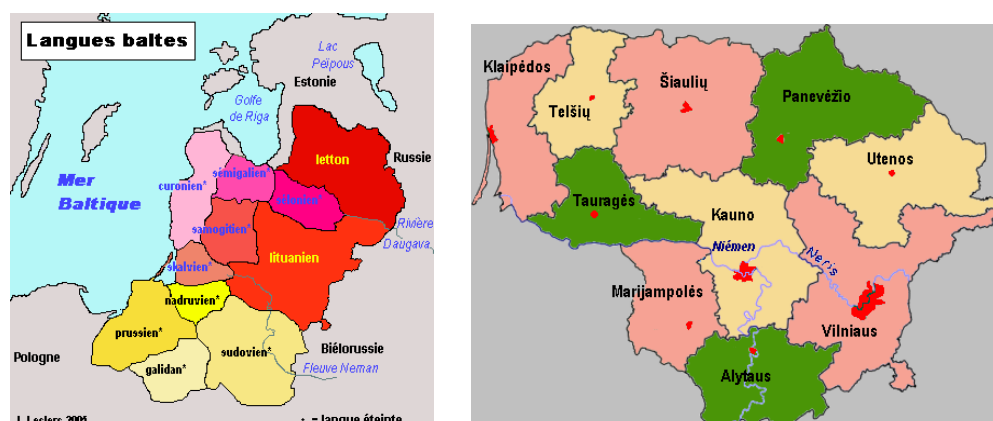


Figure 13.50: Baltic languages and Lithuania

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/langues_baltes.htm and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/lituaniecarte.htm> in [248]; note that estonian is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.)

```

9456 (*lithuanian)
9457 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2007/12/04]
9458 %% Lithuanian titles for minitoc.sty from lithuanian.ldf
9459 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip
9460 %% Tolušis, Sigita (sigita@vtex.lt)
9461 \def\ptctitle{Turinyš}%
9462 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9463 \def\plttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9464 %%
9465 \def\mtctitle{Turinyš}%
9466 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9467 \def\mlttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9468 %%
9469 \def\stctitle{Turinyš}%
9470 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9471 \def\slttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9472 \lithuanian

```

13.111 “Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian2” language (variant) are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file, found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/litex/litex-20070713.tar.gz>, (by Sigita Tolušis) for the babel package [48, 49]. See also section 13.110 on the page before. The L7x encoding and the Latin Modern fonts are needed.

```

9473 (*lithuanian2)
9474 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian2.mld}[2007/12/04]
9475 %% Lithuanian titles (variant) for minitoc.sty from lithuanian.ldf

```

```

9476%% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/littex/littex-20060928.tar.gz
9477%% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
9478\def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9479\def\plftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9480\def\plttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9481%%
9482\def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9483\def\mlftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9484\def\mlttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9485%%
9486\def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9487\def\slftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9488\def\slttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9489</lithuanian2>

```

13.112 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowsorbian” language³⁷ are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 92]. See also section 13.180 on page 595. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.113 on the next page).

```

9490(*lowsorbian)
9491\ProvidesFile{lowsorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]
9492%% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9493%% from lsorbian.dtx (babel) by Werner, Eduard
9494\def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9495\def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9496\def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9497%%
9498\def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9499\def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9500\def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9501%%
9502\def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9503\def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9504\def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9505</lowsorbian>

```

³⁷ Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century). See figures 13.51 on the following page and 13.52 on page 547.

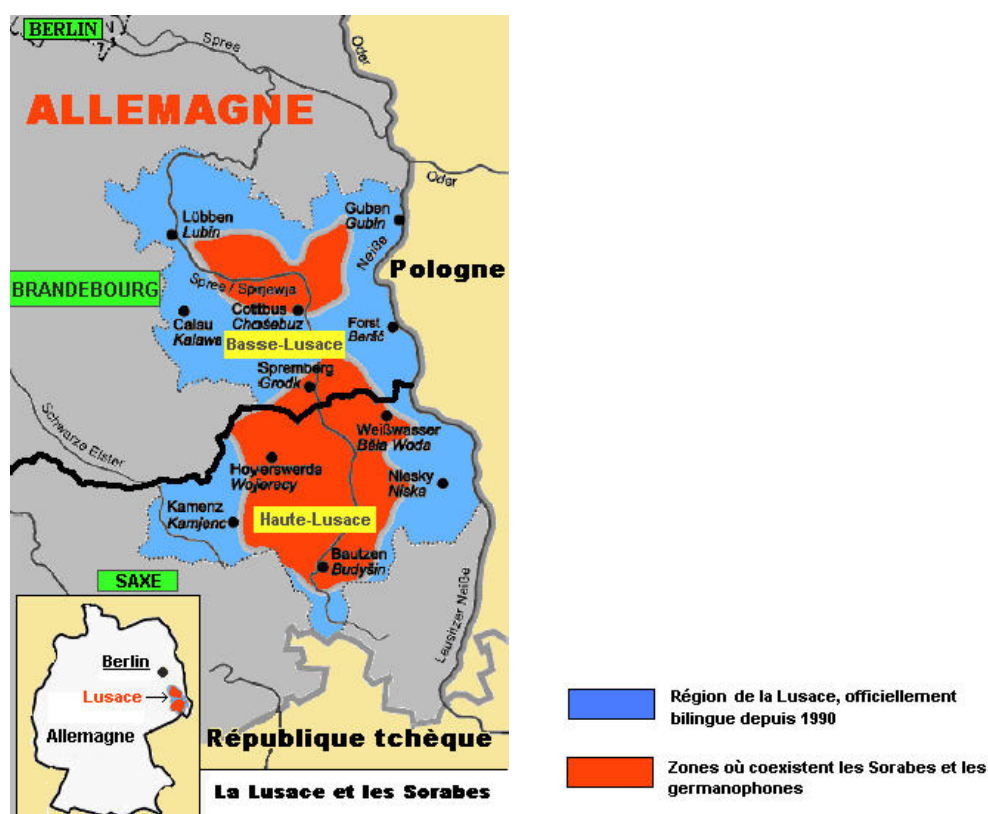


Figure 13.51: Lusace and the Sorbians

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/Allemagne_sorabe.htm in [248])

13.113 “Lsorbian” language: `lsorbian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowersorbian”, so we just need to load `lowersorbian.mld`. See section 13.112 on the preceding page.

```

9506 <*\sorbian>
9507 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]
9508 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9509 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel) by Werner, Eduard
9510 \mtcselectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
9511 </\sorbian>

```

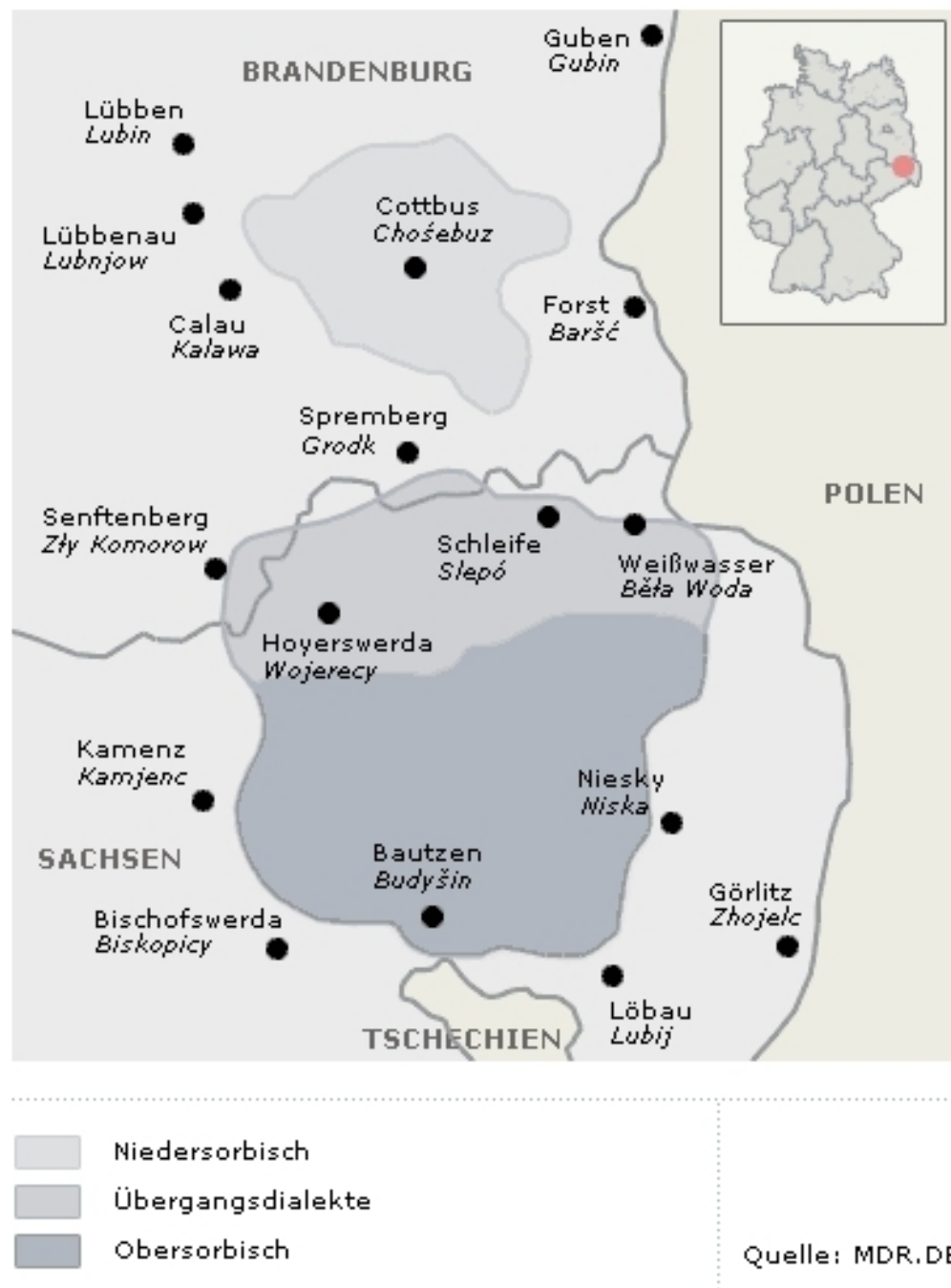


Figure 13.52: Areas of the sorbian dialects

(From <http://www.people.ex.ac.uk/pjoyce/dialects/sorbisch.html> (University of Exeter), <http://www.mdr.de/sorbisches-programm/rundfunk/1913590.html>, <http://www.mdr.de/l/1940181.gif>; Niedersorbisch: lower sorbian, Übergangsdialekte: transitional dialects, Obersorbisch: upper sorbian.)

13.114 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

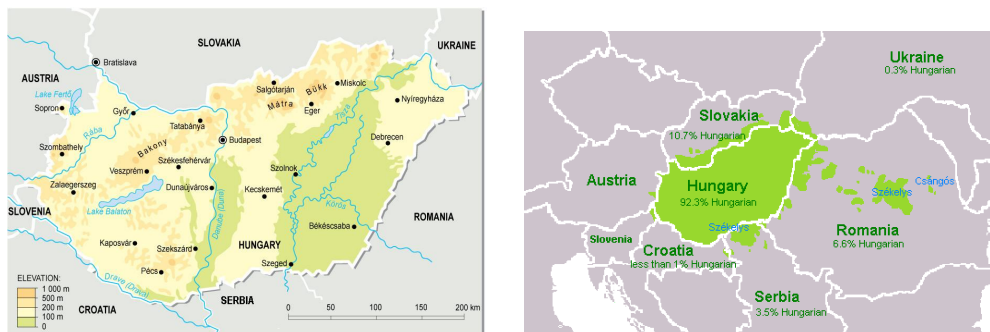


Figure 13.53: Hungaria and magyar speaking areas

(From <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hungarian#Geography> and from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hungary_Language; the magyar language is also spoken in some regions in Romania, Slovakia, Serbia-Voivodina and Ukraine.)

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the magyar.dtx (by József BÉRCES and Árpád BÍRÓ, with help from Attila KOPPANYI) file in the babel package [48, 49, 59]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.86 on page 529). See also sections 13.115 and 13.116 on the next page for variants (it seems that magyar.dtx might have evolved).

```

9512 ⟨*magyar⟩
9513 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9514 %% Magyar titles for minitoc.sty
9515 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9516 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9517 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9518 \def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9519 \def\plttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9520 %%
9521 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9522 \def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9523 \def\mlttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9524 %%
9525 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9526 \def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9527 \def\slttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9528 ⟨/magyar⟩

```

13.115 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the magyar.dtx file of the babel package [48, 49] (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI). See also sections 13.114 and 13.116 on the next page.


```

9529 <*magyar2>
9530 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9531 %% Magyar2 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9532 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9533 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9534 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9535 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9536 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9537 %%
9538 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9539 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9540 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9541 %%
9542 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9543 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9544 \def\sltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9545 </magyar2>

```

13.116 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the `magyar.dtx` file (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 59]. See also sections 13.114 on the preceding page and 13.115 on the page before.

```

9546 <*magyar3>
9547 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]
9548 %% Magyar3 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9549 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9550 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9551 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9552 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9553 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9554 %%
9555 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9556 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9557 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9558 %%
9559 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9560 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9561 \def\sltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9562 </magyar3>

```

13.117 “Malay” language: malay.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 475):

```

9563 <malay>
9564 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]
9565 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9566 </malay>

```

13.118 “Malayalam-b” language: malayalam-b.mld

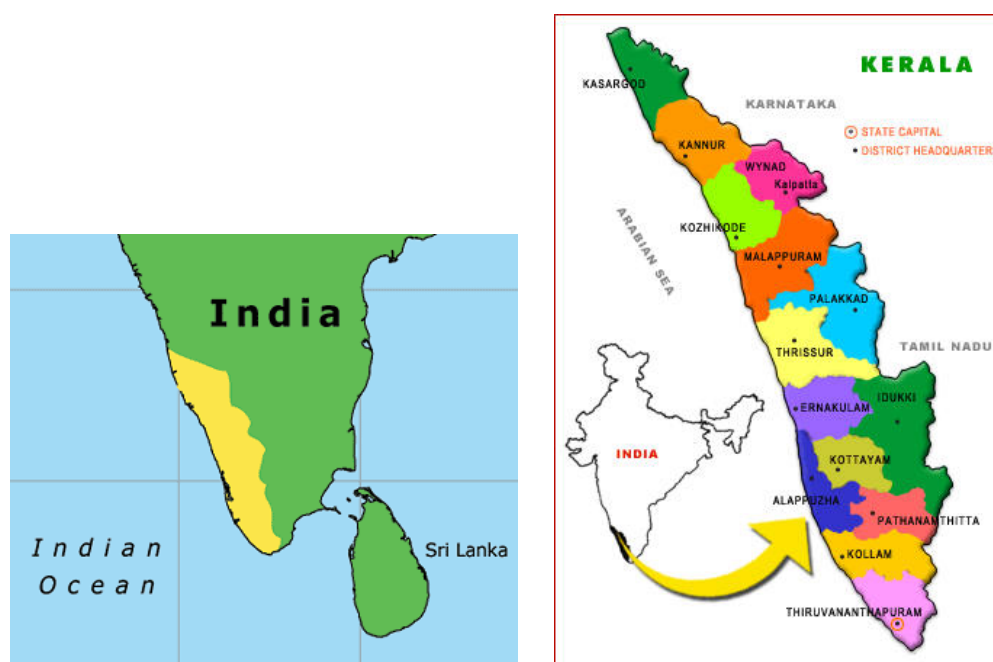


Figure 13.54: Areas of the Malayalam language

(From <http://www.lmp.ucla.edu/Profile.aspx?LangID=92&menu=004> in [195] and <http://keralalife.com/>)

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-b” language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by
 \X A.J. ALEX. The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the
 \< extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly
 bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th cen-
 turies. This language option requires specific fonts (depending on the option of the malay-
 alam package). It should be used with the following options of the malayalam package³⁸:
 aathira, ambili, anahka, ashtamudi, aswathi, ayilyambold, bhanu, bhavana, chippi,
 gauri, gopika, indulekha, ISMashtamudi, ISMkarthika, ISMkaumudi, ISMrevathi,
 jaya, karthika, kaumudi, kottakkal, makam, malavikaption demalayalam, mridula,
 payippad, periyar, ravivarma, revathi, sabari, sarada, sruthy, and triruvathira.

³⁸There is a great variety of fonts for Malayalam; hence I have attempted to limit the number of .mld files.

See also sections 13.119 to 13.125 on page 554.

```

9567 (*malayalam – b)
9568 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-b.mld}[2007/12/04]
9569 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9570 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9571 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9572 %%
9573 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9574 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9575 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9576 %%
9577 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9578 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9579 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9580 (/malayalam – b)

```

13.119 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

```

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-keli” language, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the
\X malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts.
\<

```

See also sections 13.118 on the page before to 13.125 on page 554.

```

9581 (*malayalam – keli)
9582 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]
9583 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
9584 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9585 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9586 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9587 %%
9588 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9589 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9590 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9591 %%
9592 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9593 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9594 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9595 (/malayalam – keli)

```

13.120 “Malayalam-keli2” language: malayalam-keli2.mld

```

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-keli2” language are taken from the malayalam package [4]
\X by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (keli).
\<

```

See also sections 13.118 on page 550 to 13.125 on page 554.

```

9596 ⟨*malayalam – keli2⟩
9597 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli2.mld}[2007/12/04]
9598 % Keli fonts (mkl)
9599 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9600 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9601 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9602 %%
9603 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9604 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9605 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9606 %%
9607 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9608 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9609 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9610 ⟨/malayalam – keli2⟩

```

13.121 “Malayalam-mr” language: malayalam-mr.mld

```

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-mr” language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by
\X A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (rachana).
\<>

```

See also sections 13.118 on page 550 to 13.125 on page 554.

```

9611 ⟨*malayalam – mr⟩
9612 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-mr.mld}[2007/12/04]
9613 % mr fonts (rachana: mr1,...,mr6)
9614 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}
9615 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9616 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9617 %%
9618 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}
9619 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9620 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9621 %%
9622 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}
9623 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9624 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9625 ⟨/malayalam – mr⟩

```

13.122 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.ml[d|o]

`\mtcloadmlo` This is the Malayalam language implementation “malayalam-omega” based on *Lambda* (Λ) (the version of \LaTeX for Omega) via the `omal` package [5] (by A.J. ALEX) of the Malayalam-Omega project³⁹. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the `omal` package.

See also sections 13.118 on page 550 to 13.125 on the following page.

```
9626 (*malayalam – omega)
9627 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2007/12/04]
9628 %% from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
9629 \mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}%
9630 (/malayalam – omega)
```

13.123 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

`\mm` The titles for the “malayalam-rachana” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old
`\X` lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific
`\C` fonts.
`\F`

`\<>` See also sections 13.118 on page 550 to 13.125 on the following page.

```
9631 (*malayalam – rachana)
9632 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]
9633 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
9634 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9635 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C{<94>}}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9636 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F{<59>}}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9637 %%
9638 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9639 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C{<94>}}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9640 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F{<59>}}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9641 %%
9642 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9643 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C{<94>}}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9644 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F{<59>}}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9645 (/malayalam – rachana)
```

³⁹ <http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>

13.124 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new
 \X lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific
 \< fonts.

See also sections 13.118 on page 550 to 13.125.

```

9646 (*malayalam – rachana2)
9647 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9648 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
9649 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9650 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9651 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9652 %%
9653 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9654 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9655 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9656 %%
9657 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9658 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9659 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9660 (/malayalam – rachana2)

```

13.125 “Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-rachana3” language are taken from the malayalam pack-
 \X age [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (rachana).

\<

\C See also sections 13.118 on page 550 to 13.124.

\F

```

9661 (*malayalam – rachana3)
9662 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana3.mld}[2007/12/04]
9663 % Rachana fonts (mr2,...,mr6)
9664 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9665 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9666 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9667 %%
9668 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9669 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9670 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9671 %%
9672 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9673 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%

```

```

9674 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\F\<59>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9675 \</malayalam – rachana3>

```

13.126 “Manju” language: manju.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “manju” language is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load bithe.mld (see section 13.23 on page 480):

```

9676 \<manju>
9677 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]
9678 \mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
9679 \</manju>

```

13.127 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.16 on page 475):

```

9680 \<meyalu>
9681 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]
9682 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9683 \</meyalu>

```

13.128 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the MonTeX package [119, 122] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.20 on page 478, 13.21 on page 479, 13.22 on page 480, 13.23 on page 480, 13.30 on page 485, 13.31 on page 486, 13.186 on page 598, 13.187 on page 599, and 13.188 on page 600.

```

9684 \<mongol>
9685 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]
9686 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
9687 %% Needs mongol fonts
9688 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9689 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgin jagsaalt}}%
9690 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti in jagsaalt}}%
9691 %%
9692 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%

```



Figure 13.55: Areas of the mongol language
 (From <http://www.lmp.ucla.edu/Profile.aspx?LangID=79&menu=004> in [195])



Figure 13.56: General linguistic map of the mongol language
 (From http://www.lexilogos.com/mongol_dictionnaire.htm)


```

9693 \def\mlfttitle{{\mnr Zurgı"ıń jagsaalt}}%
9694 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"ıń jagsaalt}}%
9695 %%
9696 \def\stcttitle{{\mnr Garqıg}}%
9697 \def\slfttitle{{\mnr Zurgı"ıń jagsaalt}}%
9698 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"ıń jagsaalt}}%
9699 </mongol>

```

13.129 “Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld

This is an other variant for the mongolian titles, taken from the `mongolian.dtx` file [23] (by Dorjgotov BATMUNKH) for the `babel` package [48, 49] (hence the final “b” in “mongolb”).

`\cyr` The titles for the “mongolb” language use cyrillic characters and the X2 and T2 encodings and are derived from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH and Werner LEMBERG).

```

9700 <*mongolb>
9701 \ProvidesFile{mongolb.mld}[2007/01/29]
9702 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9703 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9704 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9705 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9706 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vvv.vsu.ru) and Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9707 %%
9708 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9709   \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9710 \else\relax
9711   \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9712 \fi
9713 \def\plfttitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9714   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9715 \def\pltttitle{{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9716   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9717 %%
9718 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9719   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9720 \else\relax
9721   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9722 \fi
9723 \def\mlfttitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9724   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9725 \def\mltttitle{{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9726   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9727 %%
9728 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9729   \def\stcttitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9730 \else\relax
9731   \def\stcttitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%

```

```

9732 \fi
9733 \def\slfttitle{{{ \cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9734   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9735 \def\sltttitle{{{ \cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9736   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9737 </mongolb>

```

13.130 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` This is an other name for the “mongolb” language, because the babel package [48, 49] uses the name “mongolian”. We just load mongolb.mld. See section 13.129 on the preceding page.

```

9738 < *mongolian>
9739 \ProvidesFile{mongolian.mld}[2007/02/05]
9740 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9741 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9742 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9743 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9744 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vvv.vsu.ru) and Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9745 %%
9746 \mtcselectlanguage{mongolb}%
9747 </mongolian>

```

13.131 “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the germanb variant of the german language), so we just load the ngermanb.mld file. See also section 13.134 on the next page.

```

9748 < *naustrian>
9749 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9750 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9751 </naustrian>

```

13.132 “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.44 on page 496):

```

9752 <*newzealand>
9753 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]
9754 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
9755 </newzealand>

```

13.133 “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language⁴⁰, so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.134.

```

9756 <*ngerman>
9757 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]
9758 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9759 </ngerman>

```

13.134 “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb” language⁴¹ are taken from the file `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 84]. See also sections 13.131 on the preceding page, and 13.133.

```

9760 <*ngermanb>
9761 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
9762 %% New german (B) titles for minitoc.sty from ngermanb.dtx (babel)
9763 %% Raichle, Bernd and Schmidt, Walter
9764 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%      % oder nur: Inhalt
9765 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9766 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9767 %%
9768 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9769 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9770 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9771 %%
9772 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9773 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9774 \def\slttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9775 </ngermanb>

```

⁴⁰ A revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language.

⁴¹ A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

13.135 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language (revised spelling and short titles) are taken from taken from the `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 84], and abbreviated. See also section 13.134 on the preceding page.

```

9776 <*ngermanb2>
9777 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
9778 %% New german (B) short (2) titles for minitoc.sty
9779 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
9780 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
9781 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
9782 %%
9783 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9784 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
9785 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
9786 %%
9787 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9788 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
9789 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9790 </ngermanb2>

```

13.136 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 53], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.138 on page 562.

```

9791 <*norsk>
9792 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
9793 %% Norsk titles for minitoc.sty from norsk.dtx (babel)
9794 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
9795 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
9796 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9797 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9798 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
9799 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
9800 %%
9801 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9802 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
9803 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
9804 %%
9805 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9806 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
9807 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
9808 </norsk>

```

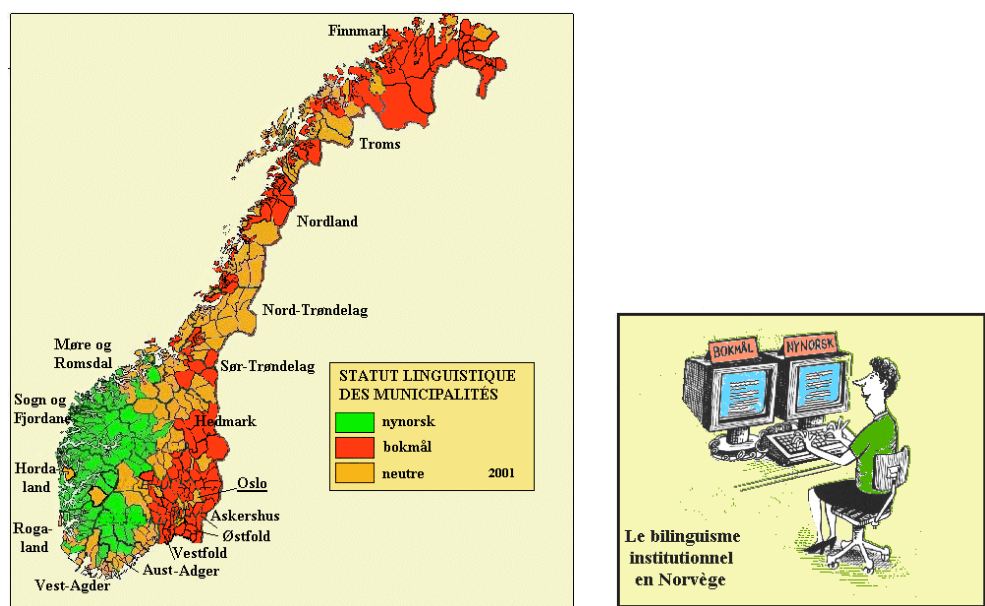


Figure 13.57: Languages in Norway

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/norvege-communes-Ing.htm> and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/norvege.htm> in [248])

13.137 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the babel package [48, 49, 53], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. These are variants of the titles of section 13.136 on the preceding page.

```

9809 (*norsk2)
9810 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]
9811 %% Short norsk titles for minitoc.sty
9812 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9813 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9814 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9815 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9816 %%
9817 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9818 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9819 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9820 %%
9821 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9822 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9823 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
9824 \end{file}

```

13.138 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language⁴² are taken from the norsk.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the babel package [48, 49, 53], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.136 on page 560.

```

9825 <*nynorsk>
9826 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13] %% Nynorsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel)
9827 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
9828 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
9829 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9830 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9831 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
9832 \def\mltttitle{Tabellar}%
9833 %%
9834 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9835 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
9836 \def\plttitle{Tabellar}%
9837 %%
9838 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9839 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
9840 \def\slttitle{Tabellar}%
9841 </nynorsk>

```

13.139 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.138.

```

9842 <*nynorsk2>
9843 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]
9844 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9845 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9846 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9847 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9848 %%
9849 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9850 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9851 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
9852 %%
9853 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9854 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9855 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
9856 </nynorsk2>

```

⁴²Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialects spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.

13.140 “Polish” language: polish.mld



Figure 13.58: Poland

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/pologne-1demo.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “polish” language are taken from the `polish.dtx` file (by Elmar SCHALÜCK and Michael JANICH) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 89]. See also sections 13.141 and 13.142 on the following page.

```

9857 <{*polish}
9858 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2006/01/13]
9859 %% Polish titles for minitoc.sty from polish.dtx (babel)
9860 %% Schalück, Elmar and Janich, Michael
9861 \def\ptctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9862 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9863 \def\plttitle{Spis tablic}%
9864 %%
9865 \def\mtctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9866 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9867 \def\mlttitle{Spis tablic}%
9868 %%
9869 \def\stctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9870 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9871 \def\slttitle{Spis tablic}%
9872 </polish>

```

13.141 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

`\localpolish` The titles for the “polish2” language⁴³ are taken from the `omega-polish.ldf` (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [226]. See also sections 13.140 and 13.142 on the following page.

⁴³ “Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.

```

9873 <*polish2>
9874 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]
9875 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega project)
9876 %% Needs Omega
9877 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
9878 %%
9879 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9880 \def\plftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9881 \def\plttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9882 %%
9883 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9884 \def\mlftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9885 \def\mlttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9886 %%
9887 \def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9888 \def\slftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9889 \def\slttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9890 </polish2>

```

13.142 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the polski.dtx file (by Mariusz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI) in the \LaTeX package [299, 380]. See also sections 13.140 on the page before and 13.141 on the preceding page.

```

9891 <*polski>
9892 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2006/02/28]
9893 %% Polski titles for minitoc.sty
9894 %% from polski.dtx (PLaTeX)
9895 %% Olko, Mariusz and Woli\'nski, Marcin.
9896 %%
9897 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9898 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9899 \def\plttitle{Spis tabel}%
9900 %%
9901 \def\mtctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9902 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9903 \def\mlttitle{Spis tabel}%
9904 %%
9905 \def\stctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9906 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9907 \def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
9908 </polski>

```


13.143 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The name “portuges” is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.144), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```
9909 <*portuges>
9910 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]
9911 \mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
9912 </portuges>
```

13.144 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld



Figure 13.59: Portugal

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/portugal.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “portuguese” language are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 85].

See also section 13.24 on page 481, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

The portuguese language is spoken in Portugal (with the islands of Azores and Madeira), in Brazil, and in former portuguese colonies like Angola, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique, Cape Verde Islands, São Tomé and Príncipe Islands, East Timor, and some old trading posts like Macao and Goa; see figure 13.60 on the next page.

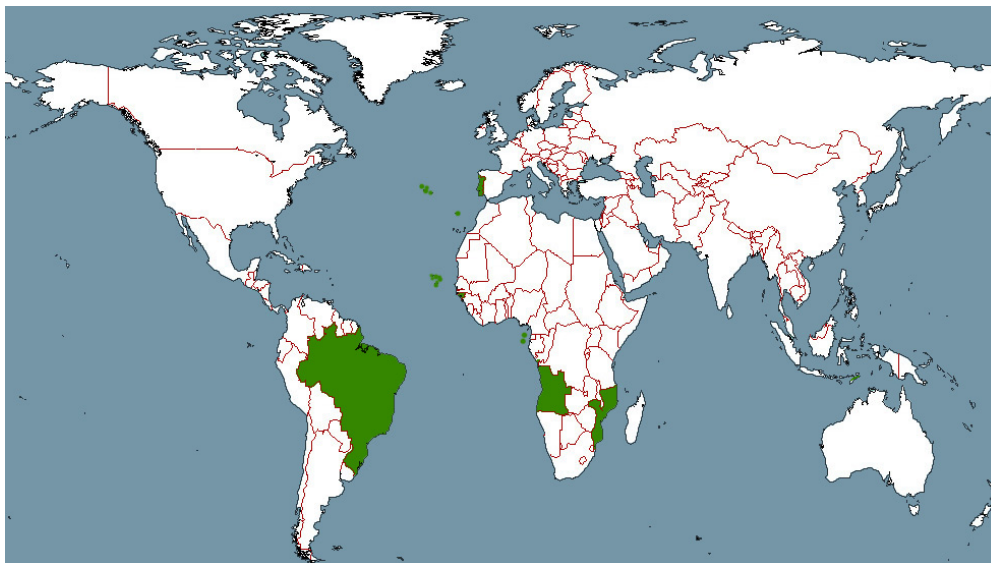


Figure 13.60: Lusophone areas

(From http://www.tlfg.ulaval.ca/axl/Languages/2vital_inter_portugais.htm in [248])

```

9913 (*portuguese)
9914 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]
9915 %% Portuguese titles for minitoc.sty
9916 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
9917 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
9918 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9919 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9920 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9921 %%
9922 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9923 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9924 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9925 %%
9926 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9927 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9928 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9929 </portuguese>

```

13.145 “Romanian” language: `romanian.mld`

The titles for the “romanian” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Umstatter HORST and Robert JUHASZ) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 71].

```

9930 (*romanian)
9931 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9932 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty

```

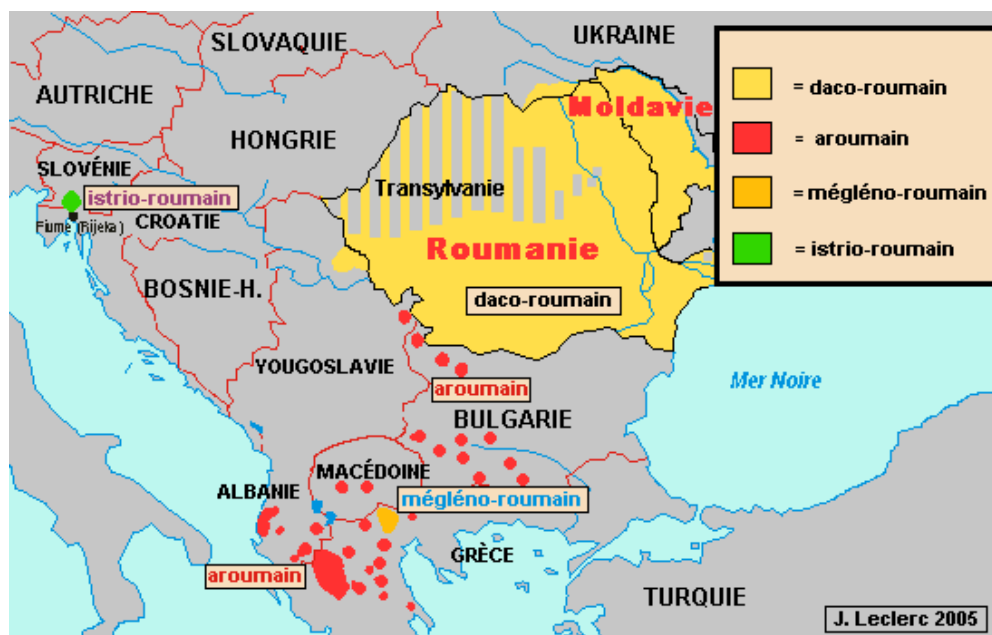


Figure 13.61: Areas of the romanian language
 (From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/roumain_aire-Ing.htm in [248])

```

9933 %% from romanian.dtx (babel)
9934 %% Horst, Umstätter and Juhasz, Robert
9935 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9936 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9937 \def\pltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9938 %%
9939 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9940 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9941 \def\mltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9942 %%
9943 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9944 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9945 \def\sltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9946 \</romanian>

```

13.146 “Romanian2” language: `romanian2.mld`

The titles for the “romanian2” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the Romanian \TeX package [327]. See also sections 13.145 on the preceding page and 13.147 on the next page. Alas, Romanian \TeX is not compatible with the babel package [48, 49].

```

9947 <*romanian2>
9948 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]
9949 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx)
9950 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl) and
9951 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9952 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9953 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9954 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9955 %%
9956 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9957 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9958 \def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9959 %%
9960 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9961 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9962 \def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9963 </romanian2>

```

13.147 “Romanian3” language: `romanian3.mld`

The titles for the “romanian3” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianTeX package [327]. See also sections 13.145 on page 566 and 13.146 on the page before. Alas, RomanianTeX is not compatible with the babel package [48, 49].

```

9964 <*romanian3>
9965 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]
9966 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
9967 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl) and
9968 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9969 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9970 \def\plftitle{Indice de figuri}%
9971 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
9972 %%
9973 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9974 \def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9975 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
9976 %%
9977 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9978 \def\slftitle{Indice de figuri}%
9979 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
9980 </romanian3>

```

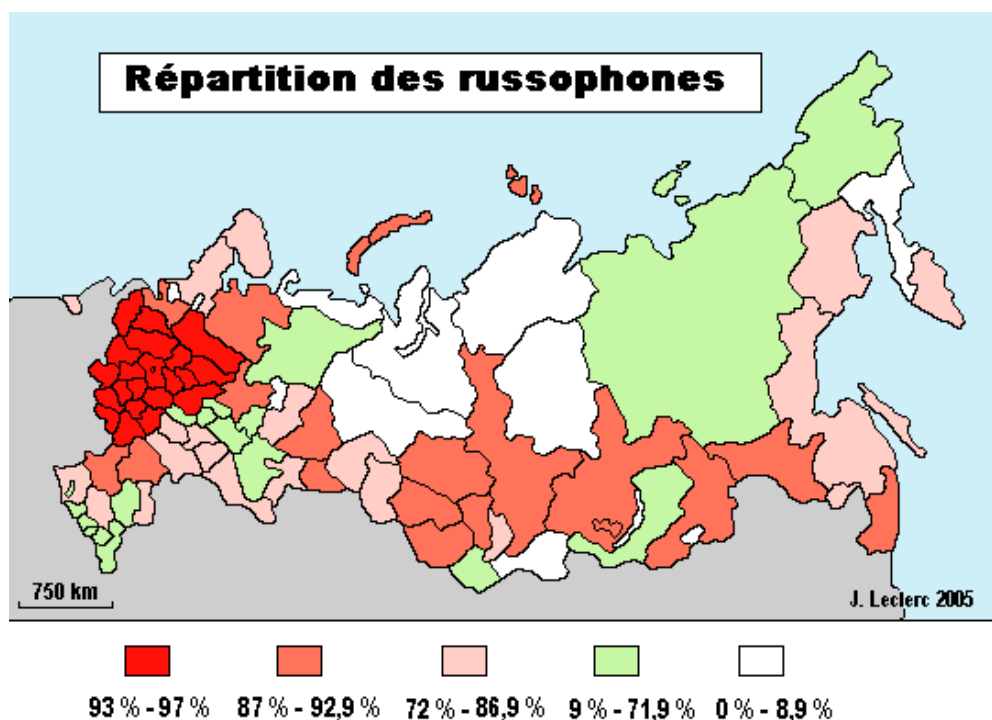


Figure 13.62: Areas of the russian language
(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/russie-2demo.htm> in [248])



Figure 13.63: Areas where the russian language is official or spoken
(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Russian_Language)

13.148 “Russian” language: russian.mld

\cz The titles for the “russian” language are taken from the babel package [48, 49]. Specific
 \mz cyrillic fonts are required.

```

9981 (*russian)
9982 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]
9983 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
9984 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9985 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9986 \def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9987 %%
9988 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9989 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9990 \def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9991 %%
9992 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9993 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9994 \def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9995 \end{russian}

```

13.149 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld

\localrussian The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the russian2m.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [226]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.148.

```

9996 (*russian2m)
9997 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]
9998 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
9999 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
10000 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
10001 %%
10002 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
10003 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10004 ^0438^0435}}%
10005 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
10006 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
10007 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
10008 ^0439}}%
10009 \def\plttitle{\localrussian%
10010 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
10011 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
10012 %%
10013 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
10014 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10015 ^0438^0435}}%
10016 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%

```

```

10017 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
10018 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
10019 ^0439}}%
10020 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
10021 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
10022 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
10023 %%
10024 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
10025 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10026 ^0438^0435}}%
10027 \def\slfttitle{\localrussian%
10028 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
10029 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
10030 ^0439}}%
10031 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
10032 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
10033 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
10034 </russian2m>

```

13.150 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

\localrussian The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the omega-russian.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [226]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.148 on the page before.

```

10035 (*russian2o)
10036 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]
10037 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
10038 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
10039 %% Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov
10040 %%
10041 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
10042 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10043 ^0456^0435}}%
10044 \def\plfttitle{\localrussian%
10045 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
10046 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
10047 ^0456^0439}}%
10048 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
10049 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
10050 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
10051 %%
10052 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
10053 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10054 ^0456^0435}}%
10055 \def\mlfttitle{\localrussian%
10056 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
10057 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
10058 ^0456^0439}}%

```

```

10059 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
10060 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
10061 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
10062 %%
10063 \def\stcttitle{\localrussian%
10064 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
10065 ^0456^0435}}%
10066 \def\slfttitle{\localrussian%
10067 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
10068 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
10069 ^0456^0439}}%
10070 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
10071 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
10072 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
10073 </russian2o>

```

13.151 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

`\cyr` The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. МАКХОВАЯ) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 77, 240]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.148 on page 570. The `parttoc` title varies depending on the presence of chapters defined or not by the document class.

```

10074 <{*russianb>
10075 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]
10076 %% Russian (russianb) titles for minitoc.sty
10077 %% from russianb.dtx (babel)
10078 %% Lapko, Olga and Volovitch, Vladimir and Lemberg, Werner
10079 \expandafter\ifx\curname chapter\endcsname\relax
10080 \def\ptctitle{%
10081   {\cyr\CYRS\CYro\CYrd\CYre\CYrr\CYrzh\CYra\CYrn\CYri\CYre}}%
10082 \else
10083 \def\ptctitle{%
10084   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
10085 \fi
10086 \def\plfttitle{%
10087   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10088     \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
10089 \def\pltttitle{%
10090   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10091     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRL\CYRi\CYRc}}%
10092 %%
10093 \def\mtcttitle{%
10094   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
10095 \def\mlfttitle{%
10096   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10097     \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
10098 \def\mltttitle{%

```



```

10099 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10100 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
10101 %%
10102 \def\stctitle{%
10103 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
10104 \def\slftitle{%
10105 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10106 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
10107 \def\slttitle{%
10108 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
10109 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
10110 </russianb>

```

13.152 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

`\xalx` The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [119, 122]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.148 on page 570.

```

10111 <*russianc>
10112 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]
10113 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
10114 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10115 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
10116 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10117 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10118 %%
10119 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10120 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10121 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10122 %%
10123 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10124 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10125 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10126 </russianc>

```

13.153 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.ml[d|o]

They are several variants for the russian titles with the `cmcyralt` fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the `russian.sty` (by Victor Boyko and Vadim MASLOV) file in the `cmcyralt` package [46].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca.mlo`.

```

10127 <*russian – cca>
10128 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]
10129 %% Russian-cca titles for minitoc.sty
10130 %% From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
10131 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) and Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
10132 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
10133 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
10134 </russian – cca>

```

13.154 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld[o]

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the cmcyralt.sty file (by Vadim MASLOV, Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the cmcyralt package[188].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca1.mlo.

```

10135 <*russian – cca1>
10136 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]
10137 %% Russian-cca1 titles for minitoc.sty
10138 %% From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
10139 %% cmcyr fonts in alt encoding
10140 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) and Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
10141 %% and Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
10142 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
10143 </russian – cca1>

```

13.155 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.mld[o]

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the russian.sty file (by Sergei O. NAUMOV) in the LH package [287].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lh.mlo.

```

10144 <*russian – lh>
10145 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]
10146 %% Russian-lh titles for minitoc.sty from russian.sty in the LH package
10147 %% LH fonts in special encoding. By Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
10148 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
10149 </russian – lh>

```

13.156 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld[o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the lhcyralt.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [404].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyralt.mlo. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```
10150 <*russian – lhcyralt>
10151 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]
10152 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles for minitoc.sty
10153 %% From lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
10154 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866)
10155 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10156 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
10157 </russian – lhcyralt>
```

13.157 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld[o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the lhcyrkoi.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [404].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```
10158 <*russian – lhcyrkoi>
10159 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]
10160 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles for minitoc.sty
10161 %% From lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
10162 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8
10163 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10164 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
10165 </russian – lhcyrkoi>
```

13.158 “Russian-lhcyrrwin” language: russian-lhcyrrwin.mld[o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrrwin” language) are taken from the lhcyrrwin.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyrr package [404].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lhcyrrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrrwin.mlo. The input encoding is the code page CP1251.

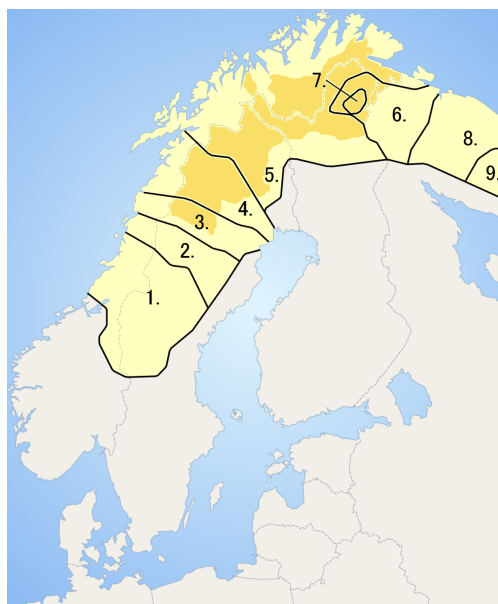
```
10166 < *russian – lhcyrrwin >
10167 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]
10168 %% Russian-lhcyrrwin titles for minitoc.sty
10169 %% From lhcyrrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
10170 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in special encoding CP1251
10171 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10172 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrrwin}%
10173 < /russian – lhcyrrwin >
```

13.159 “Samin” language: samin.mld

The titles for the “samin” language⁴⁴ come from the samin.dtx file (by Regnor JERNSLETTEN) in the babel package [48, 49, 72]. Specific fonts are required.

```
10174 < *samin >
10175 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]
10176 %% North Sámi (samin) titles for minitoc.sty
10177 %% from samin.dtx (babel)
10178 %% Jernsletten, Regnor
10179 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10180 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
10181 \def\pltttitle{Tabeallat}%
10182 %%
10183 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10184 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
10185 \def\mltttitle{Tabeallat}%
10186 %%
10187 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10188 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
10189 \def\sltttitle{Tabeallat}%
10190 < /samin >
```

⁴⁴Several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more .dtx files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name samin.dtx (and not sami.dtx or the like) in the North Sámi case. This note is copied and adapted from the samin.dtx file. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group.

Figure 13.64: Areas of the Sámi dialects^a

(From [Sami_languages_large_2.png](#) in http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sami_languages)

^a Sámi: 1. Southern; 2. Ume; 3. Pite; 4. Lule; 5. Northern; 6. Skolt; 7. Inari; 8. Teri. Darkened area represents municipalities that recognize Sámi as an official language.

13.160 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld

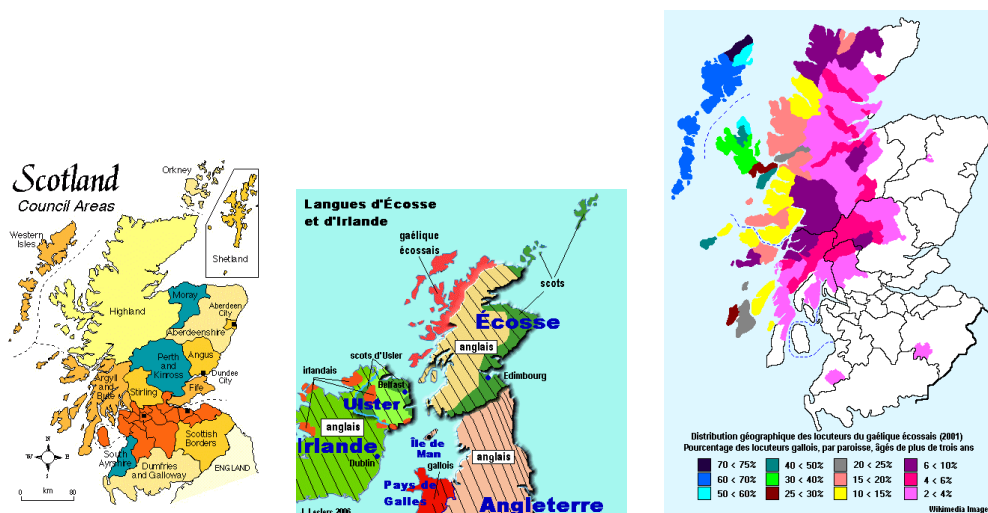


Figure 13.65: Scotland and the scottish language

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ecossecarte.htm>,
<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ecosse.htm> and
<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ecosse-ling-carte.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “scottish” language (gaelic scottish) come from the `scottish.dtx` file (by Fraser GRANT) in the babel language [48, 49, 69]:

```

10191 \*scottish)
10192 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10193 %% Scottish titles for minitoc.sty from scottish.dtx (babel)
10194 %% Grant, Fraser
10195 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
10196 \def\plftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10197 \def\plttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
10198 %%
10199 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
10200 \def\mlftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10201 \def\mlttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
10202 %%
10203 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
10204 \def\slftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10205 \def\slttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
10206 \*scottish)

```

13.161 “Serbian” language: `serbian.mld`

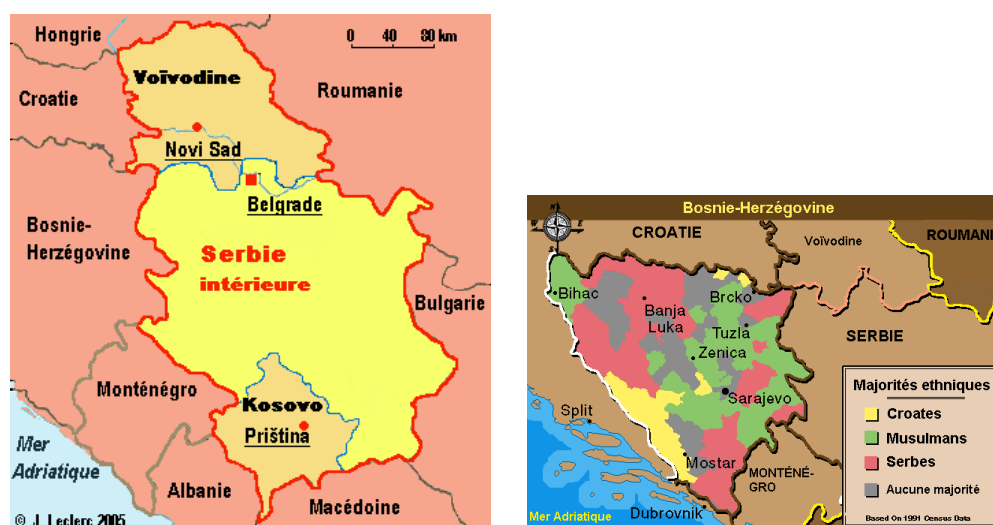


Figure 13.66: Serbia and Bosnia-Herzegovina

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/serbie.htm> and http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/bosnieherzcarte_1.htm in [248])

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file (by Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ and Jankovic SLOBODAN) in the babel package [48, 49, 81].

Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.162 on the following page.

```

10207 <*serbian>
10208 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]
10209 %% Serbian titles for minitoc.sty from serbian.dtx (babel)
10210 %% Muhamedagi\'{c}, Dejan and Slobodan, Jankovic
10211 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10212 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10213 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
10214 %%
10215 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10216 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10217 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
10218 %%
10219 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10220 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10221 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10222 </serbian>

```

13.162 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld

\cyr The titles for the “serbianc” language⁴⁵ have been gently provided by Marko ÈEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.161 on the page before.

```

10223 <*serbianc>
10224 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]
10225 %% Provides titles for minitoc.sty in Serbian Cyrillic
10226 %% Marko Èehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
10227 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
10228 %% Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie
10229 \def\ptctitle{%
10230   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10231 \def\plftitle{%
10232   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10233 \def\pltttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10234 %%
10235 \def\mtctitle{%
10236   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10237 \def\mlftitle{%
10238   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10239 \def\mltttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10240 %%
10241 \def\stctitle{%
10242   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10243 \def\slftitle{%
10244   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10245 \def\slttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10246 </serbianc>

```

⁴⁵The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

13.163 “Slovak” language: `slovak.mld`



Figure 13.67: Slovakia

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/slovaquiecarte.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “slovak” language are taken from the `slovak.dtx` file (by Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ and Tobias SCHLEMMER) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 65]. Using the T1 font encoding is recommended.

```

10247 <{*slovak}
10248 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]
10249 %% Slovak titles for minitoc.sty
10250 %% from slovak.dtx (babel)
10251 %% Chlebíková, Jana and Schlemmer, Tobias
10252 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
10253 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10254 \def\plttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10255 %%
10256 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
10257 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10258 \def\mlttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10259 %%
10260 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
10261 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10262 \def\slttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10263 </slovak>

```

13.164 “Slovene” language: `slovene.mld`

The slovene language is spoken in Slovenia, but somewhat also in Italy (Frioul), in Austria (Carinthia and Styria), in Hungary (Szlovénviék and Porabje), in West Germany and Sweden. The titles for the “slovene” language come from the `slovene.dtx` file (by Danilo ZAVRTANIK and Leon ŽLAJPAH) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 95]:



Figure 13.68: Slovenia

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/sloveniecarte.htm> in [248])

```

10264 <{*slovene}
10265 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]
10266 %% Slovene titles for minitoc.sty from slovene.dtx (babel)
10267 %% Zavrtanik, Danilo and \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
10268 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
10269 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10270 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
10271 %%
10272 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
10273 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10274 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
10275 %%
10276 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
10277 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10278 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10279 </slovene>

```

13.165 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS, initially by Julio SÁNCHEZ) in the `babel` package [40, 48, 49]. Note that the “spanish” language is in fact “castilian” (see section 13.34 on page 489). Other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.18 on page 477), “catalan” (section 13.36 on page 490), and “galician” (section 13.65 on page 511); see figure 13.70 on page 583. Note that “spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.166 on page 584). And “spanish3” (see section 13.167 on page 584) is a version for the Antomega [226] project; some titles are different. And “spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where `\ptctitle` is shorter for articles (section 13.168 on page 585).

```

10280 <{*spanish}
10281 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2006/02/15]

```



Spain comprises 17 autonomous communities (see figure 13.69 above) in the whole country, including the Canary Islands, near Morocco^a:

- | | |
|--|---|
| – Andalusia (<i>Andalucía</i>): castilian; | – Catalonia (<i>Cataluña / Catalunya</i>): castilian and catalan; |
| – Aragon (<i>Aragón</i>): castilian ; | – Extremadura (<i>Extremadura</i>): castilian; |
| – Principality of Asturias (<i>Principado de Asturias</i>): castilian; | – Galicia (<i>Galicia</i>): castilian and galician; |
| – Balearic Islands (<i>Islas Baleares</i>): castilian and catalan; | – La Rioja: castilian; |
| – Basque Country (<i>Pais Vasco, Euskadi</i>): castilian and basque; | – Madrid (<i>Madrid</i>): castilian; |
| – Canary Islands (<i>Canarias</i>): castilian; | – Region of Murcia (<i>Region de Murcia</i>): castilian. |
| – Cantabria (<i>Cantabria</i>): castilian; | – Foral Community of Navarre (<i>Comunidad Foral de Navarra</i>): castilian and basque; |
| – Castile-La Mancha (<i>Castilla y La Mancha</i>): castilian; | – Valencian Community (<i>Comunidad Valenciana</i>): castilian and catalan (valencian); |
| – Castile and León (<i>Castilla y León</i>): castilian; | |

^a Ceuta and Melilla are spanish enclaves on the northern coast of Morocco.

Figure 13.69: The 17 autonomous communities in Spain
(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Autonomous_communities_of_Spain and http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagne_carte.htm in [248])

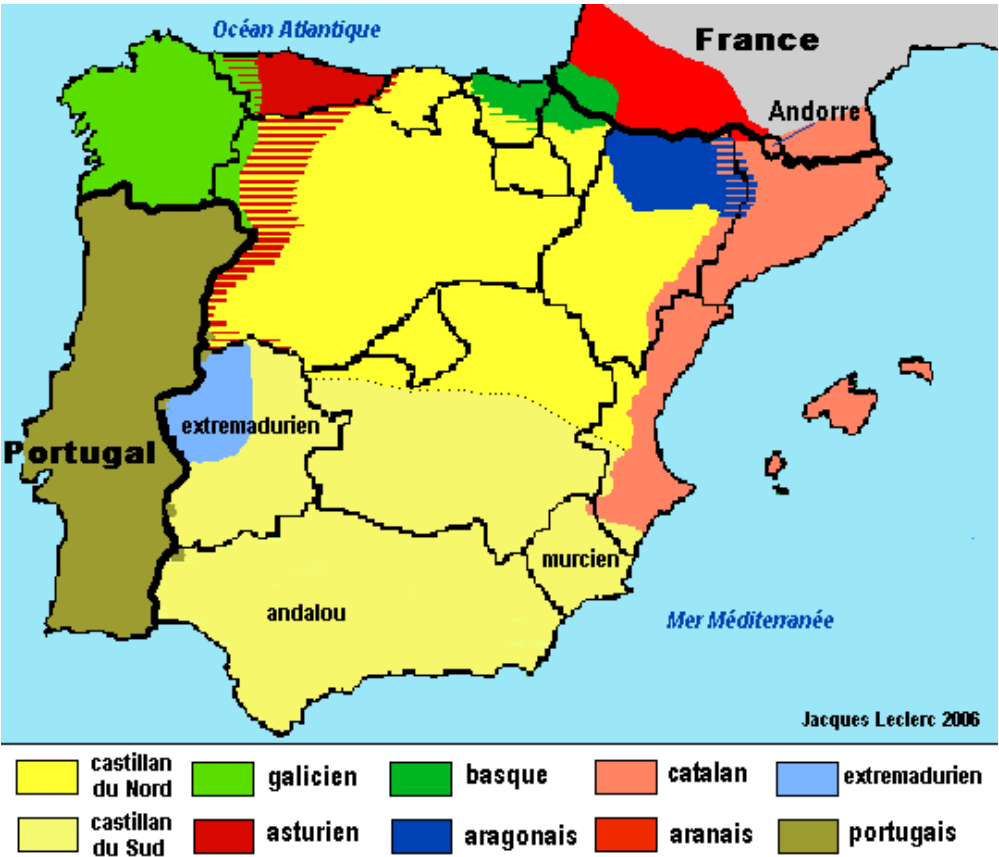


Figure 13.70: Languages in Spain
(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/espagne_carte-Ing.htm in [248])

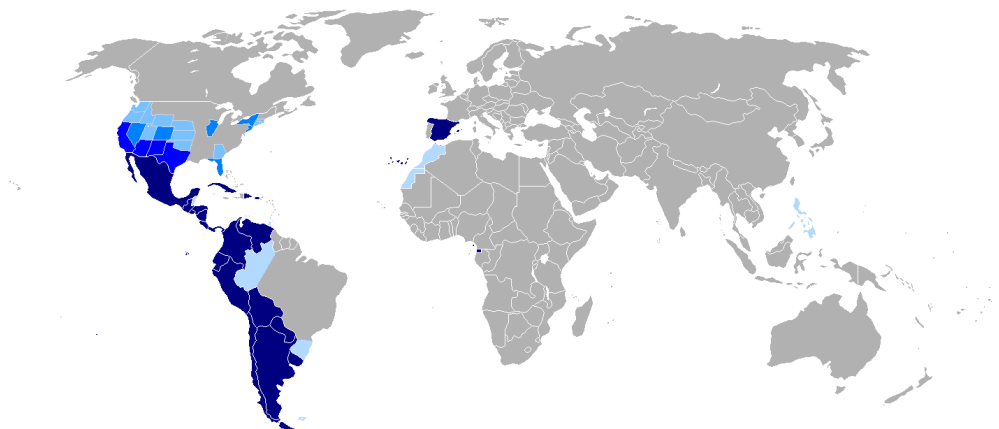


Figure 13.71: Hispanophone areas
(From http://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_language by Onofre BONVILA)

```

10282 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty from spanish.dtx (babel)
10283 %% Bezos, Javier
10284 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10285 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else\def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}\fi
10286 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10287 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10288 %%
10289 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10290 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10291 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10292 %%
10293 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10294 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10295 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10296 </spanish>

```

13.166 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [40, 48, 49], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.165 on page 581.

```

10297 < *spanish2>
10298 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2005/03/31]
10299 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10300 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
10301 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10302 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10303 %%
10304 \def\mtctitle{Contenido}%
10305 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
10306 \def\mlttitle{Tablas}%
10307 %%
10308 \def\stctitle{Contenido}%
10309 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
10310 \def\slttitle{Tablas}%
10311 </spanish2>

```

13.167 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

`\localspanish` The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the `omega-spanish.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV) of the Antomega project [226]. See section 13.165 on page 581.

```

10312 < *spanish3>
10313 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]

```

```

10314 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10315 %% from omega-spanish.ldf of the Antomega project.
10316 \def\ptctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10317 \def\plftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10318 \def\plttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10319 %%
10320 \def\mtctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10321 \def\mlftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10322 \def\mlttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10323 %%
10324 \def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10325 \def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10326 \def\slttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10327 </spanish3>

```

13.168 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS) from the `CervanTeX` package [43]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.165 on page 581.

```

10328 <*spanish4>
10329 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]
10330 %% Spanish titles for minitoc (from spanish.dtx in CervanTeX) Bezos, Javier
10331 \expandafter\ifx\curname chapter\endcsname\relax
10332 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice} \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general} \fi
10333 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10334 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10335 %%
10336 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10337 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10338 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10339 %%
10340 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10341 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10342 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10343 </spanish4>

```

13.169 “Swahili” language: swahili.mld

The titles for the “swahili” language are taken from the *obsolete* `swahili.tex` file⁴⁶, with adaptations and corrections given on the `comp.text.tex` news group (messages 57662, 57713, and 57717) by Giancarlo BASSI and Enrico GREGORIO. Swahili is the main Bantu language and is spoken in East Africa: Tanzania, Kenya, Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi, Zanzibar

⁴⁶ <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/obsolete/macros/latex209/contrib/ml/swahili.tex>

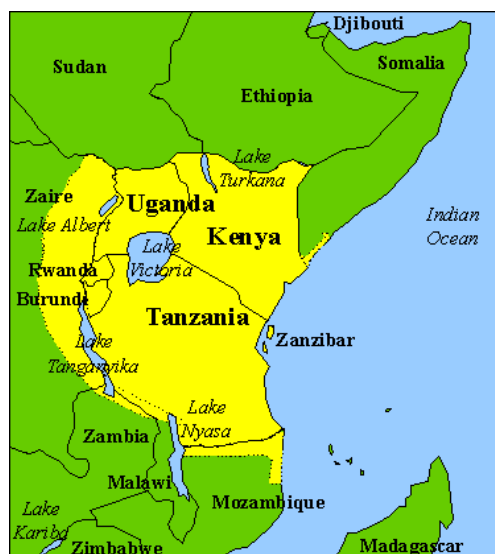


Figure 13.72: Area of the swahili language
(From <http://si.unm.edu/linguistics/swahili/swahili>)

and in the area of the Great Lakes in the Democratic Republic of Congo (Congo-Kinshasa, formerly Zaire) and in the Republic of Congo (Congo-Brazzaville), in the north of Mozambique and the south of Somalia⁴⁷. See figure 13.72.

```

10344 (*swahili)
10345 \ProvidesFile{swahili.mld}[2007/07/02]
10346 %% Swahili titles for minitoc.sty from swahili.tex
10347 %% Articles: 57662,57713,57717 in comp.text.tex
10348 %% Giancarlo Bassi <g.bassi@iperbole.bologna.it>
10349 %% Enrico Gregorio <gregorio@math.unipd.it>
10350 \def\ptctitle{Yaliyomo}%
10351 \def\plftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
10352 \def\plttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
10353 %%
10354 \def\mtctitle{Yaliyomo}%
10355 \def\mlftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
10356 \def\mlttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
10357 %%
10358 \def\stctitle{Yaliyomo}%
10359 \def\slftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
10360 \def\slttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
10361 %%
10362 \end{swahili}

```

⁴⁷ See <http://www.tlq.ulaval.ca/AXL/monde/swahili.htm> dans [248], http://www.gicom.com/hassan/swahili_history.html, and <http://www.omniglot.com/writing/swahili.htm>

13.170 “Swedish” language: `swedish.mld`

The titles for the “swedish” language come from the `swedish.dtx` file (by Sten HELLMAN and Erik ÖSTHOLS, with a correction by Jan Michael RYNNING) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 70].

The swedish language is spoken in Sweden, in some regions of Finland like the Åland Islands (see figure 13.73 on the following page). See also section 13.171.

```

10363 (*swedish)
10364 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10365 %% Swedish titles for minitoc.sty from swedish.dtx (babel)
10366 %% Hellman, Sten and Östhols, Erik
10367 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10368 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
10369 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
10370 %%
10371 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10372 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
10373 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
10374 %%
10375 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10376 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
10377 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
10378 </swedish>

```

13.171 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for `swedish`) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file (by Sven MATTISSEN) in the `SLATEX` package [265]. See also section 13.170.

```

10379 (*swedish2)
10380 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]
10381 %% Swedish2 titles for minitoc.sty from rapport.doc (slatex)
10382 %% Mattisson, Sven (sven@tde.lu.se)
10383 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10384 \def\plftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
10385 \def\plttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
10386 %%
10387 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10388 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
10389 \def\mlttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
10390 %%
10391 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10392 \def\slftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
10393 \def\slttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
10394 </swedish2>

```



Figure 13.73: Areas of the swedish language
 (From <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/sweden.html> – *Courtesy of the University of Texas Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin* [326],
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Swedish_language,
http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/finlande-2demo_Ing.htm and
<http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/EtatsNsouverains/aland.htm> in [248])

13.172 “Thai” language: thai.ml[d|o]



Figure 13.74: Area of the thai language

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/monde/fam_tai-kadai.htm and <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/thaillande.htm> in [248])

The titles for the “thai” language come from the `thaicjk.ldf` file (by Werner LEMBERG) and use fonts of the CJK system [250, 251]. The `thailatex` package [267] (by Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN and Veerathanabutr POONLAP) provides the same titles in its `thai.ldf` file.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`. See also [212].

```

10395 (*thai)
10396 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]
10397 %% from thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
10398 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
10399 %%
10400 \mtcloadmlo{thai}%
10401 </thai>

```



Figure 13.75: Turkey

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/turquie_1general.htm in [248])

13.173 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`

\in The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file (by Mustafa BURC, Pierre A. MacKAY and Turgut UYAR) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 61]:

```

10402 (*turkish)
10403 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10404 %% Turkish titles for minitoc.sty
10405 %% from turkish.dtx (babel)
10406 %% Burc, Mustafa
10407 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10408 \def\plftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10409 \def\pltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10410 %%
10411 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10412 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10413 \def\mltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10414 %%
10415 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10416 \def\slftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10417 \def\sltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10418 (/turkish)

```

13.174 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld



Figure 13.76: Areas of the uighur language
 (From <http://www.lmp.ucla.edu/Profile.aspx?LangID=69&menu=004> in [195])



Figure 13.77: Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region
 (From <http://en.wikipedia.org/?title=Xinjiang> and
<http://www.tourroundchina.com/map/xinjiang.htm>)

\mtcselectlanguage The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig.mld file (see section 13.20 on page 478):

```
10419 <*uighur>
10420 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]
10421 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
10422 </uighur>
```

13.175 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig2.mld` file (see section 13.21 on page 479):

```
10423 <*uighur2>
10424 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]
10425 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
10426 </uighur2>
```

13.176 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig3.mld` file (see section 13.20 on page 478):

```
10427 <*uighur3>
10428 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]
10429 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
10430 </uighur3>
```

13.177 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.44 on page 496):

```
10431 <*UKenglish>
10432 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10433 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10434 </UKenglish>
```

13.178 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load `ukrainian.mld`. See section 13.179.

```
10435 <*ukraineb>
10436 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2007/12/04]
10437 %% Ukrainian titles for minitoc.sty from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
10438 %% Andrij Shvaika, Olga Lapko
10439 \mtcselectlanguage{ukrainian}%
10440 </ukraineb>
```

13.179 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld

`\cyr` The titles for the “ukrainian” language come from the `ukraineb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO and Andrij M. SHVAIKA) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 90]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is `ukraineb` (see section 13.178).

```
10441 <*ukrainian>
10442 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]
10443 %% Ukraine titles for minitoc.sty
10444 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
10445 %% Shvaika, Andrij and Lapko, Olga
10446 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10447 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10448 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10449 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10450 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10451 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10452 %%
10453 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10454 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10455 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10456 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10457 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10458 %%
10459 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10460 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10461 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10462 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10463 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10464 </ukrainian>
```

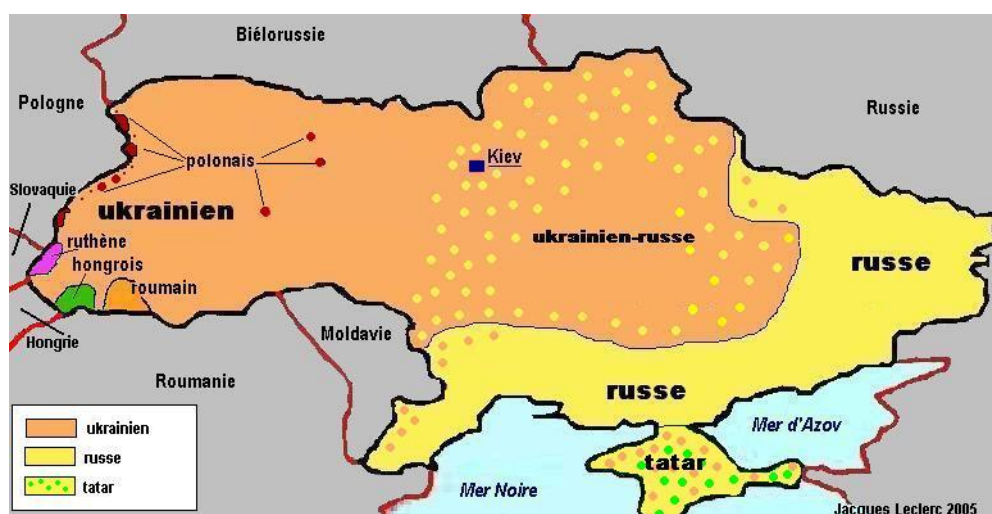


Figure 13.78: Languages in Ukraine

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/ukraine-1demo.htm> in [248])



Figure 13.79: Ukraine

(From http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:WikiProject_Ukraine/Subdivisions)

13.180 “Uppersorbian” language: `uppersorbian.mld`

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language⁴⁸ are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 93]. See also section 13.112 on page 545. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 13.182).

```

10465 (*uppersorbian)
10466 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]
10467 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10468 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10469 %% Werner, Eduard
10470 %%
10471 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
10472 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10473 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10474 %%
10475 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
10476 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10477 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10478 %%
10479 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%
10480 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10481 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10482 \end{uppersorbian}

```

13.181 “USenglish” language: `USenglish.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “USenglish” language (“US” is for “United States (of America)”) is just like “english”⁴⁹, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.44 on page 496):

```

10483 (*USenglish)
10484 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10485 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10486 \end{USenglish}

```

13.182 “Usorbian” language: `usorbian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just have to load `uppersorbian.mld`. See section 13.180.

⁴⁸Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

⁴⁹It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

10487 (*usorbian)
10488 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]
10489 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
10490 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10491 %% Werner, Eduard
10492 \mtcselectlanguage{upporsorbian}%
10493 \end{usorbian}

```

13.183 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

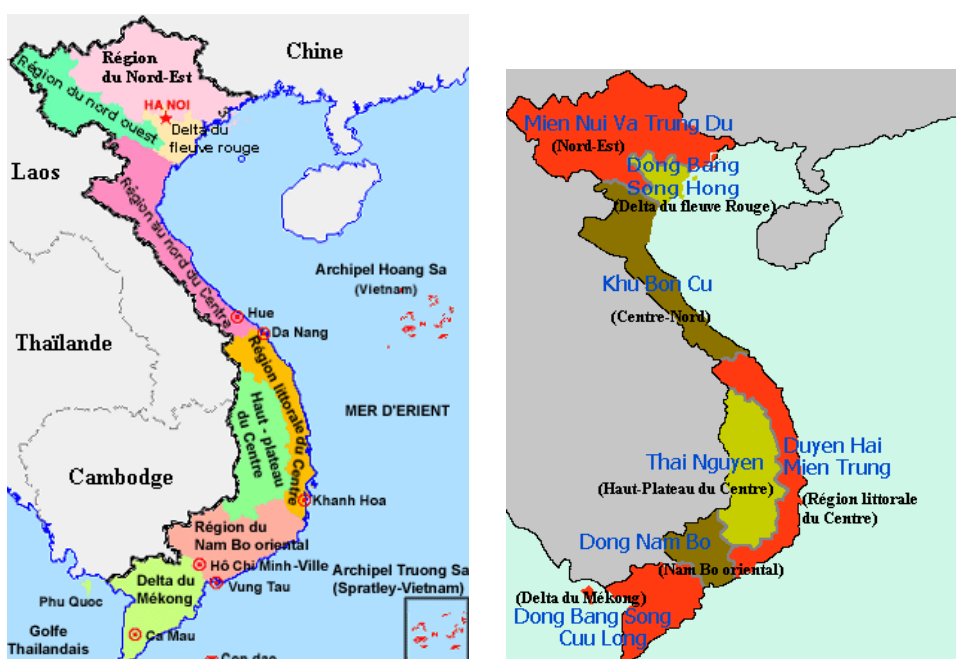


Figure 13.80: Vietnam

(From http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/vietnam_carte2-prov.htm in [248])

The titles for the “vietnam” language are taken from the vietnam package [252] (by Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN). Vietnamese fonts are required. The vietnamese language is spoken in Vietnam (figure 13.80) and in the vietnamese diaspora. See also section 13.184 on the following page.

```

10494 (*vietnam)
10495 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]
10496 %% vietnamese titles for minitoc.sty
10497 \def\ptctitle{M\du{c} l\du{c}%
10498 \def\plftitle{Danh s\ach h\inh v\~e}%
10499 \def\plttitle{Danh s\ach b\h{a}ng}%
10500 %%
10501 \def\mtctitle{M\du{c} l\du{c}%

```



```

10502 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\ 'ach h\ 'inh v\~e}%
10503 \def\mltttitle{Danh s\ 'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10504 %%
10505 \def\stctitle{M\ d{u}c l\ d{u}c}%
10506 \def\slftitle{Danh s\ 'ach h\ 'inh v\~e}%
10507 \def\sltttitle{Danh s\ 'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10508 </vietnam>

```

13.184 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load `vietnam.mld`. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.183 on the page before.

```

10509 < *vietnamese>
10510 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]
10511 \mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
10512 </vietnamese>

```

13.185 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language come from the `welsh.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [48, 49, 54]:

```

10513 < *welsh>
10514 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]
10515 %% Welsh titles for minitoc.sty, from welsh.dtx (babel), by Braams, Johannes~L.
10516 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
10517 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10518 \def\pltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10519 %%
10520 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
10521 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10522 \def\mltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10523 %%
10524 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
10525 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10526 \def\sltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10527 </welsh>

```

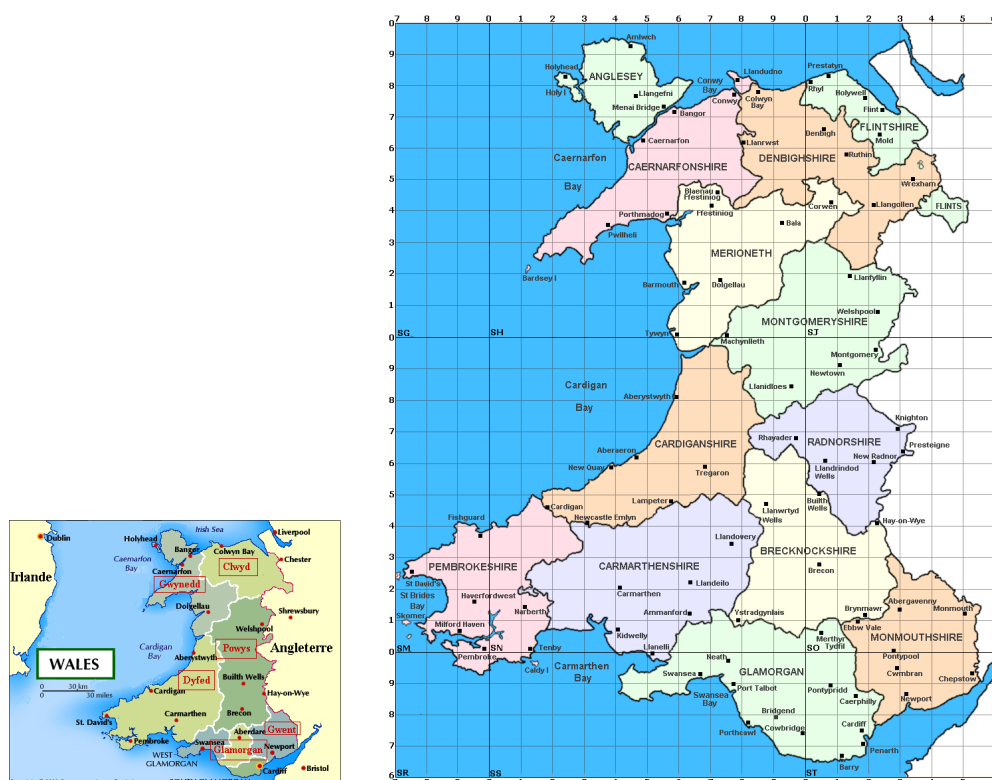


Figure 13.81: Wales

(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/europe/paysgallescarte.htm> in [248] and from <http://homepage.ntlworld.com/geogdata/ngw/map.htm> in the *National Gazetteer of Wales*)

13.186 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [119, 122] (by Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj). Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. See figure 13.82 on the following page. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.101 on page 539, 13.187 on the following page, and 13.188 on page 600.

```

10528 < *xalx >
10529 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]
10530 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
10531 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10532 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10533 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10534 %%
10535 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10536 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10537 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10538 %%

```



Figure 13.82: Areas of the khalkha language
(From <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/AXL/asie/Mongolie.htm>)

```

10539 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10540 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10541 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10542 </xalx>

```

13.187 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

\mnr The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the MonT_EX package [119, 122] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.186 on the preceding page).

```

10543 < *xalx2>
10544 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]
10545 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles for minitoc.sty
10546 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10547 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10548 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10549 %%
10550 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%

```

```

10551 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10552 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10553 %%
10554 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10555 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10556 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10557 </xalx2>

```

13.188 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

\xalx The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonT_EX package [119, 122] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.186 on page 598).

```

10558 <*xalx3>
10559 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]
10560 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles for minitoc.sty
10561 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10562 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10563 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10564 %%
10565 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10566 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10567 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10568 %%
10569 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10570 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10571 \def\sltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10572 </xalx3>

```

Part III

Complements

Contents of the Third Part

Bibliography	603	Acknowledgments	673
Changes history	639	Index	676

Bibliography

This bibliography contains many URLs; you must be aware that some of them might be inaccessible because they are obsolete, or because their site is down or encounters some unexpected problem. Note also that the response of some sites may be slow (several seconds). For instance, the entries [214–216], from the <http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/> site, are very difficult to contact.

Some URLs may contain an extension not supported by your Web browser; in such cases, you should try to access to the document manually. An example is [26], whose extension is `ps.gz`.

Some URLs are too long for some tools; when possible, I shortened the URL to display only the contents the directory, as for [175], or by using an URL to the catalogue entry (as for [204] and [226]); when not possible, you should try to access to the document manually.

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 603, 681, 683, 707, 735, 736
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX pour l'Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUDEMANCHE, <mailto:marc.chaudemanche@groupe-mma.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>. 681, 683, 707, 735, 736
- [3] Stéphane AICARDI. *Codages de caractères ASCII, latin-1, UTF-8, etc*, March 2006. Journées Mathrice, Nantes. Available from: <http://www.mathrice.org/rencontres/mars.2006/codages.pdf>. 682, 735
- [4] A.J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using $\mathcal{E}T_{\mathcal{E}}X 2_{\mathcal{E}}$* , November 2007. malayalamtex@gmail.com and <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 44, 204, 466, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 682, 717, 733, 735
- [5] A.J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using Ω/\mathbb{N}* , November 2007. <mailto:indictex@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/malayalam-omega.html>. 44, 204, 466, 553, 682, 731, 733, 735

- [6] Mark ALFORD. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using \LaTeX* [online], January 2007. Available from: http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html. <mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu>, Department of Physics at Washington University in St. Louis. 682, 735
- [7] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - \LaTeX* . Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. See `instr-1.pdf`. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/>. 88, 207, 682, 686
- [8] Jacques ANDRÉ and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes numériques. Document numérique*, 9(3-4), 2006. Éditions Lavoisier, Paris. 682, 707, 735, 736
- [9] Walter APPEL, Céline CHEVALIER, Emmanuel CORNET, Sébastien DESREUX, Jean-Julien FLECK, and Paul PICAUREAU. *\LaTeX pour l' impatient*. In Céline CHEVALIER, editor, *Technique & Pratique*. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. <mailto:contact@H-K.fr>, see http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html. 682, 686, 693, 694, 704, 735, 736, 738, 740
- [10] Jouko ARPONEN. *Practical \LaTeX Guide* [online], August 2004. Available from: http://www.helsinki.fi/~tfo_www/instr/latex-guide.html. 682, 735
- [11] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 52, 88, 231, 251, 271, 298, 301, 304, 402, 436, 682, 730, 733, 735
- [12] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 30, 88, 217, 219, 233, 251, 411, 418, 435, 682, 733, 735, 740
- [13] Donald ARSENEAU. *The cite package*, November 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cite/cite.sty>. 669, 682, 686, 732, 735
- [14] Donald ARSENEAU. *The overcite package*, May 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cite/overcite.sty>. 209, 682, 732, 733, 735
- [15] Donald ARSENEAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 134, 227, 239, 682, 734, 735, 753
- [16] Donald ARSENEAU. *The chapterbib package*, February 2004. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 60, 211, 228, 682, 686, 732, 735
- [17] Donald ARSENEAU. *The url package*, June 2005. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/url.sty>. 682, 734, 735, 751

- [18] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese T_EX Using the CJK L^AT_EX Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdfT_EX under Windows* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 682, 686, 732, 735
- [19] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 682, 686, 732, 735
- [20] JASON BALDRIDGE. *Reconciling Linguistic Diversity: The History and the Future of Language Policy in India* [online], August 1996. Available from: <http://www.ling.upenn.edu/~jason2/papers/natlang.htm>. University of Toledo Honors Thesis. 683, 735
- [21] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 100
- [22] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *The bibtopic package*, August 2002. <mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 60, 209, 683, 684, 732, 735, 739, 751
- [23] Dorjgotov BATMUNKH. *Mongolian support from the babel system*, March 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/mongolian/babel/mongolian.pdf>. 557, 683, 735
- [24] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [25]. 605, 683, 735
- [25] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [24], Kluwer Academic Publishers. 605, 683, 735
- [26] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour L^AT_EX 2_ε*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/JoliManuelPourLaTeX.ps.gz>. 49, 603, 683, 735
- [27] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/>. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. 683, 693, 694, 695, 705, 707, 712, 716, 718, 730, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 748, 751, 753
- [28] Claudio BECCARI. *Graphics in L^AT_EX*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, Politecnico di Torino, Turin, Italia. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/beccari/beccari.pdf>. 683, 735
- [29] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>. 683, 735, 739, 749

- [30] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.0* [online], July 2005. Available from:
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>.
<mailto:emmanuel.beffara@pps.jussieu.fr>. 61, 235, 683, 735, 744, 750
- [31] Rachid BELMOUHOU. *Lire et écrire l'arabe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 683, 694, 735, 736
- [32] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T_EX: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from:
<ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>. 683, 706, 735, 736
- [33] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from:
<ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>. 683, 684, 715, 735, 737
- [34] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encodings for E_T_X 2_ε multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>. 683, 684, 715, 735, 737
- [35] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in E_T_X 2_ε and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from:
<ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>. 683, 684, 715, 735, 737
- [36] Jens BERGER. *The hypernat package*, July 2001.
<http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/hypernat.html>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/hypernat.sty>. 683, 708, 733, 735
- [37] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 626, 683, 735
- [38] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>. 683, 735
- [39] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 44, 216, 466, 500, 502, 683, 697, 713, 720, 733, 735, 737, 738
- [40] Javier BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2004.
<mailto:jbezoz@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from:

- <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 581, 584, 683, 735
- [41] Javier BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with T_EX*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 44, 218, 466, 519, 683, 706, 733, 735
- [42] Javier BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.texytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 88, 237, 257, 410, 411, 672, 683, 734, 735, 750
- [43] Javier BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, February 2007. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://www.texytipografia.com/archive/spanish.pdf>. 44, 585, 683, 685, 732, 735
- [44] Giuseppe BILOTTA. *The \aleph (Aleph) Project*. TUGboat, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 232, 682, 684, 732, 735
- [45] Denis BITOUZÉ and Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. *L^AT_EX*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Education France, September 2006. 684, 686, 735, 736
- [46] Victor BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 573, 684, 687, 718, 732, 735, 738
- [47] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with L^AT_EX's standard document styles*. TUGboat, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 466, 683, 684, 732, 735
- [48] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 39, 44, 75, 208, 216, 249, 466, 468, 469, 474, 475, 477, 481, 482, 483, 484, 490, 492, 493, 494, 496, 497, 498, 499, 505, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 514, 515, 527, 530, 531, 532, 539, 540, 541, 543, 544, 545, 548, 549, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 565, 566, 567, 568, 570, 572, 576, 578, 580, 581, 584, 587, 590, 593, 595, 597, 684, 735
- [49] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes (user)*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 39, 44, 75, 208, 216, 249, 466, 468, 469, 474, 475, 477, 481, 482, 483, 484, 490, 492, 493, 494, 496, 497, 498, 499, 505, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 514, 515, 527, 530, 531, 532, 539, 540, 541, 543, 544, 545, 548, 549, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 565, 566, 567, 568, 570, 572, 576, 578, 580, 581, 584, 587, 590, 593, 595, 597, 683, 684, 732, 735
- [50] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 468, 496, 684, 735

- [51] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 496, 497, 498, 684, 735
- [52] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. With help from Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT, <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 531, 684, 705, 706, 735, 736
- [53] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, Håvard HELSTRUP (<mailto:haavard@cernvm>) and Alv Kjetil HOLME (<mailto:holmea@cernvm>); the “nynorsk” variant has been supplied by Per Steinar IVERSEN (<mailto:iversen@vxcern.cern.ch>) and Terje Engeset PETERST (<mailto:terjeep@vsfys1.fi.uib.no>); Rune KLEVELAND (<mailto:runekl@math.uio.no>) added the shorthand definitions. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 560, 561, 562, 684, 707, 711, 712, 735, 737, 738, 740
- [54] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 597, 684, 735
- [55] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Julio SANCHEZ, and Zunbeltz IZAOLA. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 477, 682, 684, 711, 735, 737, 739, 744
- [56] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 530, 682, 684, 735
- [57] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Gonçal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 490, 683, 684, 735
- [58] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, with help from Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, (<mailto:kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 539, 540, 541, 683, 684, 735, 740, 753
- [59] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, with help from Attila KOPPANYI (<mailto:attila@cernvm.cern.ch>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 548, 549, 683, 684, 713, 735, 737

- [60] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Georgi N. BOSNAKOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 483, 684, 735
- [61] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rrz.uni-hamburg.de>, with help from Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR (<mailto:uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 590, 684, 717, 735, 738, 739, 751
- [62] Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L^AT_EX 2_ε Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/source2e.tex>. 684, 685, 712, 713, 721, 735, 737, 738, 739, 744
- [63] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Manuel CARRIBA. *Galician support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 511, 684, 685, 735
- [64] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Estilo galician para o sistema babel*, January 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>, <mailto:jmugica@digi21.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/galician/galician.pdf>. 511, 684, 685, 729, 735, 738
- [65] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 580, 684, 686, 735, 736, 739, 744
- [66] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 532, 683, 684, 687, 735, 736
- [67] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L^AT_EX styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 466, 683, 684, 696, 732, 735, 736, 738, 741
- [68] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *French support from the babel system*, February 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 508, 509, 510, 684, 704, 735, 736

- [69] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 578, 684, 705, 735, 736
- [70] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>; enhancements for version 2.0 by Erik ÖSTHOLS (mailto:erik_osthols@yahoo.com). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 587, 684, 707, 732, 735, 737, 738
- [71] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 566, 684, 707, 712, 735, 737
- [72] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Regnor JERNSLETEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 576, 684, 712, 735, 737
- [73] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 505, 507, 684, 712, 735, 737, 739, 743
- [74] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 531, 684, 712, 735, 737
- [75] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 474, 684, 713, 718, 735, 737, 738
- [76] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 475, 684, 713, 717, 718, 735, 737, 738
- [77] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>,

- <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 484, 572, 684, 715, 716, 735, 737, 738, 739, 751
- [78] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 494, 684, 715, 735, 737
- [79] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 527, 684, 716, 735, 737
- [80] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Miloš V. LOKAJČEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 493, 684, 717, 735, 738
- [81] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 578, 684, 729, 735, 738, 739, 746
- [82] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 492, 684, 734, 735, 738
- [83] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 514, 684, 735, 739, 743
- [84] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 559, 560, 684, 735, 739, 743, 744
- [85] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2005. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations and suggestions for enhancements. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm>, mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail, <mailto:arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 481, 565, 684, 694, 735, 736, 739, 743

- [86] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 482, 684, 735, 739, 743
- [87] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, and Jörg KNAPPEN. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 498, 684, 713, 735, 737, 739, 744
- [88] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 499, 684, 735, 739, 744
- [89] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 563, 684, 711, 735, 737, 739, 744
- [90] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Andriy SHVAIKA. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 593, 684, 735, 739, 745
- [91] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 515, 684, 735, 739, 749
- [92] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/lisorbian.dtx>. 545, 684, 735, 740, 753
- [93] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 595, 684, 735, 740, 753
- [94] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/albanian.dtx>. 469, 684, 735, 740, 753

- [95] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 580, 684, 735, 740, 753
- [96] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/jura/jura.pdf>. 88, 207, 220, 408, 682, 684, 686, 712, 732, 735
- [97] Jim BREEN. *Jim BREEN's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: <http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html>. <mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au>. 684, 735
- [98] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The ε -T_EX manual (version 2)*. The $\mathcal{N}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{S}$ Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: http://www.dante.de/CTAN/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf. 213, 216, 232, 266, 684, 697, 733, 735
- [99] Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *On the localization of T_EX in Hungary*. *TUGboat*, 23(1):21–26, March 2002. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/bujdosowettl.pdf>. 613, 684, 735, 740, 753
- [100] Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *Adapter T_EX à la langue hongroise*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:3–15, November 2004. French translation of [99] by Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/42-hufflen.pdf>. 684, 735, 740, 753
- [101] Samuele CARCAGNO. *My L^AT_EX Notes, The Messy Notes of a L^AT_EX User*. Available from: http://xoomer.alice.it/sam_psy/soft/my_latex_notes.pdf. 685, 735
- [102] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L^AT_EX*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006. 685, 735
- [103] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/xr.pdf>. 28, 240, 310, 685, 734, 735, 753
- [104] David P. CARLISLE. *The afterpage package*, October 1995. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/afterpage.pdf>. 207, 657, 681, 685, 732, 735
- [105] David P. CARLISLE. *The file ltxdoc.dtx for use with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, August 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/ltxdoc.dtx>. 26, 212, 222, 685, 686, 717, 735
- [106] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 240, 685, 734, 735, 753
- [107] David P. CARLISLE. *The ifthen package*, May 2001. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.ifi.uio.no/it/latex-links/ifthen.pdf>. 219, 685, 735

- [108] David P. CARLISLE. *The textcase package*, October 2004.
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/textcase/textcase.pdf>. 685, 734, 735, 749
- [109] David P. CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005.
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 115, 685, 687, 733, 735
- [110] David P. CARLISLE and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Back referencing from bibliographical citations*, October 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/backref.pdf>. 683, 685, 732, 735, 738, 743
- [111] Winston CHANG. *LaTeX 2_ε Cheat Sheet*, October 2006. Available from:
<http://www.stdout.org/~winston/latex/latexsheet.pdf>. 685, 735
- [112] Jean-Pascal CHAUVET. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from:
<http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/>. <mailto:jpc@gol.com>. 686, 736
- [113] Pehong CHEN and Michael A. HARRISON. *Index preparation and processing. Software – Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988. 686, 707, 736, 737
- [114] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts and Unicode in PdfLaTeX* [online], April 2007. Available from: <http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/ipe/pdfTeX.html>.
<mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr> and <http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/~otfried/>. 686, 736
- [115] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make LaTeX (TeX) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>.
<mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>. 215, 686, 732, 736
- [116] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/>. 34, 88, 140, 227, 237, 687, 734, 736, 748
- [117] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 54, 76, 88, 209, 254, 274, 685, 687, 732, 736
- [118] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 34, 88, 147, 209, 228, 236, 237, 390, 687, 734, 736, 748
- [119] Oliver CORFF. *MonTeX – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002.
<mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 44, 204, 224, 466, 478, 479, 480, 485, 486, 555, 573, 598, 599, 600, 693, 722, 733, 736
- [120] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch/Pentaglot.html>.
<mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 225, 693, 736

- [121] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 224, 693, 736
- [122] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *MonTeX – Mongolian for L^AT_EX 2_ε, Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 44, 204, 224, 466, 478, 479, 480, 485, 486, 555, 573, 598, 599, 600, 693, 695, 722, 733, 736
- [123] Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vartan AKOPIAN. *ArmTeX: a System for Writing in Armenian with T_EX and L^AT_EX (written in armenian)*, June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>, <http://www-scf.usc.edu/~vakopian/programs/progs.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 44, 208, 466, 473, 644, 682, 694, 732, 735, 736
- [124] Patrick W. DALY. *Graphics and Colour with L^AT_EX*. Max Plank Institut für Aeronomie; D-37191 Katlenburg-Lindnau, Federal Republic of Germany, June 1998. Available from: <http://tex.loria.fr/graph-pack/grf/grf.pdf>. 694, 736
- [125] Patrick W. DALY. *A package to Set Margins to Full Page*, February 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/preprint/fullpage.pdf>. 137, 138, 147, 694, 704, 733, 736
- [126] Patrick W. DALY. *Natural Sciences Citations and References (Author-Year and Numerical Schemes)*, February 2007. This paper describes the natbib package (version 8.0), <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natbib.pdf>. 209, 228, 670, 694, 729, 733, 736
- [127] Patrick W. DALY. *Reference sheet for natbib package*, February 2007. <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natnotes.pdf>. 209, 228, 670, 694, 729, 733, 736
- [128] Alice DAVISON. *Syntax and Morphology in Hindi and Urdu: A Lexical Resource* [online], December 1999. Available from: <http://www.uiowa.edu/~linguist/faculty/davison/HINDIVERBPROJECT>. <mailto:alice-davison@uiowa.edu>, Department of Linguistics, University of Iowa, 570 English-Philosophy Building, Iowa City, Iowa 52242 USA. 218, 495, 694, 736
- [129] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 213, 694, 736
- [130] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *L^AT_EX, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003. 694, 736
- [131] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 215, 694, 736
- [132] Antoni R. DILLER. *L^AT_EX, Line by Line (Tips and Techniques for Document Processing)*. John Wiley & Sons, Chicester, second edition, January 1993. <mailto:A.R.Diller@cs.bham.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~ard/latex/latex.html>. 694, 736

- [133] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002.
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf>. 21, 99, 236,
640, 695, 733, 736, 745
- [134] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, December 2007.
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 99, 442, 695,
721, 733, 736
- [135] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The minitoc package*, December 2007.
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 99, 442, 635,
676, 695, 721, 733, 736
- [136] Victor EIJKHOUT. *T_EX by Topic: A T_EXnician's Reference*. Addison-Wesley,
Wokingham (England), 1992. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from:
<http://www.cs.utk.edu/~eijkhout/texbytopic-a4.pdf>. 696, 736
- [137] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>.
Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>. 693,
696, 733, 736
- [138] Victor EIJKHOUT and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Introduction to the Dutch L^AT_EX document
classes*, February 1994. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/classdoc.pdf>. 684, 696,
735, 736
- [139] Brian ELMEGAARD and Patrick EGAN. *The nomentbl package*, April 2006.
<mailto:be@mek.dtu.dk>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/nomentbl/nomentbl.pdf>. 51, 398,
696, 730, 733, 736
- [140] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *FarsiT_EX and the Iranian T_EX Community*.
TUGboat, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>. 44, 216, 466, 503, 504,
697, 699, 705, 733, 736, 738, 741
- [141] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from:
<http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>. 686, 699, 732, 736
- [142] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK T_EX FAQ. Your 423 Questions Answered*. Also visible here:
<http://www.tex.ac.uk/faq>, November 2007. Version 3.17. Available from:
<http://www.tex.ac.uk/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>. 699, 736
- [143] Simon FEAR. *Publication quality tables in L^AT_EX (with the booktabs package)*, March
2003. In the absence of the author, contact Danie ELS, <mailto:dnjels@sun.ac.za>.
Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/booktabs/booktabs.pdf>. 22, 209,
684, 696, 699, 732, 736
- [144] Jürgen FENN. *Managing Citations and Your Bibliography with BibT_EX. The PracT_EX
Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Neu-Isenburg, Germany. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/fenn/fenn.pdf>. 700, 736

- [145] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516, November 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30ferguson.pdf>. 700, 736
- [146] Peter FLOM. *LT_εX for academics and researchers who (think they) don't need it*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 1(4), November 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>, National Development and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/flom/flom.pdf>. 704, 736
- [147] Peter FLOM, Hans HAGEN, Joe HOGG, Nicola L. C. TALBOT, Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, and David WALDEN. *What is T_εX?* *The PracT_εX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk> and <mailto:dave@walden-family.com>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/walden-whatish/all.pdf>. 704, 706, 707, 736, 737, 739, 749, 753
- [148] Peter L. FLOM. *A LT_εX Fledgling Struggles to Take Flight*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>, National Development and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/flom/flom.pdf>. 704, 736
- [149] Peter FLYNN. *A categorized search of CTAN*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 704, 736
- [150] Peter FLYNN. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with LT_εX*, March 2005. <mailto:peter.silmaril.ie>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf>. 704, 736
- [151] Peter FLYNN. *Rolling your own Document Class: Using LT_εX to keep away from the Dark Side*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Silmaril Consultants. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/flynn/flynn.pdf>. 704, 736
- [152] Peter FLYNN. *The very short guide to typesetting with LT_εX*, April 2007. Available from: <http://latex.silmaril.ie/veryshortguide/veryshortguide.pdf>. 704, 736
- [153] Federico GARCIA. *Capabilities of PDF interactivity*. *The PracT_εX Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/garcia1/garcia1.pdf>. 704, 736
- [154] Hubert GÄSSLEIN and Rolf NIEPRASCHK. *The pict2e package*, August 2004. <mailto:HubertJG@open.min.de>, <mailto:Rolf.Niepraschk@ptb.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/pict2e/pict2e.pdf>. 58, 704, 730, 733, 736, 738, 740
- [155] Bernard GAULLE[†]. *L'extension frenchle pour LT_εX (notice d'utilisation)*, February 1997. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/french/frenchle/frenchle.pdf>. 511, 704, 733, 736
- [156] Bernard GAULLE[†]. *Notice d'utilisation de l'extension frenchpro pour LT_εX*, June 1997. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/french/frenchpro/french/ALIRE.pdf>. 511, 704, 733, 736

- [157] Bernard GAULLE[†]. *Comment peut-on personnaliser l'extension french de L^AT_EX?* *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 28-29:153–157, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-gaulle.pdf>. 511, 704, 733, 736
- [158] Maarten GELDERMAN. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>. 704, 736
- [159] Chuck GENSCHTE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 233, 704, 736, 739, 753
- [160] Helen GILHOOLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 694, 697, 705, 736
- [161] François GIRON. *Rédiger un document avec les programmes T_EX et L^AT_EX 2_ε*, October 2006. <http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/index.html>. Available from: <http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/LaTeX/surlatex.pdf>. 705, 736
- [162] Michel GOOSSENS, Frank MITTELBACH, Sebastian RAHTZ, Denis B. ROEGEL, and Herbert VOSS. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, July 2007. 705, 721, 736, 738, 739, 743, 751
- [163] Michel GOOSSENS, Sebastian RAHTZ, Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE, and Robert S. SUTOR. *The L^AT_EX Web Companion: Integrating T_EX, HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June 1999. 705, 706, 722, 736, 738, 739, 743, 748
- [164] Raymond G. GORDON, Jr. and Barbara F. GRIMES, editors. *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*. SIL International, Dallas, Texas, fifteenth edition, January 2005. Online version: <http://www.ethnologue.com>. 705, 706, 736
- [165] George GRÄTZER. *First Steps into L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser, Boston, August 1999. 706, 736
- [166] George GRÄTZER. *Math into L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser and Springer-Verlag, Boston, third edition, 2000. 706, 736
- [167] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, March 2007. <http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 214, 218, 239, 254, 660, 706, 736, 750, 751
- [168] George D. GREENWADE. *The Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN)*. *TUGboat*, 14(3):342–351, October 1993. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-3/tb40green.pdf>. 706, 736
- [169] Enrico GREGORIO. *Babel, how to enjoy writing in different languages*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:Enrico.Gregorio@sci.univr.it>, Dipartimento di Informatica, Università di Verona, Italia. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/gregorio/gregorio.pdf>. 706, 722, 736, 738
- [170] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph 8*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 232, 682, 706, 732, 736

- [171] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from: <http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>. 706, 736
- [172] Reinhard F. HAHN. *Lowlands-L, Anniversary Celebration (One story in hundred of languages and dialects)* [online], 2007. Available from: <http://www.lowlands-l.net/anniversary/index.php>. <mailto:lowlands.list@gmail.com>. 706, 736
- [173] Thế Thành HÀN. *The pdfTeX Program*. In *EuroTeX'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>. 213, 706, 736
- [174] Thế Thành HÀN. *Micro-typographic extensions to the TeX typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>. 706, 736
- [175] Thế Thành HÀN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, Paweł JACKOWSKI, and Martin SCHRÖDER. *The pdfTeX user manual*, January 2007. See `pdftex-a.pdf`. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/texlive/Contents/live/texmf/doc/pdftex/manual/>. 603, 706, 736, 738, 739, 743, 744
- [176] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 60, 209, 228, 684, 707, 732, 736
- [177] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 60, 228, 707, 729, 733, 736
- [178] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>. 90, 94, 221, 663, 707, 716, 733, 736
- [179] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Arabic, Persian and Ottoman TeX for Mac and PC*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):520–524, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30hara.pdf>. 707, 736
- [180] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, <mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr>, April 2004. English translation in [182]. Available from: <http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X>. 520, 523, 525, 619, 707, 736
- [181] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Voyage au centre de TeX: composition, paragraphage, césure*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:75–125, November 2004. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-haralambous.pdf>. 707, 736
- [182] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fonts & Encodings*. O'Reilly Media, September 2007. English translation of [180]. 520, 523, 525, 619, 707, 736
- [183] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of Ω: Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 231, 707, 736, 738, 740

- [184] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. Ω , a \TeX extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes. In Wlodek BZYL and Tomasz PLATA-PRZECHELEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European \TeX Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdańsk, Poland, 1994. GUST. 231, 620, 707, 736, 738, 740
- [185] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. MAPS, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf. 707, 736, 738, 740
- [186] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. Cahiers GUTenberg, 39-40:139–166, May 2001. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/39-yannis.pdf>. 707, 736, 738, 740
- [187] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL. Ω , une extension de \TeX incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex. Cahiers GUTenberg, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [184]. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/20-yannis.pdf>. 231, 707, 736, 738, 740
- [188] Alexander HARIN, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, and Vadim MASLOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 574, 687, 707, 718, 732, 737, 738, 740, 753
- [189] Stephen HARTKE. *A Survey of Free Math Fonts for \TeX and \LaTeX* . The Prac \TeX Journal, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/hartke/hartke.pdf>. 707, 737
- [190] Jim HEFFERON. *CTAN for Starters*. The Prac \TeX Journal, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>.
- [191] Jim HEFFERON. *Minutes in Less Than Hours: Using \LaTeX Resources*. The Prac \TeX Journal, 1(4), October 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 707, 737
- [192] Jim HEFFERON. *What I Wish I Had . . . When I Was A Lad — Using \LaTeX resources*. The Prac \TeX Journal, 2(4), November 2006. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>. 707, 737
- [193] Thomas HENLICH. *The Marvosym Font Package*, May 2006. <mailto:thomas@henloch.de>, The font was designed by Martin VOGEL, <mailto:marvosym.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/fonts/psfonts/marvosym/marvodoc.pdf>. 224, 707, 718, 733, 737, 739, 751
- [194] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005. <mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 222, 275, 707, 718, 733, 737

- [195] Pr. Thomas J. HINNEBUSCH and Dr. Barbara BLANKENSHIP. *UCLA Language Materials Project* [online]. Available from: <http://www.imp.ucla.edu>. University of California, Los Angeles; <mailto:imp@international.ucla.edu>. 465, 550, 556, 591, 684, 707, 735, 737
- [196] Taco HOEKWATER, Hartmut HENKEL, and Hans HAGEN. *LUA_TE_X Reference*, July 2007. <http://www.luatex.org/>. Available from: <http://context.aanhet.net/luatex/beta/manual/luatexref-t.pdf>. 232, 706, 707, 717, 733, 736, 737
- [197] Alan HOENIG. *T_EX Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. L^AT_EX & T_EX Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More. 707, 737
- [198] Klaus HÖPPNER. *Strategies for including graphics in L^AT_EX documents*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/hoepner/hoepner.pdf>. 707, 737
- [199] Don HOSEK. *The morefloats package*, July 1990. <mailto:dhosek@ymir.claremont.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/morefloats.sty>. 707, 722, 733, 737
- [200] Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. *Typographie: les conventions, la tradition, les goûts, . . . , et L^AT_EX*. In *Congrès GUTenberg 2000, Toulouse*, volume 35-36 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 169–214, may 2000. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/35-hufflen.pdf>. 707, 737
- [201] ICELANDIC LANGUAGE INSTITUTE. *ICELANDIC – At once ancient and modern –*. Ministry of Education, Science and Culture, Sölvhölsgrata 4, 150 Reykjavik, 2001. <mailto:postur@mrn.stjr.is>, Web site: <http://www.menntamalaraduneyti.is>. Available from: <http://www.iceland.is/media/Utgaafa/Icelandic.pdf>. 530
- [202] Hiroya IKEDA. *pL^AT_EX 2_ε*. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>, September 2001. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 233, 711, 733, 737, 740
- [203] Tetsuo IWAKUMA and Tetsuo FURUKAWA. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in L^AT_EX*⁵⁰, August 1994. <mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp> and <mailto:furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp>. Available from: http://www.moivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf. 704, 711, 736, 737
- [204] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the Arabi package. The Users Guide*, December 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/arabi.html>. 39, 44, 208, 472, 505, 603, 665, 682, 711, 732, 737
- [205] Paweł JACKOWSKI. *T_EX beauties and oddities* [online], 2007. Available from: <http://www.pawcoo.com/>. <mailto:pearls@gust.org.pl>. 711, 737
- [206] Christophe JACQUET. *Mémento L^AT_EX*. In *Mémento*. Eyrolles, Paris, first edition, November 2007. 711, 737

⁵⁰This document is somewhat obsolete.

- [207] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in \LaTeX 2 ϵ* . *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>. 712, 737, 739, 744
- [208] Alan JEFFREY and \LaTeX 3 PROJECT TEAM. *The file `ltnews.dtx` for use with \LaTeX 2 ϵ* , July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/ltnews.cls>. 26, 212, 222, 686, 712, 715, 717, 737
- [209] Zhuhan JIANG. *The vruler package*, October 1996. <mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>. 712, 734, 737, 751
- [210] David M. JONES. *The hangcaption package*, August 1992. <mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 53, 79, 88, 218, 255, 273, 706, 712, 733, 737
- [211] Akira KAKUTO. *W32 \TeX* [online], March 2007. Available from: <http://www.fsci.fuk.kindai.ac.jp/kakuto/win32-ptex/web2c75-e.html>. <mailto:kakuto@fuk.kindai.ac.jp>, School of Humanity-Oriented Science and Engineering, Kinki University, Iizuka 820-8555, Japan. 233, 712, 733, 737, 740
- [212] Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN. *Standardization and Implementations of Thai Language*. National Electronics and Computer Technology Center, National Science and Technology Development Agency, Ministry of Science and Technology and Environment, THAILAND, 1999. <mailto:thep@links.nectec.or.th>. 589, 712, 737
- [213] Jonathan KEW. *The X \TeX typesetting system* [online], February 2007. Available from: <http://www.scripts.sil.org/xetex>. 232, 712, 734, 737, 753
- [214] Ki-Joo KIM. *A Bib \TeX Guide via Examples*, April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/bibtex_guide.pdf. 603, 712, 737
- [215] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from \LaTeX* , April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex2pdf.pdf>. 603, 712, 737
- [216] Ki-Joo KIM. *\LaTeX Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex_fonts.pdf. 603, 712, 737
- [217] Ingo KLÖCKL. *\LaTeX – Tipps und Tricks*. Dpunkt. Verlag GmbH, Ringstraße 19, 69115 Heidelberg, <mailto:i.kloeckl@2k-software.de>, January 2002. 713, 737
- [218] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 36, 213, 713, 737
- [219] Donald E. KNUTH. *The \TeX book*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover \TeX 3, 1991. 210, 221, 237, 238, 623, 713, 737
- [220] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 213, 713, 737

- [221] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le T_EXbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. French translation of [219], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 210, 221, 237, 238, 686, 713, 736, 737
- [222] Un KOAUNGHI. *HET_EX: a E_T_EX package for the Korean language support*. In korean, April 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 204, 219, 466, 523, 525, 707, 713, 733, 737
- [223] Markus KOHM and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares E_T_EX 2_ε-Paket*, July 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf>. 42, 50, 62, 75, 88, 142, 161, 204, 209, 220, 227, 236, 253, 254, 409, 658, 686, 713, 722, 737, 738, 744, 745
- [224] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to E_T_EX*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, February 2004. 232, 694, 713, 736, 737
- [225] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in E_T_EX 2_ε*. MAPS, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf. 713, 737
- [226] Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/entries/antomega.html>. 44, 207, 466, 515, 517, 518, 541, 563, 570, 571, 581, 584, 603, 682, 711, 713, 732, 737
- [227] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>, Computer Laboratory, University of Cambridge. 713, 737
- [228] Frank KÜSTER. *alnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. <mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch>, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/alnumsec.pdf>. 54, 76, 88, 207, 254, 274, 682, 713, 732, 737
- [229] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de T_EX et E_T_EX*. Masson, Paris, December 1997. 713, 737
- [230] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT_EX—Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European T_EX Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf. 39, 44, 208, 466, 470, 471, 525, 682, 713, 732, 737
- [231] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT_EX Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 39, 44, 208, 466, 470, 471, 525, 682, 713, 732, 737
- [232] Leslie LAMPORT. *MakeIndex, An Index Processor For E_T_EX*, 1987. Technical report, Electronic document in *MakeIndex* distribution. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.pdf>. 713, 737

- [233] Leslie LAMPORT. *TEX: A Document Preparation System — User's Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 58, 221, 713, 737
- [234] Leslie LAMPORT, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *NTG Document Classes for TEX version 2e*, June 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/ntgclass.pdf>. 684, 696, 713, 735, 736, 737
- [235] Leslie LAMPORT, L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Producing proceedings articles with TEX 2_ε*, November 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/proc.dtx>. 26, 212, 684, 686, 713, 715, 735, 737, 741
- [236] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for TEX version 2e*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 26, 60, 71, 204, 208, 209, 212, 234, 682, 684, 686, 713, 721, 735, 737, 738, 743
- [237] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *Standard Letter Document Class for TEX version 2e*, April 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/letter.dtx>. 60, 212, 221, 684, 686, 713, 716, 721, 735, 737, 738, 739, 744
- [238] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>. 715, 737
- [239] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 31, 54, 88, 163, 217, 256, 268, 275, 671, 704, 715, 733, 737
- [240] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 39, 484, 572, 715, 717, 737, 738
- [241] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf>. 22, 694, 715, 733, 737
- [242] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *TEX 2_ε Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx>. 31, 233, 435, 704, 715, 733, 737
- [243] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *TEX 2_ε for authors*, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 204, 715, 737
- [244] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *TEX 2_ε for Class and Package writers*, December 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 204, 715, 737

- [245] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 204, 228, 294, 372, 376, 715, 737
- [246] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX font encodings*, January 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 215, 229, 715, 737
- [247] Olivier LECARME. *L^AT_EX en bref*, August 2004. Available from: <http://deptinfo.unice.fr/~ol/L3MI/LaTeX/latexenbref.pdf>. 716, 738
- [248] Jacques LECLERC. *L'aménagement linguistique dans le monde* [online], September 2007. Available from: <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl>. TLFQ (Trésor de la langue française au Québec), Université Laval, Québec. 465, 468, 469, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 481, 487, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 501, 506, 508, 512, 513, 516, 519, 526, 528, 529, 532, 533, 535, 542, 544, 546, 561, 563, 565, 566, 567, 569, 577, 578, 580, 581, 582, 583, 586, 588, 589, 590, 594, 596, 598, 716, 738
- [249] Philipp LEHMAN. *The Font Installation Guide*, December 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/Type1fonts/fontinstallationguide/>. 716, 738
- [250] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for L^AT_EX 2_ε — Multilingual support beyond babel*. TUGboat, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>. 39, 44, 211, 236, 237, 466, 491, 520, 522, 523, 524, 535, 536, 537, 589, 686, 716, 732, 738
- [251] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online], October 2006. Available from: <http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 39, 44, 211, 236, 237, 466, 491, 520, 522, 523, 524, 535, 536, 537, 589, 686, 716, 732, 738
- [252] Werner LEMBERG and Thé Thành HÀN. *The vietnam package*, October 2006. <mailto:wl@gnu.org>, <mailto:hanthethanh@gmx.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/>. 44, 596, 706, 716, 734, 736, 738, 751
- [253] Knut LICKERT. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for people in associations: minutes.sty*, March 2007. <mailto:knut@lickert.net> et <http://tex.lickert.net/packages/minutes/index.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/minutes.pdf>. 224, 294, 400, 716, 721, 733, 738
- [254] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap VI.33*, August 2005. <mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 53, 75, 88, 217, 254, 273, 704, 716, 733, 738
- [255] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001. <mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.pdf>. 31, 54, 88, 163, 217, 256, 268, 275, 671, 704, 716, 733, 738
- [256] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997. <mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 54, 76, 88, 236, 254, 274, 717, 733, 738, 745

- [257] Tim P. LOVE. *Advanced L^AT_EX*, September 1994. [latex-advanced.pdf](#), <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. Available from: http://www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/. 717, 738
- [258] Tim P. LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with L^AT_EX* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. 717, 738
- [259] Vincent LOZANO. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur L^AT_EX sans jamais oser le demander*, September 2006. <mailto:lozano@enise.fr>. Available from: <http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf>. 717, 738
- [260] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 204, 212, 626, 717, 738
- [261] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of "Understanding Japanese Information Processing"*, 1996. See [260]. Available from: <ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 204, 212, 717, 738
- [262] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999. 717, 738
- [263] Nicolas MARKEY. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf>. 60, 236, 718, 733, 738, 747
- [264] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of BibT_EX)*, June 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf. 204, 209, 718, 738
- [265] Sven MATTISSON. *SL^AT_EX: Swedish speaking version of L^AT_EX* [online], November 1989. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>. <mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>, Department of Applied Electronics, University of Lund, Box 118, S-221 00 Lund, Sweden. 44, 236, 587, 718, 733, 738, 746
- [266] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002. <mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 53, 70, 88, 129, 236, 252, 272, 718, 733, 738, 745
- [267] Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, and Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The thailatex package*, March 2006. Find `thai.dtx` in `thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz`, <mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from: <ftp://linux.thai.net/pub/ThaiLinux/software/thailatex/>. 237, 589, 712, 718, 734, 737, 738, 739, 741, 746, 749
- [268] Frank MITTELBACH. *ε-T_EX: Guidelines for future T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>. 697, 721, 733, 738
- [269] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on "Filenames for Fonts" [37]*. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>. 721, 738

- [270] Frank MITTELBACH. *LT_εX 2_ε Encoding Interfaces*, June 1995. Available from: <http://www.latex-project.org/papers/encoding-concepts.pdf>. 215, 229, 721, 738
- [271] Frank MITTELBACH. *Producing slides with LT_εX 2_ε*, August 1997. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/slides.dtx>. 212, 686, 721, 738, 746
- [272] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000. <mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. 91, 115, 228, 721, 729, 733, 738
- [273] Frank MITTELBACH. *The varioref package*, April 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/varioref.pdf>. 140, 721, 734, 738, 751
- [274] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>. 22, 694, 721, 733, 738, 745
- [275] Frank MITTELBACH. *The dblacnt package*, April 2005. <mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org>. The current maintainer is Werner LEMBERG, <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/dblacnt.sty>. 213, 659, 694, 716, 721, 733, 738
- [276] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>. 684, 694, 695, 721, 733, 735, 736, 738, 740, 753
- [277] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The LT_εX Companion 2. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004. 31, 146, 204, 222, 227, 233, 435, 684, 685, 704, 705, 721, 733, 735, 736, 738, 739, 744
- [278] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Der LT_εX-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version. 684, 685, 705, 721, 735, 736, 738, 739, 744
- [279] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *LT_εX Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 654, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 705, 707, 721, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 744, 747
- [280] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>. 721, 738, 739, 744
- [281] Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, Alan JEFFREY, and David P. CARLISLE. *The main structure of documents*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/base/ltclass.dtx>. 685, 712, 721, 735, 737, 738, 739, 744

- [282] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002. <mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>. 722, 738
- [283] Lapo Filippo MORI. *ET_Xpedia: the future of ET_X documentation*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori2/mori2.pdf>. 722, 738
- [284] Lapo Filippo MORI. *Tables in ET_X2_ε: Packages and Methods*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori/mori.pdf>. 722, 738
- [285] Michael A. MORRISON. *ET_X Links* [online], December 1999. Available from: <http://www.nhn.ou.edu/~morrison/LaTeX/index.shtml>. <mailto:morrison@mail.nhn.ou.edu>, Department of Physics & Astronomy, University of Oklahoma. 722, 738
- [286] NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY. *Atlas of China*, November 2007.
- [287] Sergei O. NAUMOV. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/texsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 574, 716, 729, 733, 738
- [288] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *The KOMA-Script Bundle*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 42, 50, 62, 75, 88, 142, 161, 204, 209, 220, 227, 236, 253, 254, 409, 658, 686, 712, 713, 722, 729, 737, 738, 744, 745
- [289] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: A ET_X Survivor's Guide*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/null-bh02/null-bh02.pdf>. 730, 738
- [290] Tim NULL. *\begin{here} % getting started: Topic #1: Creating my first ET_X article, Part 3*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/null-bh03/null-bh03.pdf>. 730, 738
- [291] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfT_EX, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroT_EX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>. 88, 708, 730, 733, 738
- [292] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The ifpdf package*, February 2006. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/ifpdf.pdf>. 710, 730, 733, 738
- [293] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hypcap package*, April 2007. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/hypcap.pdf>. 708, 730, 733, 738

- [294] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *ChangeLog for the hyperref bundle*, May 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/ChangeLog.pdf>. 88, 708, 730, 733, 738, 743
- [295] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Hypertext marks in L^AT_EX*, May 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/hyperref.pdf>. 88, 708, 730, 733, 738, 743
- [296] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *README for the hyperref bundle*, February 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/README.pdf>. 88, 708, 730, 733, 738, 743
- [297] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à L^AT_EX 2_ε. Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [298] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by Daniel FLIPO. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 204, 704, 707, 730, 734, 736, 737, 738, 739, 744
- [298] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to L^AT_EX 2_ε*, May 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 204, 212, 221, 629, 707, 730, 734, 737, 738, 739, 744
- [299] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *L^AT_EX 2_ε po polsku czyli P^AL^AT_EX (wersja 1.3.1)*. In polish; see also <http://www.tug.org/teTeX/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html>, May 2003. <mailto:M.Olko@Litterae.com.pl> and <mailto:wolinski@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/polski/polski.dtx>. 44, 233, 564, 731, 733, 738, 740, 753
- [300] Tanguy ORTOLO and Jeanne LEGRAND. *L^AT_EX à 200%*. O'Reilly France, September 2007. 716, 732, 738
- [301] Scott PAKIN. *How to Package Your L^AT_EX Package*, November 2004. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/dtxtut/dtxtut.pdf>. 734, 738
- [302] Scott PAKIN. *The Comprehensive L^AT_EX Symbols List*, September 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/symbols/comprehensive/>. 734, 738
- [303] Scott PAKIN. *The newcommand.py utility*, January 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/support/newcommand/newcommand.pdf>. 729, 734, 738, 750
- [304] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T_EX/L^AT_EX systems* [online], January 2001. Available from: <http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. <mailto:pbpal@theory.saha.ernet.in>. 44, 209, 466, 476, 683, 732, 734, 738

- [305] Anshuman PANDEY. *Typesetting Bengali in T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):119–126, 1999. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf>. 734, 738
- [306] Anshuman PANDEY, John SMITH, Dominik WUJASTYK, Zdeněk WAGNER, and Kevin CARMODY. *Devanāgarī for T_EX*, May 2006. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>, <mailto:jds10@cam.ac.uk>, <mailto:d.wujastyk@ucl.ac.uk>, <mailto:zdenek.wagner@gmail.com> and <mailto:i@kevincarmody.org>, home page: <http://devnag.sarovar.org/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/generic/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 44, 214, 218, 466, 495, 528, 685, 694, 733, 734, 735, 738, 739, 740, 747, 753
- [307] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, Paris, September 2003. 520, 523, 525, 734, 738
- [308] Oren PATASHNIK. BibT_EXing, February 1988. Documentation for general BibT_EX users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 209, 735, 738
- [309] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibT_EX Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibT_EX's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 209, 735, 738
- [310] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK Support* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [312]. 686, 694, 732, 735, 736, 738, 740, 753
- [311] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *Document Encoding* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [312]. 694, 735, 736, 738, 740, 753
- [312] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 630, 694, 735, 736, 738, 740, 753
- [313] Kasper PEETERS. *HyperT_EX FAQ* [online], March 2004. Available from: <http://arxiv.org/hypertext/>. 219, 239, 708, 733, 735, 738
- [314] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>. 684, 735, 738, 739, 740, 749
- [315] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in Ω*. *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from: <http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega96.pdf>. 231, 707, 736, 738, 740
- [316] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in Ω*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 231, 707, 736, 738, 740

- [317] Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The Linux Thai HOWTO* [online], August 1998. Available from: <http://www.fedu.uec.ac.jp/Zzzthai/Thai-HOWTO>.
<mailto:uecthai@fedu.uec.ac.jp>, <mailto:poon-v@fedu.uec.ac.jp>. 738, 741
- [318] Hilmar PREUSSE, Christian FAULHAMMER, and Ulrich SCHWARTZ. *What is a minimal working example?*, May 2006. version 0.4.1e. Available from:
<http://www.latex-einfuehrung.de/mini-en.pdf>. 57, 222, 699, 736, 738, 739, 741, 744
- [319] C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN and E. KRISHNAN. *ETEX Tutorial, A Primer*. Indian T_EX Users Group, September 2003. Floor III, SJP Buildings, Cotton Hills, Trivandrum 695014, India. Available from: <http://www.tug.org.in/tutorials.html>. 738, 743
- [320] Sebastian RAHTZ. *hyperref package options*, September 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/options.pdf>. 88, 738, 743
- [321] Sebastian RAHTZ. *Section name references in ET_EX*, May 2007. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/nameref.pdf>. 729, 733, 738, 743
- [322] Sebastian RAHTZ and Leonor BARROCA. *A style option for rotated objects in ET_EX*, September 1997. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/rotating/rotating.dtx>. 235, 683, 733, 735, 738, 743
- [323] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 22, 62, 72, 88, 219, 223, 239, 240, 250, 272, 414, 708, 730, 733, 738, 743
- [324] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in ET_EX: a manual for hyperref*, September 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 88, 116, 708, 730, 733, 738, 743
- [325] Bernd RAICHLE, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem T_EX und DANTE, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung T_EX e.V.*, September 2003. Version 72. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>. 706, 730, 736, 738, 739, 743
- [326] Paul RASCOE. *Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection* [online], November 2007. Available from: <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/>. Mail via:
<http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/email.html>. 465, 473, 481, 484, 487, 519, 529, 588, 739, 743
- [327] Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE. *Romanian T_EX*, October 1996.
<mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/CTAN/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 567, 568, 733, 739, 743
- [328] Yuri ROBBERS, Markus KOHM, and Rasmus Pank ROULUND. *Replacing ET_EX 2_ε standard classes by KOMA-Script. The PracT_EX Journal*, 3, August 2006.
<mailto:yuri.robbers@gmail.com>, mailto:rasmus_pank@yahoo.dk and
<http://www.komascript.de>. Available from:

- <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robbers/robbers.pdf>. 42, 50, 62, 75, 88, 142, 161, 209, 220, 227, 236, 253, 254, 409, 658, 686, 713, 737, 739, 743, 744, 745
- [329] Will ROBERTSON. *Productivity with macros and packages*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(3), August 2006. <mailto:wspr81@gmail.com>, School of Mechanical Engineering, University of Adelaide, SA, Australia, 5005. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robertson/robertson.pdf>. 739, 743
- [330] Christian ROLLAND. *ET_EX par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999. <mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanadoo.fr>. 739, 743
- [331] Chris A. ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-3/tb64rowl.pdf>. 739, 744
- [332] Young RYU. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdockA4.pdf>. 36, 238, 734, 739, 744, 750
- [333] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Et les fontes, man ? Gestion des fontes avec ET_EX 2_ε*, June 2001. <mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from: <http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip>. 739, 744
- [334] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005. <mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from: <http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf>. 739, 744
- [335] Walter SCHMIDT. *Using common PostScript fonts with ET_EX*. *PSNFSS Version 9.2*, September 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/psnfss/psnfss2e.pdf>. 739, 744
- [336] Walter SCHMIDT. *Font selection in LaT_EX: The most frequently asked questions*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/schmidt/schmidt.pdf>. 739, 744
- [337] Thomas A. SCHMITZ. *Mastering texmf-trees*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:thomas.schmitz@uni-bonn.de>, <http://www.uni-bonn.de/www/Philologie/Personnal/Schmitz.html>, Classics Department, Bonn University. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/schmitz/schmitz.pdf>. 739, 744
- [338] Martin SCHRÖDER. *The multitoc package*, June 1999. <mailto:martin.schroeder@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx>. 93, 228, 729, 733, 739, 744
- [339] Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Lianyi SONG, and Charles GREETHER. *Lire et écrire le chinois*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 694, 706, 736, 739, 745, 747
- [340] Michael SHELL and David HOADLEY. *BibT_EX Tips and FAQ*, January 2007. <http://www.michaelshell.org/>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxFAQ.pdf>. 209, 707, 737, 739, 745

- [341] Bai SHOU[†]. *An outline history of China*. Foreign Language Press, 24 Baiwanzhuang Road, Beijing 100037, China, revised edition, 2002. <mailto:info@flp.com.cn> and <mailto:sales@flp.com.cn>; distributed by China International Book Trading Corporation. 35 Chegongzuang Xilu, Beijing 100044, China, P.O. Box 399, Beijing, China. Available from: <http://www.flp.com.cn>. 491, 739, 745
- [342] Sindhu SINGH. *Our Introduction to L^AT_EX*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/singh/singh.pdf>. 739, 746
- [343] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The rotfloat package*, January 2004. <mailto:rotfloat@sommerfeldt.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/rotfloat/rotfloat.pdf>. 54, 88, 163, 217, 235, 256, 268, 276, 671, 733, 739, 744, 747
- [344] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption2 package*, April 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 209, 275, 685, 732, 739, 747
- [345] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, September 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption-deu.pdf>. 88, 685, 732, 739, 747
- [346] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Typesetting captions with the caption package*, April 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 209, 274, 685, 732, 739, 747
- [347] D. P. STORY. *Using L^AT_EX to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from: <http://www.math.uakron.edu/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>. 739, 748
- [348] Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, and Nick SOFRONIOU. *Digital Typography Using L^AT_EX*. Springer, October 2002. Available from: <http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/>. 739, 747, 749, 750
- [349] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a PDF document using PDFL^AT_EX*, July 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/pdfdoc/pdfdoc-a4.pdf>. 739, 749
- [350] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *L^AT_EX for UEA Administrative Work*, September 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/admin/admin_a4.pdf. 739, 749
- [351] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Using L^AT_EX to Write a PhD Thesis*, July 2006. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/thesis/thesis_a4.pdf. 739, 749

- [352] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a \LaTeX Minimal Example*, June 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/minexample/minexample.pdf>. 57, 222, 739, 749
- [353] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/>. 79, 88, 217, 256, 414, 671, 704, 733, 739, 749
- [354] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty v 1.07*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/>. 79, 88, 217, 256, 414, 671, 704, 733, 739, 749
- [355] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *\LaTeX for Complete Novices*, May 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.cmp.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/novices/novices_a4.pdf. 739, 749
- [356] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Writing a Thesis in \LaTeX : hints, tips and advice*, November 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/lms/lms.pdf>. 739, 749
- [357] Daniel TAUPIN[†]. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 53, 73, 88, 239, 253, 272, 734, 739, 749, 751
- [358] Harold THIMBLEBY. “See also” indexing with *Makeindex*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):290–290, June 1991. Also check [359]. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32thim.pdf>. 634, 739, 749
- [359] Harold THIMBLEBY. *Erratum: “See also” indexing with Makeindex*. *TUGboat*, 13(1):95–95, April 1992. Erratum to [358]. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34thim.pdf>. 634, 739, 749
- [360] Kresten Krab THORUP, Frank JENSEN, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The calc package (Infix notation arithmetic in \LaTeX)*, August 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/required/tools/calc.dtx>. 22, 209, 685, 712, 732, 737, 739, 744, 750
- [361] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. <mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/quotchap.pdf>. 53, 75, 88, 234, 254, 273, 733, 739, 743, 750
- [362] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de \LaTeX 2_ε (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004.

- English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>. 700, 707, 736, 737, 739, 750
- [363] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to \LaTeX 2_ε usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>. 700, 736, 739, 750
- [364] GROUPE DE TRAVAIL TWS-TDS⁵¹. *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers \TeX* , June 2004. French translation of [365] by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, with a postface by Fabrice POPINEAU. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf>. 237, 246, 686, 736, 738, 739, 741, 750
- [365] TUG WORKING GROUP ON A \TeX DIRECTORY STRUCTURE (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for \TeX Files*, June 2004. <mailto:tds@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf>. 237, 246, 635, 739, 750
- [366] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 115, 218, 704, 733, 739, 751
- [367] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>. 215
- [368] Piet VAN OOSTRUM. *\TeX Implementations*, November 2002. <mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl>, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: <http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf>. 739, 751
- [369] Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY. *Bibliographie avec Bib \TeX* , 2003. Available from: http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz. 739, 751
- [370] Timothy VAN ZANDT. *Documentation for fancybox.sty: Box tips and tricks for \LaTeX* , September 2000. <mailto:tvz@Princeton.EDU>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/fancybox/fancybox.pdf>. 699, 733, 739, 751
- [371] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics. TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting (Wuhan, China). 520, 739, 751
- [372] Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE, and Tony ROBERTS. *The minitoc-hyper package*, May 1999. **This package is obsolete, use now the minitoc package [135]**, <mailto:verna@inf.enst.fr>, <mailto:Bernd.Jaehne@aeon.de>, <mailto:aroberts@usq.edu.au>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/>. 62, 223, 250, 711, 721, 733, 737, 739, 743, 751

⁵¹ TWS-TDS = TUG Working Group on a \TeX Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).

- [373] Boris VEYTSMAN. *Notes on principles and T_EX implementation*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. <mailto:borisv@lk.net>, Computational Material Science Center, MS 5A2, George Mason University, Fairfax, VA 22030. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/veytsman-design/veytsman-design.pdf>. 739, 751
 - [374] Boris VEYTSMAN, Bernd SCHANDL, Lee NETHERTON, and C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN. *nomencI A Package to create a Nomenclature*, September 2005. <http://sarovar.org/projects/nomencI>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/nomencI/nomencI.pdf>. 51, 136, 227, 398, 729, 730, 733, 738, 739, 743, 744, 751
 - [375] Carl F. VOEGELIN and Florence M. VOEGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977. 739, 751
 - [376] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in L^AT_EX*, March 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 204, 715, 716, 737, 738, 739, 751
 - [377] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>. 739, 751
 - [378] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.

1. Basics.	3. Tokens, Macros.
2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.	4. Output Routines.
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T_EX). 277, 739, 751
- [379] Douglas WAUD and Tim NULL. `\begin{here}`. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:douglas.waud@umassmed.edu>, <http://users.umassmed.edu/douglas.waud/>, and <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/waud/waud.pdf>. 730, 738, 739, 753
 - [380] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *P_ET_EX i pdfP_ET_EX*. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>, May 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/teTeX/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html>. 44, 233, 564, 733, 740, 753
 - [381] Daphne WEST and Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND. *Lire et écrire le russe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, January 2006. 694, 736, 739, 740, 746, 753
 - [382] Graham WILLIAMS. *Graham Williams' T_EX Catalogue*. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000. Last version at: <http://dante.ctan.org/CTAN/help/Catalogue/catalogue.html>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>. 740, 753
 - [383] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 235, 236, 733, 740, 748, 753

- [384] Peter R. WILSON. *The chngpage package*, August 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/chngpage.sty>. 257, 672, 686, 732, 740, 753
- [385] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 58, 228, 729, 733, 740, 753
- [386] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 44, 64, 71, 78, 88, 115, 129, 226, 227, 238, 410, 734, 740, 750, 753
- [387] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 53, 70, 88, 206, 252, 413, 681, 732, 740, 753
- [388] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 64, 88, 207, 251, 409, 682, 732, 740, 753
- [389] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 50, 88, 96, 100, 104, 144, 226, 227, 238, 251, 409, 734, 740, 750, 753
- [390] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>. 734, 740, 750, 753
- [391] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 210, 275, 685, 732, 740, 753
- [392] Peter R. WILSON. *Critical editions and arabic typesetting: the ledarab and afoot packages*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledarab.pdf>. 681, 716, 732, 733, 740, 753
- [393] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>. 694, 733, 740, 753
- [394] Peter R. WILSON. *ledmac, a presumptuous attempt to port EDMAC, TABMAC and EDSTANZA to L^AT_EX*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledmac.pdf>. 716, 733, 740, 753

- [395] Peter R. WILSON. *Parallel typesetting for critical editions: the ledpar package*, April 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledpar.pdf>. 716, 733, 740, 753
- [396] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 276, 285, 412, 686, 718, 740, 753
- [397] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 276, 285, 412, 686, 718, 740, 753
- [398] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>. 54, 76, 88, 235, 254, 273, 733, 740, 743, 753
- [399] Peter R. WILSON. *The memoir standard class*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3, August 2006. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/wilson/wilson.pdf>. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 276, 285, 412, 686, 718, 740, 753
- [400] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The ifmtarg package*, March 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 219, 277, 682, 710, 733, 735, 740, 753
- [401] Joseph A. WRIGHT. *Quick floats in L_AT_EX*, June 2007. <mailto:joseph.wright@morningstar2.co.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/trivfloat/trivfloat.pdf>. 54, 88, 163, 238, 256, 268, 276, 671, 734, 740, 750, 753
- [402] C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. *KannadaT_EX* [online], April 2004. Available from: <http://sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex/>. <mailto:yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in>, <mailto:yogacs@users.sarovar.org>, <mailto:subbuk@users.sarovar.org>. 220, 538, 712, 733, 739, 740, 748, 753
- [403] Charlie S. ZENDER. *L_AT_EX Cheat Sheet*, March 2007. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>, Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100. Available from: <http://dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf>. 740, 753
- [404] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV and Vadim MASLOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/lhcyr/>. <mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>, <mailto:vadik@cs.umd.edu>. 575, 576, 716, 733, 740, 753

Changes history

★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
 - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
 - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (by Dan JURAFSKY).

★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
 - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
 - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
 - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
 - All the layout of the minitoc is in the command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
 - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocy`es is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
 - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
 - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
 - At least three passes (3) of \LaTeX are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
 - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).
 - Some mods added to work with `xr` (external references). `xr` version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ version 02

- 1993/07/05
 - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying `\@caption`.

W0092

※ version 03

- 1993/07/09
 - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ version 04

- 1993/07/09
 - Added `\if@realch` to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
 - The package mtcoff allows you to use a \LaTeX document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

★ version 05

- 1993/07/13
 - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ version 06

- 1993/07/15
 - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete `\caption` stuff (filters are much better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [133] package).

★ version 07

- 1993/07/22
 - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David P. CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the .toc file. `\chapterend` and `\minitocno` are suppressed, `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc` and `\faketableofcontents` added.

★ version 08

- 1993/07/29
 - Spacing adjustments.

★ version 09

- 1993/08/04
 - Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

★ version 10

- 1993/08/05
 - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

★ version 11

- 1993/08/18
 - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

★ version 12

- 1993/12/16
 - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
 - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
 - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

★ version 13

- 1993/12/17
 - Added `\minilof` and `\minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

★ version 14

- 1994/01/03
 - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
 - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
 - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
 - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
 - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

★ version 15

- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

★ version 16

- 1994/02/02
 - Bug fixes (typos).

★ version 17

- 1994/06/23
 - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
 - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).

★ version 18

- 1994/06/26
 - Make minitoc really compatible with $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$.
 - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes L. BRAAMS).

★ version 19

- 1994/08/16
 - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
 - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
 - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
 - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michael RYNNING).
 - Corrected appendix in articles.

★ version 20

- 1994/08/25
 - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
 - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.

- Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
- Corrected vertical spacing.
- Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.

★ version 21

- 1994/09/07
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc` and `minitoc.tex`.

★ version 22

- 1994/10/10
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc`.

★ version 23

- 1994/11/08
 - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
 - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL).
 - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
 - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
 - Removed appendix stuff.

★ version 24

- 1994/12/21
 - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the \LaTeX 2 ϵ release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL who did the work.

★ version 25

- 1996/09/13
 - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

★ version 26

- 1996/11/14
 - Language specific files are now named `language.mld` (replacing names of the form `mtclanguage.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
 - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

★ version 27

- 1996/12/20
 - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
 - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
 - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
 - Renamed `minitocoff` into `mtcoff` to keep the name short.

★ version 28

- 1997/10/29
 - Added the `afrikaan(s)`, `brazil`, and `ethiopia(n)` languages.
 - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
 - Added the `shorttext` package option.
 - Added *coffee* stuff.
 - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
 - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
 - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU:

$$\{\let@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline\}\}$$
 should probably be

$$\{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline\}\}$$
 (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
 - Added the `bahasa` language.
- 1998/12/03
 - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.

★ version 29

- 1999/03/16
 - Added the `bicig`, `buryat`, `mongol` and `russianc` languages.
- 1999/06/28
 - Added the `armenian` language (from `ArmTeX` [123]).
- 1999/07/23
 - Added the `dotted/undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
- 1999/07/29
 - Added `lithuanian.mld`.

★ version 30

- 1999/12/06
 - Added the `basque`, `ngermanb`, `serbian`, `ukraineb`, and `welsh` languages.
 - Corrected a bug in `\sltnam` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).

★ version 31

- 2000/04/04
 - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.

★ version 32

- 2000/08/08
 - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
 - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
 - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

★ version 33

- 2000/12/07
 - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
 - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

★ version 34

- 2000/12/13
 - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
 - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

I0046

★ version 35

- 2001/01/09
 - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM.
 - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
 - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
 - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
 - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
 - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
 - Added the `interlingua` language.

★ version 36

- 2002/02/11
 - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
 - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
 - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19
 - Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
 - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
 - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
 - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.

※ version 37

- 2003/01/24
 - Version #37 dropped.

★ version 38

- 2003/01/24
 - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
 - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L^AT_EX).
 - Added `\mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
 - Added the `frenchb` language (synonym of `french`).
- 2003/01/30
 - Changed the test for empty titles.
 - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
 - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
 - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
 - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
 - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).

- Corrected secttocs, at least.
- 2003/03/18
 - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.

★ version 39

- 2003/04/09
 - Modern font commands for compatibility with the memoir class.
 - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and memoir class.
- 2003/06/08
 - Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the notoccite package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the notoccite package option (loads the notoccite package).
- 2004/09/08
 - Added language options and .mld files for dialects: canadian (english), acadian, acadien, canadien (french), naustrian, ngerman (ngermanb).
 - Added comments in .mld files using special fonts.
 - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
 - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

★ version 40

- 2004/12/09
 - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
 - Removed the test on the presence of the multicol package in `minitoc.tex`, because multicol is a required package.
 - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
 - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
 - Added a paragraph about a problem with the appendix package.
- 2004/12/13
 - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
 - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
 - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

★ version 41

- 2005/01/05
 - Corrections in documentation.
 - Message added if some sectioning commands are not available.
 - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `document.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
 - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
- 2005/01/10
 - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11
 - $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
 - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
 - Added `\mtcsetttitle`.
 - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
 - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
 - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
 - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
 - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
 - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
 - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
 - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03

- Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
 - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
 - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
 - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
 - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
 - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

※ version 42

- 2005/02/14
 - Version 42 not released.
 - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
 - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
 - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
 - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

★ version 43

- 2005/02/21
 - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
 - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
 - Fixed a bug in `mtcoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
 - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
 - Moved history to the end of package code.
 - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
 - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
 - Completed the hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

- 2005/03/08
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
 - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
 - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
 - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
 - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
 - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
 - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/18
 - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
 - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
 - Added a hint for the abstract package.
- 2005/04/07
 - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
 - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
 - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
 - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
 - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
 - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
 - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
 - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
 - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26

- Fixed rules in parttocs, partlofs and partlots.
- 2005/05/30
 - Fixed chapter-level entries in parttocs, when page numbers must be removed.
 - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
 - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
 - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
 - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
 - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
 - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
 - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
 - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06
 - Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
 - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
 - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
 - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
 - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
 - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
 - Added “OUT”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
 - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
 - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
 - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29

- Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
 - Added `castillian.mld`.
 - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
 - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
 - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
 - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
 - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
 - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21
 - Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
 - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Improved some messages in `mtcoff`.
 - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
 - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
 - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitocs`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
 - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending on the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
 - The memoir class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
 - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
 - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
 - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
 - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.

- Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
- Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
 - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
 - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
 - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
 - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
 - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
 - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
 - Added a note about the `rubber` tool.
- 2005/09/15
 - Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
 - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
 - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
 - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
 - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
 - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
 - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
 - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
 - Corrected typos.
 - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
 - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
 - Load the patch for the `memoir` class only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir` is dated after 2005/09/25.

- Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.
- 2005/10/04
 - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
 - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
 - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
 - Added the french L^AT_EX Companion [279].
- 2005/11/09
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
 - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
 - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.

- 2005/11/16
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
 - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Reordering a long sequence of citations.

- Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
 - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
 - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
 - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
 - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.
- 2005/12/08
 - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
 - Corrections of french quotes.
 - Added some PDF options.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected an URL to the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
 - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
 - Correction of typos.
 - Added some labels.
 - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
 - The documentation needs 4 \LaTeX runs.
- 2005/12/22
 - Made some messages shorter.
 - Corrections in the list of messages.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
 - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
 - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04

- Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
 - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
 - Added “*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected the bibliography entry about BangTeX.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Used the `afterpage` package [104] in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the bahasam language.
 - Added the albanian language.
 - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
 - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
 - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the `italian2` language.
 - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
 - Renamed the bahasa language as `bahasai`; bahasa is synonym of `bahasai`.
 - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of `bahasam`.
 - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of `bahasai`.
- 2006/01/12
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgements.
 - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
 - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
 - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
 - Added `magyar3.mld`.
 - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.

- 2006/01/16
 - Correction in `\mtcaddsection`.
- 2006/01/17
 - Correction in `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
 - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in `minitoc.bug`) about the initialization of fonts.
 - Added `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Load some packages before `hyperref`.
 - Added `spanish4.mld`.
- 2006/01/23
 - Corrected the table about default titles.
 - Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
 - Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
 - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
 - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [223, 288, 328], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
 - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
 - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
 - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02

- Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added package `dblacont` [275] for the “The pdfT_EX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Thế Thành HÀN).
- 2006/02/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13
 - Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
 - Added `kannada.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
 - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
 - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgments.
- 2006/02/17
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
 - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
 - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8.ml[d|o]` and `hanja-u8.ml[d|o]`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
 - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.

- Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
 - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
 - Added `poliski.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
 - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`. W0029
- 2006/03/02
 - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [167]. W0025
- 2006/03/06
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
 - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
 - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
 - Added the `mtcmess` package.
- 2006/03/16
 - The messages are now numbered.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20
 - Corrections in the documentation.

- 2006/03/21
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
 - Added FAQ 37 about .mld files and babel.
 - Added french1.mld and french2.mld.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
 - Added english1.mld and english2.mld.

★ version 45

- 2006/03/31
 - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.
 - Added arab2.mld, bicig3.mld, buryat2.mld, xalx2.mld, and xalx3.mld.
- 2006/04/03
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
 - Added swedish2.mld.
 - The `insection` package option loads also the `flatter` package.
- 2006/04/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
 - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
 - Use `sectsty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12
 - Corrections in the documentation.

- 2006/04/13
 - In the `insection` package option, load the `flafter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
 - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
 - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - Added comments about the `insection` option.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
 - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
 - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03
 - Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
 - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0086
 - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0087
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0088
 - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0089
 - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0090
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).

- Corrections in the documentation.
- Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
 - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
 - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
 - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/08
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.

★ version 46

- 2006/06/09
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
- 2006/06/21
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
- 2006/06/22
 - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
 - Added chapter “Example files”.
- 2006/06/23
 - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
 - Use the `lipsum` package [178] in some of the examples of documents.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/27
 - Update the examples of documents.

- Added the `second.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/29
 - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
- 2006/06/30
 - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/03
 - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
 - Corrections about the depth of `minilofs`, `minilots` and `siblings`.
- 2006/07/04
 - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
- 2006/07/07
 - Corrections of typos.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
 - Correction in `french2.mld`.
- 2006/07/10
 - Correction in `minilots` and `minilofs` (and `siblings`) about depth.
 - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
 - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - The not released versions are flagged by `✱` in place of `★`.
- 2006/07/17
 - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
 - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
 - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
 - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
 - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc0` in the list of files.
 - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD`.
 - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami’/CL[0-9]`.

★ version 47

- 2006/07/26
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
 - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the `Arabi` system [204]).
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
 - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
 - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
 - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.
 - Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
 - Minor correction in warning message `F0008`.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).

★ version 48

- 2006/08/04
 - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
 - Update the bibliography.
 - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
 - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
 - Increasing `\textwidth`.
 - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
 - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
 - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
 - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).

- 2006/08/28
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
 - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
- 2006/08/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
 - Update the bibliography.
 - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
 - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
 - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
 - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
 - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
 - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
 - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
 - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
 - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
 - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
 - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
 - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
 - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
 - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
 - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
 - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
 - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
 - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
 - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.

E0036

- Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
- Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
- Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
- Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
- Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsf.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
 - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
 - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
 - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
 - Added a figure about systems derived from \TeX and \LaTeX .
- 2006/09/13
 - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

★ version 49

- 2006/09/14
 - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
 - Simplifications in the scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
 - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added “+” and “-” as synonyms for “on” and “off”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Fixed typos.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
 - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
 - Improving some tables.
 - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.

- Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/11/03
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
 - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with minitoc.
 - Added a hint about the hangcaption package (must be loaded *before* minitoc).
- 2006/11/06
 - Completed the list of the standard classes.
- 2006/11/09
 - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the .mld and .mlo files.
 - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the english.mld file.
- 2006/11/13
 - The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document.log* file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

W0092

E0036

★ version 50

- 2006/11/17
 - Removed old examples of documents: mtc-adds.tex, mtc-amem.tex, mtc-book.tex, mtc-gaps.tex, mtc-mem1.tex, mtc-subf.tex, and mtc-tsfc.tex.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the tmk script and a table describing a TDS structure for minitoc.
 - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
 - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
- 2006/11/29
 - Added the warning message W0094 with the list of the missing minitoc languages files (.mld and .mlo).
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the file minitoc-tds.zip (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

★ version 51

- 2006/12/18
 - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.

- 2006/12/20
 - Improving the index: names.
 - Updated some `.mld` files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
 - Miscellaneous corrections.
 - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
 - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
 - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
 - Indexing the files.
 - Renamed the file “catalog” into “CATALOG”.
 - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
 - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

★ version 52

- 2007/01/11
 - Correction of index ordering.
 - Default option in boldface in the index.
 - Adding some informations about authors for language specific titles.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/01/12
 - Added fake sections in the “Examples of documents” chapter.
 - Removed the preparation of the documentation in PostScript format.
- 2007/01/15
 - Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format into PostScript format.
 - Removed `duplex2v.pro`.
- 2007/01/17
 - Indexing the referenced commands.
- 2007/01/18
 - Corrected the name `Thế Thành HÀN` (first name before last name, the english way).
 - Corrected some other names.
- 2007/01/19
 - Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.
 - Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new cyrillic encodings T2 and X2 in `mongolb.mld`).
 - Added the example file `mtc-3co.tex`.
 - Trying to use a recent version of the `cite [13]` package (2003/11/04, 4.01) to allow sorting, but still clashes with `hyperref`.
- 2007/01/26
 - Balancing the columns in the index.
- 2007/01/29

- Correction of the indexing of the environments.
- 2007/01/31
 - Improving the index layout.
 - Updated `galician.mld`.
- 2007/02/05
 - Added `mongolian.mld` which loads `mongolb.mld`.
- 2007/02/09
 - Indexing the names of authors.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/02/12
 - Updated the acknowledgements.

★ version 53

- 2007/02/13
 - Added the example file `mtc-fko.tex`.
 - Corrected `\kernafterminitoc` and `siblings`.
- 2007/02/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.
- 2007/03/02
 - Added a header to the index, to explain notations.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Changed the style of page and line numbers in the index.
 - Updated `kannada.mld`.
 - Dangerous bend symbols are now in the right margin.
- 2007/03/06
 - Improved the presentation of example files.
 - Using the `natbib` package [126, 127] to sort the sequences of citations.
- 2007/03/09
 - Correction in table 7.3 on page 244.
 - Renamed `minitoc-texmf.zip` into `minitoc-tds.zip`.
- 2007/03/19
 - Use the `sort&compress` option of the `natbib` package [126, 127] to compress the sequences of citations; the `hypernat` package must also be loaded (after `natbib` and `hyperref`).
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/03/22
 - Added changing the title of the `parttoc` for appendices in `mtc-apx.tex`.

★ version 54

- 2007/03/27
 - Added the “open” and “close” features.
 - Indexing the features.
 - Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.
- 2007/04/06
 - Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.
 - Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and siblings, using `\mtc@toks`.
 - Some mini-tables are set on two columns in the manual.
 - Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.
- 2007/04/12
 - Added internal hyperlinks for messages.
 - Load the `hypcap` package for hyperlinks in the documentation.
- 2007/06/06
 - Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.
 - Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.
 - Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.
 - Added flagging of macros in example files.
 - The 2007 section in the “Postface” chapter was garbled.
 - More internal links in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a clickable table of all messages.
 - Improved column breaks in the index.
 - Added a local minitoc in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added `lithuanian2.mld`.
 - Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.
 - Grouped `.mld/.mlo` pairs in tables 7.1 on page 242 and 7.2 on page 243.

★ version 55

- 2007/06/12
 - Added a hint (warning W0097) about the `flowfram` [353, 354] package (incompatible). W0097
 - Added a *hint* (I0053) about the `float` [255], `floatrow` [239], `trivfloat` [401], and `rotfloat` [343] packages. I0053
- 2007/06/22
 - Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.
 - Improve page breaks in the documentation.

- Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.
 - 2007/06/29
 - Changed the color of hyperlinks.
 - Revised the format of the headers.
 - Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.
- ★ version 56
- 2007/07/02
 - Added `swahili.mld`.
 - 2007/08/03
 - Page headers modified in documentation.
 - Added stuff (files) for figures (maps) for many language areas.
 - Removed the `.eps` files.
 - Added the `bengali` language synonym of `bangla`.
 - Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 on page 242 and 7.2 on page 243).
 - 2007/12/04
 - Many minor typo fixes.
 - Darker colors for hyperlinks.
 - Updated and corrected the bibliography.
 - Corrected a typo in the `ptc@verse` environment (François PÉTIARD).
 - Corrections of typos in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments (thanks to Andrew BOWDEN).
 - Replaced the `.mtc1` extension by `.mtc0` in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing the `(\jobname.mtc1)` file).
 - Corrected a problem with `\nofiles` (Andreas DEININGER).
 - The acknowledgements are moved to the “Complements” part.
 - Added a hint (warning W0099) about the `titlesec` [42] package.
 - Complete indexing of the messages.
 - Updated `lithuanian2.mld`.
 - Using the `chnpage` package [384] to increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.
 - Renamed `\if@longextensions@` as `\if@mtc@longext@`.
 - Updated `czech.mld`.
 - Removed `\l@xsection`.
 - Graphic files are indexed separately.
 - Updated `galician.mld`.
 - Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.
 - Updated `lsorbian.mld`, `ukraineb.mld`, and `usorbian.mld`.
 - Added `malayalam-b.mld`, `malayalam-keli2.mld`, `malayalam-mr.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana3.mld`.
 - Updated `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
 - Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples⁵², for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups⁵³, and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Tommaso ADDABBO, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Stéphane AICARDI, Vartan AKOPIAN, A.J. ALEX, Mark ALFORD, Jacques ANDRÉ, Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Ralf ANGELI, Walter APPEL, Achod André ARADIAN, Einar ÁRNASON, Tim ARNOLD, Jouko ARPONEN, Donald ARSENEAU, Helmer ASLASKEN, David ASPINALL, Ivar ÅSSEN, Philipp BACHMANN, Gonçal BADENES, Jason BALDRIDGE, Marin BALGARENSKY, Leonor BARROCA, Giancarlo BASSI, Pierre BASSO, Dorjgotov BATMUNKH, Jean-Yves BAUDAIS, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Claudio BECCARI, Emmanuel BEFFARA, Benoît BELET, Rachid BELMOUHOU, József BÉRCES, Alexander BERDNIKOV, Jens BERGER, Karl BERRY, Berhanu BEYENE, Javier BEZOS, Giuseppe BILOTTA, Árpád BÍRÓ, Denis BITOUZÉ, Dr. Barbara BLANKENSHIP, Laurent BLOCH, Onofre BONVILA, Georgi N. BOSHPANOV, Patrice BOUGETTE, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Andrew BOWDEN, Victor BOYKO, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Felix BRAUN, Jim BREEN, Peter BREITENLOHNER, Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ, Mimi BURBANK, Mustafa BURC, Alexey BURYKIN, Olivier CARDI, Samuele CARCAGNO, David CARELLA, David P. CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY, Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR, Winston CHANG, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Pascal CHAUVET, Pehong CHEN, Céline CHEVALIER, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Otfried CHEONG, Pai H. CHOU, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK, Emmanuel CORNET, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Sergueï DACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Arnak DALALYAN, Patrick W. DALY, Holger DANIELSSON, Alice DAVISON, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Andreas DEININGER, Éric DEPARDIEU, Ben DE RYDT, Bernard DESGRAUPES, Cécile DESPRAIRIES, Sébastien DESREUX, Antoni R. DILLER, Dorjpalam DORJ, Ivars DRIKIS, Matthew S. DRYER, Denys DUCHIER, Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ÈEHAJA, Ta Quang DUNG, Patrick EGAN, Victor EIJKHOUT, Brian ELMEGAARD, Danie ELS, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Thomas ESSER, Gilhooly ETIENNE, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN, Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Christian FAULHAMMER, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Michael J. FERGUSON, Jeff FESSLER, Ulrike FISCHER, Jean-Julien FLECK, Daniel FLIPO, Peter L. FLOM, Peter FLYNN, Jim FOX, Danny M. FÜRNISS, Tetsuo FURUKAWA, Federico GARCIA, Diego GARCÍA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Bernard GAULLE[†], Maarten GELDERMAN, Chuck GENSCHTE, Mohammad GHODSI, Helen GILHOOY, François GIRON, Markus GLEISZNER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS, Raymond G. GORDON, JR.,

⁵² And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

⁵³ Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or english).

Mathieu GOUTELLE, Fraser GRANT, George GRÄTZER, Norman GRAY, George D. GREENWADE, Enrico GREGORIO, Loïc GRENON, Charles GREYER, Barbara F. GRIMES, Olga A. GRINEVA, Sébastien GROT, Micael GUIGNARD, Marion GUNN, Eitan M. GURARI, Thomas HAFNER, Hans HAGEN, Reinhard F. HAHN, Boumediene HAMZI, Thế Thành HÀN, Thorsten HANSEN, Patrick HAPPEL, Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Kathryn A. HARGREAVES, Alexander HARIN, Russel L. HARRIS, Michael A. HARRISON, Stephen HARTKE, Danny HEAP, Jim HEFFERON, André HEIDER, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Håvard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Hartmut HENKEL, Thomas HENLICH, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, Jörg HESOLL, Pr. Thomas J. HINNENBUSH, David HOADLEY, Taco HOEKWATER, Alan HOENIG, Joe HOGG, Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Klaus HÖPPNER, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, Dave W. HUSEBY, Helene HYNÄ, Hiroya IKEDA, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Tetsuo IWAKUMA, Zunbeltz IZAOLA, Youssef JABRI, Paweł JACKOWSKI, Christophe JACQUET, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANICH, Frank JENSEN, Alan JEFFREY, Regnor JERNSLETEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, David M. JONES, Christophe JORSSEN, Robert JUHASZ, Stefan JUNGE, Dan JURAFSKY, Akira KAKUTO, Mikko KANERVA, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Jonathan KEW, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-Joo KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Ingo KLÖCKL, Jörg KNAPPEN, Donald E. KNUTH, Markus KOHM, Helmut KOPKA, Attila KOPPANYI, Adamantios KORAI, Vincent KRAKOWIACK, Kai KRATT, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Siep KROONENBERG, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Manfred KUDLEK, Markus G. KUHN, Florian KULZER, Toshiaki KUMAZAWA, Olaf KUMMER, Frank KÜSTER, Stéphane LABORDE, Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT, Klaus LAGALLY, Leslie LAMPORT, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga G. LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Andris LASIS, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, André LEBACQ, Olivier LECARME, Jacques LECLERC, Jeanne LEGRAND, Philipp LEHMAN, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Erwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Pierre LOBEL, Miloš V. LOKAJČEK, Stoffel LOMBARD, Maurizio LORETI, Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE, Vincent LOZANO, Daniel H. LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre A. MACKEY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina A. MAKHOVAYA, Pierre MALECKI, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Terty MART, Vadim MASLOV, Henri MASSIAS, Andreas MATTHIAS, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben MCKAY, Surapant MEKNAVIN, Sébastien MENGIN, Jochen METZINGER, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBACH, Young Joon MOON, Ross MOORE, Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON, Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Sergei O. NAUMOV, Lee NETHERTON, Frank NEUKAM, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Tim NULL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Tobias OETIKER, Mariusz OLKO, Tanguy ORTOLO, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Jörg OTT, Alan PAIĆ, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Minje Byeng-sen PARK, Hubert PARTL, Oren PATASHNIK, Jonathan PECHTA, Kasper PEETERS, Matthias PELGER, François PÉTIARD, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Paul PICHAREAU, Éric PICHERAL, Bruno PIGUET, Karel PÍŠKA, John PLAICE, Veerathanabutr POONLAP, Fabrice POPINEAU, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hilmar PREUSSE, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Paul RASCOE, Keranen REINO, Adrian REZUŞ, Yuri ROBBERS, A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS, Will ROBERTSON, Denis B. ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Rasmus Pank ROULUND, Chris A. ROWLEY, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, Jan Michael RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SÁNCHEZ, Morgan SANGEUX, Eddie SAUDRAIS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, Bernd SCHANDL, Elisabeth SCHLEGL, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Walter SCHMIDT, Thomas A. SCHMITZ, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Rainer SCHÖPF, Martin SCHRÖDER, Ulrich SCHWARTZ, Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Michael SHELL, JUNGSHIK SHIN,

Bai SHOUYI[†], Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, Sindhu SINGH, Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Jankovic SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Nick SOFRONIOU, Axel SOMMERFELDT, Lianyi SONG, Yves SOULET, Arjen STEINER, D. P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, K. K. SUBRAMANIAM, Robert S. SUTOR, Chris SWOYER, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Raffaella TABACCO, Nicola L. C. TALBOT, Daniel TAUPIN[†], Philip TAYLOR, Christina THIELE, Harold THIMBLEBY, Kresten Krab THORUP, Aurélien THUREAU, Karsten TINNEFELD, Ton 'T LAM, Sigitas TOLUŠIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Hideo UMEKI, Un KOAUNGH, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Timothy VAN ZANDT, Vincent VAQUIN, Suki K. VENKATESAN, Didier VERNÉ, Sylvain VESCO, Boris VEYTSMAN, Alexandre VIAL, Carl F. VOEGELIN, Florence M. VOEGELIN, Martin VOGEL, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Herbert VOSS, Zdeněk WAGNER, David WALDEN, Nigel WARD, John WARNOCK, Douglas WAUD Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan B. WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Daphne WEST, Ferenc WETTL, Graham WILLIAMS, Peter R. WILSON, Jeroen WIJNHOUT, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Mark WOODING, Joseph A. WRIGHT, Tim WRIGHT, Dominik WUJASTYK, Damien WYART, C. S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAİMİ, Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF[†], Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Federico ZENITH, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, Uwe ZIEGENHAGEN, and Leon ŽLAJPAH.

Index

In this index, italic style numbers (*123*) are page numbers, normal roman numbers (123) are code line references for usage, bold roman numbers (**123**) are code line references for definitions; colored numbers in square brackets, like this: \hookrightarrow [135], are bibliographic references, eventually sorted and compressed.

The names of commands, environments, files, suffixes, options, features, messages identifiers⁵⁴, and languages, are in typewriter font (**bold** for default options or the default language). The names of tools, packages and classes are in sans serif font. The people names are in roman for the first names, in SMALL CAPS for the family names, separated by a comma, the family name first⁵⁵, like in “LAMPOR, Leslie” in the index.

Some commands (like the internal names of language specific letters) are not indexed.

Symbols

.F (extension) 54, 55, 205, 299
.G (extension) 54, 55, 205, 335
.H (extension) 54, 55, 205, 357
.M (extension) 54, 55, 205, 296
.P (extension) 54, 55, 205, 335
.S (extension) 54, 55, 206, 357
.T (extension) 54, 55, 206, 302
.U (extension) 54, 55, 206, 335
.V (extension) 54, 55, 206, 358
.afm (extension) 239
.aux (extension) . 55, 58, 60, 63, 205, 208, 271
.bst (extension) 214, 218, 239, 243–246, 255,
666
.cls (extension) 205
.dtx (extension) . 44, 205, 211, 247, 252, 253,
466, 576, 650
.eps (extension) 672
.ins (extension) 205, 211, 247, 252

.ist (extension) 217, 224, 243–246, 650, 651,
653
.lan (extension) 217, 224, 243–246, 439
.lof (extension) 28, 55, 58, 61–63, 68,
152, 179–181, 205, 208, 279, 281–
283, 307, 308, 316, 335, 342, 357,
364, 455, 645
.log (extension) 31, 34, 52,
55, 57, 80, 144, 151, 162, 169, 170,
202, 205, 218, 264, 266, 283, 408,
433, 434, 466, 648, 668
.lot (extension) 28, 55, 58, 61, 63, 68,
152, 180, 181, 205, 208, 279, 281–
283, 308, 318, 319, 335, 344, 358,
366, 455, 643, 645
.maf (extension) . . 52, 80, 154, 205, 208, 221,
253, 403, 436, 653
.map (extension) 239
.mld (extension) 21, 36, 39, 44,
70, 75, 81, 154, 163, 169, 187, 196,
198, 205, 207, 211, 241, 244, 249–

⁵⁴The messages identifiers appear in the right margin of the text, near the points of usage.

⁵⁵For some oriental names (like japanese, korean, vietnamese or indian names), it is sometimes difficult to know which is the first or the last name.

- 251, 253, 255, 264, 399, 400, 403–406, 460, 464, 466, 510, 550, 643, 645, 647, 652, 653, 657, 661, 668, 669
- .mlf (extension) . . . 28, 54, 55, 205, 299, 308
- .mlo (extension) 21, 39, 44, 70, 155, 163, 169, 188, 205, 211, 212, 216, 241, 244, 253, 255, 264, 400, 403, 405, 406, 460, 466, 553, 653, 660, 668
- .mlt (extension) . . . 28, 54, 55, 205, 302, 308
- .mtc (extension) 28, 52, 54, 55, 58, 59, 61, 205, 278, 283, 284, 296, 308, 436, 639
- .mtc0 (extension) . . . 257, 283, 436, 664, 672
- .mtc1 (extension) 257, 672
- .pdf (extension) 245
- .pfb (extension) 239
- .plf (extension) 33, 54, 55, 206, 335
- .plt (extension) 33, 54, 55, 206, 335
- .pre (extension) 224, 243–246, 654, 660
- .ptc (extension) 33, 54, 55, 206, 335
- .slf (extension) 30, 54, 55, 206, 357
- .slt (extension) 30, 54, 55, 206, 358
- .stc (extension) 30, 54, 55, 206, 357
- .sty (extension) 206, 232, 241, 246, 247, 249, 643
- .tar (extension) 247
- .tex (extension) 152, 206
- .tfm (extension) 239
- .tgz (extension) 247
- .toc (extension)
 - 28, 50, 55, 58, 59, 61–63, 68, 152, 180, 181, 206, 208, 249, 279, 281–283, 290, 292, 307, 308, 313, 335, 339, 357, 362, 455, 640, 643, 645
- .vf (extension) 239
- .zip (extension) 247
- /tmp/‘whoami’.imk (file) 246
- /tmp/‘whoami’.rmk (file) 247
- /tmp/‘whoami’.tmk (file) 246, 247
- /tmp/‘whoami’/OLD (file) 664
- \@@dominilof 3433, 3471
- \@@dominilot 3452, 3471
- \@@dominitoc (command) 308
- \@@dominitoc 3399, 3414, 3471
- \@@dopartlof 4134, 4154
- \@@dopartlot 4153, 4154
- \@@doparttoc 4115, 4154
- \@@dosectlof 4754, 4774
- \@@dosectlot 4773, 4774
- \@@dosecttoc 4735, 4774
- \@M 1233, 1243, 2887, 3325, 3348, 3360, 4064, 4644, 4645, 4675
- \@Undottedtocline (command) 306
- \@Undottedtocline 3343, 6096, 7843
- \@Undottedtoclinep (command) . . 306, 307
- \@Undottedtoclinep 3355, 3368, 3380, 3383, 3386, 3391, 3394, 3397, 7843
- \@addtoreset 820, 1012
- \@afterheading 3812, 3819, 3826, 7929, 7937
- \@afterindenttrue 2886, 3347, 3359
- \@caption (command) 640
- \@centercr 3108, 3837, 4430
- \@chapter (command) 53, 281, 305, 415
- \@chapter 2819, 3327, 6657, 7394, 7903, 7905
- \@dominilof 3404, 3472
- \@dominilof@used@false 2604
- \@dominilof@used@true 3444
- \@dominilot 3409, 3473
- \@dominilot@used@false 2605
- \@dominilot@used@true 3463
- \@dominitoc (command) 308
- \@dominitoc 3399, 3471
- \@dominitoc@used@false 2603
- \@dominitoc@used@true (command) . . 308
- \@dominitoc@used@true 3425
- \@dopartlof 4086, 4155
- \@dopartlof@used@false 2598
- \@dopartlof@used@true 4127
- \@dopartlot 4090, 4156
- \@dopartlot@used@false 2599
- \@dopartlot@used@true 4146
- \@doparttoc 4082, 4154
- \@doparttoc@used@false 2597
- \@doparttoc@used@true 4108
- \@dosectlof 4706, 4775
- \@dosectlof@used@false 2610
- \@dosectlof@used@true 4747
- \@dosectlot (command) 650
- \@dosectlot 4710, 4776
- \@dosectlot@used@false 2611
- \@dosectlot@used@true 4766
- \@dosecttoc 4702, 4774
- \@dosecttoc@used@false 2609
- \@dosecttoc@used@true 4728
- \@dotsep (command) 44–46, 380
- \@dotsep 5400, 5413, 5418, 5423, 5428, 5433, 5438, 5443, 5448, 5453
- \@dottedtocline (command) . 71, 285, 307, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355
- \@dottedtocline . . 160, 3168, 3240, 3308, 3325, 3368, 3380, 3383, 3386, 3391, 3394, 3397, 3894, 3971, 4046, 4064, 4491, 4561, 4628, 4644
- \@dottedxxxline 2162
- \@ensure@R 9113
- \@fileswfalse (command) 647

- \@fileswfalse 3172, 3244, 3312, 3901, 3975,
4050, 4496, 4565, 4633
- \@firstchapteris@used@false 2613
- \@firstchapteris@used@true 3072
- \@firstoftwo 2721
- \@firstpartis@used@false 2612
- \@firstpartis@used@true 3763
- \@firstsectionis@used@false 2614
- \@firstsectionis@used@true 4401
- \@gobble (command) 648
- \@gobble **7704, 7705, 7843**
- \@gobblethree (command) 403
- \@gobblethree **6138, 6219**
- \@gobbletwo (command) 448
- \@gobbletwo **7643, 7688**
- \@hangfrom **4665**
- \@ifclasslater 2713
- \@ifclassloaded . . **2688, 6468, 6576, 6585,**
6600, 6623
- \@ifnextchar (command) 296, 299, 302, 368,
447
- \@ifnextchar **3119, 3189, 3257, 3399, 3404,**
3409, 3849, 3915, 3989, 4094, 4442,
4509, 4576, 4714, 4995, 5036, 5039,
5042, 5045, 7624, 7630, 7636, 7642,
7903
- \@ifpackagelater 6566
- \@ifpackageloaded . **2642, 2658, 2660, 2662,**
2664, 2666, 2668, 2670, 2672, 2674,
2676, 2678, 2680, 2682, 2684–2687,
6444, 6452, 6460, 6492, 6500, 6508,
6516, 6609, 6630, 7330
- \@ifpackagewith **6516, 6609**
- \@ifundefined (command) 281, 282, 292, 319,
367
- \@ifundefined **2500, 2518, 4995, 5513, 5589,**
5920, 5963, 6006, 6100, 6117, 6638,
6657, 6676, 7391, 7394, 7397, 7448,
7529
- \@input (command) . 314, 317, 319, 340, 342,
344
- \@input **3577, 3642, 3703, 6049, 6069**
- \@inputcheck (command) 60, 284, 641
- \@inputcheck **2743, 2870, 3561, 3573,** 3590,
3627, 3638, 3655, **3688, 3699,** 3716,
4239, 4240, 4251, 4267, 4299, 4300,
4311, 4327, 4359, 4360, 4371, 4387,
4843, 4844, 4855, 4871, 4903, 4904,
4915, 4931, 4963, 4964, 4975, 4991
- \@m@mchapter 7901
- \@mainaux **2622**
- \@makechapterhead . 1230, 7928, 7933, 7935
- \@makephead@c **3826**
- \@makephead@l **3812**
- \@makephead@r **3819**
- \@makeschapterhead 1240
- \@minilof@used@false 2601
- \@minilof@used@true (command) 299
- \@minilof@used@true 3191
- \@minilot@used@false 2602
- \@minilot@used@true (command) 302
- \@minilot@used@true 3259
- \@minitoc@used@false 2600
- \@minitoc@used@true (command) 296
- \@minitoc@used@true 3121
- \@mkboth **3038, 3864, 3930, 4005**
- \@mtc@FEfalse (command) 278
- \@mtc@FEfalse 2752, 2762
- \@mtc@FEtrue (command) 278
- \@mtc@FEtrue 2744, 2755, 2760
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false 2560
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true 2665
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false 2559
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@true 2664
- \@mtc@Himlof@false 5852, 5868, 5884
- \@mtc@Himlof@true 5860, 5878
- \@mtc@Himlot@false 5886, 5902, 5918
- \@mtc@Himlot@true 5894, 5912
- \@mtc@Himtoc@false 5837, 5850
- \@mtc@Himtoc@true 5844
- \@mtc@LIfalse 2747, 2751, 2752
- \@mtc@LItrue 2743, 2755
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false 6435
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@true 6610
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false 2568
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true 2673
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false 2567
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true 2672
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false 2554
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true 2675
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false 2553
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@true 2674
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false . . . 2548
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true 2679
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false 2547
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@true 2678
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false 2546
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true 2677
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@false 2545
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@true 2676
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false 2550
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true 2681
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false 2549
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true 2680
- \@mtc@chapter@def@false . . . 2584, 2585
- \@mtc@chapter@def@true 2585
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@false 2591

- \@mtc@chapter@undef@true... 2590, 2591
- \@mtc@checkfilesfalse 6109
- \@mtc@checkfilestrue 2745, 6108
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@false 2577
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@true 3201
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@false 2578
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@true 3269
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false 2576
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true 3131
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@false 2574
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@true... 3927, 4002
- \@mtc@empty@partlot@false 2575
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false 2573
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true 3861
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false 2580
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true 4521
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false 2581
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true 4588
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false 2579
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true 4454
- \@mtc@floatLoaded@false 2569
- \@mtc@floatLoaded@true 2684
- \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@false 2570
- \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true 2685
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false ... 2558
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true ... 2663
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false 2557
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true 2662
- \@mtc@hints@false 6434
- \@mtc@hints@given@false 2538
- \@mtc@hints@given@true **3414, 3433, 3452,**
4097, 4116, 4135, 4717, 4736, 4755,
5015, 6445, 6453, 6461, 6469, 6477,
6485, 6493, 6501, 6509, 6519, 6536,
6551, 6567, 6577, 6586, 6594, 6601,
6612, 6624, 6631, 6645, 6664, 6684,
6736, 6746, 6755, 6764, 6775, 6784,
6793, 6804, 6813, 6832, 6841, 6850,
6861, 6870, 6879, 6890, 6899, 6921,
6932, 6943, 6956, 6967, 6978, 6991,
7002, 7013, 7021, 7029, 7037, 7053,
7062, 7071, 7080, 7089, 7098, 7107,
7116, 7125, 7134, 7143, 7152, 7161,
7173, 7184, 7195, 7206, 7213, 7220,
7227, 7234, 7241, 7248, 7255, 7262,
7269, 7276, 7283, 7290
- \@mtc@hints@true 2536, 6433
- \@mtc@hints@w@false 2537, 6638, 6657, 6676
- \@mtc@hints@w@true 6640, 6642, 6644, 6659,
6661, 6663, 6679, 6681, 6683, 6736
- \@mtc@hyper@used@false 2643
- \@mtc@hyper@used@true 2646
- \@mtc@insellang@false . 6049, 6067, 6094
- \@mtc@insellang@true 6051
- \@mtc@listfiles@false 6137
- \@mtc@listfiles@true 6135, 6136
- \@mtc@lof@used@false 6437, 6698
- \@mtc@lof@used@true 6705, 6714
- \@mtc@longext@false (command) ... 283
- \@mtc@longext@false ... 2843, 2848, 6114
- \@mtc@longext@true (command) ... 283
- \@mtc@longext@true 2845, 7787
- \@mtc@lot@used@false 6438, 6699
- \@mtc@lot@used@true 6708, 6717
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false ... 2552
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true 2683
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false 2551
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true 2682
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false... 2541, 2694
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@true 2689
- \@mtc@memoirnew@false 2542, 2697
- \@mtc@memoirnew@true 2699
- \@mtc@mislangfalse 6143
- \@mtc@mislangtrue 6147, 6163, 6176, 6192
- \@mtc@notoccite@false 2637
- \@mtc@notoccite@true 6112
- \@mtc@part@def@false 2582, 2583
- \@mtc@part@def@true 2583
- \@mtc@part@undef@false 2589
- \@mtc@part@undef@true 2588, 2589
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false . 2540, 7334
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true 7334
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false ... 2562
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true 2667
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false 2561
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true 2666
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false ... 2564
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true 2669
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false 2563
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@true 2668
- \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@false 2572
- \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true 2687
- \@mtc@sect@floats@false 2539
- \@mtc@sect@floats@true ... 6721–6724
- \@mtc@section@def@false ... 2586, 2587
- \@mtc@section@def@true 2587
- \@mtc@section@undef@false 2593
- \@mtc@section@undef@true... 2592, 2593
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false 2544
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true 2659
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false 2543
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true 2658
- \@mtc@setdepth@false 5754
- \@mtc@setdepth@true 5749, 5752
- \@mtc@setfeature@false ... 5694, 5711
- \@mtc@setfeature@true 5688, 5692

- \@mtc@setfont@false 5154, 5172,
5212–5215, 5218, 5219, 5222, 5223,
5226–5232, 5235–5239, 5242–5246,
5249–5256, 5259–5264, 5267–5272
- \@mtc@setfont@true 5149, 5152, 5210
- \@mtc@setformat@false 5461, 5477
- \@mtc@setformat@true 5455, 5459
- \@mtc@setoffset@false 5798
- \@mtc@setoffset@true 5793, 5796
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false . 5511, 5536,
5558
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true 5533
- \@mtc@setrules@false . . 5587, 5612, 5634
- \@mtc@setrules@true 5609
- \@mtc@settitle@false 5337
- \@mtc@settitle@true 5332, 5335
- \@mtc@settitlefont@false 5296
- \@mtc@settitlefont@true . . . 5291, 5294
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false . . 2566
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true . . . 2671
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false 2565
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true 2670
- \@mtc@spn@ok@false 5555
- \@mtc@spn@ok@true 5553
- \@mtc@sru@ok@false 5631
- \@mtc@sru@ok@true 5629
- \@mtc@ss@insection@false 6117
- \@mtc@ss@insection@true 6132
- \@mtc@toc@used@false 6436, 6697
- \@mtc@toc@used@true 6702, 6711
- \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@false 2571
- \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true 2686
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false 2556
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true 2661
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false 2555
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true 2660
- \@mtcfixglossary@false 5942, 5944
- \@mtcfixglossary@true . . 5946, 5948, 5950
- \@mtcfixindex@false 5985, 5987
- \@mtcfixindex@true 5989, 5991, 5993
- \@mtcfixnomenclature@false . . 6028, 6030
- \@mtcfixnomenclature@true . . 6032, 6034,
6036
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@false 2688
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@true 2709
- \@namedef (command) 370
- \@namedef **5083, 5092, 5101, 5138, 5373**
- \@nameuse (command) 370
- \@nameuse**5083, 5151, 5170, 5293, 5334**, 5474,
5476, 5551, 5570, **5608**, 5645, 5708,
5710, 5751, 5795
- \@nobreakfalse . . . 3031, 3179, 3251, 3319,
3908, 3982, 4057, 4503, 4570, 4638
- \@part (command) 53, 279, 334, 415
- \@part **2775, 4069, 6638, 7391**
- \@partlof@used@false 2595
- \@partlof@used@true 3917
- \@partlot@used@false 2596
- \@partlot@used@true 3992
- \@parttoc@used@false 2594
- \@parttoc@used@true 3851
- \@plus 3345, 3357
- \@pnumwidth (command) 45
- \@pnumwidth . . 3365, **5382**, 5411, 5416, 5421,
5426, 5431, 5436, 5441, 5446, 5451
- \@pnumwith (command) 379
- \@pt (command) 646
- \@resetfont **3719, 3739**
- \@schapter (command) . . . 53, 281, 305, 415
- \@schapter **3332, 6657, 7394**
- \@secondoftwo 2721
- \@sect (command) . . . 53, 280, 356, 357, 416
- \@sect . . **2808, 4648**, 4655, **4694, 6676, 7397**
- \@sectlof@used@false 2607
- \@sectlof@used@true 4511
- \@sectlot@used@false 2608
- \@sectlot@used@true 4578
- \@secttoc@used@false 2606
- \@secttoc@used@true 4444
- \@spart (command) 53, 279, 334, 415
- \@spart **2775, 4069, 6638, 7391**
- \@ssect (command) 53, 280, 356, 416
- \@ssect **2808, 6676, 7397**
- \@starttoc (command) 283, 290
- \@svsec **4665**
- \@svsechd **4665**
- \@tempdima . . . 2889, 3350, 3351, 3362, 3363
- \@tempskipa **4665**
- \@tocfile (command) 296, 299, 302
- \@tocfile**3122**, 3127, 3130, 3175, **3192**, 3197,
3200, 3247, **3260**, 3265, 3268, 3315,
3850, 3857, 3894, 3916, 3923, 3971,
3990, 3998, 4046, 4443, 4450, 4491,
4510, 4517, 4561, 4577, 4584, 4628
- \@tocrmarg (command) 45, 46, 380
- \@tocrmarg . . . 2885, 3346, 3358, **5391**, 5412,
5417, 5422, 5427, 5432, 5437, 5442,
5447, 5452
- \@topnewpage **3812, 3819, 3826**, 7933
- \@undottedtocline (command) 285
- \@undottedtocline . **2881, 3168, 3240, 3308,**
3894, 3971, 4046, 4491, 4561, 4628
- \@width 3081
- \@xsect **4665**
- \\ **3108, 3166, 3180, 3236, 3252, 3304, 3320,**
3837
- \jobname.lan (file) 439

\jobname.mtc (file) 283
 \jobname.mtc0 (file) 283
 \~ 10498, 10502, 10506
 2c.tex (old example document) 664, 666

Numbers

\2 **9145**
 \8 **8459, 9145**

A

\a@tok 8028
 aathira (malayalam package) 550
 ABOLHASSANI, Hassan 503, 504, 673
 above (placeins package) 30–32, 183
 ABRAHAMS, Paul W. 673, ↪[1, 2]
 abstract (package) . . 53, 70, 88, 160, 206, 252,
 413, 650, ↪[387]
 abstract (environment) 53, 70
 ABU EL-ATA, Nabil 673
 acadian (language option) 467, 647
 acadian.mld (file) 242, 244, 467
 acadien (language option) 39, 467, 647
 acadien.mld (file) 242, 244, 467
 acadien.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 467
 add.bib (old example document) . . . 665, 666
 add.tex (old example document) . . . 664, 666
 ADDABBO, Tommaso 673
 \addappheadtotoc (command) 64, 105
 \addappheadtotoc **770**
 \addcoffeeline (command) 224, 401
 \addcoffeeline **6096, 7843**
 \addcontentsline (command) 34, 50, 51, 64,
 201, 202
 \addcontentsline 24,
 441, 486, 487, 720, 721, 843, 1041,
 1104, 1759, 2333, 2785, 2812–2815,
 2821–2824, **3040, 3327**, 4071–4073,
 4648, 4655, 4665, 5942, 5985, 6028,
 7810, 7860, 7942, 7945, 7949, 7952
 addsec.tex (old example document) 656, 657,
 664, 666
 \addst@rred (command) 305
 \addst@rred **3040, 3062, 3337**
 \addstarred (command) 644
 \addstarredchapter (command) . . 34, 201,
 250, 305
 \addstarredchapter **1104, 3337, 7860**
 \addstarredpart (command) . . 34, 201, 305

\addstarredpart **3337, 7860**
 \addstarredsection (command) . . 34, 201,
 292, 305
 \addstarredsection . 898, **3062, 3337, 7860**
 \addto (command) 75
 \addtocontents (command) 63, 64
 \addtocontents . . . **1188, 3332, 4069, 4694**,
 5838, 5852, 5886, 6096
 \addtocontentsline **1040**
 \addtocounter (command) 35, 50
 \addtocounter 1030, **2772**, 3075–3077, **3577**,
 3642, 3703, 3766–3768, 4265, 4325,
 4385, 4403–4405, 4869, 4929, 4989
 \addtolength **1203, 1750**, 3114, 3115, 3844,
 3845, 4437, 4438
 addtotoc (abstract package) 53, 70, 160, 206
 \addvspace **2494**
 \adjustmtc (command) 35, 50, 64, 87, 98, 142,
 206, 282, 293, 653
 \adjustmtc . **479, 754, 772, 2344, 2820, 3066**,
 7614
 \adjustptc (command) . 35, 87, 93, 206, 253,
 279, 321, 653
 \adjustptc 25, **1443, 2785, 3754, 7614**
 \adjuststc (command) . 35, 64, 87, 104, 206,
 281, 346, 653
 \adjuststc **713, 2811, 4397, 7614**
 \ae **9364**
 afoot (package) ↪[392]
 afrikaan (language option) 39, 468, 469
 afrikaan.mld (file) 242, 244, 468, 469
 afrikaans (language option) 39, 469
 afrikaans.mld (file) 242, 244, 469
 afrsud-l.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 468
 afrsud-p.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 468
 after (feature) . 48, 49, 81, 86, 138, 189, 207,
 216, 288, 289
 \afterminilof (command) 48, 86, 301
 \afterminilof **2992, 3252, 7757**
 \afterminilot (command) 48, 86, 304
 \afterminilot **2992, 3320, 7757**
 \afterminitoc (command) 48, 86, 298
 \afterminitoc **2992, 3180, 7757**
 afterpage (package) 207, 657, ↪[104]
 \afterpartlof (command) . 48, 86, 331, 645
 \afterpartlof **2985, 3984, 7742**
 \afterpartlot (command) . 48, 86, 333, 645
 \afterpartlot **2985, 4059, 7742**
 \afterparttoc (command) . 48, 86, 328, 645
 \afterparttoc **2985, 3910, 7742**
 \aftersectlof (command) 48, 86, 353
 \aftersectlof **2995, 4572, 7772**
 \aftersectlot (command) 48, 86, 355

- `\aftersectlot` **2995, 4640, 7772**
- `\aftersecttoc` (command) 48, 86, 350
- `\aftersecttoc` **2995, 4505, 7772**
- AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. 477, 673, \hookrightarrow [55]
- AICARDI, Stéphane 673, \hookrightarrow [3]
- AKOPIAN, Vartan 208, 473, 673, \hookrightarrow [123]
- alba-eth.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 469
- albania.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 469
- albanian (language option) 39, 469
- albanian.dtx (file) 469
- albanian.mld (file) 242, 244, 469
- Aleph (package) 221, 232, \hookrightarrow [44, 170]
- ALEX, A.J. 550–554, 673, \hookrightarrow [4, 5]
- ALFORD, Mark 673, \hookrightarrow [6]
- allemand.jpg (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 513
- `\alloc@` 2827
- alnumsec (package) . 54, 76, 88, 185, 207, 254, 274, 428, 662, \hookrightarrow [228]
- `\Alph` 1315, 1316
- alphanum (package) . 53, 75, 88, 170, 207, 408, 660, \hookrightarrow [96]
- ambili (malayalam package) 550
- amem.tex (old example document) 664
- american (language option) 39, 470
- american.mld (file) . 242, 244, 406, 470, 645
- amsart (class) . 53, 66, 88, 170, 207, 413, 648, \hookrightarrow [7]
- amsart.cls (file) 207
- amsbook (class) 53, 66, 88, 160, 207, 413, 648, \hookrightarrow [7]
- amsbook.cls (file) 207
- amsproc (class) 53, 66, 88, 171, 207, 413, 648, \hookrightarrow [7]
- amsproc.cls (file) 207
- anahka (malayalam package) 550
- ANDRÉ, Jacques 673, \hookrightarrow [8, 279]
- ANDRIEUX, Jérôme 673
- ANGELI, Ralf 673
- anglo.png (graphic file) 243–245, 496
- Antomega (package) 207, 466, 515, 517, 518, 541, 563, 570, 571, 581, 584, \hookrightarrow [226]
- app-mem.tex (old example document) . . 666
- APPEL, Walter 673, \hookrightarrow [9]
- appendices (environment) . 64, 105, 207, 226
- appendix (package) . 53, 64, 65, 88, 161, 207, 251, 409, 647, 662, \hookrightarrow [388]
- `\appendix` (command) 63
- `\appendix23` 491, 724, 959, **1164, 2231**, 3051, 3497, 4195
- `\appendix@mtcck` . 5200, 5228, 5237, 5244, 5251, 5261, 5269
- `\appendixmtc` **7643**
- apx.tex (old example document) 666
- arab (language option) 39, 470–472
- arab.mld (file) . . 208, 242, 244, 470, 472, 644
- arab2 (language option) 39, 471
- arab2.mld (file) 208, 242, 244, 471, 661
- Arabi (package) . . . 39, 44, 208, 472, 505, 665, \hookrightarrow [204]
- arabi (language option) 39, 472
- arabi.mld (file) 208, 242, 244, 472, 665
- arabic (language option) 39, 208, 472
- `\arabic` 323–346, 348–383, 1756, 2134–2159, 3066, 3078, **3481, 3601, 3662**, 3757, 3769, 4632, 4783, **4814**, 4879, 4939, **5838, 5852, 5886**, 7025, 7033, 7041, 7354–7356, 7360–7362, 7365–7367, 7372–7374, 7377–7379, 7382–7384
- arabic.ldf (file) 208
- arabic.mld (file) 208, 242, 244, 472
- arabic.png (graphic file) 243–245, 471
- ArabTeX (package) . 39, 44, 208, 466, 470, 471, 525, \hookrightarrow [230, 231]
- ARADIAN, Achod André 673
- armenian (language option) 39, 208, 473
- armenian.mld (file) 208, 242, 244, 473
- armeniar.jpg (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 473
- ArmTeX (package) . . 44, 208, 466, 473, 644, \hookrightarrow [123]
- ÁRNASON, Einar 530, 673, \hookrightarrow [56]
- ARNOLD, Tim 311, 673
- ARPONEN, Jouko 673, \hookrightarrow [10]
- ARSENEAU, Donald 30, 31, 52, 88, 231, 251, 271, 277, 282, 298, 301, 304, 641, 644, 647, 659, 668, 673, \hookrightarrow [11–17, 400]
- article (class) 26, 37, 38, 60, 61, 71, 100, 105, 125, 146, 197, 198, 208, 212, 214, 220, 222, 226, 227, 234–236, 239, 280, 288, 322, 438, \hookrightarrow [236]
- ashtamudi (malayalam package) 550
- ASLASKEN, Helmer 673, \hookrightarrow [18, 19]
- ASPINALL, David 673
- ÅSSEN, Ivar 562, 673
- aswathi (malayalam package) 550
- `\AtBeginDocument` (command) 75, 171, 174, 208, 272–276, 291, 321, 345, 368, 369, 380, 408, 414, 437, 438
- `\AtBeginDocument` **2616, 2642, 2658, 2660, 2662, 2664, 2666, 2668, 2670, 2672, 2674, 2676, 2678, 2680, 2682, 2684–2687, 3032, 3748, 4390, 5029, 5381, 5852, 5886, 6100, 6435, 6638, 7387, 7409, 7793**

\AtEndDocument (command) . 208, 408, 417, 437, 453
 \AtEndDocument . . . **2622, 6219, 6435, 6720, 7386, 7387, 7794**
 australian (language option) 39, 474
 australian.mld (file) 242, 244, 474
 austrian (language option) 39, 474
 austrian.mld (file) 242, 244, 474
 \author 1758
 ayilyambold (malayalam package) 550

B

babel (package)
 39, 44, 75, 122, 208, 216, 249, 466, 468, 469, 474, 475, 477, 481–484, 490, 492–494, 496–499, 505, 507–512, 514, 515, 527, 530–532, 539–541, 543–545, 548, 549, 557–563, 565–568, 570, 572, 576, 578, 580, 581, 584, 587, 590, 593, 595, 597, 642, 643, 651, 661, ↪[47, 49, 67]
 BACHMANN, Philipp 673
 backref (package) ↪[110]
 BADENES, Gonçal 490, 673, ↪[57]
 bahasa (language option) 39, 474
 bahasa.dtx (file) 474
 bahasa.mld (file) 242, 244, 474
 bahasai (language option) 39, 474, 530
 bahasai.mld (file) 242, 244, 474, 530
 bahasam (language option) . 39, 475, 549, 555
 bahasam.dtx (file) 475
 bahasam.mld (file) . . 242, 244, 475, 549, 555
 BALDRIDGE, Jason 673, ↪[20]
 BALGARENSKY, Marin 673
 baltes.pdf (graphic file) . 243–245, 542, 544
 bangla (language option) . . 39, 209, 257, 476, 478, 646, 672
 bangla.mld (file) 242, 244, 476, 478
 bangla.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 477
 bangla2.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 477
 BangTeX (package) . . 44, 209, 466, 476, 657, ↪[304]
 BARROCA, Leonor 88, 673, ↪[322]
 \baselineskip **1966**
 \baselinestretch 1306
 basque (language option) 39, 477
 basque.dtx (file) 477
 basque.mld (file) 242, 244, 477
 basque1.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 478
 basque2.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 478
 BASSI, Giancarlo 585, 673

BASSO, Pierre 673, ↪[22]
 BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov 557, 673, ↪[23]
 BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves 673
 BAUSUM, David 673, ↪[24, 25]
 BAYART, Benjamin . 49, 252, 370, 648, 649, 673, ↪[26, 27]
 BAYET, Thierry 673, ↪[27]
 \bcg **8165**
 BECCARI, Claudio 532, 534, 539–541, 673, ↪[28, 29, 58, 66]
 BEFFARA, Emmanuel 61, 673, ↪[30]
 before (feature) 48, 49, 81, 86, 138, 189, 209, 216, 288, 289
 \beforeminilof (command) . . . 48, 86, 300
 \beforeminilof **2979, 3205, 7757**
 \beforeminilot (command) . . . 48, 86, 303
 \beforeminilot **2979, 3273, 7757**
 \beforeminitoc (command) . . . 48, 86, 297
 \beforeminitoc **2979, 3135, 7757**
 \beforepartlof (command) 48, 86, 329, 645
 \beforepartlof **2972, 3929, 7742**
 \beforepartlot (command) 48, 86, 331, 645
 \beforepartlot **2972, 4004, 7742**
 \beforeparttoc (command) 48, 86, 250, 288, 326, 452, 645
 \beforeparttoc **2972, 3863, 7742**
 \beforesectlof (command) . . . 48, 86, 351
 \beforesectlof **2982, 4523, 7772**
 \beforesectlot (command) . . . 48, 86, 353
 \beforesectlot **2982, 4590, 7772**
 \beforesecttoc (command) . . . 48, 86, 348
 \beforesecttoc **2982, 4456, 7772**
 \begingroup . 2718, 3027, 3168, 3240, 3308, 3894, 3971, 4046, 4491, 4561, 4628, 4673
 BELET, Benoît 673, ↪[279]
 belgique.pdf (graphic file) . . 243–245, 495
 BELMOUHOU, Rachid 673, ↪[31]
 below (placeins package) 30–32, 184
 bengali (language option) . 39, 209, 257, 476, 478, 672
 bengali.mld (file) 242, 244, 478
 BÉRCES, József 548, 549, 673, ↪[59]
 BERDNIKOV, Alexander 673, ↪[32–35]
 BERGER, Jens 673, ↪[36]
 BERRY, Karl 673, ↪[1, 2, 37, 38]
 BEYENE, Berhanu 500, 502, 673, ↪[39]
 BEZOS, Javier 88, 511, 519, 581, 585, 673, ↪[40–43]
 \bfseries (command) 231
 \bfseries 1235, 1237, 1261, 1264, 1286, 1291, 1295, 1298, 1532, 1534, 1570, 1572, 1755, 2178–2182,

2184–2187, 3090, 3095, 3779, 3788,
3792, 3802, 4410, 4418

Bg5.cap (file) 491

Bg5.cpx (file) 491

bhanu (malayalam package) 550

bhavana (malayalam package) 550

\bibitem **2010, 2344**

\bibliography (command) 50, 142

\bibliography **479, 713**

\bibliographystyle **479, 713**

bibtopic (package) 60, 209, ⇨[22]

bibtotoc (KOMA-Script package) . . . 50, 142

bibtotocnumbered (KOMA-Script package) 50

bibunit (environment) 209

bibunits (package) 60, 209, 228, ⇨[176]

bicig (language option) 39, 225, 478–480, 591

bicig.mld (file) 242, 244, 478, 591

bicig2 (language option) 39, 479, 592

bicig2.mld (file) 242, 244, 479, 592, 655

bicig3 (language option) 39, 480, 592

bicig3.mld (file) 242, 244, 480, 592, 661

\bigskipamount (command) 29, 30, 81, 265,
443

\bigskipamount 2496, **7439**

BILOTTA, Giuseppe 232, 673, ⇨[44]

Bíró, Árpád 548, 549, 673, ⇨[59]

bithe (language option) 39, 225, 480, 555

bithe.mld (file) 242, 244, 480, 555, 655

BITOUZÉ, Denis 673, ⇨[45]

BLANKENSHIP, Dr. Barbara 673, ⇨[195]

BLOCH, Laurent 673

bo.tex (old example document) 666

BONVILA, Onofre 583, 673

book (class) . 26, 37, 38, 46, 47, 49, 60, 61, 71,
76, 110, 128, 197, 198, 209, 212, 214,
217, 220, 226, 227, 234, 236, 239,
280, 281, 288, 322, 665, ⇨[236]

book.cls (file) 71

booktabs (package) 22, 209, ⇨[143]

BOSNAKOV, Georgi N. 483, 673, ⇨[60]

bosnia.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 578

BOUGETTE, Patrice 673

BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 673

BOWDEN, Andrew 672, 673

BOYKO, Victor 573, 673, ⇨[46]

BRAAMS, Johannes L. 44, 208, 249, 468, 496–498,
514, 531, 560, 562, 597, 642, 673,
⇨[47–95, 138, 234–237, 276–279]

BRAUN, Felix 88, 207, 220, 673, ⇨[96]

brazil (language option) 39, 481, 482

brazil.mld (file) 242, 244, 481, 482

brazil.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 481

brazilian (language option) 39, 482

brazilian.mld (file) 242, 244, 482, 652

brazilp.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 481

BREEN, Jim 673, ⇨[97]

BREITENLOHNER, Peter 673, ⇨[98]

bretagne.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 482

breton (language option) 39, 482

breton.dtx (file) 482

breton.mld (file) 242, 244, 482

british (language option) 39, 483

british.mld (file) 242, 244, 483, 652

BUDOSÓ, Gyöngyi 673, ⇨[99, 100]

bulgarian (language option) 39, 483

bulgarian.dtx (file) 483

bulgarian.mld (file) 242, 244, 483, 645

bulgarianb (language option) 39, 484

bulgarianb.mld (file) 44, 242, 244, 484, 650

bulgariar.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 484

bulgmap.png (graphic file) 243–245, 484

BURBANK, Mimi 673, ⇨[314]

BURC, Mustafa 590, 673, ⇨[61]

buryat (language option) 39, 485, 486

buryat.mld (file) 242, 244, 485

buryat2 (language option) 39, 486

buryat2.mld (file) 242, 244, 486, 661

buryatia-l.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 485

buryatia.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 485

BURYKIN, Alexey 673, ⇨[33–35]

C

\C **9631, 9661**

\c@lofdepth **3032, 3236, 3748**, 3968, 3969,
4390, 4558, 4559

\c@lotdepth (command) 304

\c@lotdepth **3032, 3304, 3748**, 4043, 4044,
4390, 4625, 4626

\c@minilofdepth (command) 301

\c@minilofdepth **3236**

\c@minilotdepth (command) 304

\c@minilotdepth **3304**

\c@minitocdepth (command) 297

\c@minitocdepth **3166, 7439**

\c@mtc **3040**, 7359, 7363, 7376, 7380, **7446**

\c@mti (command) 642

\c@mti **3097, 3135, 3205, 3273, 3414, 3433**,
3452

\c@page 1734

\c@partlofdepth 3968

\c@partlotdepth 4043

\c@parttocdepth **3892, 7439**

\c@ptc **3040**, 7353, 7357, 7371, 7375, **7446**

\c@pti **3804, 3826, 3868, 3936, 4011, 4097**,
4116, 4135

- \c@secnumdepth . . . 1234, 4665, 4678, 4687, 7921, 7939
- \c@sectlofdepth **4556**
- \c@sectlotdepth **4623**
- \c@secttocdepth **4489, 7439**
- \c@stc . . **3040**, 7364, 7368, 7381, 7385, **7446**
- \c@sti . **4419, 4458, 4526, 4593, 4717, 4736, 4755**
- \c@tocdepth (command) 297, 301
- \c@tocdepth . 2883, **3166**, 3344, 3356, **3892, 4489, 4556, 4623**
- calc (package) 22, 209, \hookrightarrow [360]
- canada-l.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 488
- canada-pe.png (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 488
- canada-pf.pdf (graphic file) 243–245
- canada.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 487
- canada1.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 487
- canadian (language option) 39, 486, 647
- canadian.mld (file) 242, 244, 486
- canadien (language option) 39, 489, 647
- canadien.mld (file) 242, 244, 489
- captcont (package) . . . 54, 76, 88, 185, 209, 254, 274, 428, 662, \hookrightarrow [117]
- caption (package) . . . 54, 72, 88, 172, 209, 210, 253, 274, 428, 654, \hookrightarrow [346]
- \caption (command) 30, 218, 640
- \caption 56, 59, 62, 65, 73, 76, 79, 82, 90, 93, 96, 99, 115, 118, 121, 124, 130, 133, 138, 141, 147, 150, 153, 156, 417, 418, 434, 435, 472, 473, 477, 478, 499, 500, 504, 505, 513, 514, 518, 519, 584, 585, 599, 600, 634, 635, 639, 640, 653, 654, 670, 671, 706, 707, 711, 712, 730, 731, 735, 736, 744, 745, 749, 750, 882, 893, 925, 947, 970, 1084, 1090, 1101, 1137, 1158, 1177, 1603, 1607, 1612, 1616, 1623, 1628, 1632, 1651, 1655, 1660, 1664, 1671, 1676, 1680, 1701, 1707, 1716, 1722, 2205, 2249, 2468
- caption2 (package) . . . 54, 72, 88, 172, 209, 210, 253, 275, 429, 654, \hookrightarrow [344, 345]
- \captions (command) 75
- captions.dn (file) 528
- CARCAGNO, Samuele 673, \hookrightarrow [101]
- CARDI, Olivier 673, \hookrightarrow [102]
- CARELLA, David 673, \hookrightarrow [102]
- CARLISLE, David P. 28, 217, 240, 310, 640, 673, \hookrightarrow [62, 103–110, 277–279, 281]
- CARMODY, Kevin 495, 528, 673, \hookrightarrow [306]
- CARRIBA, Manuel 511, 673, \hookrightarrow [63, 64]
- CASPAR, Régis 673
- castillan (language option) 39, 489, 581
- castillan.mld (file) 242, 244, 489
- castillian (language option) 39
- castillian.mld (file) 242, 244, 489, 652
- catalan (language option) 39, 490, 581
- catalan-d.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 490
- catalan-p.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 490
- catalan.dtx (file) 490
- catalan.mld (file) 242, 244, 490
- CATALOG (file) 210, 242–244, 669
- \catcode 2719
- caucasus.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 473
- ccaption (package) . . . 54, 72, 88, 173, 210, 253, 275, 429, 654, \hookrightarrow [391]
- \centering . . . 1700, 1706, 1715, 1721, 2193, 2242, 2412, 2432, 3830
- CervanT $\text{\text{E}}$ X (package) 44, 585, \hookrightarrow [43]
- \cftpagenumbersoff **196, 1211**, 2902–2906, 2913–2916, 2925–2930, 2932, 2934, 2936, 2938, 2940, 2942
- \cftpagenumberon . 2896–2900, 2908–2911, 2918–2923, 2931, 2933, 2935, 2937, 2939, 2941
- \cftsecfont **196, 1930, 1932, 1939**
- \cftsecindent **1203**
- \cftsecnumwidth **1203**
- \cftsetrmarg **1750**
- \cftsubsecfont **1930, 1932, 1939**
- \cftsubsecindent **1203, 1750**
- \cftsubsecnumwidth **1203**
- \cftsubsubsecindent **1203**
- \cftsubsubsecnumwidth **1203**
- ch0.tex (old example document) . . . 664, 666
- \ch@pt@c 7902, 7906, 7908, 7914, 7916
- CHANG, Winston 673, \hookrightarrow [111]
- \chapbegin (command) 308
- \chapbegin **3399**
- \chapter (command) 26–29, 37, 38, 46, 49, 51, 53, 59, 63, 65, 67, 68, 70, 78, 83, 132, 153, 158, 159, 164, 165, 167, 169, 171, 208, 209, 214, 234, 235, 280, 281, 283, 288–290, 292, 294, 295, 299, 302, 305, 307, 311–313, 322, 323, 325, 326, 328, 329, 331–333, 345, 402, 414, 415, 438, 639
- chapter (counter) 269
- \chapter 13, 18, 31, 36, 53, 67, 84, 112, 126, 144, **160**, 173, 178, 183, 199, 201, 218, 225, 235, 244, 280, 281, 284, 285, 290, 291, 320, **411**, 436, 451, 465, 492, 506, 765, **770, 929**, 991, 1034, **1071**, 1104, 1126, 1141, **1167**, 1324,

- 1399, **1427**, **1443**, **1511**, **1536**, 1576,
1637, **1658**, **1696**, **1759**, **1909**, **1946**,
1966, **2039**, **2053**, **2077**, **2125**, **2189**,
2231, 2270, 2275, 2280, **2286**, 2317,
2319, 2331, 2333, **2425**, 2704, **2792**,
2818, **2819**, **2972**, **2985**, 3048, **3062**,
3119, **3189**, **3257**, **3337**, **3481**, **4192**,
5923, 5948, 5966, 5991, 6009, 6034,
6638, **6657**, **7394**, **7787**
- `\chapter*` (command) . 34, 35, 72, 87, 93, 97,
234, 251, 281, 292, 639, 645, 646
- `\chapter*` **436**, **1104**, **1399**, **1443**, **2270**, **2317**,
2331, **2333**
- `\chapter@mtcck` . . . 5199, 5227, 5236, 5243,
5250, 5260, 5268
- `\chapterbegin` **3332**, **3577**, **3642**, **3703**, **7620**
- `chapterbib` (package) . . . 60, 211, 228, \hookrightarrow [16]
- `\chapterend` (command) 64, 639, 640
- `\chapterend` . . **3332**, **3577**, **3642**, **3703**, **7620**
- `\chapterfont` **1750**
- `\chaptermark` 7926
- `\chapternumberline` 7943, 7946
- `\chardef` 2827
- CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme 673,
 \hookrightarrow [45, 221, 279, 364]
- CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal 673, \hookrightarrow [112]
- checkfiles** (default option) . 30, 34, 61, 154,
174–176, 211, 231, 251, 401, 645
- CHEN, Pehong 673, \hookrightarrow [113]
- CHEONG, Otfried 673, \hookrightarrow [114]
- CHEVALIER, Céline 673, \hookrightarrow [9]
- `chine1.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 491
- `chine2.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 491
- `chinese1` (language option) 39, 491
- `chinese1.mld` (file) 242, 244, 491, 648
- `chinese1.mlo` (file) 242, 244, 491
- `chinese2` (language option) 39, 491, 492
- `chinese2.mld` (file) 242, 244, 491, 648
- `chinese2.mlo` (file) 242, 244, 491, 492
- `chippi` (malayalam package) 550
- CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana 580, 673, \hookrightarrow [65]
- `chnpage` (package) . . 211, 257, 672, \hookrightarrow [384]
- CHOU, Pai H. 673, \hookrightarrow [115]
- `cite` (package) 669, \hookrightarrow [13]
- `\cite` (command) 52, 80, 211, 231
- `\cite` 421, 588, 657, 2000, 2001
- CJK (package) . 39, 44, 211, 212, 237, 239, 466,
491, 520, 522–524, 535–537, 589,
 \hookrightarrow [18, 19, 115, 141, 250, 251, 310]
- Classes
- `amsart` 53, 66, 88, 170, 207, 413, 648, \hookrightarrow [7]
- `amsbook` . 53, 66, 88, 160, 207, 413, 648,
 \hookrightarrow [7]
- `amsproc` . . 53, 66, 88, 171, 207, 413, 648,
 \hookrightarrow [7]
- `article` 26, 37, 38,
60, 61, 71, 100, 105, 125, 146, 197,
198, 208, 212, 214, 220, 222, 226,
227, 234–236, 239, 280, 288, 322,
438, \hookrightarrow [236]
- `book` . . . 26, 37, 38, 46, 47, 49, 60, 61, 71,
76, 110, 128, 197, 198, 209, 212, 214,
217, 220, 226, 227, 234, 236, 239,
280, 281, 288, 322, 665, \hookrightarrow [236]
- `jura` 53, 75, 88, 171, 207, 220, 408, 414, 660,
 \hookrightarrow [96]
- `letter` 26, 60, 198, 212, 220, 221, 235,
 \hookrightarrow [237]
- `ltnews` 26, 212, 222, \hookrightarrow [208]
- `ltxdoc` 26, 212, 222, \hookrightarrow [105]
- `memoir` 53, 64–66, 72, 88, 105, 132,
133, 156, 158, 159, 161, 195, 203,
223, 226–228, 241, 251, 253, 257,
267, 276, 285, 311, 412, 458, 647,
652–654, 672, \hookrightarrow [396, 397, 399]
- `proc` 26, 212, 234, 235, \hookrightarrow [235]
- `report` . . . 26, 37, 38, 46, 47, 49, 60, 61, 71,
75, 76, 110, 126, 197, 198, 212, 214,
217, 220, 226, 227, 234, 236, 239,
280, 281, 288, 322, 665, \hookrightarrow [236]
- `scrartcl` . . 42, 50, 53, 75, 88, 161, 220, 235,
236, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
- `scrbook` 42, 50, 53,
75, 88, 122, 127, 161, 220, 226, 227,
235, 236, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
- `scrlettr` 220, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
- `scrlltr2` 220, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
- `scrreprt` . 42, 50, 53, 75, 88, 142, 161, 220,
227, 235, 236, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
- `slides` 212, \hookrightarrow [271]
- `\cleardoublepage` (command) 47–49, 72, 86,
128, 288, 289, 325
- `\cleardoublepage` . . 1718, 1732, **2976**, **2989**
- `\clearpage` (command) . . 47, 49, 72, 288, 325
- CLEGG, Marian 673
- `close` (feature) 48,
49, 81, 86, 137–139, 189, 212, 216,
227, 256, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304,
327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 671
- `\closeinilof` (command) 48, 86
- `\closeinilof` 3002, **3240**, **7757**
- `\closeinilot` (command) 48, 86
- `\closeinilot` 3003, **3308**, **7757**
- `\closeinitoc` (command) 48, 86
- `\closeinitoc` 3001, **3168**, **7757**
- `\closeout` 2768, 2771, **2841**, 3471–3473, **3485**,
3497, **3530**, **3577**, **3605**, **3642**, **3666**,

- 3703, 4154–4156, 4174, 4188, 4262,
4286, 4322, 4346, 4382, 4774–4776,
4795, **4814**, 4866, 4891, 4926, 4951,
4986, 7344, 7347
- \closepartlof (command) 48, 86
\closepartlof 2999, **3971**, **7742**
\closepartlot (command) 48, 86
\closepartlot 3000, **4046**, **7742**
\closeparttoc (command) 48, 86
\closeparttoc 2998, **3894**, **7742**
\closesectlof (command) 48, 86
\closesectlof 3005, **4561**, **7772**
\closesectlot (command) 48, 86
\closesectlot 3006, **4628**, **7772**
\closesecttoc (command) 48, 86
\closesecttoc 3004, **4491**, **7772**
\clubpenalty (command) 641
cmcyralt (package) 573, 574, \hookrightarrow [46, 188]
cmcyralt.sty (file) 574
cmk (script) . 212, 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 254,
669
COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . 34, 54, 76, 88, 673,
 \hookrightarrow [116–118]
CODOGNO, Maurizio 532, 534, 673, \hookrightarrow [66]
\coffee (command) 312
\coffee **3527**, **4192**, **4798**
\coffeeFont (command) 294
\coffeeFont **3096**, **3343**, **3739**, **7687**
\coffeeline (command) 224, 401
\coffeeline **6096**, **7843**
color (package) 115, \hookrightarrow [109]
\colorbox 1275
\columnbreak 1263, 1280
\columnsep 1271
\columnseprule 1270
\columnwidth **3066**, 3081, **3135**, **3185**, **3205**,
3273, **3772**, **3880**, **3948**, **4027**, **4397**,
4473, **4540**, **4607**, **5056**, **5065**, **5074**
Commands
 \@@dominitoc 308
 \@Undottedtocline 306
 \@Undottedtoclinep 306, 307
 \@caption 640
 \@chapter 53, 281, 305, 415
 \@dominitoc 308
 \@dominitoc@used@true 308
 \@dosectlot 650
 \@dotsep 44–46, 380
 \@dottedtocline 71, 285, 307, 327, 330,
333, 349, 352, 355
 \@filesWfalse 647
 \@gobble 648
 \@gobblethree 403
 \@gobbletwo 448
 \@ifnextchar 296, 299, 302, 368, 447
 \@ifundefined 281, 282, 292, 319, 367
 \@input 314, 317, 319, 340, 342, 344
 \@inputcheck 60, 284, 641
 \@minilof@used@true 299
 \@minilot@used@true 302
 \@minitoc@used@true 296
 \@mtc@FEfalse 278
 \@mtc@FEtrue 278
 \@mtc@longext@false 283
 \@mtc@longext@true 283
 \@namedef 370
 \@nameuse 370
 \@part 53, 279, 334, 415
 \@pnumwidth 45
 \@pnumwith 379
 \@pt 646
 \@schapter 53, 281, 305, 415
 \@sect 53, 280, 356, 357, 416
 \@spart 53, 279, 334, 415
 \@ssect 53, 280, 356, 416
 \@starttoc 283, 290
 \@tocfile 296, 299, 302
 \@tocrmarg 45, 46, 380
 \@undottedtocline 285
 \addappheadtotoc 64, 105
 \addcoffeeline 224, 401
 \addcontentsline . . 34, 50, 51, 64, 201,
202
 \addst@rred 305
 \addstarred 644
 \addstarredchapter . . 34, 201, 250, 305
 \addstarredpart 34, 201, 305
 \addstarredsection . . 34, 201, 292, 305
 \addto 75
 \addtocontents 63, 64
 \addtocounter 35, 50
 \adjustmtc . . 35, 50, 64, 87, 98, 142, 206,
282, 293, 653
 \adjustptc 35, 87, 93, 206, 253, 279, 321,
653
 \adjuststc 35, 64, 87, 104, 206, 281, 346,
653
 \afterminilof 48, 86, 301
 \afterminilot 48, 86, 304
 \afterminitoc 48, 86, 298
 \afterpartlof 48, 86, 331, 645
 \afterpartlot 48, 86, 333, 645
 \afterparttoc 48, 86, 328, 645
 \aftersectlof 48, 86, 353
 \aftersectlot 48, 86, 355
 \aftersecttoc 48, 86, 350
 \appendix 63

- \AtBeginDocument 75, 171, 174, 208, 272–276, 291, 321, 345, 368, 369, 380, 408, 414, 437, 438
- \AtEndDocument 208, 408, 417, 437, 453
- \beforeminilof 48, 86, 300
- \beforeminilot 48, 86, 303
- \beforeminitoc 48, 86, 297
- \beforepartlof 48, 86, 329, 645
- \beforepartlot 48, 86, 331, 645
- \beforeparttoc 48, 86, 250, 288, 326, 452, 645
- \beforesectlof 48, 86, 351
- \beforesectlot 48, 86, 353
- \beforesecttoc 48, 86, 348
- \bfseries 231
- \bibliography 50, 142
- \bigskipamount 29, 30, 81, 265, 443
- \c@lotdepth 304
- \c@minilofdepth 301
- \c@minilotdepth 304
- \c@minitocdepth 297
- \c@mti 642
- \c@tocdepth 297, 301
- \caption 30, 218, 640
- \captions 75
- \chapbegin 308
- \chapter 26–29, 37, 38, 46, 49, 51, 53, 59, 63, 65, 67, 68, 70, 78, 83, 132, 153, 158, 159, 164, 165, 167, 169, 171, 208, 209, 214, 234, 235, 280, 281, 283, 288–290, 292, 294, 295, 299, 302, 305, 307, 311–313, 322, 323, 325, 326, 328, 329, 331–333, 345, 402, 414, 415, 438, 639
- \chapter* 34, 35, 72, 87, 93, 97, 234, 251, 281, 292, 639, 645, 646
- \chapterend 64, 639, 640
- \cite 52, 80, 211, 231
- \cleardoublepage 47–49, 72, 86, 128, 288, 289, 325
- \clearpage 47, 49, 72, 288, 325
- \closeminilof 48, 86
- \closeminilot 48, 86
- \closeminitoc 48, 86
- \closepartlof 48, 86
- \closepartlot 48, 86
- \closeparttoc 48, 86
- \closesectlof 48, 86
- \closesectlot 48, 86
- \closesecttoc 48, 86
- \clubpenalty 641
- \coffee 312
- \coffeeont 294
- \coffeeline 224, 401
- \contentsline 62, 279, 281, 282, 308
- \count@ 443
- \csname 320, 371, 374
- \decrementmtc 35, 87, 206, 293, 652
- \decrementptc 35, 87, 206, 253, 321, 652
- \decrementstc 35, 87, 206, 346, 652
- \def 74
- \df@mtilf 294
- \df@mtilt 294
- \df@mtitc 294
- \dimen@ 443
- \do@mtilf 294
- \do@mtilt 294
- \do@mtitc 294
- \documentclass 29, 31, 33, 78, 122, 205, 212, 216, 234
- \dominilof 28, 29, 41, 83, 87, 159, 165, 178, 182, 234, 299, 307, 308, 334
- \dominilot 28, 29, 41, 83, 87, 160, 165, 178, 183, 234, 302, 307, 308, 334
- \dominitoc 28, 29, 41, 50, 55, 61, 78, 83, 87, 143, 157, 159, 166, 178, 182, 234, 240, 249, 252, 295, 296, 307, 308, 334, 357, 438, 640, 642, 648, 649
- \dominitoc@ 308
- \dopartlof 29, 33, 40, 41, 82, 87, 159, 166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336
- \dopartlot 29, 33, 40, 41, 82, 87, 160, 166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336
- \doparttoc 29, 33, 40, 41, 53, 63, 82, 87, 157, 166, 179, 182, 234, 283, 334, 335, 416, 418, 420
- \dosectlof 29, 31, 41, 84, 87, 159, 166, 179, 183, 234, 267, 357, 358
- \dosectlot 29, 31, 41, 53, 84, 87, 160, 167, 179, 183, 234, 267, 283, 358, 359
- \dosecttoc 29, 31, 41, 84, 87, 157, 167, 179, 183, 234, 346, 357, 358
- \edef 257, 320, 383, 672
- \else 266
- \empty 47–49, 86, 288, 448, 452, 641
- \endcsname 320, 371, 374
- \endmtc@verse 295
- \endmtchideinmainlof 69, 87, 226
- \endmtchideinmainlot 69, 87, 126, 127, 227
- \endptc@verse 324
- \enlargethispage 58
- \expandafter 371
- \fake@starttoc 290

- \fakelistoffigures . 29, 31, 33, 81–84, 179–181, 290
- \fakelistoftables 29, 31, 33, 53, 81–84, 180, 181, 290
- \faketableofcontents 29, 31, 33, 53, 55, 81–84, 93, 180, 181, 290, 416, 422, 640
- \fi 241, 266, 439
- \figure 315
- \firstchapteris 28, 50, 54, 89, 164, 176, 206, 211, 216, 293, 433, 642, 643
- \firstpartis . . 28, 50, 54, 89, 164, 176, 206, 216, 321, 433
- \firstsectionis 28, 50, 54, 89, 165, 176, 206, 216, 346, 434
- \FloatBarrier 30, 217, 233, 652
- \footnotesize 231
- \frontmatter 78
- \gdef 277
- \gobbleopt@ 368, 447
- \hline 327, 329, 332, 349, 351, 354
- \hrule 293, 646
- \Huge 231
- \huge 231
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ 393
- \if@mtc@hints@ 266
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ 266
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ 266
- \if@mtc@insellang@ 399, 400
- \if@mtc@longext@ 257, 672
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ 285
- \if@mtc@misslang 403
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ 396
- \if@partlof@used@ 328
- \if@partlot@used@ 331
- \if@parttoc@used@ 325
- \if@sectlof@used@ 350
- \if@sectlot@used@ 353
- \if@secttoc@used@ 348
- \ifcase 217, 241, 439
- \ifFTR 651
- \ifmtcsecondpart 661
- \ifnum 356
- \ifthenelse 219
- \ifundottedmtc 306, 657
- \incrementmtc . . . 35, 87, 206, 293, 652
- \incrementptc 35, 87, 206, 253, 321, 652
- \incrementstc . . . 35, 87, 206, 346, 652
- \itemindent 295, 324
- \itemsep 295, 324
- \itshape 231
- \jobname . . . 217, 220, 257, 278, 283, 284, 296, 299, 302, 307, 308, 315, 318, 424, 436, 439, 664, 672
- \kern 293, 641
- \kernafterminilof 78, 85
- \kernafterminilot 78, 85
- \kernafterminitoc 78, 85, 670
- \kernafterpartlof 78, 85
- \kernafterpartlot 78, 85
- \kernafterparttoc 78, 85, 255
- \kernaftersectlof 78, 85
- \kernaftersectlot 78, 85
- \kernaftersecttoc 78, 85
- \ktightmtcfalse 42, 81
- \ktightmtctrue 42, 81
- \l@chapter 71, 282, 305, 327
- \l@coffee 401
- \l@paragraph 71, 369
- \l@part 71, 279
- \l@section 71, 281, 369
- \l@subparagraph 71
- \l@subsection 71, 334
- \l@subsubsection 71
- \l@xchapter 282, 305
- \l@xpart 279, 334
- \l@xsect 281
- \l@xsection 665
- \LANG 217, 439
- \LARGE 231
- \Large 231
- \large 231
- \let 73, 74, 644
- \linebreak 58
- \linewidth 45
- \list 295, 324
- \listoffigures . . 22, 29, 31, 33, 50, 66, 81–84, 179–181, 283
- \listoftables . . 22, 29, 31, 33, 50, 53, 66, 81–84, 142, 180, 181, 283
- \listparindent 295, 324
- \mainmatter 78
- \makeatletter 71, 222
- \makeatother 71, 222
- \MakeUpperCase 662
- \markboth 72, 325, 650, 662
- \markright 72
- \mdseries 231
- \MessageBreak 657
- \minilof 22, 29, 34, 37, 41, 83, 87, 178, 179, 219, 295, 298, 299, 302, 350, 641
- \minilof@ 299, 306
- \minilot . . . 22, 29, 34, 37, 41, 83, 87, 178, 180, 219, 295, 302, 353, 641
- \minilot@ 302

- \minitoc 22,
28, 29, 33, 34, 37, 38, 41, 55, 59, 67,
78, 83, 87, 113, 178, 180, 219, 249,
252, 295, 296, 298, 308, 325, 347,
640–642, 648–650
- \minitoc@ 294, 296, 306
- \MLF@contentsline 315
- \MLF@next 316
- \mlf@setform 301, 381
- \MLF@test 316
- \mlffont 36, 37, 83, 300
- \mlffoffset 83
- \mlfpagenumbers 46, 85
- \mlfrule 46, 85, 649
- \mlfSfont 36, 37, 42, 83, 654
- \mlftitle 36, 37, 83, 466
- \MLT@contentsline 318
- \MLT@next 318
- \mlt@setform 304, 381
- \MLT@test 319
- \mltfont 36, 37, 83, 303
- \mltoffset 83
- \mltpagenumbers 46, 85
- \mltrule 46, 85, 649
- \mltSfont 36, 37, 83, 654
- \mlttitle 36, 37, 83, 466
- \mtc@addmisslanguage 403
- \mtc@BBR 282
- \mtc@CkFile 278, 296, 299, 303
- \MTC@contentsline 311, 314, 320
- \mtc@featparam@ 389
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev 390
- \mtc@featparam@third 389, 390
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev 383
- \mtc@glofix@level 395
- \mtc@hints@beginndoc 408, 417
- \mtc@hints@chapter 414
- \mtc@hints@endndoc 408, 417, 434
- \mtc@hints@part 414
- \mtc@hints@section 414
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile . 271, 298,
301, 304, 647
- \mtc@ifmtarg 277, 279, 281, 282
- \mtc@ixfix@level 397
- \mtc@level@abbrev 373
- \mtc@listmisslanguages 403
- \mtc@maf 436, 437
- \mtc@maf@long 436
- \mtc@maf@short 436
- \mtc@mta@abbrev 373
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev 391
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev 392
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev 377
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev 378
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev 382
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev 389, 390
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev 384
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev 387
- \MTC@next 313
- \mtc@nomencifix@level 398
- \mtc@onebacksect 280
- \mtc@pns@abbrev 385
- \mtc@rule 293, 641
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev 387
- \mtc@savetocdepth 393
- \mtc@setform 298, 380
- \mtc@setlangopt 406
- \mtc@setlangoptm 406
- \mtc@setlangopto 406
- \mtc@string 282
- \mtc@strutbox 646
- \MTC@test 314
- \mtc@toks . 256, 257, 282, 312, 315, 318,
320, 338, 341, 343, 360, 363, 365,
671, 672
- \mtc@verse 295
- \mtc@While 278
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline 320, 360
- \MTC@WriteContentsline 315, 318, 320,
338, 341, 343, 360, 363, 365
- \mtc@zrule 282, 646
- \mtcaddchapter 35, 50, 51, 53,
66, 70, 72, 87, 93, 97, 142, 143, 201,
207, 226, 251, 282, 645
- \mtcaddpart 35, 72, 87, 93, 201, 207, 279,
645
- \mtcaddsection 35, 53, 70, 72, 87, 101,
202, 207, 226, 254, 281, 645, 658
- \mtcfixglossary 51,
87, 164, 165, 186, 194, 207, 252, 254,
395, 396, 455, 650, 658, 659
- \mtcfixindex 51,
87, 98, 104, 164, 165, 186, 195, 207,
252, 254, 397, 456, 649, 658, 659
- \mtcfixnomenclature . 51, 87, 137, 169,
199, 207, 256, 398, 399, 456, 671
- \mtcfont 29, 36–38, 83, 297
- \mtcgapafterheads 76, 82, 226, 254, 663
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . . 76, 82, 226, 254,
663
- \mtchideinmainlof 69, 87, 226
- \mtchideinmainlot . . . 69, 87, 126, 227
- \mtcindent . 29, 45, 83, 91, 265, 293, 295
- \mtcloadmlo . . . 196, 253, 400, 450, 653
- \mtcoffset . . . 29, 44, 83, 256, 295, 671
- \mtcwarn@true 652
- \mtcpagenumbers 46, 85, 642

- \mtcPfont 36, 38, 72, 83, 641
- \mtcprepare . . 29, 41, 87, 162, 219, 234, 254, 367, 369, 448, 660
- \mtcrule 46, 85, 642
- \mtcselectlanguage . 36, 38, 40, 70, 75, 81, 152, 154, 155, 187, 188, 196, 251, 253, 399, 406, 450, 466, 645, 653
- \mtcsetdepth . 29, 31, 33, 43, 66, 81–84, 155, 189, 253, 390, 391, 651
- \mtcsetfeature 48, 49, 81, 86, 155, 189, 193, 207, 209, 212, 216, 232, 233, 252, 256, 290, 388, 389, 650, 671
- \mtcsetfont 29, 31, 33, 42, 65, 66, 72, 74, 78, 81, 152, 155, 190, 194, 252, 294, 372, 376, 648, 655, 658
- \mtcsetformat 45, 81, 94, 156, 190, 191, 194, 252, 298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 379, 380, 382, 648, 649
- \mtcsetoffset 29, 31, 33, 43, 44, 81–84, 138, 152, 163, 200, 227, 256, 392, 671
- \mtcsetpagenumbers 47, 78, 81, 85, 191, 192, 252, 254, 383, 386, 648, 657
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ 384
- \mtcsetrules . 47, 81, 85, 192, 252, 254, 386, 648, 657
- \mtcsetrules@ 386
- \mtcsettitle 36, 38, 40, 43, 66, 70, 81, 152, 156, 193, 252, 378, 390, 392, 648, 649
- \mtcsettitlefont . . 42, 65, 66, 81, 156, 193, 252, 294, 376–378, 648
- \mtcSfont . . . 29, 36, 38, 65, 72, 83, 641
- \mtcskip . . 29, 30, 81, 251, 265, 646, 650
- \mtcskipamount 29, 30, 81, 251, 265, 443, 646
- \mtcSPfont 36, 38, 72, 83, 84, 641
- \mtcSSfont . . 36, 38, 42, 72, 83, 448, 641
- \mtcSSSfont 36, 38, 66, 72, 83, 641
- \mtctitle 36, 37, 43, 66, 83, 466
- \mtifont . . 36, 37, 83, 297, 300, 303, 641
- \name 665
- \newcommand 44
- \newfloat 217
- \newif 266
- \newread 282, 641
- \newtheorem 217
- \newwrite 248, 283
- \nofiles 29, 170, 257, 368, 672
- \noindent 641
- \nomlfpagenumbers 46, 85
- \nomlfrule 46, 85, 649
- \nomltpagenumbers 46, 85
- \nomltrule 46, 85, 649
- \nomtcpagenumbers . . . 46, 85, 642, 647
- \nomtcrule 46, 85, 642, 645
- \nopagebreak 641
- \noplfpagenumbers 46, 85
- \noplfrule 46, 85, 649
- \nopltpagenumbers 46, 85
- \nopltrule 46, 85, 649
- \noptcpagenumbers 46, 85
- \noptcrule 46, 85
- \normalsize 37, 231
- \noslfpagenumbers 46, 85
- \noslfrule 46, 85, 649
- \nosltpagenumbers 46, 85
- \nosltrule 46, 85, 649
- \nostcpagenumbers 46, 85
- \nostcrule 46, 85
- \numwidth 45
- \openminilof 48, 86
- \openminilot 48, 86
- \openminitoc 48, 86
- \openpartlof 48, 86
- \openpartlot 48, 86
- \openparttoc 48, 86
- \opensectlof 48, 86
- \opensectlot 48, 86
- \opensecttoc 48, 86
- \or 241, 439
- \outer 282
- \PackageError 228, 252
- \PackageInfo 228, 252, 648, 652
- \PackageWarning . . . 228, 252, 648, 652
- \PackageWarningNoLine 228
- \pagestyle 49
- \par 656
- \paragraph 214, 235
- \parsep 42, 295, 324
- \parskip 42, 265, 295, 324
- \part 27, 33, 51, 53, 60, 63, 82, 157, 164, 167, 169, 171, 186, 199, 208, 209, 214, 234, 235, 279, 283, 305, 307, 321, 325, 328, 331, 334, 337, 341, 343, 414, 415, 437
- \part* . . . 72, 87, 93, 279, 292, 334, 645
- \partbegin 63, 334
- \partend 64
- \partlof . 33, 37, 40, 41, 82, 87, 178, 180, 219, 323, 325, 328, 642
- \partlof@ 328
- \partlot . 33, 37, 40, 41, 82, 87, 178, 180, 219, 323, 325, 331, 642
- \partlot@ 331

- \partoc 325
- \partopsep 324
- \parttoc 22, 33, 37, 38, 40, 41, 53, 63, 82,
87, 93, 179, 181, 219, 323, 325, 416,
418, 420, 422, 642, 646
- \parttoc@ 325
- \PLF@contentsline 341
- \PLF@next 341
- \plf@setform 330, 381
- \PLF@test 342
- \plffont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \plffoffset 82
- \plfpagenumbers 46, 85
- \plfrule 46, 85, 649
- \plfSfont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82, 654
- \plftitle 37, 38, 82, 466
- \PLT@contentsline 343
- \PLT@next 344
- \plt@setform 333, 381
- \PLT@test 344
- \pltfont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \pltoffset 82
- \pltpagenumbers 46, 85
- \plrulerule 46, 85, 649
- \pltSfont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82, 654
- \plttitle 37, 38, 82, 466
- \printglossary 50
- \printindex 51
- \printnomenclature 51
- \protect 58, 62, 643
- \ProvidesFile 669
- \ProvidesPackage 152
- \PTC@contentsline 337
- \PTC@next 339
- \ptc@rule 322
- \ptc@setform 327, 380
- \PTC@test 340
- \ptc@verse 324
- \ptcCfont 33, 36, 38, 73, 74, 82, 322
- \ptcfont 33, 36–38, 42, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcindent 33, 82, 324
- \ptcoffset 33, 82, 324
- \ptcpagenumbers 46, 85
- \ptcPfont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcrule 46, 85
- \ptcSfont 33, 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcSPfont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcSSfont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcSSSfont 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptctitle 37, 38, 82, 466, 581
- \ptifont 37, 38, 42, 66, 82, 648
- \quad 35
- \raggedright 641
- \relax 305, 334, 439, 448, 452, 641
- \renewcommand 29, 31, 33, 36–38, 40, 44,
65, 70, 74, 76, 77, 265, 266, 448, 452
- \renewcommand* 71
- \reset@font 60, 284, 641
- \rmfamily 231
- \rule 646
- \samepage 641
- \scriptsize 231
- \scshape 231
- \sectbegin 357
- \sectend 64, 357
- \sectfont 122
- \section 26, 27, 30–32,
51, 53, 67, 84, 153, 158, 164, 165,
167, 169, 174, 208, 209, 214, 233–
235, 280, 283, 305, 307, 345, 347,
350, 353, 356, 360, 363, 365, 402,
414, 416, 438, 639
- \section* 34, 35, 72, 87, 251, 280, 292,
645, 646
- \sectlof 31, 37, 41, 53, 84, 87, 179, 181,
219, 347, 350, 417, 642, 643
- \sectlof@ 350
- \sectlot 31, 37, 41, 53, 84, 87, 179, 181,
219, 347, 353, 417, 642
- \sectlot@ 353
- \secttoc 30, 31, 37, 38, 41, 84, 87, 179,
181, 219, 346, 347, 642
- \secttoc@ 347, 348
- \setcounter29, 31, 33, 59, 63, 82–84, 393
- \setlength 29, 31, 33, 76
- \sffamily 231
- \SHORTEXT 641
- \shorttoc 21
- \SLF@contentsline 363
- \SLF@next 363
- \slf@setform 352, 381
- \SLF@test 364
- \slffont 37, 40, 84
- \slffoffset 84
- \slfpagenumbers 46, 85
- \slfrule 46, 85, 649
- \slfSfont 37, 40, 84, 654
- \slftitle 37, 40, 84, 466
- \slshape 231
- \SLT@contentsline 365
- \SLT@next 365
- \slt@setform 355, 382
- \SLT@test 366
- \sltfont 37, 40, 84
- \sltname 644
- \sltoffset 84
- \sltpagenumbers 46, 85

- `\sltrule` 46, 85, 649
- `\sltSfont` 37, 40, 84, 654
- `\sltttitle` 37, 40, 66, 84, 466
- `\small` 231
- `\space` 35
- `\special` 219
- `\starchapter` 312
- `\starsection` 356
- `\STC@contentsline` 360
- `\STC@next` 361
- `\stc@rule` 346
- `\stc@setform` 349, 381
- `\STC@test` 362
- `\stcfont` 31, 37, 38, 40, 84
- `\stcindent` 31, 84, 346
- `\stcoffset` 31, 84, 347
- `\stcpagenumbers` 46, 85
- `\stcPfont` 38, 40, 84
- `\stcrule` 46, 85
- `\stcSPfont` 38, 40
- `\stcSSfont` 31, 38, 40, 84
- `\stcSSSfont` 38, 40, 84
- `\stctitle` 37, 40, 84, 466
- `\stepcounter` 35, 279–281
- `\stifont` 37, 40, 84
- `\subparagraph` 214, 235
- `\subsection` 214, 235, 356, 639
- `\subsubsection` 214, 235
- `\table` 318
- `\tableofcontents` 22, 29, 31, 33, 50, 53, 59, 63, 65, 78, 81–84, 180, 181, 251, 283, 290, 416, 422, 646, 650
- `\tableofcontents*` 132
- `\textbf` 231
- `\textit` 231
- `\textmd` 231
- `\textrm` 231
- `\textsc` 231
- `\textsf` 231
- `\textsl` 231
- `\texttt` 231
- `\textup` 231
- `\textwidth` 665
- `\tf@mtc` 264, 283, 436
- `\The@mtc` 293, 645
- `\themtc` 293
- `\Thepart` 321
- `\theptc` 321
- `\thispageminilofstyle` . . 48, 86, 300
- `\thispageminilotstyle` . . 48, 86, 303
- `\thispageminitocstyle` . . 48, 86, 296
- `\thispagepartlofsty` . . 48, 86, 645
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` . . 48, 86, 645
- `\thispageparttocstyle` 48, 86, 288, 645
- `\thispagesectlofsty` 48, 86
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` 48, 86
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` 48, 86
- `\thispagestyle` 48, 49, 86, 288
- `\tightmtcfalse` 42, 81
- `\tightmtctrue` 42, 81
- `\tiny` 231
- `\topsep` 295, 324
- `\ttfamily` 231
- `\undottedmtcfalse` 81
- `\undottedmtctrue` 81
- `\upshape` 231
- `\usepackage` . . . 28–31, 33, 78, 202, 206, 232–234, 442, 466
- `\vrule` 646
- `\vspace*` 641
- `\widowpenalty` 641
- `\xchapter` 315, 318
- `\xdef` 393
- `\z@` 646
- `comment` (package) ↪[137]
- `\contentsline` (command) 62, 279, 281, 282, 308
- `\contentsline` **2785, 2811, 2820, 3399, 3577, 3642, 3703, 3719**, 4255, 4315, 4375, 4859, 4919, 4979
- Cook, David B. 673
- `\copy` 2832, 2836
- CORFF, Oliver 555, 598–600, 673, ↪[119–122]
- CORNET, Emmanuel 673, ↪[9]
- `\count@` (command) 443
- `\count@` **7439**
- COUNTCHAM, Prakash 673, ↪[27]
- Counters
 - `chapter` 269
 - `mtc` 87, 278, 281, 282, 290, 293, 311, 312, 315, 318, 373, 646
 - `part` 268, 269
 - `ptc` 87, 278, 279, 290, 321, 334, 337, 341, 343
 - `section` 269
 - `stc` 87, 278, 280, 281, 290, 346, 360, 363, 365, 646
- `cri.tex` (old example document) . . . 664, 666
- `croatian` (language option) 39, 492
- `croatian.dtx` (file) 492
- `croatian.mld` (file) 242, 244, 492
- `croatie1.pdf` (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 492
- `croatie2.pdf` (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 492
- `\csname` (command) 320, 371, 374
- `\cyr` . **8265, 8297, 9700, 10074, 10223, 10441**
- `\cz` **9981**
- `cz1.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 493

cz3.png (graphic file) 243–245, 493
 czech (language option) 39, 493
 czech.dtx (file) 493
 czech.mld (file) 242, 244, 257, 493, 672

D

DACHIAN, Sergueï 208, 473, 673, ⇨[123]
 DAERR, Adrian 673
 DALALYAN, Arnak 208, 473, 673, ⇨[123]
 DALY, Patrick W. 673, ⇨[124–127, 224]
 danemark.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 494
 DANIELSSON, Holger 673, ⇨[310–312]
 danish (language option) 39, 494
 danish.dtx (file) 494
 danish.mld (file) 242, 244, 494
 DAVISON, Alice 673, ⇨[128]
 dblacnt (package) 213, 659, ⇨[275]
 \DeclareOption 6104, 6108, 6110, 6112,
 6113, 6117, 6135, 6143, 6189, 6245,
 6433
 \decrementmtc (command) . 35, 87, 206, 293,
 652
 \decrementmtc 2284, 3066, 7614
 \decrementptc (command) . 35, 87, 206, 253,
 321, 652
 \decrementptc 3754, 7614
 \decrementstc (command) . 35, 87, 206, 346,
 652
 \decrementstc 4397, 7614
 \def (command) 74
 DEININGER, Andreas 257, 368, 672, 673
 DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas 481, 673, ⇨[85]
 DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien 673
 DEPARDIEU, Éric 673, ⇨[27]
 Depth counters
 lofdepth 34, 221, 291, 321, 345
 lotdepth 34, 222, 291, 304, 321, 345
 minilofdepth 34, 214, 223, 291, 301
 minilotdepth 34, 214, 223, 304
 minitocdepth . 22, 28, 29, 34, 43, 66, 71,
 83, 214, 223, 293, 297, 639
 partlofdepth . . . 34, 214, 233, 321, 330
 partlotdepth . . . 34, 214, 233, 321, 333
 parttocdepth . . 22, 33, 34, 82, 214, 233,
 321, 327
 secnumdepth 213, 214
 sectlofdepth . . . 34, 214, 235, 345, 352
 sectlotdepth . . . 34, 66, 214, 235, 345, 355
 secttocdepth . . 31, 34, 84, 214, 236, 346,
 349

tocdepth 34, 63, 71, 82–84, 214, 238, 293,
 297, 301, 393, 639, 651
 DE RYDT, Ben 673
 DESGRAUPES, Bernard 673, ⇨[129–131]
 DESPRAIRES, Cécile . 673, ⇨[31, 160, 339, 381]
 DESREUX, Sébastien 673, ⇨[9]
 Devanāgarī (package) . 44, 214, 218, 466, 495,
 528, ⇨[306]
 devanagari (language option) . . 39, 218, 495,
 527
 devanagari.mld (file) 242, 244, 255, 495, 527,
 665
 devanagari.sty (file) 214, 495
 \df@mtic 3135, 3205, 3273
 \df@mtilf (command) 294
 \df@mtilf 3097, 3102, 3212, 3433
 \df@mtilt (command) 294
 \df@mtilt 3097, 3102, 3280, 3452
 \df@mtitc (command) 294
 \df@mtitc 3097, 3102, 3142, 3414
 \df@pti 3868, 3936, 4011
 \df@ptilf 3834, 3942, 4116
 \df@ptilt 3834, 4017, 4135
 \df@ptitc 3834, 3874, 4097
 \df@sti 4458, 4526, 4593
 \df@stilf 4424, 4532, 4736
 \df@stilt 4424, 4599, 4755
 \df@stitc 4424, 4465, 4717
 DILLER, Antoni R. 673, ⇨[132]
 \dimen@ (command) 443
 \dimen@ 7439
 \divide 2398
 \dn 8459, 9145
 \do@mtilf (command) 294
 \do@mtilf3097, 3102, 3207–3212, 3214, 3224,
 3228
 \do@mtilt (command) 294
 \do@mtilt3097, 3102, 3275–3280, 3282, 3292,
 3296
 \do@mtitc (command) 294
 \do@mtitc 3097, 3102, 3135, 3205, 3273
 \do@ptilf 3834, 3936, 3948
 \do@ptilt 3834, 4011, 4027
 \do@ptitc 3834, 3868, 3880
 \do@stilf 4424, 4526, 4540
 \do@stilt 4424, 4593, 4607
 \do@stitc 4424, 4458, 4473
 doc (package) 22, ⇨[274]
 docmfp (package) ⇨[393]
 docstrip (package) 22, ⇨[241, 276]
 document (environment) . 53, 78, 217, 222, 234
 \documentclass (command) . 29, 31, 33, 78,
 122, 205, 212, 216, 234

- \documentclass 2,
45, 104, 161, 187, 206, 260, 295, 389,
390, 556, 755, 801, 994, 995, 1196,
1393, 1444, 1502, 1522, 1550, 1588,
1638, 1686, 1727, 1898, 1926, 1957,
2030, 2061, 2112, 2163, 2217, 2264,
2307, 2352, 2388
- \dominilof (command) 28, 29, 41,
83, 87, 159, 165, 178, 182, 234, 299,
307, 308, 334
- \dominilof . . 51, 110, **407, 1021, 1692, 2188,**
2421, 3189, 3399, 3404, 3437, **4995,**
5039, 6783, 6867, **7413, 7630**
- \dominilof@ 3408, 3433
- \dominilot (command) 28, 29, 41,
83, 87, 160, 165, 178, 183, 234, 302,
307, 308, 334
- \dominilot . . 52, 111, **407, 1021, 1637, 3257,**
3399, 3409, 3456, **4995, 5039,** 6792,
6876, **7413, 7630**
- \dominilot@ 3413, 3452
- \dominitoc (command) 28, 29, 41, 50, 55, 61,
78, 83, 87, 143, 157, 159, 166, 178,
182, 234, 240, 249, 252, 295, 296,
307, 308, 334, 357, 438, 640, 642,
648, 649
- \dominitoc 10, 195, 217, 318, **407, 754, 1021,**
1322, **1392, 1443, 1511, 1521, 1556,**
1692, 1759, 1909, 1946, 1956, 2037,
2077, 2125, 2225, 2263, 2310, 3119,
3399, 3418, **4995, 5039,** 6774, 6858,
7413, 7630
- \dominitoc@ (command) 308
- \dominitoc@ **3399,** 3403, 3414
- \dopartlof (command) 29, 33, 40, 41, 82, 87,
159, 166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336
- \dopartlof **567, 823, 1021, 4082, 4094,** 4120,
4995, 5036, 6754, 6838, **7410, 7624**
- \dopartlof@ 4095, **4116**
- \dopartlot (command) 29, 33, 40, 41, 82, 87,
160, 166, 178, 182, 234, 334–336
- \dopartlot **567, 828, 1021, 4082, 4094,** 4139,
4995, 5036, 6763, 6847, **7410, 7624**
- \dopartlot@ 4096, **4135**
- \doparttoc (command) 29, 33, 40, 41, 53, 63,
82, 87, 157, 166, 179, 182, 234, 283,
334, 335, 416, 418, 420
- \doparttoc . . 10, 170, **276, 567, 823, 1021,**
1443, 1521, 1556, 4082, 4094, 4101,
4995, 5036, 6745, 6829, **7410, 7624**
- \doparttoc@ 4094, **4097**
- Dorj, Dorjpalam . 555, 598–600, 673, ⇨[122]
- \dosectlof (command) 29, 31, 41, 84, 87, 159,
166, 179, 183, 234, 267, 357, 358
- \dosectlof **567, 823, 2539, 4706, 4714,** 4740,
4995, 5042, 6729, 6812, 6896, **7416,**
7636
- \dosectlof@ 4715, **4736**
- \dosectlot (command)
29, 31, 41, 53, 84, 87, 160, 167, 179,
183, 234, 267, 283, 358, 359
- \dosectlot **567, 823, 1587, 2539, 4710, 4714,**
4759, **4995, 5042,** 6731, 6821, 6905,
7416, 7636
- \dosectlot@ 4716, **4755**
- \dosecttoc (command) 29, 31, 41, 84, 87, 157,
167, 179, 183, 234, 346, 357, 358
- \dosecttoc **567, 823, 2364, 4702, 4714,** 4721,
4995, 5042, 6803, 6887, **7416, 7636**
- \dosecttoc@ 4714, **4717**
- \dotfil 400, 402, 561, 563
- \dotfill 401, 562
- dotted** (default option) . 47, 80, 250, 402, 644
- DRIKIS, Ivars 542, 673
- DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. . 26, ⇨[27, 133–135]
- DRYER, Matthew S. 473, 673
- DUCHIER, Denys 673, ⇨[276]
- DUDDING, Lyndon 64, 673
- DUNG, Ta Quang 673
- duplex2v.pro (file) 669
- dutch (language option) 39, 496
- dutch.dtx (file) 468, 496
- dutch.mld (file) 242, 244, 495
- dvips (tool) 219, 239
- dvipsone (tool) 219
- dviwindo (tool) 219

E

- E0001 (message) 51, 151, 186, 395
- E0002 (message) 51, 151, 186, 397
- E0003 (message) 151, 186, 394
- E0004 (message) 151, 187, 395
- E0005 (message) 151, 187, 393
- E0006 (message) 151, 187, 399
- E0007 (message) 151, 188, 400
- E0008 (message) 151, 188, 391
- E0009 (message) 151, 188, 391
- E0010 (message) 151, 189, 391
- E0011 (message) 151, 189, 389
- E0012 (message) 151, 189, 389
- E0013 (message) 151, 190, 373
- E0014 (message) 151, 190, 373
- E0015 (message) 151, 190
- E0016 (message) 151, 191, 383
- E0017 (message) 151, 191, 384

- E0018 (message) 151, 191, 385
 E0019 (message) 151, 192, 387
 E0020 (message) 151, 192, 387
 E0021 (message) 151, 193, 378, 382
 E0022 (message) 151, 193, 377
 E0023 (message) 151, 193, 390
 E0024 (message) 151, 194, 376
 E0025 (message) 151, 194, 383
 E0026 (message) 51, 151, 194, 396
 E0027 (message) 51, 151, 195, 397
 E0028 (message) 65, 151, 195, 223, 277
 E0029 (message) 151, 195, 394
 E0030 (message) 151, 195, 395
 E0031 (message) 151, 196, 393
 E0032 (message) 151, 196, 400
 E0033 (message) 151, 196, 378
 E0034 (message) 151, 197, 377
 E0035 (message) 151, 197, 402
 E0036 (message) 151, 197, 241, 435, 466, 496,
 666, 668
 E0037 (message) 151, 198, 438
 E0038 (message) 151, 198, 241, 404, 466
 E0039 (message) 51, 151, 199, 398
 E0040 (message) 51, 151, 199, 399
 E0041 (message) 151, 199, 393
 E0042 (message) 151, 200, 392
 E0043 (message) 151, 200, 393
 \e@mti . **3097, 3135, 3205, 3273, 3414, 3433,**
 3452
 \e@pti . **3804, 3810, 3868, 3936, 4011, 4097,**
 4116, 4135
 \e@sti . **4419, 4458, 4526, 4593, 4717, 4736,**
 4755
 ecosse1.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 577
 ecosse2.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 577
 ecosse3.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 577
 \edef (command) 257, 320, 383, 672
 \edef 3475, 3583, 3597, 3648, 3658, 3709,
 4158, 4260, 4270, 4320, 4330, 4380,
 4669, 4778, 4864, 4874, 4924, 4934,
 4984, 5168, 5186, 5281, 5310, 5321,
 5351, 5362, 5474, 5491, 5500, 5551,
 5570, 5627, 5645, 5708, 5726, 5727,
 5739, 5768, 5812, 6142
 ÈEHAJA, Marko 579, 673
 EGAN, Patrick 673, ⇨[139]
 EIJKHOUT, Victor 673, ⇨[67, 136–138, 234]
 ELMGAARD, Brian 673, ⇨[139]
 ELS, Danie 673, ⇨[143]
 \else (command) 266
 \em 2015, 2022
 emk (script) 214, 219, 234, 243, 244, 246, 247,
 654
 \emph 1804, 1806, 1873, 1884
 \empty (command) 47–49, 86, 288, 448, 452,
 641
 \empty . **1930, 1939**, 2973–2975, 2979–2984,
 2986–2988, 2992–3006, 3008–3010,
 3014–3019, **5852, 5886**, 6138, **7654**,
 7690, 7693, 7694, 7742–7786, 7817,
 7828, 7839, 7848–7856
 en-mtc.bst (file) 214, 243–245, 255, 666
 \endcsname (command) 320, 371, 374
 \endgroup 2723, 3031, 3179, 3251, 3319, 3908,
 3982, 4057, 4503, 4570, 4638, 4676
 \endlist 3118, 3848, 4441
 \endmtc@verse (command) 295
 \endmtc@verse **303**, 3118
 \endmtchideinmainlof (command) 69, 87,
 226
 \endmtchideinmainlof **103**, 134
 \endmtchideinmainlot (command) 69, 87,
 126, 127, 227
 \endmtchideinmainlot **103**, 142, **1622, 1670**
 \endptc@verse (command) 324
 \endptc@verse **3837**
 \endstc@verse 4441
english (default language option)
 39, 80, 434, 470, 474, 483, 486, 496,
 558, 592, 595, 647
 english.dtx (file) 496–498
 english.mld (file) 36,
 38–40, 154, 197, 241, 242, 244, 404,
 406, 466, 470, 474, 483, 486, 496,
 558, 592, 595, 644, 645, 666, 668
 english1 (language option) 39, 497
 english1.mld (file) 242, 244, 497, 661
 english2 (language option) 39, 498
 english2.mld (file) 242, 244, 498, 661
 \enlargethispage (command) 58
 Environments
 abstract 53, 70
 appendices 64, 105, 207, 226
 bibunit 209
 document 53, 78, 217, 222, 234
 figure 209, 236, 238
 filecontents 44, 216, 400, 466
 margincap 222
 minipage 134, 639
 mtc@verse 93, 94, 295, 297, 298, 300, 301,
 304, 380, 381
 mtchideinmainlof 67,
 68, 87, 187, 195, 207, 226, 252, 394,
 455, 649, 652, 662, 672
 mtchideinmainlot 67,
 68, 87, 187, 196, 207, 226, 252, 394,
 395, 455, 649, 652, 662, 672

- mtchideinmaintoc 67,
87, 114, 115, 187, 196, 207, 226, 252,
393, 455, 649, 662
- multicols 91, 94, 117, 137, 139, 228
- pageUn 117
- ptc@verse 324, 327, 330, 333, 380, 381,
672
- quote 58, 656
- samepage 297, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304,
326, 328, 329, 331–333, 348, 350,
351, 353–355, 641
- sidewaysfigure 235
- sidewaystable 235
- stc@verse 347, 349, 352, 355, 381, 382,
650
- subappendices 207
- tabbing 58
- table 209, 236, 238
- tabular 58, 297, 300, 303, 327, 329, 332,
349, 351, 354
- thebibliography 135, 145
- verse 35, 295, 324, 347, 639
- wrapfigure 134, 227, 239
- wraptable 239
- ESFAHBOD, Behdad 503, 504, 673, ⇔[140]
- espa-l.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 583
- esperant (language option) 39, 498, 499
- esperant.mld (file) 242, 244, 498, 499
- esperanto (language option) 39, 499
- esperanto.dtx (file) 498
- esperanto.mld (file) 242, 244, 499
- ESSER, Thomas 673
- estonia-a.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 499
- estonia-b.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 499
- estonian (language option) 39, 499, 645
- estonian.dtx (file) 499
- estonian.mld (file) 242, 244, 499
- ε-TEX (package) 213, 216, 232, 266, ⇔[98, 268]
- \eth@doaltchar **8591**
- ethiolang.png (graphic file) 243–245, 501
- ethiop (package) 44, 216, 466, 500, 502, ⇔[39]
- ethiopia (language option) 39, 500, 502
- ethiopia-p.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 501
- ethiopia.mld (file) 242, 244, 500, 502
- ethiopia.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 501
- ethiopian (language option) 39, 216, 502
- ethiopian.mld (file) 242, 244
- ethiopian2 (language option) 39, 502
- ethiopian2.mld (file) 242, 244, 502, 658
- ethopian.mld (file) 502
- ETIENNE, Gilhooly 673, ⇔[160]
- EVERITT, Karl F. 645, 673
- Examples
 - mtc-2c.pdf 244
 - mtc-2c.tex 91, 225, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-2nd.pdf 244
 - mtc-2nd.tex 92, 226, 242, 244, 245, 271,
510, 667
 - mtc-3co.pdf 244
 - mtc-3co.tex 93, 226, 228, 242, 244, 245,
256, 669
 - mtc-add.bib 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-add.pdf 244
 - mtc-add.tex 52, 96, 97, 226, 242, 244,
245, 666
 - mtc-ads.pdf 244
 - mtc-ads.tex 52, 100, 226, 242, 244, 245,
666
 - mtc-amm.pdf 244
 - mtc-amm.tex 64, 105, 226, 242, 244, 245,
666
 - mtc-apx.pdf 244
 - mtc-apx.tex 67, 90, 105, 226, 242, 244,
245, 663, 666
 - mtc-art.pdf 244
 - mtc-art.tex 105, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-bk.pdf 244
 - mtc-bk.tex 110, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-bo.pdf 244
 - mtc-bo.tex 115, 226, 242, 244, 245, 664,
666
 - mtc-ch0.pdf 244
 - mtc-ch0.tex 120, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-cri.pdf 244
 - mtc-cri.tex 121, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-fko.pdf 244
 - mtc-fko.tex 122, 226, 242, 244, 245, 256,
670
 - mtc-fo1.pdf 244
 - mtc-fo1.tex 123, 124, 226, 242, 244, 245,
666
 - mtc-fo2.pdf 244
 - mtc-fo2.tex 124, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-gap.pdf 244
 - mtc-gap.tex 76, 90, 125, 226, 242, 244,
245, 666
 - mtc-hi1.pdf 244
 - mtc-hi1.tex 68, 90, 125, 226, 242, 244,
245, 666
 - mtc-hi2.pdf 244
 - mtc-hi2.tex 69, 90, 125, 226, 242, 244,
245, 666
 - mtc-hia.pdf 244
 - mtc-hia.tex 125, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-hir.pdf 244
 - mtc-hir.tex 126, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
 - mtc-hop.pdf 244

- mtc-hop.tex 127, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
- mtc-liv.pdf 244
- mtc-liv.tex 128, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
- mtc-mem.pdf 244
- mtc-mem.tex 132, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
- mtc-mm1.pdf 244
- mtc-mm1.tex 133, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
- mtc-mu.pdf 244
- mtc-mu.tex . 134, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
- mtc-nom.pdf 244
- mtc-nom.tex 136, 227, 242, 244, 245, 256, 671
- mtc-ocf.pdf 244
- mtc-ocf.tex 137, 212, 227, 232, 242, 244, 245, 256, 671
- mtc-ofs.pdf 244
- mtc-ofs.tex 138, 227, 242, 244, 245, 256, 671
- mtc-sbf.pdf 244
- mtc-sbf.tex 140, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
- mtc-scr.pdf 244
- mtc-scr.tex 142, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
- mtc-syn.pdf 244
- mtc-syn.tex 143, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
- mtc-tbi.pdf 244
- mtc-tbi.tex 144, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
- mtc-tlc.pdf 244
- mtc-tlc.tex 146, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
- mtc-tlo.pdf 244
- mtc-tlo.tex . 79, 90, 146, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
- mtc-tsfc.pdf 244
- mtc-tsfc.tex 147, 228, 242, 244, 245, 667
- \ExecuteOptions **7304**
- \expandafter (command) 371
- \expandafter 2748, 3028, 3043, 3048, 3051, 3056, 3479, 3483, 3497, 3512, 3515, 3518, 3521, 3524, 3527, 3530, 3544, 3547, 3550, 3553, 3556, 3560, 3567, 3570, 3575, 3591, 3593, 3600, 3603, 3617, 3621, 3626, 3633, 3637, 3640, 3655, 3656, 3661, 3664, 3678, 3682, 3687, 3694, 3698, 3701, 3716, 3717, 3724, 3729, 4161, 4163, 4177, 4192, 4195, 4198, 4201, 4204, 4207, 4210, 4213, 4216, 4219, 4222, 4225, 4228, 4231, 4234, 4238, 4245, 4249, 4252, 4267, 4268, 4273, 4275, 4289, 4293, 4298, 4305, 4309, 4312, 4327, 4328, 4333, 4335, 4349, 4353, 4358, 4365, 4369, 4372, 4387, 4388, 4656, 4781, 4784, 4799, 4802, 4805, 4808, 4811, 4829, 4832, 4835, 4838, 4842, 4849, 4853, 4856, 4871, 4872, 4877, 4880, 4895, 4898, 4902, 4909, 4913, 4916, 4931, 4932, 4937, 4940, 4955, 4958, 4962, 4969, 4973, 4976, 4991, 4992, 5115, 5116, 5136, 5137, 5144, 5153, 5171, 5211–5215, 5217–5219, 5221–5223, 5225–5232, 5234–5239, 5241–5246, 5248–5256, 5258–5264, 5266–5272, 5281, 5295, 5321, 5336, 5362, 5460, 5476, 5500, 5514, 5535, 5554, 5574, 5590, 5611, 5630, 5649, 5682–5685, 5687, 5693, 5710, 5739, 5753, 5772, 5785, 5797, 5816, 5829, 5945, 5947, 5949, 5988, 5990, 5992, 6031, 6033, 6035, 8797, 8805, 8813, 9708, 9718, 9728, 10079, 10284, 10331
- \ext@subfigure **2162**
- Extensions
 - .F 54, 55, 205, 299
 - .G 54, 55, 205, 335
 - .H 54, 55, 205, 357
 - .M 54, 55, 205, 296
 - .P 54, 55, 205, 335
 - .S 54, 55, 206, 357
 - .T 54, 55, 206, 302
 - .U 54, 55, 206, 335
 - .V 54, 55, 206, 358
 - .afm 239
 - .aux 55, 58, 60, 63, 205, 208, 271
 - .bst .. 214, 218, 239, 243–246, 255, 666
 - .cls 205
 - .dtx 44, 205, 211, 247, 252, 253, 466, 576, 650
 - .eps 672
 - .ins 205, 211, 247, 252
 - .ist .. 217, 224, 243–246, 650, 651, 653
 - .lan 217, 224, 243–246, 439
 - .lof 28, 55, 58, 61–63, 68, 152, 179–181, 205, 208, 279, 281–283, 307, 308, 316, 335, 342, 357, 364, 455, 645
 - .log 31, 34, 52, 55, 57, 80, 144, 151, 162, 169, 170, 202, 205, 218, 264, 266, 283, 408, 433, 434, 466, 648, 668
 - .lot 28, 55, 58, 61, 63, 68, 152, 180, 181, 205, 208, 279, 281–283, 308, 318, 319, 335, 344, 358, 366, 455, 643, 645
 - .maf 52, 80, 154, 205, 208, 221, 253, 403, 436, 653
 - .map 239

.mld 21, 36, 39, 44,
70, 75, 81, 154, 163, 169, 187, 196,
198, 205, 207, 211, 241, 244, 249–
251, 253, 255, 264, 399, 400, 403–
406, 460, 464, 466, 510, 550, 643,
645, 647, 652, 653, 657, 661, 668,
669
.mlf 28, 54, 55, 205, 299, 308
.mlo 21,
39, 44, 70, 155, 163, 169, 188, 205,
211, 212, 216, 241, 244, 253, 255,
264, 400, 403, 405, 406, 460, 466,
553, 653, 660, 668
.mlt 28, 54, 55, 205, 302, 308
.mtc 28, 52, 54, 55, 58, 59, 61, 205, 278,
283, 284, 296, 308, 436, 639
.mtc0 257, 283, 436, 664, 672
.mtc1 257, 672
.pdf 245
.pfb 239
.plf 33, 54, 55, 206, 335
.plt 33, 54, 55, 206, 335
.pre 224, 243–246, 654, 660
.ptc 33, 54, 55, 206, 335
.slf 30, 54, 55, 206, 357
.slt 30, 54, 55, 206, 358
.stc 30, 54, 55, 206, 357
.sty 206, 232, 241, 246, 247, 249, 643
.tar 247
.tex 152, 206
.tfm 239
.tgz 247
.toc 28, 50, 55, 58, 59, 61–63, 68, 152,
180, 181, 206, 208, 249, 279, 281–
283, 290, 292, 307, 308, 313, 335,
339, 357, 362, 455, 640, 643, 645
.vf 239
.zip 247
ps.gz 603

F

\F **9631, 9661**
F0001 (message) 151, 200, 456
F0002 (message) 151, 201, 456
F0003 (message) 151, 201, 456
F0004 (message) 151, 201, 454
F0005 (message) 151, 201, 454
F0006 (message) 151, 202, 454
F0007 (message) 151, 202, 453
F0008 (message) 151, 202, 443
F0009 (message) 151, 202, 445

\f@rhdr 7910, 7916, 7918, 7926, 7954
\f@rtoc 7909, 7914, 7943, 7946, 7949, 7952,
7954
FABIAN, Mike 673, ↪[141]
FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 673, ↪[142]
\fake@starttoc (command) 290
\fake@starttoc **3020**
\fakelistoffigures (command) 29, 31, 33,
81–84, 179–181, 290
\fakelistoffigures **829, 1028, 1693, 3020,**
6709, 6931, 6966, 7001, 7610
\fakelistoftables (command) 29, 31, 33,
53, 81–84, 180, 181, 290
\fakelistoftables **829, 1027, 3020, 6709,**
6942, 6977, 7012, 7610
\faketableofcontents (command) 29, 31,
33, 53, 55, 81–84, 93, 180, 181, 290,
416, 422, 640
\faketableofcontents 170, **276, 829, 1027,**
1323, 2125, 2364, 3020, 6709, 6920,
6955, 6990, 7610
fancybox (package) ↪[370]
farsi (language option) 208, 216
farsi-logo.png (graphic file) 243–245, 503
farsi.ldf (file) 208, 505
farsi.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 503
farsi.sty (file) 216, 503, 504
farsi1 (language option) 39, 502, 503
farsi1.mld (file) 242, 244, 502, 653
farsi1.mlo (file) 242, 244, 502, 503, 653
farsi2 (language option) 39, 504
farsi2.mld (file) 242, 244, 504, 653
farsi2.mlo (file) 242, 244, 504, 653
farsi3 (language option) 39, 505
farsi3.mld (file) 208, 242, 244, 505, 665
FarsiTeX (package) 44, 216, 466, 503, 504,
↪[140]
FAULHAMMER, Christian 673, ↪[318]
\fbox 2194, 2199, 2202, 2204, 2407
\fboxrule 2405
\fboxsep 2405
FEAR, Simon 673, ↪[143]
Features
after 48, 49, 81, 86, 138, 189, 207, 216,
288, 289
before 48, 49, 81, 86, 138, 189, 209, 216,
288, 289
close 48,
49, 81, 86, 137–139, 189, 212, 216,
227, 256, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304,
327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 671
open 48,
49, 81, 86, 137–139, 189, 216, 227,

- 232, 256, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304,
327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 671
pagestyle . 48, 49, 81, 86, 216, 233, 288,
290, 388
FENN, Jürgen 673, \hookrightarrow [144, 362, 363]
FERGUSON, Michael J. 673, \hookrightarrow [145]
feroe.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 494
FESSLER, Jeff 673
\fi (command) 241, 266, 439
\figbox 2406, 2435, 2440, 2445, 2450, 2455,
2460, 2465
\figure (command) 315
figure (environment) 209, 236, 238
\figure 3617, 4289, 4894
\figure@mtcck 5206, 5212, 5222, 5229, 5245,
5253, 5271
filecontents (environment) 44, 216, 400, 466
Files
/tmp/‘whoami’.imk 246
/tmp/‘whoami’.rmk 247
/tmp/‘whoami’.tmk 246, 247
/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD 664
\jobname.lan 439
\jobname.mtc 283
\jobname.mtc0 283
acadian.mld 242, 244, 467
acadien.mld 242, 244, 467
afrikaan.mld 242, 244, 468, 469
afrikaans.mld 242, 244, 469
albanian.dtx 469
albanian.mld 242, 244, 469
american.mld 242, 244, 406, 470, 645
amsart.cls 207
amsbook.cls 207
amsproc.cls 207
arab.mld 208, 242, 244, 470, 472, 644
arab2.mld 208, 242, 244, 471, 661
arabi.mld 208, 242, 244, 472, 665
arabic.ldf 208
arabic.mld 208, 242, 244, 472
armenian.mld 208, 242, 244, 473
australian.mld 242, 244, 474
austrian.mld 242, 244, 474
bahasa.dtx 474
bahasa.mld 242, 244, 474
bahasai.mld 242, 244, 474, 530
bahasam.dtx 475
bahasam.mld 242, 244, 475, 549, 555
bangla.mld 242, 244, 476, 478
basque.dtx 477
basque.mld 242, 244, 477
bengali.mld 242, 244, 478
Bg5.cap 491
Bg5.cpx 491
bicig.mld 242, 244, 478, 591
bicig2.mld 242, 244, 479, 592, 655
bicig3.mld 242, 244, 480, 592, 661
bithe.mld 242, 244, 480, 555, 655
book.cls 71
brazil.mld 242, 244, 481, 482
brazilian.mld 242, 244, 482, 652
breton.dtx 482
breton.mld 242, 244, 482
british.mld 242, 244, 483, 652
bulgarian.dtx 483
bulgarian.mld 242, 244, 483, 645
bulgarianb.mld 44, 242, 244, 484, 650
buryat.mld 242, 244, 484, 485
buryat2.mld 242, 244, 486, 661
canadian.mld 242, 244, 486
canadien.mld 242, 244, 489
captions.dn 528
castillan.mld 242, 244, 489
castillian.mld 242, 244, 489, 652
catalan.dtx 490
catalan.mld 242, 244, 490
CATALOG 210, 242–244, 669
chinese1.mld 242, 244, 491, 648
chinese1.mlo 242, 244, 491
chinese2.mld 242, 244, 491, 648
chinese2.mlo 242, 244, 491, 492
cmcyralt.sty 574
croatian.dtx 492
croatian.mld 242, 244, 492
czech.dtx 493
czech.mld 242, 244, 257, 493, 672
danish.dtx 494
danish.mld 242, 244, 494
devanagari.mld 242, 244, 255, 495, 527,
665
devanagari.sty 214, 495
duplex2v.pro 669
dutch.dtx 468, 496
dutch.mld 242, 244, 495
en-mtc.bst 214, 243–245, 255, 666
english.dtx 496–498
english.mld 36,
38–40, 154, 197, 241, 242, 244, 404,
406, 466, 470, 474, 483, 486, 496,
558, 592, 595, 644, 645, 666, 668
english1.mld 242, 244, 497, 661
english2.mld 242, 244, 498, 661
esperant.mld 242, 244, 498, 499
esperanto.dtx 498
esperanto.mld 242, 244, 499
estonian.dtx 499
estonian.mld 242, 244, 499

- ethiopia.mld 242, 244, 500, 502
- ethiopian.mld 242, 244
- ethiopian2.mld 242, 244, 502, 658
- ethopian.mld 502
- farsi.ldf 208, 505
- farsi.sty 216, 503, 504
- farsi1.mld 242, 244, 502, 653
- farsi1.mlo 242, 244, 502, 503, 653
- farsi2.mld 242, 244, 504, 653
- farsi2.mlo 242, 244, 504, 653
- farsi3.mld 208, 242, 244, 505, 665
- finnish.dtx 505, 507
- finnish.mld 242, 244, 505
- finnish2.mld 242, 244, 507, 650
- fminitoc.bib 217, 243, 244, 246, 647
- fminitoc.dtx 63, 217, 241–244, 246, 247, 439, 651
- fminitoc.ins 246
- fminitoc.ist 217, 243, 244, 246, 651
- fminitoc.lan 217, 243, 244, 246, 439
- fminitoc.pdf 217, 243, 244, 246, 647
- fminitoc.ps 217
- fr-mtc.bst 218, 243, 244, 246, 255, 666
- franc.sty 243
- francais.mld 242, 244, 508
- frbib.sty 243
- french.mld 36, 38, 40, 242, 244, 467, 489, 508, 510, 511, 651, 657
- french1.mld 242, 244, 509, 661
- french2.mld 92, 242, 244, 271, 510, 661, 663, 664
- frenchb.dtx 508–510
- frenchb.mld 242, 244, 510
- frenchle.mld 242, 244, 511
- frenchpro.mld 242, 244, 511
- frnew.sty 243
- frplain1.bst 255, 666
- galician.dtx 511
- galician.mld 242, 244, 257, 511, 670, 672
- german.mld 242, 244, 474, 512
- germanb.dtx 514
- germanb.mld 242, 244, 514
- germanb2.mld 242, 244, 514, 653
- greek-mono.mld 207, 242, 244, 515, 649
- greek-polydemo.mld 207, 242, 244, 517, 649
- greek-polykatha.mld 207, 242, 244, 518, 649
- greek.dtx 515
- greek.mld 242, 244, 515
- guarani.ldf 218, 519
- guarani.mld 242, 244, 519, 652
- hangul-u8.mld 242, 244, 523, 659
- hangul-u8.mlo 242, 244, 523, 659
- hangul.cap 520
- hangul.cpx 522
- hangul1.mld 242, 244, 520, 648
- hangul1.mlo 242, 244, 520
- hangul2.cap 522
- hangul2.cpx 523
- hangul2.mld 242, 244, 522, 648
- hangul2.mlo 242, 244, 522
- hangul3.mld 242, 244, 522, 648
- hangul3.mlo 242, 244, 522
- hangul4.mld 242, 244, 523, 648
- hangul4.mlo 242, 244, 523
- hanja-u8.mld 242, 244, 525, 659
- hanja-u8.mlo 242, 244, 525, 659
- hanja.cap 524
- hanja.cpx 524
- hanja1.mld 242, 244, 524, 648
- hanja1.mlo 242, 244, 524
- hanja2.mld 242, 244, 524, 648
- hanja2.mlo 242, 244, 524
- hebrew.dtx 527
- hebrew.mld 208, 242, 244, 525, 645
- hebrew2.mld 208, 242, 244, 527
- hindi-modern.mld 242, 244, 255, 528, 665, 666
- hindi.mld 242, 244, 255, 527, 665
- hungarian.mld 242, 244, 529
- icelandic.dtx 530
- icelandic.mld 242, 244, 529, 645
- indon.mld 242, 244, 530
- indonesian.mld 242, 244, 530
- INSTALL 219, 242–244, 252, 255, 649, 663, 668
- interlingua.dtx 531
- interlingua.mld 242, 244, 531
- irish.dtx 531
- irish.mld 242, 244, 531, 660
- italian.dtx 532
- italian.mld 242, 244, 532, 657
- italian2.mld 242, 244, 534
- japanese.mld 44, 242, 244, 534
- japanese.mlo 242, 244, 534
- japanese2.mld 242, 244, 535, 648
- japanese2.mlo 242, 244, 535
- japanese3.mld 242, 244, 536, 648, 657
- japanese3.mlo 242, 244, 536
- japanese4.mld 242, 244, 536, 648
- japanese4.mlo 242, 244, 536, 537
- japanese5.mld 242, 244, 537, 648
- japanese5.mlo 242, 244, 537
- japanese6.mld 242, 244, 255, 538, 667
- japanese6.mlo 242, 244, 255, 538, 667
- JIS.cap 535

- JIS.cpx 536
- kanlel.sty 538
- kannada.mld . . . 242, 244, 538, 659, 670
- khalkha.mld 242, 244, 539, 655
- lamed.tex 243–245, 661
- latex-advanced.pdf 626
- latex.fmt 60
- latex.tex 60, 641
- latin.dtx 539–541
- latin.mld 242, 244, 539, 645
- latin2.mld 242, 244, 540, 650
- latinc.mld 242, 244, 256, 540, 671
- latinc2.mld . . . 242, 244, 256, 541, 671
- latvian.ldf 541, 542
- latvian.mld 207, 242, 244, 541, 543, 649
- latvian2.mld 242, 244, 256, 542, 543, 671
- letton.mld 242, 244, 543, 649
- letton2.mld . . . 242, 244, 256, 543, 671
- lhcyralt.sty 575
- lhcyrkoi.sty 575
- lhcyrwin.sty 576
- lithuanian.ldf 543, 544
- lithuanian.mld 242, 244, 543, 644, 657
- lithuanian2.mld 242, 244, 256, 257, 544, 671, 672
- lowersorbian.mld . . 242, 244, 545, 546, 658
- lsorbian.dtx 545
- lsorbian.mld 242, 244, 257, 546, 660, 672
- magyar.dtx 548, 549
- magyar.mld 242, 244, 529, 548, 660
- magyar2.mld . . . 242, 244, 548, 650, 660
- magyar3.mld . . . 242, 244, 549, 657, 660
- malay.mld 242, 244, 549
- malayalam-b.mld 242, 244, 257, 550, 672
- malayalam-keli.mld 242, 244, 551, 651
- malayalam-keli2.mld 242, 244, 257, 551, 672
- malayalam-mr.mld . . 242, 244, 257, 552, 672
- malayalam-omega.mld 242, 244, 553, 659
- malayalam-omega.mlo 242, 244, 257, 553, 659, 672
- malayalam-rachana.mld 242, 244, 553, 651
- malayalam-rachana2.mld 242, 244, 554, 651
- malayalam-rachana3.mld 242, 244, 257, 554, 672
- manju.mld 242, 244, 555, 655
- memoir.cls 223, 276
- meyalu.mld 242, 244, 555
- minitoc-hyper.sty 223
- minitoc-tds.zip 224, 243, 246, 247, 255, 668, 670
- minitoc.bib 223, 243–245, 647
- minitoc.bug . 52, 57, 223, 243–245, 253, 254, 647, 652, 654, 658, 662
- minitoc.dtx 63, 217, 219, 223, 241–247, 253, 400, 439, 663
- minitoc.ins 44, 100, 216–219, 224, 228, 241–246, 400, 439, 466, 651, 663
- minitoc.ist 224, 243–246, 650
- minitoc.l 224, 241–244, 654
- minitoc.lan . . . 217, 224, 243–246, 439
- minitoc.pdf 224, 243, 244, 246
- minitoc.pre . . . 224, 243–246, 654, 660
- minitoc.ps 224
- minitoc.sty . . . 224, 241, 242, 244, 264
- minitoc.sum 224, 243–245
- minitoc.tex 643, 647
- mongol.mld 242, 244, 555
- mongolb.mld 242, 244, 255, 256, 557, 558, 669, 670
- mongolb.mlo 255, 669
- mongolian.dtx 557
- mongolian.mld . 242, 244, 256, 558, 670
- mtc-apx.tex 670
- mtc-cri.log 121
- mtcglo.ist 653
- mtcmess.sty 241, 242, 244
- mtcnorsk.sty 643
- mtcnynorsk.sty 643
- mtcoff.sty 241, 242, 244, 649
- mtcpatchmem.sty 241, 242, 244
- mtcswedish.sty 642
- naustrian.mld 242, 244, 558
- newzealand.mld 242, 244, 558
- ngerman.mld 242, 244, 559
- ngermanb.dtx 559, 560
- ngermanb.mld 242, 244, 558, 559
- ngermanb2.mld 242, 244, 560, 653
- norsk.dtx 560, 562
- norsk.mld 242, 244, 560
- norsk2.mld 242, 244, 561, 653
- nynorsk.mld 242, 244, 562
- nynorsk2.mld 242, 244, 562, 653
- OLD 664
- omega-greek.ldf 515, 517, 518
- omega-polish.ldf 563
- omega-russian.ldf 571
- omega-spanish.ldf 584
- omega.sty 207
- placeins.sty 31
- placeins.txt 31, 233
- plain.bst 214, 218
- plainurl.bst 255, 666

- polish.dtx 563
- polish.mld 242, 244, 563
- polish2.mld ... 207, 242, 244, 563, 649
- polski.dtx 564
- polski.mld 242, 244, 564, 660
- portuges.dtx 481, 565
- portuges.mld .. 242, 244, 565, 650, 651
- portugues.mld 650–652
- portuguese.mld ... 242, 244, 565, 652
- rapport.doc 587
- README 242–244
- romanian.dtx 566–568
- romanian.mld 242, 244, 566
- romanian2.mld . 242, 244, 567, 658, 665
- romanian3.mld . 242, 244, 568, 658, 665
- russian-cca.mld... 242, 244, 573, 660
- russian-cca.mlo 242, 244, 573
- russian-ccal.mld .. 242, 244, 574, 660
- russian-ccal.mlo 242, 244, 574
- russian-lh.mld ... 242, 244, 574, 660
- russian-lh.mlo 242, 244, 574
- russian-lhcyralt.mld . 242, 244, 575, 660
- russian-lhcyralt.mlo .. 242, 244, 575
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mld . 242, 244, 575, 660
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo .. 242, 244, 575
- russian-lhcyrwin.mld . 242, 244, 576, 660
- russian-lhcyrwin.mlo .. 242, 244, 576
- russian.def 573
- russian.mld 242, 244, 570
- russian.sty 573, 574
- russian2m.ldf 570
- russian2m.mld . 207, 242, 244, 570, 649
- russian2o.mld . 207, 242, 244, 571, 649
- russianb.dtx 484, 557, 572
- russianb.mld 242, 244, 572, 659
- russianc.mld 242, 244, 573
- samin.dtx 576
- samin.mld 242, 244, 576, 645
- scottish.dtx 578
- scottish.mld 242, 244, 577
- scrbook.cls 122
- serbian.dtx 578
- serbian.mld 242, 244, 578, 658
- serbianc.mld 44, 242, 244, 579, 648, 658
- SJIS.cap 536
- SJIS.cpx 537
- slovak.dtx 580
- slovak.mld 242, 244, 580
- slovene.dtx 580
- slovene.mld 242, 244, 580
- spanish.dtx 511, 581, 584, 585
- spanish.mld ... 242, 244, 489, 581, 659
- spanish2.mld 242, 244, 584, 650
- spanish3.mld .. 207, 242, 244, 584, 653
- spanish4.mld 242, 244, 585, 658
- swahili.mld ... 242, 244, 257, 585, 672
- swahili.tex 585
- swedish.dtx 587
- swedish.mld 242, 244, 587
- swedish2.mld 242, 244, 587, 661
- thai.dtx 626
- thai.ldf 589
- thai.mld 242, 244, 589, 648
- thai.mlo 242, 244, 589
- thaicjk.ldf 589
- thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz 626
- titletoc.sty 237
- tocloft.pdf 78
- TODO 238, 242–244
- turkish.dtx 590
- turkish.mld 242, 244, 590
- u8hangul.tex 523
- u8hanja.tex 525
- uighur.mld 242, 244, 591, 663
- uighur2.mld 242, 244, 592, 663
- uighur3.mld 242, 244, 592, 663
- UKenglish.mld 242, 244, 592, 652
- ukraineb.dtx 593
- ukraineb.mld .. 242, 244, 257, 593, 672
- ukrainian.mld 242, 244, 593, 658
- uppersorbian.mld .. 242, 244, 595, 658
- USenglish.mld 242, 244, 595, 652
- usorbian.dtx 595
- usorbian.mld 242, 244, 257, 595, 660, 672
- vietnam.mld ... 242, 244, 596, 597, 644
- vietnamese.mld 242, 244, 597
- welsh.dtx 597
- welsh.mld 242, 244, 597
- win-gn.def 519
- xalx.mld 242, 244, 539, 598, 655
- xalx2.mld 242, 244, 599, 661
- xalx3.mld 242, 244, 600, 661
- finlande1.png (graphic file) .. 243–245, 506
- finlande2.pdf (graphic file) .. 243–245, 506
- finnish (language option) 39, 505
- finnish.dtx (file) 505, 507
- finnish.mld (file) 242, 244, 505
- finnish2 (language option) 39, 507
- finnish2.mld (file) 242, 244, 507, 650
- finnishd.pdf (graphic file) .. 243–245, 507
- \firstchapteris (command) 28, 50, 54, 89, 164, 176, 206, 211, 216, 293, 433, 642, 643
- \firstchapteris 3066, 7282, 7704

`\firstpartis` (command) 28, 50, 54, 89, 164, 176, 206, 216, 321, 433
`\firstpartis` **3754**, 7275, **7704**
`\firstsectionis` (command) 28, 50, 54, 89, 165, 176, 206, 216, 346, 434
`\firstsectionis` **4397**, 7289, **7704**
 FISCHER, Ulrike 673
 flafter (package) 31, 233, 435, 661, 662, \hookrightarrow [242, 277]
 FLECK, Jean-Julien 673, \hookrightarrow [9]
 FLIPO, Daniel 508–510, 673, \hookrightarrow [68, 297]
 float (package) 31, 54, 88, 163, 217, 235, 256, 268, 275, 430, 671, \hookrightarrow [255]
`\FloatBarrier` (command) 30, 217, 233, 652
`\FloatBarrier` **871**, **929**
 floatrow (package) 31, 54, 88, 163, 217, 256, 268, 275, 430, 671, \hookrightarrow [239]
 FLOM, Peter L. 673, \hookrightarrow [146–148]
 flowfram (package) 53, 79, 88, 185, 217, 256, 414, 671, \hookrightarrow [353, 354]
 flsection (option) 251, 646
 flsectionb (option) 251, 646
`\flushbottom` 817, 1010
`\flushcolumns` **2075**, **2120**
 FLYNN, Peter 673, \hookrightarrow [149–152]
 fminitoc.bib (file) 217, 243, 244, 246, 647
 fminitoc.dtx (file) 63, 217, 241–244, 246, 247, 439, 651
 fminitoc.ins (file) 246
 fminitoc.ist (file) 217, 243, 244, 246, 651
 fminitoc.lan (file) 217, 243, 244, 246, 439
 fminitoc.pdf (file) 217, 243, 244, 246, 647
 fminitoc.ps (file) 217
 fmk (script) 217, 219, 234, 243, 244, 246, 247, 654
 fncychap (package) 53, 75, 88, 184, 217, 254, 273, 426, 662, \hookrightarrow [254]
 fo1.tex (old example document) 664, 666
 fo2.tex (old example document) 664, 666
`\footnotesize` (command) 231
`\footnotesize` 2362
 Fox, Jim 673
`\FR` **8654**
 fr-mtc.bst (file) 218, 243, 244, 246, 255, 666
`\frac` 2043
 franc (package) 92, 217, 244, 246
 franc.sty (file) 243
 francais (language option) 39, 508
 francais.mld (file) 242, 244, 508
 franco.png (graphic file) 243–245, 508
 frbib (package) 218, 244, 246
 frbib.sty (file) 243
 french (language option) 39, 489, 508, 510, 511, 646, 647

french.mld (file) 36, 38, 40, 242, 244, 467, 489, 508, 510, 511, 651, 657
 french1 (language option) 39, 509
 french1.mld (file) 242, 244, 509, 661
 french2 (language option) 39, 92, 226, 510
 french2.mld (file) 92, 242, 244, 271, 510, 661, 663, 664
 frenchb (language option) 39, 510
 frenchb.dtx (file) 508–510
 frenchb.mld (file) 242, 244, 510
 frenchle (package) \hookrightarrow [155]
 frenchle (language option) 39, 511, 646
 frenchle.mld (file) 242, 244, 511
 frenchpro (package) \hookrightarrow [156, 157]
 frenchpro (language option) 39, 511, 646
 frenchpro.mld (file) 242, 244, 511
 frnew (package) 92, 218, 244, 246
 frnew.sty (file) 243
`\frontmatter` (command) 78
`\frontmatter` 194
 frplain1.bst (file) 255, 666
 fswahili.pdf (graphic file) 243–245
 fullpage (package) 137, 138, 147, \hookrightarrow [125]
`\fup` 1749, 1771, 1773, 1839
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. 673
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo 673, \hookrightarrow [203]
`\fussy` 871, 1071

G

galicia-m.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 512
 galicia-mp.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 512
 galician (language option) 39, 511, 581
 galician.dtx (file) 511
 galician.mld (file) 242, 244, 257, 511, 670, 672
 galles1.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 598
 galles2.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 598
 gaps 76
 gaps.tex (old example document) 663, 666
 GARCIA, Federico 673, \hookrightarrow [153]
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 673
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 58, 673, \hookrightarrow [154]
 GAULLE[†], Bernard 673, \hookrightarrow [155–157]
 gauri (malayalam package) 550
`\gdef` (command) 277
`\gdef` 2720, 2722, 3063, 3078, 3482, 3602, 3663, 4632, 4649, 4783, 4816, 4879, 4939
 GELDERMAN, Maarten 673, \hookrightarrow [158]
 GENSCHTE, Chuck 673, \hookrightarrow [159]
 geometry (package) 115, 218, \hookrightarrow [366]

- german (language option) 39, 122, 474, 512, 514
 german.mld (file) 242, 244, 474, 512
 germanb (language option) 39, 514, 559
 germanb.dtx (file) 514
 germanb.mld (file) 242, 244, 514
 germanb2 (language option) 39, 514
 germanb2.mld (file) 242, 244, 514, 653
 GHODSI, Mohammad 466, 503, 504, 673, ⇨[140]
 GILHOOLY, Helen 673, ⇨[160]
 GIRON, François 673, ⇨[161]
 GLEISZNER, Markus 656, 657, 673
 \global 2594–2614, 2618, 2620, 2631,
 2634, 2643, 2646, 2751, 3031, 3038,
 3039, 3121, 3179, 3191, 3251, 3259,
 3319, 3422, 3425, 3441, 3444, 3460,
 3463, 3851, 3865, 3908, 3917, 3931,
 3932, 3982, 3992, 4006, 4007, 4057,
 4105, 4108, 4124, 4127, 4143, 4146,
 4444, 4503, 4511, 4570, 4578, 4638,
 4725, 4728, 4744, 4747, 4763, 4766,
 5844, 5850, 5860, 5868, 5878, 5884,
 5894, 5902, 5912, 5918, 6436–6438,
 6697–6699, 6702, 6705, 6708, 6711,
 6714, 6717, 8028
 \glqq 1517
 \gobbleopt@ (command) 368, 447
 \gobbleopt@ **5028**, 5036–5045, **7623**,
 7624–7642
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali 673
 \goodap **2172**
 GOOSSENS, Michel 642, 673,
 ⇨[162, 163, 277–279]
 gopika (malayalam package) 550
 GORDON, JR., Raymond G. 673, ⇨[164]
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu 674, ⇨[27]
 GRANT, Fraser 531, 578, 674, ⇨[52, 69]
 Graphic files
 acadien.pdf 243–245, 467
 afrsud-l.pdf 243–245, 468
 afrsud-p.pdf 243–245, 468
 alba-eth.pdf 243–245, 469
 albania.pdf 243–245, 469
 allemand.jpg 243–245, 513
 anglo.png 243–245, 496
 arabic.png 243–245, 471
 armeniar.jpg 243–245, 473
 baltes.pdf 243–245, 542, 544
 bangla.pdf 243–245, 477
 bangla2.pdf 243–245, 477
 basque1.pdf 243–245, 478
 basque2.pdf 243–245, 478
 belgique.pdf 243–245, 495
 bosnia.pdf 243–245, 578
 brazil.pdf 243–245, 481
 brazilp.pdf 243–245, 481
 bretagne.pdf 243–245, 482
 bulgariar.jpg 243–245, 484
 bulgmap.png 243–245, 484
 buryatia-l.pdf 243–245, 485
 buryatia.pdf 243–245, 485
 canada-l.pdf 243–245, 488
 canada-pe.png 243–245, 488
 canada-pf.pdf 243–245
 canada.pdf 243–245, 487
 canada1.pdf 243–245, 487
 catalan-d.pdf 243–245, 490
 catalan-p.pdf 243–245, 490
 caucasus.pdf 243–245, 473
 chine1.pdf 243–245, 491
 chine2.pdf 243–245, 491
 croatie1.pdf 243–245, 492
 croatie2.pdf 243–245, 492
 cz1.pdf 243–245, 493
 cz3.png 243–245, 493
 danemark.jpg 243–245, 494
 ecosse1.pdf 243–245, 577
 ecosse2.pdf 243–245, 577
 ecosse3.pdf 243–245, 577
 espa-l.pdf 243–245, 583
 estonia-a.pdf 243–245, 499
 estonia-b.pdf 243–245, 499
 ethiolang.png 243–245, 501
 ethiopia-p.pdf 243–245, 501
 ethiopia.pdf 243–245, 501
 farsi-logo.png 243–245, 503
 farsi.pdf 243–245, 503
 feroe.jpg 243–245, 494
 finlandel.png 243–245, 506
 finlande2.pdf 243–245, 506
 finnishd.pdf 243–245, 507
 franco.png 243–245, 508
 fswahili.pdf 243–245
 galicia-m.pdf 243–245, 512
 galicia-mp.pdf 243–245, 512
 galles1.pdf 243–245, 598
 galles2.pdf 243–245, 598
 grece1.pdf 243–245, 516
 grece2.pdf 243–245, 516
 greekm.jpg 243–245, 516
 hangul.png 243–245, 521
 hanja.png 243–245, 521
 hispano.png 243–245, 583
 hum-lang.png 243–245, 465
 hun1.png 243–245, 548
 hun2.jpg 243–245, 548
 inde1.pdf 243–245, 528
 inde2.jpg 243–245, 528

- indonesia1.pdf 243–245, 475
 - indonesia2.pdf 243–245, 475
 - iranian.jpg 243–245, 504
 - irish.png 243–245, 532
 - irlande.pdf 243–245, 532
 - islande.png 243–245, 529
 - islandep.jpg 243–245, 529
 - isr1.pdf 243–245, 526
 - isr2.pdf 243–245, 526
 - italian.pdf 243–245, 533
 - italo1.png 243–245, 533
 - japon1.pdf 243–245, 535
 - japon2.jpg 243–245, 535
 - karnataka.jpg 243–245, 538
 - kerala.jpg 243–245, 550
 - khalkha.pdf 243–245, 599
 - korean1.png 243–245, 521
 - korean2.jpg 243–245, 521
 - lamed.pdf 221, 232, 243–245, 661
 - lettonie.pdf 243–245, 542
 - lituanie.png 243–245, 544
 - luso.jpg 243–245, 566
 - malayalam.pdf 243–245, 550
 - malaysia1.pdf 243–245, 476
 - malaysia2.pdf 243–245, 476
 - mondep.png 243–245, 465
 - mongasie.pdf 243–245, 556
 - mongolcy.png 224, 243–245
 - mongolian.pdf 243–245, 556
 - mongoltr.png 243–245
 - neder.pdf 243–245, 495
 - norvege-c.pdf 243–245, 561
 - norvege-t.pdf 243–245, 561
 - paraguay.png 243–245, 519
 - paraguayp.pdf 243–245, 519
 - pologne.pdf 243–245, 563
 - portugal.pdf 243–245, 565
 - romanian.pdf 243–245, 567
 - russian.png 243–245, 569
 - russianlan.png 243–245, 569
 - same.png 243–245, 577
 - serbial.pdf 243–245, 578
 - slovakia.pdf 243–245, 580
 - slovenie.pdf 243–245, 581
 - sorabe-1.jpg 243–245, 546
 - sorabe-2.jpg 243–245, 546
 - sorbian.jpg 243–245, 547
 - spain.pdf 243–245, 582
 - suede-a.pdf 243–245, 588
 - suede-f.pdf 243–245, 588
 - svenska.png 243–245, 588
 - swahili.pdf 243–245, 586
 - sweden.pdf 243–245, 588
 - thai.pdf 243–245, 589
 - turquie.pdf 243–245, 590
 - uighur.pdf 243–245, 591
 - ukraine.jpg 243–245, 594
 - ukrainep.pdf 243–245, 594
 - viet2.pdf 243–245, 596
 - viet3.pdf 243–245, 596
 - xinjiang.png 243–245, 591
 - xinjiangc.png 243–245, 591
 - GRÄTZER, George 674, ⇨[165, 166]
 - GRAY, Norman 239, 674, ⇨[167]
 - grece1.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 516
 - grece2.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 516
 - greek (language option) 39, 515
 - greek-mono (language option) 39, 44, 515
 - greek-mono.mld (file) 207, 242, 244, 515, 649
 - greek-polydemo (language option) 39, 44, 517
 - greek-polydemo.mld (file) 207, 242, 244, 517, 649
 - greek-polykatha (language option) 39, 44, 518
 - greek-polykatha.mld (file) 207, 242, 244, 518, 649
 - greek.dtx (file) 515
 - greek.mld (file) 242, 244, 515
 - greekm.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 516
 - GREENWADE, George D. 674, ⇨[168]
 - GREGORIO, Enrico 585, 674, ⇨[169]
 - GRENON, Loïc 674
 - GREYER, Charles 674, ⇨[339]
 - GRIMES, Barbara F. 674, ⇨[164]
 - GRINEVA, Olga A. 674, ⇨[32]
 - GROT, Sébastien 674
 - \grqq 1517
 - guarani (package) 44, 218, 466, 519, ⇨[41]
 - guarani (language option) 39, 218, 519
 - guarani.ldf (file) 218, 519
 - guarani.mld (file) 242, 244, 519, 652
 - GUIGNARD, Micael 674
 - GUNN, Marion 531, 674, ⇨[52]
 - GURARI, Eitan M. 674, ⇨[163]
- ## H
- HAFNER, Thomas 674, ⇨[325]
 - HAGEN, Hans 674, ⇨[147, 170, 171, 175, 196]
 - HAHN, Reinhard F. 674, ⇨[172]
 - HAMZI, Boumediene 674
 - HÀN, Thé Thành 213, 596, 659, 669, 674, ⇨[173–175, 252]
 - hangcaption (package) 53, 79, 88, 185, 218, 255, 273, 426, 640, 668, ⇨[210]
 - hangul-u8 (language option) 39, 523

- hangul-u8.mld (file) . . . 242, 244, 523, 659
 hangul-u8.mlo (file) . . . 242, 244, 523, 659
 hangul.cap (file) 520
 hangul.cpx (file) 522
 hangul.png (graphic file) 243–245, 521
 hangul1 (language option) 39, 520
 hangul1.mld (file) 242, 244, 520, 648
 hangul1.mlo (file) 242, 244, 520
 hangul2 (language option) 39, 522
 hangul2.cap (file) 522
 hangul2.cpx (file) 523
 hangul2.mld (file) 242, 244, 522, 648
 hangul2.mlo (file) 242, 244, 522
 hangul3 (language option) 39, 522
 hangul3.mld (file) 242, 244, 522, 648
 hangul3.mlo (file) 242, 244, 522
 hangul4 (language option) 39, 523
 hangul4.mld (file) 242, 244, 523, 648
 hangul4.mlo (file) 242, 244, 523
 hanja-u8 (language option) 39, 525
 hanja-u8.mld (file) 242, 244, 525, 659
 hanja-u8.mlo (file) 242, 244, 525, 659
 hanja.cap (file) 524
 hanja.cpx (file) 524
 hanja.png (graphic file) 243–245, 521
 hanja1 (language option) 39, 524
 hanja1.mld (file) 242, 244, 524, 648
 hanja1.mlo (file) 242, 244, 524
 hanja2 (language option) 39, 524
 hanja2.mld (file) 242, 244, 524, 648
 hanja2.mlo (file) 242, 244, 524
 HANSEN, Thorsten 674, ⇨[176, 177]
 HAPPEL, Patrick 674, ⇨[178]
 HARALAMBOUS, Yannis 231, 674, ⇨[8, 179–187, 315, 316]
 HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. 674, ⇨[1, 2]
 HARIN, Alexander 574, 674, ⇨[188]
 HARRIS, Russel L. 674
 HARRISON, Michael A. 674, ⇨[113]
 HARTKE, Stephen 674, ⇨[189]
 \hb@xt@ 3365
 HEAP, Danny 674
 hebrew (language option) 39, 208, 525
 hebrew.dtx (file) 527
 hebrew.mld (file) . . . 208, 242, 244, 525, 645
 hebrew2 (language option) 39, 527
 hebrew2.mld (file) 208, 242, 244, 527
 HEFFERON, Jim 674, ⇨[191, 192]
 HEIDER, André 674
 HEIN, Thorsten 674
 HELLMAN, Sten 587, 674, ⇨[70]
 HELSTRUP, Håvard 560, 562, 674, ⇨[53]
 HENEL, Yvon 674, ⇨[27, 362]
 HENKEL, Hartmut 674, ⇨[196]
 HENLICH, Thomas 674, ⇨[193]
 HENNIG, Stephan 54, 72, 88, 674, ⇨[194]
 HENRY, Florence 674, ⇨[27]
 HERBORN, Stephen 674
 here (package) 217
 HESOLL, Jörg 674
 hia.tex (old example document) . . . 664, 666
 hide.tex (old example document) 662
 hide1.tex (old example document) . . 662, 666
 hide2.tex (old example document) . . 662, 666
 hindi (language option) 39, 218, 527
 hindi-modern (language option) . 39, 218, 528
 hindi-modern.mld (file) . 242, 244, 255, 528, 665, 666
 hindi.mld (file) 242, 244, 255, 527, 665
 HINNENBUSH, Pr. Thomas J. 674, ⇨[195]
hints (default option) 52–54, 57, 70, 72, 73, 75, 76, 79, 80, 156, 162, 170, 218, 231, 252, 253, 266, 269, 408, 417, 434, 437, 647, 651, 660
 hints (option) 57
 hir.tex (old example document) . . . 664, 666
 hispano.png (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 583
 L^AT_EX (package) . 219, 466, 523, 525, ⇨[222]
 \hline (command) 327, 329, 332, 349, 351, 354
 \hline . 3158, 3228, 3296, **3880, 3948, 4027, 4473, 4540, 4607**
 HOADLEY, David 674, ⇨[340]
 HOEKWATER, Taco 674, ⇨[196]
 HOENIG, Alan 674, ⇨[197]
 HOGG, Joe 674, ⇨[147]
 HØGHOLM, Morten 674
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil 560, 562, 674, ⇨[53]
 hop.tex (old example document) . . . 664, 666
 HÖPPNER, Klaus 674, ⇨[198]
 HORST, Umstatter 566, 674, ⇨[71]
 HOSEK, Don 650, 674, ⇨[199]
 \hrule (command) 293, 646
 \hrule . 1304, 3081, 5059–5061, 5068–5070, 5077–5079
 Hu, Yufan 639, 674
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel 674, ⇨[200, 279]
 \Huge (command) 231
 \Huge 1235, 1237, 1244
 \huge (command) 231
 \huge 1755
 hum-lang.png (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 465
 hun1.png (graphic file) 243–245, 548
 hun2.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 548
 hungarian (language option) . . . 39, 529, 548
 hungarian.mld (file) 242, 244, 529
 HUSEBY, Dave W. 674
 HYNA, Helene 674, ⇨[297, 298]

hypcap (package) 671, \hookrightarrow [293]
 hypernat (package) 670, \hookrightarrow [36]
 hyperref (package) 22, 53, 62, 63,
 72, 88, 116, 142, 153, 170, 171, 174,
 219, 223, 239, 240, 247, 250, 253,
 272, 310, 414, 645, 654, 658, 669,
 670, \hookrightarrow [291, 294–296, 323, 324]
 HyperTeX (package) 219, 239, \hookrightarrow [313]

I

I0000 (message) 151, 152, 264
 I0001 (message) 22, 151, 153, 264
 I0002 (message) 151, 153, 283
 I0003 (message) 151, 153, 281
 I0004 (message) 151, 153, 280
 I0005 (message) 151, 153, 272
 I0006 (message) 54, 151, 154, 296, 299, 303,
 326, 328, 331, 348, 351, 353
 I0007 (message) 151, 154, 387
 I0008 (message) 151, 154, 387
 I0009 (message) 151, 154, 436
 I0010 (message) 151, 154, 399
 I0011 (message) 151, 155, 400
 I0012 (message) 151, 155, 283
 I0013 (message) 151, 155, 391
 I0014 (message) 151, 155, 390
 I0015 (message) 151, 155, 376
 I0016 (message) 151, 156, 383
 I0017 (message) 151, 156, 378
 I0018 (message) 151, 156, 377
 I0019 (message) 151, 156, 434
 I0020 (message) 65, 151, 156, 223, 276
 I0021 (message) 151, 157, 385
 I0022 (message) 151, 157, 385
 I0023 (message) 151, 157, 279
 I0024 (message) 151, 157, 313
 I0025 (message) 151, 157, 339
 I0026 (message) 151, 157, 361
 I0027 (message) 65, 151, 158, 223, 276
 I0028 (message) 151, 158, 280
 I0029 (message) 151, 158, 280
 I0030 (message) 65, 151, 158, 223, 276
 I0031 (message) 151, 158, 283
 I0032 (message) 65, 151, 159, 223, 276
 I0033 (message) 151, 159, 311, 312, 315, 318,
 337, 338, 341, 343, 360, 361, 363,
 365
 I0034 (message) 151, 159, 316
 I0035 (message) 151, 159, 341
 I0036 (message) 151, 159, 364
 I0037 (message) 151, 160, 318

I0038 (message) 151, 160, 344
 I0039 (message) 151, 160, 366
 I0040 (message) 53, 70, 151, 160, 206, 252,
 413, 650
 I0041 (message) 66, 151, 160, 207, 413
 I0042 (message) 64, 151, 161, 207, 251, 409,
 647
 I0043 (message) 42, 50, 75, 151, 161, 220, 252,
 254, 409, 651, 658
 I0044 (message) 65, 151, 161, 223, 412
 I0045 (message) 151, 161, 309, 310, 335, 336,
 358, 359
 I0046 (message) 50, 151, 162, 238, 251, 409,
 645
 I0047 (message) 64, 151, 162, 238, 410
 I0048 (message) 151, 162, 367
 I0049 (message) 151, 162, 408
 I0050 (message) 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 466
 I0051 (message) 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 466
 I0052 (message) 151, 163, 393
 I0053 (message) 54, 151, 163, 217, 235, 238,
 256, 430, 431, 671
 icelandic (language option) 39, 530
 icelandic.dtx (file) 530
 icelandic.mld (file) 242, 244, 529, 645
 idxtotoc (KOMA-Script package) 50
 \if@dominilof@used@2600, 3433, 6768, 6854
 \if@dominilot@used@2600, 3452, 6768, 6854
 \if@dominitoc@used@ 2600, 3399, 3414,
 6768, 6854
 \if@dopartlof@used@2594, 4116, 6739, 6825
 \if@dopartlot@used@2594, 4135, 6739, 6825
 \if@doparttoc@used@2594, 4097, 6739, 6825
 \if@dosectlof@used@ 2606, 4736, 6721,
 6797, 6883
 \if@dosectlot@used@ 2606, 4755, 6721,
 6797, 6883
 \if@dosecttoc@used@2606, 4717, 6797, 6883
 \if@filesw 2628, 3020, 5029
 \if@firstchapteris@used@ 2612, 3066,
 7278
 \if@firstpartis@used@ 2612, 3754, 7271
 \if@firstsectionis@used@ 2612, 7285
 \if@mainmatter 7922, 7940
 \if@minilof@used@ 2600, 3190, 6768, 6854,
 6947
 \if@minilot@used@ 2600, 3258, 6768, 6854,
 6947
 \if@minitoc@used@ 2600, 3120, 6768, 6854,
 6947
 \if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ 6435
 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2563, 2672, 7110
 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2563, 2672,
 7110

- \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2545, 2674, 7119
- \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ . . . 2545, 2674, 7119
- \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ . . . 2545, 2678, 7137
- \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ . . . 2545, 2678, 7137
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@ 2545, 2676, 7128
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ . . . 2545, 2676, 7128
- \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2545, 2680, 7146
- \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ . . . 2545, 2680, 7146
- \if@mtc@chapter@def@ . . . 2584, 6768, 6854, 6947, 7017
- \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ 2590, 4396, 4994
- \if@mtc@checkfiles 2743, 6108
- \if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2573, 3197, 7236
- \if@mtc@empty@minilot@ 2578, 3265, 7243
- \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2573, 3127, 7229
- \if@mtc@empty@partlof@ 2573, 7215
- \if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2573, 7222
- \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ 2573, 7208
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2573, 7257
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2573, 7264
- \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ 2579, 7250
- \if@mtc@FE . . . 2743, 3127, 3135, 3197, 3205, 3265, 3273, 3857, 3868, 3923, 3936, 3998, 4011, 4450, 4458, 4517, 4526, 4584, 4593
- \if@mtc@floatLoaded@ . . . 2569, 2684, 7164
- \if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ 2569, 2685, 7175
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2555, 2662, 7065
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ . . . 2555, 2662, 7065
- \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2555, 2664, 7074
- \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2555, 2664, 7074
- \if@mtc@Himlof@ 5852
- \if@mtc@Himlot@ 5886
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ (command) 393
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ 5837, 5838
- \if@mtc@hints@ (command) 266
- \if@mtc@hints@ . . . 2536, 3414, 3433, 3452, 4097, 4116, 4135, 4717, 4736, 4755, 5014, 6433, 6696, 7387
- \if@mtc@hints@giben@ 2536
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ (command) 266
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ . . . 2538, 6444, 6452, 6460, 6468, 6492, 6500, 6508, 6516, 6576, 6585, 6600, 6609, 6623, 6630, 6638, 6657, 6676, 6726, 6739, 6768, 6797, 6825, 6854, 6883, 6912, 6947, 6982, 7047, 7056, 7065, 7074, 7083, 7092, 7101, 7110, 7119, 7128, 7137, 7146, 7155, 7164, 7175, 7186, 7197, 7292
- \if@mtc@hints@given@true 7017
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ (command) 266
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ . . . 2536, 6638, 6657, 6676, 6726
- \if@mtc@hyper@used@2642, 6638, 6657, 6676
- \if@mtc@insellang@ (command) . . . 399, 400
- \if@mtc@insellang@ 6049, 6069
- \if@mtc@LI 2743
- \if@mtc@listfiles@ 6135, 7386
- \if@mtc@lof@used@ . . . 6435, 6696, 6700, 6709, 6925, 6960, 6995
- \if@mtc@longext@ (command) 257, 672
- \if@mtc@longext@ . . . 2841, 3122, 3192, 3260, 3485, 3497, 3530, 3605, 3666, 3850, 3916, 3990, 4165, 4179, 4277, 4337, 4443, 4510, 4577, 4786, 4814, 4882, 4942, 6113, 7017, 7339, 7787
- \if@mtc@lot@used@ . . . 6435, 6696, 6700, 6709, 6936, 6971, 7006
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2545, 2682, 7155
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ . . . 2545, 2682, 7155
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ (command) . . . 285
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ . . . 2540, 2688, 2894
- \if@mtc@memoirnew@ 2540, 2688
- \if@mtc@mislang (command) 403
- \if@mtc@mislang 6143, 6189, 6219
- \if@mtc@notoccite@ 2637, 6112, 7336
- \if@mtc@part@def@ . . . 2582, 6739, 6825, 6912, 7017
- \if@mtc@part@undef@ 2588
- \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ 2540, 6726, 7330
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2555, 2666, 7083
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ . . . 2555, 2666, 7083
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 2563, 2668, 7092
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ . . . 2563, 2668, 7092
- \if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ 2569, 2687, 7197
- \if@mtc@sect@floats@ . . . 2539, 6721, 6726
- \if@mtc@section@def@ . . . 2586, 4396, 4993, 6721, 6797, 6883, 6982, 7017
- \if@mtc@section@undef@ 2592
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 2540, 2658, 7047
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ . . . 2540, 2658, 7047
- \if@mtc@setdepth@ 5749, 5751, 5770
- \if@mtc@setfeature@ 5688, 5710, 5729
- \if@mtc@setfont@ . . . 5149, 5151, 5170, 5189, 5274
- \if@mtc@setformat@ 5455, 5493

- \if@mtc@setoffset@ **5793, 5795, 5814**
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ . . . **5511, 5553**
- \if@mtc@setrules@ **5587, 5608**
- \if@mtc@settitle@ **5332, 5334, 5353**
- \if@mtc@settitlefont@ . **5291, 5293, 5312**
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ . . . **2563, 2670, 7101**
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ . **2563, 2670, 7101**
- \if@mtc@spn@ok@ **5511, 5553**
- \if@mtc@sru@ok@ **5587, 5629**
- \if@mtc@ss@insection@ . **6117, 6516, 7330**
- \if@mtc@toc@used@ . **6435, 6696, 6700, 6709, 6914, 6949, 6984**
- \if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ . . . **2569, 2686, 7186**
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ **2555, 2660, 7056**
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ . . **2555, 2660, 7056**
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ (command) **396**
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ **5942**
- \if@mtcfixindex@ **5985**
- \if@mtcfixnomclature@ **6028**
- \if@mtcfixnomenclature@ 6028, 6037
- \if@mtcpatchmemoir@ **2688, 2711**
- \if@partlof@used@ (command) **328**
- \if@partlof@used@ . **2594, 3916, 6739, 6825, 6912**
- \if@partlot@used@ (command) **331**
- \if@partlot@used@ . **2594, 3990, 6739, 6825, 6912**
- \if@parttoc@used@ (command) **325**
- \if@parttoc@used@ . **2594, 3850, 6739, 6825, 6912**
- \if@sectlof@used@ (command) **350**
- \if@sectlof@used@ . **2606, 4510, 6721, 6797, 6883, 6982**
- \if@sectlot@used@ (command) **353**
- \if@sectlot@used@ . **2606, 4577, 6721, 6797, 6883, 6982**
- \if@secttoc@used@ (command) **348**
- \if@secttoc@used@ . **2606, 4443, 6797, 6883, 6982**
- \if@setrules@false **5629**
- \if@twocolumn **3812, 3819, 3826**
- \if@twoside 1733
- \ifanappendix 7941
- \ifartopt 7927
- \ifcase (command) 217, 241, 439
- \ifcase **8530, 8751**
- \ifdim 4672
- \ifeof . 2747, 2751, 3562, 3590, 3628, 3655, 3689, 3716, 4240, 4267, 4300, 4327, 4360, 4387, 4844, 4871, 4904, 4931, 4964, 4991
- \IfFileExists 2712, 2757, **4995, 6049, 6069, 6143, 6189, 7339**
- \ifFTR (command) 651
- \ifheadnameref 7954
- \ifktightmtc **2640, 3108, 3837, 4430, 6104, 7787**
- ifmtarg (package) 219, 277, \hookrightarrow [400]
- \ifmtc@lof@used@ **6912, 6947, 6982**
- \ifmtc@lot@used@ **6912, 6947, 6982**
- \ifmtc@toc@used@ **6912, 6947, 6982**
- \ifmtcoffwarn@ **7793, 7810, 7860**
- \ifmtcsecondpart (command) 661
- \ifmtcsecondpart . . . 270, **270, 2615, 2616, 2622, 7787, 8746**
- \ifnum (command) 356
- \ifnum **8507, 8723, 8746**
- \ifodd 1734
- ifpdf (package) \hookrightarrow [292]
- \ifscan@allowed 397, 560
- ifthen (package) 219
- \ifthenelse (command) 219
- \iftightmtc . **2640, 3108, 3837, 4430, 6104, 7787**
- \ifundottedmtc (command) 306, 657
- \ifundottedmtc . . . **2881, 3370, 3373, 3376, 3378, 3388, 6110, 7787**
- \ifx2748, 3043, 3048, 3051, 3056, 3152, 3186, 3222, 3290, 3479, 3483, 3497, 3512, 3515, 3518, 3521, 3524, 3527, 3530, 3544, 3547, 3550, 3553, 3556, 3578, 3582, 3584, 3587, 3600, 3603, 3617, 3621, 3643, 3647, 3649, 3652, 3661, 3664, 3678, 3682, 3704, 3708, 3710, 3713, 3732, 3880, 3952, 4027, 4161, 4163, 4177, 4192, 4195, 4198, 4201, 4204, 4207, 4210, 4213, 4216, 4219, 4222, 4225, 4228, 4231, 4234, 4255, 4259, 4261, 4264, 4273, 4275, 4289, 4293, 4315, 4319, 4321, 4324, 4333, 4335, 4349, 4353, 4375, 4379, 4381, 4384, 4476, 4542, 4609, 4657, 4661, 4781, 4784, 4799, 4802, 4805, 4808, 4811, 4814, 4829, 4832, 4835, 4838, 4859, 4863, 4865, 4868, 4877, 4880, 4895, 4898, 4919, 4923, 4925, 4928, 4937, 4940, 4955, 4958, 4979, 4983, 4985, 4988, 5153, 5171, 5211–5215, 5217–5219, 5221–5223, 5225–5232, 5234–5239, 5241–5246, 5248–5256, 5258–5264, 5266–5272, 5295, 5336, 5460, 5476, 5514, 5535, 5554, 5574, 5590, 5611, 5630, 5649, 5693, 5710,

- 5753, 5797, 5946, 5948, 5950, 5989,
5991, 5993, 6032, 6034, 6036, 6639,
6641, 6643, 6658, 6660, 6662, 6678,
6680, 6682, 7817, 7828, 7839, 7908,
7915, 8797, 8805, 8813, 9708, 9718,
9728, 10079, 10284, 10331
- `\ignorespaces` **3327**
- IkEDA, Hiroya 674, ⇨[202]
- `imk` (script) . 214, 217, 219, 234, 243, 244, 246,
247, 654, 663
- `\immediate` 2630, 2633, 2746, 2758,
2766–2768, 2770, 2771, **2841**, **3020**,
3471–3473, 3494, 3495, 3508, 3509,
3541, 3542, 3585, 3586, 3614, 3615,
3650, 3651, 3675, 3676, 3711, 3712,
3722, 3740, 4154–4156, 4174, 4175,
4188, 4189, 4262, 4263, 4286, 4287,
4322, 4323, 4346, 4347, 4382, 4383,
4774–4776, 4795, 4796, 4826, 4827,
4866, 4867, 4891, 4892, 4926, 4927,
4951, 4952, 4986, 4987, 7344, 7345,
7347, 7349
- `\in` **10402**
- `\incrementmtc` (command) . 35, 87, 206, 293,
652
- `\incrementmtc` **3066**, **7614**
- `\incrementptc` (command) . 35, 87, 206, 253,
321, 652
- `\incrementptc` **3754**, **7614**
- `\incrementstc` (command) . 35, 87, 206, 346,
652
- `\incrementstc` **4397**, **7614**
- `inde1.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 528
- `inde2.jpg` (graphic file) 243–245, 528
- `indon` (language option) 39, 530
- `indon.mld` (file) 242, 244, 530
- `indonesia1.pdf` (graphic file) . 243–245, 475
- `indonesia2.pdf` (graphic file) . 243–245, 475
- `indonesian` (language option) 39, 530
- `indonesian.mld` (file) 242, 244, 530
- `indulekha` (malayalam package) 550
- `\input` **2841**, **7430**
- `\InputIfFileExists` 6052, 6071, **7304**
- `insection` (option) 30,
53, 80, 100, 107, 172, 177, 183, 184,
197, 219, 233, 251, 252, 254, 402,
417, 418, 435, 646, 648, 661, 662
- `\insertchapterspace` 7931
- `INSTALL` (file) . . 219, 242–244, 252, 255, 649,
663, 668
- `\interlinepenalty` . 1233, 1243, 2887, 3348,
3360, 4675
- `interlingua` (language option) 39, 531
- `interlingua.dtx` (file) 531
- `interlingua.mld` (file) 242, 244, 531
- `intoc` (nomencl package) 136, 137
- `iranian.jpg` (graphic file) 243–245, 504
- `irish` (language option) 39, 531
- `irish.dtx` (file) 531
- `irish.mld` (file) 242, 244, 531, 660
- `irish.png` (graphic file) 243–245, 532
- `irlande.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 532
- `islande.png` (graphic file) 243–245, 529
- `islandep.jpg` (graphic file) 243–245, 529
- `ISMashtamudi` (malayalam package) 550
- `ISMkarthika` (malayalam package) 550
- `ISMkaumudi` (malayalam package) 550
- `ISMrevathi` (malayalam package) 550
- `isr1.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 526
- `isr2.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 526
- `italian` (language option) 39, 532, 534
- `italian.dtx` (file) 532
- `italian.mld` (file) 242, 244, 532, 657
- `italian.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 533
- `italian2` (language option) 39, 534
- `italian2.mld` (file) 242, 244, 534
- `italo1.png` (graphic file) 243–245, 533
- `\itemindent` (command) 295, 324
- `\itemindent` . **3108**, 3163, 3233, 3301, **3837**,
3891, 3964, 4039, 4432, 4433, 4487,
4554, 4621
- `\itemsep` (command) 295, 324
- `\itemsep` **3108**, **3837**, 4432
- `\itshape` (command) 231
- IVANOV, Dmitry . 207, 515, 517, 518, 541, 563,
570, 571, 674, ⇨[226]
- IVERSEN, Per Steinar 560, 562, 674, ⇨[53]
- IWAKUMA, Tetsuo 674, ⇨[203]
- IZAOLA, Zunbeltz 477, 674, ⇨[55]

J

- JABRI, Youssef 208, 472, 505, 674, ⇨[204]
- JACKOWSKI, Paweł 674, ⇨[205]
- JACQUET, Christophe 674, ⇨[206]
- JAEGNE, Bernd 62, 223, 250, 310, 314, 674,
⇨[372]
- JALAM, Radwan 674
- JANICH, Michael 563, 674, ⇨[89]
- `japanese` (language option) 39, 534
- `japanese.mld` (file) 44, 242, 244, 534
- `japanese.mlo` (file) 242, 244, 534
- `japanese2` (language option) 39, 535
- `japanese2.mld` (file) 242, 244, 535, 648
- `japanese2.mlo` (file) 242, 244, 535
- `japanese3` (language option) 39, 536

japanese3.mld (file) 242, 244, 536, 648, 657
japanese3.mlo (file) 242, 244, 536
japanese4 (language option) . . . 39, 536, 537
japanese4.mld (file) . . . 242, 244, 536, 648
japanese4.mlo (file) . . . 242, 244, 536, 537
japanese5 (language option) 39, 537
japanese5.mld (file) . . . 242, 244, 537, 648
japanese5.mlo (file) 242, 244, 537
japanese6 (language option) 39, 538
japanese6.mld (file) 242, 244, 255, 538, 667
japanese6.mlo (file) 242, 244, 255, 538, 667
japon1.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 535
japon2.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 535
jaya (malayalam package) 550
JEFFREY, Alan 674, ⇨[62, 207, 208, 281]
JENSEN, Frank 674, ⇨[360]
JERNsLETTEN, Regnor 576, 674, ⇨[72]
JIANG, Zhuhan 77, 674, ⇨[209]
JIS.cap (file) 535
JIS.cpx (file) 536
\jobname (command) 217, 220, 257, 278, 283,
284, 296, 299, 302, 307, 308, 315,
318, 424, 436, 439, 664, 672
\jobname 2766, 2769, 2770, **2841**, 3030, 3127,
3130, 3175, 3197, 3200, 3247, 3265,
3268, 3315, 3471–3473, 3487, 3488,
3491, 3492, 3501, 3502, 3505, 3506,
3534, 3535, 3538, 3539, 3586, 3607,
3608, 3611, 3612, 3651, 3668, 3669,
3672, 3673, 3712, 3857, 3860, 3904,
3923, 3926, 3978, 3998, 4001, 4053,
4154–4156, 4167, 4168, 4171, 4172,
4181, 4182, 4185, 4186, 4263, 4279,
4280, 4283, 4284, 4323, 4339, 4340,
4343, 4344, 4383, 4450, 4453, 4499,
4517, 4520, 4568, 4584, 4587, 4636,
4774–4776, 4788, 4789, 4792, 4793,
4819, 4820, 4823, 4824, 4867, 4884,
4885, 4888, 4889, 4927, 4944, 4945,
4948, 4949, 4987, **4995**, 6228, 7296,
7301, **7339**, **7430**
JOLY, Loïc 674, ⇨[27]
JONES, David M. 53, 79, 88, 674, ⇨[210]
JORSSEN, Christophe 674, ⇨[27]
JUHAsZ, Robert 566, 674, ⇨[71]
JUNGE, Stefan 674
jura (class) 53, 75, 88, 171, 207, 220, 408, 414,
660, ⇨[96]
JURAFsKY, Dan 26, 248, 639, 674

K

k-loose (default option) 42, 80, 220, 253, 271,
347, 401, 653
k-tight (option) 42, 62, 80, 142, 220, 253, 271,
295, 324, 347, 401, 653
KAKUTO, Akira 674, ⇨[211]
KANERVA, Mikko 505, 507, 674, ⇨[73]
kanlel.sty (file) 538
kannada (language option) 39, 538
kannada.mld (file) . . 242, 244, 538, 659, 670
KannadaT_EX (package) 220, 538, ⇨[402]
karnataka.jpg (graphic file) . . 243–245, 538
KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak 589, 674,
⇨[212, 267]
karthika (malayalam package) 550
KASTRUP, David 674
kaumudi (malayalam package) 550
kerala.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 550
\kern (command) 293, 641
\kern 2121, 2122, 2501–2503,
2508–2510, 2514–2516, 3081, 3150,
3220, 3288, 3878, 3950, 4025, 4473,
4540, 4607, 5059–5061, 5068–5070,
5077–5079, 7456, 7464, 7472, 7484,
7492, 7500, 7511, 7519, 7527
\kernafterminilof (command) 78, 85
\kernafterminilof **2500**, 3253, **7448**
\kernafterminilot (command) 78, 85
\kernafterminilot **2500**, 3321, **7448**
\kernafterminitoc (command) 78, 85, 670
\kernafterminitoc **2500**, 3181, **7448**
\kernafterpartlof (command) 78, 85
\kernafterpartlof **2500**, 3984, **7448**
\kernafterpartlot (command) 78, 85
\kernafterpartlot **2500**, 4059, **7448**
\kernafterparttoc (command) 78, 85, 255
\kernafterparttoc **2500**, 3910, **7448**
\kernaftersectlof (command) 78, 85
\kernaftersectlof **2500**, 4572, 4640, **7448**
\kernaftersectlot (command) 78, 85
\kernaftersectlot **2500**, **7448**
\kernaftersecttoc (command) 78, 85
\kernaftersecttoc **2500**, 4505, **7448**
KERYELL, Ronan 218, 674
KEW, Jonathan 232, 674, ⇨[213]
khalkha (language option) 39, 539
khalkha.mld (file) 242, 244, 539, 655
khalkha.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 599
KIELHORN, Axel 88, 674, ⇨[288]
KIM, Ki-Joo 674, ⇨[214–216]
KLEB, Bil 53, 674
KLEIWEG, Peter 531, 674, ⇨[74]
KLEVELAND, Rune 560, 562, 674, ⇨[53]

KLÖCKL, Ingo 674, \hookrightarrow [217]
 KNAPPEN, Jörg 474, 475, 490, 498, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [75, 76, 87]
 KNUTH, Donald E. 213, 229, 231, 232, 237, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [218–221]
 KOAUNGH, Un . . . 219, 523, 525, 675, \hookrightarrow [222]
 KOHM, Markus 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
 KOPKA, Helmut 674, \hookrightarrow [224]
 KOPPANYI, Attila 548, 549, 674, \hookrightarrow [59]
 KORAI, Adamantios 518, 674
 korean1.png (graphic file) 243–245, 521
 korean2.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 521
 kottakkal (malayalam package) 550
 KRAKOVIACK, Vincent 674
 KRATT, Kai 674
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 674
 KROONENBERG, Siep 674, \hookrightarrow [225]
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. . . 207, 515, 517, 518, 541,
 563, 570, 571, 584, 674, \hookrightarrow [226]
 \backslash ktightmtcfalse (command) 42, 81
 \backslash ktightmtcfalse 2641, 6107, 7789
 \backslash ktightmtctrue (command) 42, 81
 \backslash ktightmtctrue 6106
 KUDLEK, Manfred 500, 502, 674, \hookrightarrow [39]
 KUHN, Markus G. 674, \hookrightarrow [227]
 KULZER, Florian 674
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki 534, 538, 674
 KUMMER, Olaf 500, 502, 674, \hookrightarrow [39]
 KÜSTER, Frank . . . 54, 76, 88, 579, 674, \hookrightarrow [228]

L

\backslash l@chapter (command) . . . 71, 282, 305, 327
 \backslash l@chapter . . . 160, 2820, 3325, 3899, 3900,
 5048, 5050, 7698
 \backslash l@chapter@SVPN 3899, 3900
 \backslash l@coffee (command) 401
 \backslash l@coffee 6096, 7845
 \backslash l@listof 5047, 7787
 \backslash l@mti . . 3097, 3102, 3135, 3205, 3273, 3414,
 3433, 3452
 \backslash l@paragraph (command) 71, 369
 \backslash l@paragraph 160, 5054, 7702
 \backslash l@part (command) 71, 279
 \backslash l@part 160, 2785, 5049, 7697
 \backslash l@pchapter 4064
 \backslash l@psect 4064
 \backslash l@pti . . 3804, 3812, 3834, 3868, 3936, 4011,
 4097, 4116, 4135
 \backslash l@schapter 4644
 \backslash l@section (command) 71, 281, 369
 \backslash l@section . . . 160, 2811, 5047, 5051, 7699

\backslash l@starchapter 5047, 7697
 \backslash l@starparagraph 5047, 7697
 \backslash l@starpart 5047, 7697
 \backslash l@starsection 5047, 7697
 \backslash l@starsubparagraph 5047, 7697
 \backslash l@starsubsection 5047, 7697
 \backslash l@starsubsubsection 5047, 7697
 \backslash l@sti . . 4419, 4424, 4458, 4526, 4593, 4717,
 4736, 4755
 \backslash l@subfigure 2162
 \backslash l@subparagraph (command) 71
 \backslash l@subparagraph 160, 5055, 7703
 \backslash l@subsection (command) 71, 334
 \backslash l@subsection 160, 5052, 7700
 \backslash l@subsubsection (command) 71
 \backslash l@subsubsection 160, 5053, 7701
 \backslash l@xchapter (command) 282, 305
 \backslash l@xchapter 2820, 3325, 7643
 \backslash l@xpart (command) 279, 334
 \backslash l@xpart 2785, 4064, 7643
 \backslash l@xsect (command) 281
 \backslash l@xsect 2811, 4644, 7643
 \backslash l@xsection (command) 665
 \backslash l@xsection 4645
 \backslash label . . 1766, 1846, 1966, 2203, 2205, 2235,
 2239, 2258, 2434, 2439, 2444, 2449,
 2454, 2459, 2464, 2469
 \backslash labelitemi 1287, 1292
 \backslash labelsep3164, 3234, 3302, 3891, 3965, 4040,
 4488, 4555, 4622
 \backslash labelwidth . . 3163, 3233, 3301, 3891, 3964,
 4039, 4487, 4554, 4621
 LABORDE, Stéphane 674
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas 674, \hookrightarrow [229]
 LAGALLY, Klaus . . . 39, 208, 470, 471, 525, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [230, 231]
 lamed.pdf (graphic file) . . 221, 232, 243–245,
 661
 lamed.tex (file) 243–245, 661
 LAMPORT, Leslie . . . 221, 674, \hookrightarrow [62, 232–237]
 LANARI, Fabio 674
 \backslash LANG (command) 217, 439
 LANGE, Robert 674
 LANGMYHR, Dag 560–562, 643, 674
 \backslash LangSig 1963, 1998
 Language options
 acadian 467, 647
 acadien 39, 467, 647
 afrikaan 39, 468, 469
 afrikaans 39, 469
 albanian 39, 469
 american 39, 470
 arab 39, 470–472
 arab2 39, 471

- arabi 39, 472
- arabic 39, 208, 472
- armenian 39, 208, 473
- australian 39, 474
- austrian 39, 474
- bahasa 39, 474
- bahasai 39, 474, 530
- bahasam 39, 475, 549, 555
- bangla 39, 209, 257, 476, 478, 646, 672
- basque 39, 477
- bengali 39, 209, 257, 476, 478, 672
- bicig 39, 225, 478–480, 591
- bicig2 39, 479, 592
- bicig3 39, 480, 592
- bithe 39, 225, 480, 555
- brazil 39, 481, 482
- brazilian 39, 482
- breton 39, 482
- british 39, 483
- bulgarian 39, 483
- bulgarianb 39, 484
- buryat 39, 485, 486
- buryat2 39, 486
- canadian 39, 486, 647
- canadien 39, 489, 647
- castillan 39, 489, 581
- castillian 39
- catalan 39, 490, 581
- chinese1 39, 491
- chinese2 39, 491, 492
- croatian 39, 492
- czech 39, 493
- danish 39, 494
- devanagari 39, 218, 495, 527
- dutch 39, 496
- english** (default) 39, 80, 434, 470, 474,
483, 486, 496, 558, 592, 595, 647
- english1 39, 497
- english2 39, 498
- esperant 39, 498, 499
- esperanto 39, 499
- estonian 39, 499, 645
- ethiopia 39, 500, 502
- ethiopian 39, 216, 502
- ethiopian2 39, 502
- farsi 208, 216
- farsi1 39, 502, 503
- farsi2 39, 504
- farsi3 39, 505
- finnish 39, 505
- finnish2 39, 507
- francais 39, 508
- french 39, 489, 508, 510, 511, 646, 647
- french1 39, 509
- french2 39, 92, 226, 510
- frenchb 39, 510
- frenchle 39, 511, 646
- frenchpro 39, 511, 646
- galician 39, 511, 581
- german 39, 122, 474, 512, 514
- germanb 39, 514, 559
- germanb2 39, 514
- greek 39, 515
- greek-mono 39, 44, 515
- greek-polydemo 39, 44, 517
- greek-polykatha 39, 44, 518
- guarani 39, 218, 519
- hangul-u8 39, 523
- hangul1 39, 520
- hangul2 39, 522
- hangul3 39, 522
- hangul4 39, 523
- hanja-u8 39, 525
- hanja1 39, 524
- hanja2 39, 524
- hebrew 39, 208, 525
- hebrew2 39, 527
- hindi 39, 218, 527
- hindi-modern 39, 218, 528
- hungarian 39, 529, 548
- icelandic 39, 530
- indon 39, 530
- indonesian 39, 530
- interlingua 39, 531
- irish 39, 531
- italian 39, 532, 534
- italian2 39, 534
- japanese 39, 534
- japanese2 39, 535
- japanese3 39, 536
- japanese4 39, 536, 537
- japanese5 39, 537
- japanese6 39, 538
- kannada 39, 538
- khalkha 39, 539
- latin 39, 539
- latin2 39, 540
- latinc 39, 540
- latinc2 39, 541
- latvian 39, 541, 543
- latvian2 39, 542, 543
- letton 39, 541, 543
- letton2 39, 543
- lithuanian 39, 543
- lithuanian2 39, 544
- lowersorbian 39, 545, 546
- lsorbian 39, 545, 546

- magyar 39, 529, 548
- magyar2 39, 548
- magyar3 39, 549
- malay 39, 549
- malayalam-b 39, 550
- malayalam-keli 39, 551
- malayalam-keli2 39, 551
- malayalam-mr 39, 552
- malayalam-omega 39, 44, 466, 553
- malayalam-rachana 39, 553
- malayalam-rachana2 39, 554
- malayalam-rachana3 39, 554
- manju 39, 480, 555
- meyalu 39, 555
- mongol 39, 555
- mongolb 39, 557
- mongolian 39, 558
- naustrian 39, 558, 647
- newzealand 39, 558
- ngerman 39, 559, 647
- ngermanb 39, 558, 559, 647
- ngermanb2 39, 560
- norsk 39, 560
- norsk2 39, 561
- nynorsk 39, 562
- nynorsk2 39, 562
- polish 39, 563
- polish2 39, 44, 563
- polski 39, 233, 564
- portuges 39, 565
- portuguese 39, 565
- romanian 39, 566
- romanian2 39, 567
- romanian3 39, 568
- russian 39, 570–573
- russian-cca 39, 573
- russian-ccal 39, 574
- russian-lh 39, 574
- russian-lhcyralt 39, 575
- russian-lhcyrkoi 39, 575
- russian-lhcyrwin 39, 576
- russian2m 39, 44, 570
- russian2o 39, 44, 571
- russianb 39, 572
- russianc 39, 573
- samin 39, 576
- scottish 39, 578
- serbian 39, 578
- serbianc 39, 579
- slovak 39, 580
- slovene 39, 580
- spanish 39, 489, 581
- spanish2 39, 581, 584
- spanish3 39, 44, 581, 584
- spanish4 39, 581, 585
- swahili 39, 585
- swedish 39, 587
- swedish2 39, 587
- thai 39, 589
- turkish 39, 590
- uighur 39, 591
- uighur2 39, 592
- uighur3 39, 592
- UKenglish 39, 592
- ukraineb 39, 593
- ukrainian 39, 593
- uppersorbian 39, 595
- USenglish 39, 595
- usorbian 39, 595
- vietnam 39, 596, 597
- vietnamese 39, 597
- welsh 39, 597
- xalx 39, 539, 598–600
- xalx2 39, 599
- xalx3 39, 600
- LAPKO, Olga G.88, 217, 484, 557, 572, 593, 674,
 ↪[33–35, 77, 238–240]
- \LARGE (command) 231
- \LARGE 3802
- \Large (command) 231
- \Large 1757, 1943, 3788
- \large (command) 231
- \large 1261, 1286, 1291, 1295, 1298, 1509,
 3095, 4418
- LARSEN, Henning 494, 674, ↪[78]
- LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc 674
- LASIS, Andris 542, 674
- latex-advanced.pdf (file) 626
- latex.fmt (file) 60
- latex.tex (file) 60, 641
- L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM,
 ↪[208, 235, 241–246, 376]
- latin (language option) 39, 539
- latin.dtx (file) 539–541
- latin.mld (file) 242, 244, 539, 645
- latin2 (language option) 39, 540
- latin2.mld (file) 242, 244, 540, 650
- latinc (language option) 39, 540
- latinc.mld (file) 242, 244, 256, 540, 671
- latinc2 (language option) 39, 541
- latinc2.mld (file) 242, 244, 256, 541, 671
- latvian (language option) 39, 541, 543
- latvian.ldf (file) 541, 542
- latvian.mld (file) 207, 242, 244, 541, 543, 649
- latvian2 (language option) 39, 542, 543
- latvian2.mld (file) 242, 244, 256, 542, 543,
 671

- LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe 674
 LAUNAY, Arnaud 674
 LAUVERNET, Claire 674
 LAVVA, Boris 527, 674, \hookrightarrow [79]
 \backslash ldots 1466, 1470, 1474, 2375, 2384
 \backslash leavevmode 312, 2838, 2888, 3161, 3167,
 3178, 3182, 3231, 3239, 3250, 3254,
 3299, 3307, 3318, 3322, 3349, 3361,
 3511, 3618, 3622, 3679, 3683, 3889,
 3893, 3907, 3911, 3962, 3970, 3981,
 3985, 4037, 4045, 4056, 4060, 4191,
 4290, 4294, 4350, 4354, 4485, 4490,
 4502, 4506, 4552, 4560, 4573, 4619,
 4627, 4641, 4798, 4894, 4954
 LEBACQ, André 674
 LECARME, Olivier 674, \hookrightarrow [247]
 LECLERC, Jacques 674, \hookrightarrow [248]
 ledarab (package) \hookrightarrow [392]
 ledmac (package) \hookrightarrow [394]
 ledpar (package) \hookrightarrow [395]
 \backslash leftmargin 3113, 3114, 3162, 3232, 3300,
 3841, 3844, 3890, 3963, 4038, 4436,
 4437, 4486, 4553, 4620
 \backslash leftskip2885, 2889, 2890, 3346, 3351, 3358,
 3363
 LEGRAND, Jeanne 674, \hookrightarrow [300]
 LEHMAN, Philipp 674, \hookrightarrow [249]
 LEMBERG, Werner 211, 484, 491, 520, 522–524,
 535–537, 557, 572, 589, 596, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [77, 250–252, 275, 376]
 LEONHARDT, Thomas 646, 674
 LE PENNEC, Erwan 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
 LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane 674
 \backslash let (command) 73, 74, 644
 LE THUAUT, Julien 674
 letter (class) 26, 60, 198, 212, 220, 221, 235,
 \hookrightarrow [237]
 letton (language option) 39, 541, 543
 letton.mld (file) 242, 244, 543, 649
 letton2 (language option) 39, 543
 letton2.mld (file) 242, 244, 256, 543, 671
 lettonie.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 542
 LEWENBERG, Adam 674
 LH (package) 574, \hookrightarrow [287]
 lhcyr (package) 575, 576, \hookrightarrow [404]
 lhcyralt.sty (file) 575
 lhcyrkoi.sty (file) 575
 lhcyrwin.sty (file) 576
 LICKERT, Knut 224, 400, 674, \hookrightarrow [253]
 LINDGREN, Ulf A. 53, 75, 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [254]
 \backslash linebreak (command) 58
 \backslash linewidth (command) 45
 \backslash linewidth 1259, 1268, 1276, **1966**
 LINGNAU, Anselm 88, 217, 674, \hookrightarrow [255]
 lipsum (package) 90, 94, 221, 663, \hookrightarrow [178]
 \backslash lipsum 16, 17, 21, 22, 34, 35, 39,
 40, 221, 223, 228, 230, 232, 238, 240,
 242, 248, 250, 252, 323–346, 348–
 383, 767, 769, 775, 778, 782, 787,
 791, 793, 838–841, 844–870, 876,
 877, 886–888, 896, 901–906, 916–
 920, 928, 938, 940–942, 951, 952,
 960, 963–965, 973, 979–983, 1036–
 1039, 1042–1070, 1078, 1079, 1094–
 1096, 1103, 1106, 1109, 1112, 1115,
 1118, 1121, 1128–1132, 1139, 1140,
 1149, 1151–1153, 1160–1163, 1170–
 1172, 1184–1187, 1192, 1540–1546,
 1578–1584, 1601, 1605, 1609, 1614,
 1618, 1621, 1626, 1630, 1634, 1649,
 1653, 1657, 1662, 1666, 1669, 1674,
 1678, 1682, 1698, 1704, 1713, 1719,
 1914–1916, 1920–1922, 1951–1953,
 2134–2159
 \backslash list (command) 295, 324
 \backslash list **3108**, **3837**, 4431
listfiles (default option) 52,
 61, 80, 154, 205, 221, 231, 253, 255,
 403, 436, 653, 666
 \backslash listoffigures (command)22, 29, 31, 33, 50,
 66, 81–84, 179–181, 283
 \backslash listoffigures 51, 110, **408**, **570**, **1027**,
 1692, **2188**, **2342**, **2421**, **2802**, **6700**,
 6929, 6964, 6999
 \backslash listoftables (command) 22, 29, 31, 33, 50,
 53, 66, 81–84, 142, 180, 181, 283
 \backslash listoftables 52, 111, **408**, **570**, 1029, **1587**,
 1637, **2230**, **2802**, **6700**, 6940, 6975,
 7010
 \backslash listparindent (command) 295, 324
 \backslash listparindent **3108**, 3164, 3234, 3302,
 3837, 3891, 3965, 4040, 4433, 4488,
 4555, 4622
 liststotoc (KOMA-Script package) 50, 142
 liststotocnumbered (KOMA-Script package)
 50
 lithuanian (language option) 39, 543
 lithuanian.ldf (file) 543, 544
 lithuanian.mld (file) 242, 244, 543, 644, 657
 lithuanian2 (language option) 39, 544
 lithuanian2.mld (file) 242, 244, 256, 257,
 544, 671, 672
 lituanie.png (graphic file) 243–245, 544
 livre.tex (old example document) 664, 666
 LOBEL, Pierre 674
 \backslash localgreek **8885**, **8924**, **8963**

`\locallatvian` . . . 9419–9421, 9423–9425, 9427–9429
`\localpolish` **9873**
`\localrussian` **9996, 10035**
`\localspanish` **10312**
`lofdepth` (depth counter) . . 34, 221, 291, 321, 345
 LOKAJČEK, Miloš V. 493, 674, \hookrightarrow [80]
 LOMBARD, Stoffel 468, 674
`loose` (default option) . . 42, 80, 220, 222, 237, 250, 271, 347, 401, 644, 646
 LORETI, Maurizio 54, 76, 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [256]
 LORINO, Tristan 674
`lotdepth` (depth counter) . . 34, 222, 291, 304, 321, 345
 LOVE, Tim 674, \hookrightarrow [257, 258]
`lowersorbian` (language option) . 39, 545, 546
`lowersorbian.mld` (file) . 242, 244, 545, 546, 658
 LOZANO, Vincent 674, \hookrightarrow [259]
`lsorbian` (language option) . . . 39, 545, 546
`lsorbian.dtx` (file) 545
`lsorbian.mld` (file) . 242, 244, 257, 546, 660, 672
`ltnews` (class) 26, 212, 222, \hookrightarrow [208]
`ltxdoc` (class) 26, 212, 222, \hookrightarrow [105]
`LuaTeX` (package) 232, \hookrightarrow [196]
 LUECKING, Daniel H. 674
 LUNDE, Ken 212, 674, \hookrightarrow [260–262]
`luso.jpg` (graphic file) 243–245, 566
 LYHNE, Anders 674

M

`M0001` (message) . . 65, 151, 203, 223, 228, 458
`\M@getttitle` 7954
 MacKAY, Pierre A. 590, 674, \hookrightarrow [61]
 MADSEN, Lars 674
`magyar` (language option) 39, 529, 548
`magyar.dtx` (file) 548, 549
`magyar.mld` (file) . . . 242, 244, 529, 548, 660
`magyar2` (language option) 39, 548
`magyar2.mld` (file) . . 242, 244, 548, 650, 660
`magyar3` (language option) 39, 549
`magyar3.mld` (file) . . 242, 244, 549, 657, 660
 MAHONEY, Richard 495, 528, 674
`\mainmatter` (command) 78
`\mainmatter` 198
`makam` (malayalam package) 550
`\makeatletter` (command) 71, 222
`\makeatletter` . . . 308, 396, 560, 820, 1012, 1229, 1730, 2167, 3027, 3169, 3241,

3309, 3400, 3405, 3410, 3895, 3972, 4047, 4083, 4087, 4091, 4492, 4562, 4629, 4703, 4707, 4711, 8028
`\makeatother` (command) 71, 222
`\makeatother` 315, 399, 560, 820, 1012, 1246, 1741, 2169
`\makenomenclature` **2033**
`\maketitle` 1761
`\MakeUpperCase` (command) 662
`\MakeUppercase` . . . 3134, 3204, 3272, **3864, 3930, 4005**, 4458, 4524, 4591
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. . . . 484, 572, 674, \hookrightarrow [240]
`malavika` (o package) 550
`malay` (language option) 39, 549
`malay.mld` (file) 242, 244, 549
`malayalam` (package) . 44, 466, 550–554, \hookrightarrow [4]
`malayalam-b` (language option) 39, 550
`malayalam-b.mld` (file) . . 242, 244, 257, 550, 672
`malayalam-keli` (language option) . . 39, 551
`malayalam-keli.mld` (file) 242, 244, 551, 651
`malayalam-keli2` (language option) . 39, 551
`malayalam-keli2.mld` (file) . 242, 244, 257, 551, 672
`malayalam-mr` (language option) 39, 552
`malayalam-mr.mld` (file) . 242, 244, 257, 552, 672
`malayalam-omega` (language option) . . 39, 44, 466, 553
`malayalam-omega.mld` (file) . 242, 244, 553, 659
`malayalam-omega.mlo` (file) . 242, 244, 257, 553, 659, 672
`malayalam-rachana` (language option) 39, 553
`malayalam-rachana.mld` (file) 242, 244, 553, 651
`malayalam-rachana2` (language option) . . 39, 554
`malayalam-rachana2.mld` (file) . . . 242, 244, 554, 651
`malayalam-rachana3` (language option) . . 39, 554
`malayalam-rachana3.mld` (file) . . . 242, 244, 257, 554, 672
`malayalam.pdf` (graphic file) . . 243–245, 550
`malaysia1.pdf` (graphic file) . . 243–245, 476
`malaysia2.pdf` (graphic file) . . 243–245, 476
 MALECKI, Pierre 674
`manju` (language option) 39, 480, 555
`manju.mld` (file) 242, 244, 555, 655
`margincap` (environment) 222
 MARGOLIS, Bob 475, 674, \hookrightarrow [76]
`\markboth` (command) 72, 325, 650, 662

- `\markboth` 3038, 3039, 3865, 3931, 3932, 4006, 4007
 MARKEY, Nicolas 674, \hookrightarrow [27, 263, 264]
`\markright` (command) 72
 MARR, Marcus 674
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
 MART, Terry 474, 475, 674, \hookrightarrow [75, 76]
`marvosym` (package) 224, \hookrightarrow [193]
 MASLOV, Vadim . . . 573, 574, 674, \hookrightarrow [46, 188]
 MASSIAS, Henri 66, 674
 MATTHIAS, Andreas 674
 MATTISSON, Sven 587, 674, \hookrightarrow [265]
`mcaption` (package) . 54, 72, 88, 173, 222, 253, 275, 429, 654, \hookrightarrow [194]
 McDONNELL, Rowland . 53, 70, 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [266]
 McKAY, Ben 674
`\mdseries` (command) 231
`\mdseries` 811, 1536, 1574, 3089, 3096, 3778, 3791, 3793, 4409
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant 589, 674, \hookrightarrow [267]
`mem.tex` (old example document) . . . 664, 666
`mem1.tex` (old example document) . . 664, 666
`memoir` (class)
 53, 64–66, 72, 88, 105, 132, 133, 156, 158, 159, 161, 195, 203, 223, 226–228, 241, 251, 253, 257, 267, 276, 285, 311, 412, 458, 647, 652–654, 672, \hookrightarrow [396, 397, 399]
`memoir.cls` (file) 223, 276
 MENGIN, Sébastien 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
`\MessageBreak` (command) 657
`\MessageBreak` 2692, 2703, 2705, 2707, 2798, 2856, 2861, 2863, 2873, 2878, 3070, 3419, 3421, 3438, 3440, 3457, 3459, 3565, 3631, 3692, 3761, 4102, 4104, 4121, 4123, 4140, 4142, 4243, 4303, 4363, 4399, 4722, 4724, 4741, 4743, 4760, 4762, 4847, 4907, 4967, 5018, 5020, 5022, 5024, 5032, 5034, 5158, 5160, 5162, 5165, 5176, 5178, 5180, 5183, 5279, 5285, 5288, 5300, 5302, 5304, 5307, 5317, 5319, 5325, 5328, 5341, 5343, 5345, 5348, 5358, 5360, 5366, 5369, 5465, 5467, 5469, 5472, 5481, 5483, 5485, 5488, 5498, 5504, 5507, 5541, 5544, 5546, 5548, 5562, 5565, 5567, 5577, 5582, 5617, 5620, 5622, 5624, 5637, 5640, 5642, 5652, 5657, 5698, 5700, 5702, 5705, 5716, 5718, 5720, 5723, 5735, 5737, 5743, 5746, 5758, 5760, 5762, 5765, 5775, 5778, 5783, 5790, 5802, 5804, 5806, 5809, 5819, 5822, 5827, 5834, 5924, 5926, 5934, 5936, 5958, 5967, 5969, 5977, 5979, 6001, 6010, 6012, 6020, 6022, 6044, 6054, 6058, 6060, 6063, 6065, 6074, 6077, 6079, 6081, 6084, 6086, 6091, 6122, 6124, 6127, **6138**, 6151, 6153, 6155, 6157, 6167, 6169, 6171, 6173, 6180, 6182, 6184, 6196, 6198, 6200, 6202, 6205, 6207, **6219**, 6442, 6448, 6450, 6456, 6458, 6464, 6466, 6472, 6474, 6480, 6482, 6488, 6490, 6496, 6498, 6504, 6506, 6512, 6514, 6522, 6524, 6526, 6528, 6530, 6532, 6539, 6541, 6543, 6545, 6547, 6554, 6556, 6558, 6560, 6562, 6570, 6572, 6580, 6582, 6589, 6591, 6597, 6599, 6604, 6606, 6615, 6617, 6619, 6621, 6627, 6629, 6634, 6636, 6648, 6653, 6667, 6672, 6687, 6692, 6730, 6732, 6734, 6744, 6753, 6762, 6773, 6782, 6791, 6802, 6811, 6820, 6830, 6839, 6848, 6859, 6868, 6877, 6888, 6897, 6906, 6917, 6919, 6928, 6930, 6939, 6941, 6952, 6954, 6963, 6965, 6974, 6976, 6987, 6989, 6998, 7000, 7009, 7011, 7024, 7032, 7040, 7051, 7060, 7069, 7078, 7087, 7096, 7105, 7114, 7123, 7132, 7141, 7150, 7159, 7167, 7169, 7171, 7178, 7180, 7182, 7189, 7191, 7193, 7200, 7202, 7204, 7211, 7218, 7225, 7232, 7239, 7246, 7253, 7260, 7267, 7274, 7281, 7288, 7295, 7300, 7308, 7310, 7312, 7315, 7317, 7342, 7403, 7406, 7453, 7455, 7461, 7463, 7469, 7471, 7481, 7483, 7489, 7491, 7497, 7499, 7508, 7510, 7516, 7518, 7524, 7526, 7534, 7536, 7542, 7544, 7550, 7552, 7562, 7564, 7570, 7572, 7578, 7580, 7589, 7591, 7597, 7599, 7605, 7607, 7797, 7799, 7801, 7803, 7805, 7807, 7813, 7815, 7824, 7826, 7835, 7837, 7863, 7865, 7870, 7872, 7877, 7879, **7882**
 Messages
 E0001 51, 151, 186, 395
 E0002 51, 151, 186, 397
 E0003 151, 186, 394
 E0004 151, 187, 395
 E0005 151, 187, 393
 E0006 151, 187, 399
 E0007 151, 188, 400
 E0008 151, 188, 391
 E0009 151, 188, 391
 E0010 151, 189, 391
 E0011 151, 189, 389

- E0012 151, 189, 389
 E0013 151, 190, 373
 E0014 151, 190, 373
 E0015 151, 190
 E0016 151, 191, 383
 E0017 151, 191, 384
 E0018 151, 191, 385
 E0019 151, 192, 387
 E0020 151, 192, 387
 E0021 151, 193, 378, 382
 E0022 151, 193, 377
 E0023 151, 193, 390
 E0024 151, 194, 376
 E0025 151, 194, 383
 E0026 51, 151, 194, 396
 E0027 51, 151, 195, 397
 E0028 65, 151, 195, 223, 277
 E0029 151, 195, 394
 E0030 151, 195, 395
 E0031 151, 196, 393
 E0032 151, 196, 400
 E0033 151, 196, 378
 E0034 151, 197, 377
 E0035 151, 197, 402
 E0036 . 151, 197, 241, 435, 466, 496, 666,
 668
 E0037 151, 198, 438
 E0038 151, 198, 241, 404, 466
 E0039 51, 151, 199, 398
 E0040 51, 151, 199, 399
 E0041 151, 199, 393
 E0042 151, 200, 392
 E0043 151, 200, 393
 F0001 151, 200, 456
 F0002 151, 201, 456
 F0003 151, 201, 456
 F0004 151, 201, 454
 F0005 151, 201, 454
 F0006 151, 202, 454
 F0007 151, 202, 453
 F0008 151, 202, 443
 F0009 151, 202, 445
 I0000 151, 152, 264
 I0001 22, 151, 153, 264
 I0002 151, 153, 283
 I0003 151, 153, 281
 I0004 151, 153, 280
 I0005 151, 153, 272
 I0006 . 54, 151, 154, 296, 299, 303, 326,
 328, 331, 348, 351, 353
 I0007 151, 154, 387
 I0008 151, 154, 387
 I0009 151, 154, 436
 I0010 151, 154, 399
 I0011 151, 155, 400
 I0012 151, 155, 283
 I0013 151, 155, 391
 I0014 151, 155, 390
 I0015 151, 155, 376
 I0016 151, 156, 383
 I0017 151, 156, 378
 I0018 151, 156, 377
 I0019 151, 156, 434
 I0020 65, 151, 156, 223, 276
 I0021 151, 157, 385
 I0022 151, 157, 385
 I0023 151, 157, 279
 I0024 151, 157, 313
 I0025 151, 157, 339
 I0026 151, 157, 361
 I0027 65, 151, 158, 223, 276
 I0028 151, 158, 280
 I0029 151, 158, 280
 I0030 65, 151, 158, 223, 276
 I0031 151, 158, 283
 I0032 65, 151, 159, 223, 276
 I0033 . 151, 159, 311, 312, 315, 318, 337,
 338, 341, 343, 360, 361, 363, 365
 I0034 151, 159, 316
 I0035 151, 159, 341
 I0036 151, 159, 364
 I0037 151, 160, 318
 I0038 151, 160, 344
 I0039 151, 160, 366
 I0040 53, 70, 151, 160, 206, 252, 413, 650
 I0041 66, 151, 160, 207, 413
 I0042 . 64, 151, 161, 207, 251, 409, 647
 I0043 42, 50, 75, 151, 161, 220, 252, 254,
 409, 651, 658
 I0044 65, 151, 161, 223, 412
 I0045 . 151, 161, 309, 310, 335, 336, 358,
 359
 I0046 . 50, 151, 162, 238, 251, 409, 645
 I0047 64, 151, 162, 238, 410
 I0048 151, 162, 367
 I0049 151, 162, 408
 I0050 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 466
 I0051 151, 163, 169, 241, 403, 466
 I0052 151, 163, 393
 I0053 . 54, 151, 163, 217, 235, 238, 256,
 430, 431, 671
 M0001 65, 151, 203, 223, 228, 458
 W0001 51, 151, 164, 395
 W0002 51, 151, 164, 397
 W0003 50, 54, 151, 164, 293
 W0004 50, 54, 151, 164, 321
 W0005 50, 54, 151, 165, 346

- W0006 51, 151, 165, 395
 W0007 51, 151, 165, 397
 W0008 151, 165, 316
 W0009 151, 165, 318
 W0010 151, 166, 313
 W0011 151, 166, 341
 W0012 151, 166, 344
 W0013 151, 166, 339
 W0014 151, 166, 364
 W0015 151, 167, 366
 W0016 151, 167, 361
 W0017 60, 151, 167, 280
 W0018 151, 167, 279
 W0019 151, 167, 283
 W0020 151, 168, 236, 402
 W0021 60, 151, 168, 284
 W0022 60, 151, 168, 284
 W0023 151, 170, 219, 415, 416
 W0024 151, 170, 434
 W0025 53, 75, 151, 170, 207, 408, 660
 W0026 53, 66, 151, 170, 207, 413
 W0027 53, 66, 151, 171, 207, 413
 W0028 151, 171, 219, 415
 W0029 53, 75, 151, 171, 220, 414, 660
 W0030 151, 171, 219, 415
 W0031 151, 172, 233, 411
 W0032 151, 172, 233, 411
 W0033 54, 72, 151, 172, 209, 428
 W0034 54, 72, 151, 172, 209, 241, 429, 466
 W0035 54, 72, 151, 173, 210, 429
 W0036 54, 72, 151, 173, 222, 429
 W0037 53, 70, 151, 173, 236, 425
 W0038 53, 73, 151, 173, 239, 253, 425, 656
 W0039 151, 173, 219, 416
 W0040 53, 151, 174, 237, 411
 W0041 151, 174, 432
 W0042 151, 174, 432
 W0043 151, 174, 432
 W0044 151, 175, 431
 W0045 151, 175, 431
 W0046 151, 175, 431
 W0047 151, 175, 433
 W0048 151, 176, 433
 W0049 151, 176, 432
 W0050 151, 176, 433
 W0051 151, 176, 433
 W0052 151, 176, 434
 W0053 53, 54, 59, 151, 177, 424
 W0054 53, 54, 59, 151, 177, 424
 W0055 53, 54, 59, 151, 177, 424
 W0056 30, 53, 151, 177, 219, 418
 W0057 151, 178, 419
 W0058 151, 178, 419
 W0059 151, 178, 419
 W0060 151, 178, 418
 W0061 151, 178, 418
 W0062 151, 179, 418
 W0063 151, 179, 419
 W0064 151, 179, 419
 W0065 151, 179, 419
 W0066 151, 179, 423
 W0067 151, 180, 423
 W0068 151, 180, 423
 W0069 151, 180, 422
 W0070 151, 180, 422
 W0071 151, 181, 422
 W0072 151, 181, 424
 W0073 151, 181, 424
 W0074 151, 181, 424
 W0075 151, 182, 420
 W0076 151, 182, 420
 W0077 151, 182, 420
 W0078 151, 182, 421
 W0079 151, 182, 421
 W0080 151, 183, 421
 W0081 151, 183, 421
 W0082 151, 183, 421
 W0083 151, 183, 421
 W0084 151, 183, 233, 411
 W0085 151, 184, 233, 411
 W0086 53, 75, 151, 184, 217, 254, 426, 662
 W0087 53, 75, 151, 184, 234, 254, 427, 662
 W0088 54, 76, 151, 184, 235, 254, 427, 662
 W0089 54, 76, 151, 185, 236, 254, 427, 662
 W0090 54, 76, 151, 185, 207, 254, 428, 662
 W0091 54, 76, 151, 185, 209, 428
 W0092 53, 79, 151, 185, 218, 255, 426, 640,
 668
 W0093 151, 168, 405
 W0094 151, 169, 405
 W0095 51, 151, 169, 398
 W0096 51, 151, 169, 398
 W0097 53, 79, 151, 185, 217, 256, 414, 671
 W0098 29, 151, 169
 W0099 53, 151, 186, 237, 257, 410, 672
 METZINGER, Jochen 500, 502, 674, \hookrightarrow [39]
 meyalu (language option) 39, 555
 meyalu.mld (file) 242, 244, 555
 MICHOU, Yanick 674
 mini-art.tex (old example document) 666
 \minilof (command) 22,
 29, 34, 37, 41, 83, 87, 178, 179, 219,
 295, 298, 299, 302, 350, 641
 \minilof 54, 68, 88, 113, 127,
 145, 411, 468, 495, 510, 1071, 1182,
 1696, 2189, 2425, 3189, 6781, 6869,
 6962, 7422, 7630

- \minilof@ (command) 299, 306
- \minilof@ **3189**, 3190, **3368**
- \minilof@mtcck 5193, 5234
- minilofdepth (depth counter) . . 34, 214, 223, 291, 301
- \minilot (command) 22, 29, 34, 37, 41, 83, 87, 178, 180, 219, 295, 302, 353, 641
- \minilot 54, 68, 88, 113, 127, 145, **411**, 469, 496, 511, **1071**, 1183, **1637**, **1658**, **3257**, 6790, 6878, 6973, **7422**, **7630**
- \minilot@ (command) 302
- \minilot@ **3257**, 3258, **3368**
- \minilot@mtcck 5196, 5241
- minilotdepth (depth counter) . . 34, 214, 223, 304
- minipage (environment) 134, 639
- minitoc (package) 25, 260, \hookrightarrow [134, 135]
- \minitoc (command) 22, 28, 29, 33, 34, 37, 38, 41, 55, 59, 67, 78, 83, 87, 113, 178, 180, 219, 249, 252, 295, 296, 298, 308, 325, 347, 640–642, 648–650
- \minitoc 14, 19, 32, 37, 199, 201, **218**, 219, 226, **234**, 236, **244**, 246, 321, **411**, 467, 494, 509, **754**, **770**, 1035, **1071**, 1126, 1127, 1145, **1167**, 1278, 1325, **1399**, **1427**, **1443**, **1511**, **1536**, 1577, **1696**, **1759**, **1909**, **1946**, **1966**, **2039**, **2053**, **2077**, **2125**, **2129**, **2131**, **2231**, **2286**, **2319**, **2333**, **3119**, 6772, 6860, 6951, **7422**, **7630**
- minitoc-ex.tex (old example document) 666
- minitoc-hyper (package) 62, 223, \hookrightarrow [372]
- minitoc-hyper.sty (file) 223
- minitoc-tds.zip (file) . . 224, 243, 246, 247, 255, 668, 670
- minitoc.bib (file) 223, 243–245, 647
- minitoc.bug (file) . . 52, 57, 223, 243–245, 253, 254, 647, 652, 654, 658, 662
- minitoc.dtx (file) 63, 217, 219, 223, 241–247, 253, 400, 439, 663
- minitoc.ins (file) 44, 100, 216–219, 224, 228, 241–246, 400, 439, 466, 651, 663
- minitoc.ist (file) 224, 243–246, 650
- minitoc.l (file) 224, 241–244, 654
- minitoc.lan (file) . . 217, 224, 243–246, 439
- minitoc.pdf (file) 224, 243, 244, 246
- minitoc.pre (file) . . 224, 243–246, 654, 660
- minitoc.ps (file) 224
- minitoc.sty (file) . . 224, 241, 242, 244, 264
- minitoc.sum (file) 224, 243–245
- minitoc.tex (file) 643, 647
- \minitoc@ (command) 294, 296, 306
- \minitoc@ **3119**, 3120, **3368**
- \minitoc@mtcck 5190, 5225
- minitocdepth (depth counter) 22, 28, 29, 34, 43, 66, 71, 83, 214, 223, 293, 297, 639
- minitocoff (package) 249, 250, 644
- minutes (package) 224, 294, 400, \hookrightarrow [253]
- MITTELBACH, Frank 221, 249, 294, 323, 346, 642, 646, 647, 674, \hookrightarrow [62, 162, 236, 237, 268–281]
- \MLF@ **3640**, 3642
- \MLF@contentsline (command) 315
- \MLF@contentsline **3601**, **3642**
- \MLF@explist **3599**, **3626**
- \MLF@line 3639, **3640**
- \MLF@list **3596**, **3599**, **3626**, **3642**
- \MLF@lof **3599**, **3627**, **3642**
- \MLF@loop **3596**, **3627**
- \MLF@next (command) 316
- \MLF@next **3404**, **3596**, **3626**
- \mlf@pgno 2950, 2951
- \MLF@read **3627**, **3638**, **3642**
- \mlf@rule **3081**, **3205**, 3254, **5065**
- \mlf@setform (command) 301, 381
- \mlf@setform **3240**, **5430**
- \MLF@test (command) 316
- \MLF@test **3640**, **3642**
- \mlf@dotsep **5400**, 5433
- \mlffont (command) 36, 37, 83, 300
- \mlffont **3089**, **3205**, **7666**
- \mlfflofirmarg **5391**
- \mlfname **3605**
- \mlffoffset (command) 83
- \mlffoffset **2518**, **3231**
- \mlfpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
- \mlfpagenumbers . . **2931**, **2944**, **2950**, **2963**, **7724**
- \mlfpnumwidth **5382**, 5431
- \mlfrule (command) 46, 85, 649
- \mlfrule **5065**, **7706**
- \mlfSfont (command) 36, 37, 42, 83, 654
- \mlfSfont **3089**, **7666**
- \mlftitle (command) 36, 37, 83, 466
- \mlftitle 3204, 3214, 3224, 3228, **6209**, **7306**, **7957**, 7974, 7995, 8016, 8034, 8051, 8073, 8102, 8119, 8136, 8154, 8174, 8189, 8204, 8219, 8235, 8254, 8281, 8311, 8332, 8348, 8381, 8418, 8435, 8452, 8469, 8484, 8500, 8523, 8549, 8565, 8584, 8602, 8629, 8663, 8680, 8695, 8716, 8739, 8772, 8810, 8829, 8846, 8861, 8878, 8905, 8909, 8944, 8982, 9011, 9106, 9129,

- 9157, 9177, 9201, 9217, 9234, 9251,
9336, 9337, 9357, 9374, 9391, 9407,
9424, 9441, 9466, 9483, 9499, 9522,
9539, 9556, 9574, 9589, 9604, 9619,
9639, 9654, 9669, 9693, 9723, 9769,
9784, 9802, 9818, 9831, 9846, 9866,
9884, 9902, 9923, 9940, 9957, 9989,
10016, 10055, 10095, 10120, 10184,
10200, 10216, 10237, 10257, 10273,
10290, 10305, 10321, 10337, 10355,
10372, 10388, 10412, 10448, 10476,
10502, 10521, 10536, 10551, 10566
- `\mlftocrmarg` 5395, 5432
`\MLT@` **3701**, 3703
`\MLT@contentsline` (command) 318
`\MLT@contentsline` **3662**, **3703**
`\MLT@explist` **3660**, **3687**
`\MLT@line` 3700, **3701**
`\MLT@list` **3657**, **3660**, **3687**, **3703**
`\MLT@loop` **3657**, **3688**
`\MLT@lot` **3660**, **3688**, **3703**
`\MLT@next` (command) 318
`\MLT@next` **3409**, **3657**, **3687**
`\mlt@pgno` 2956, 2957
`\MLT@read` **3688**, **3699**, **3703**
`\mlt@rule` **3081**, **3273**, **3322**, **5074**
`\mlt@setform` (command) 304, 381
`\mlt@setform` **3308**, **5445**
`\MLT@test` (command) 319
`\MLT@test` **3701**, **3703**
`\mltdotsep` **5400**
`\mltfont` (command) 36, 37, 83, 303
`\mltfont` **3089**, **3273**, **7666**
`\mltitle` 7996
`\mltlofr marg` **5391**
`\mltname` **3666**
`\mltoffset` (command) 83
`\mltoffset` **2518**, **3299**, **7529**
`\mltpagenumbers` (command) 46, 85
`\mltpagenumbers` .. **2937**, **2944**, **2950**, **2956**,
2963, **7724**
`\mltpnumwidth` **5382**
`\mltrule` (command) 46, 85, 649
`\mltrule` **5074**, **7706**
`\mltSfont` (command) 36, 37, 83, 654
`\mltSfont` **3089**, **7666**
`\mltttitle` (command) 36, 37, 83, 466
`\mltttitle` 3272,
3282, 3292, 3296, **6209**, **7306**, **7957**,
7975, 8017, 8035, 8052, 8074, 8103,
8120, 8137, 8155, 8175, 8190, 8205,
8220, 8236, 8255, 8284, 8313, 8333,
8349, 8382, 8419, 8436, 8453, 8470,
8485, 8501, 8524, 8550, 8566, 8585,
8604, 8631, 8664, 8681, 8696, 8717,
8740, 8773, 8811, 8830, 8847, 8862,
8879, 8948, 8986, 9012, 9107, 9131,
9158, 9178, 9202, 9218, 9235, 9252,
9358, 9375, 9392, 9408, 9425, 9442,
9467, 9484, 9500, 9523, 9540, 9557,
9575, 9590, 9605, 9620, 9640, 9655,
9670, 9694, 9725, 9770, 9785, 9803,
9819, 9832, 9847, 9867, 9885, 9903,
9924, 9941, 9958, 9974, 9975, 9990,
10020, 10059, 10098, 10121, 10185,
10201, 10217, 10239, 10258, 10274,
10291, 10306, 10322, 10338, 10356,
10373, 10389, 10413, 10450, 10477,
10503, 10522, 10537, 10552, 10567
- `\mlttocrmarg` 5398
`\mm` . **9567**, **9581**, **9596**, **9611**, **9631**, **9646**, **9661**
`\mnr` **8323**, **8339**, **9684**, **10528**, **10543**
`mondep.png` (graphic file) 243–245, 465
`mongasie.pdf` (graphic file) .. 243–245, 556
`mongol` (language option) 39, 555
`mongol.mld` (file) 242, 244, 555
`mongolb` (language option) 39, 557
`mongolb.mld` (file) .. 242, 244, 255, 256, 557,
558, 669, 670
`mongolb.mlo` (file) 255, 669
`mongolcy.png` (graphic file) ... 224, 243–245
`mongolian` (language option) 39, 558
`mongolian.dtx` (file) 557
`mongolian.mld` (file) 242, 244, 256, 558, 670
`mongolian.pdf` (graphic file) .. 243–245, 556
`mongoltr.png` (graphic file) 243–245
`MonTeX` (package)
44, 224, 466, 478–480, 485, 486, 555,
573, 598–600, 663, ⇨ [119, 122]
MOON, Young Joon 674, ⇨ [282]
MOORE, Ross 674, ⇨ [163]
MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe .. 88, 674, ⇨ [223, 288]
`morefloats` (package) 650, ⇨ [199]
MORI, Lapo Filippo .. 674, ⇨ [169, 283, 284]
MORRISON, Michael A. 674, ⇨ [285]
`mridula` (malayalam package) 550
`mtc` (counter) 87, 278, 281, 282, 290, 293, 311,
312, 315, 318, 373, 646
`mtc-2c.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-2c.tex` (example document) 91, 225, 242,
244, 245, 666
`mtc-2nd.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-2nd.tex` (example document) .. 92, 226,
242, 244, 245, 271, 510, 667
`mtc-3co.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-3co.tex` (example document) .. 93, 226,
228, 242, 244, 245, 256, 669

- `mtc-add.bib` (example document) . . 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-add.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-add.tex` (example document) . 52, 96, 97, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-adds.tex` (old example document) . 668
`mtc-ads.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-ads.tex` (example document) . . 52, 100, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-amem.tex` (old example document) . 668
`mtc-amm.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-amm.tex` (example document) . . 64, 105, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-apx.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-apx.tex` (file) 670
`mtc-apx.tex` (example document) 67, 90, 105, 226, 242, 244, 245, 663, 666
`mtc-art.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-art.tex` (example document) . . 105, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-bk.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-bk.tex` (example document) . . 110, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-bo.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-bo.tex` (example document) . . 115, 226, 242, 244, 245, 664, 666
`mtc-book.tex` (old example document) . 668
`mtc-ch0.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-ch0.tex` (example document) . . 120, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-cri.log` (file) 121
`mtc-cri.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-cri.tex` (example document) . . 121, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-fko.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-fko.tex` (example document) . . 122, 226, 242, 244, 245, 256, 670
`mtc-fo1.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-fo1.tex` (example document) . . 123, 124, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-fo2.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-fo2.tex` (example document) . . 124, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-gap.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-gap.tex` (example document) 76, 90, 125, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-gaps.tex` (old example document) . 668
`mtc-hi1.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-hi1.tex` (example document) 68, 90, 125, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-hi2.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-hi2.tex` (example document) 69, 90, 125, 226, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-hia.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-hia.tex` (example document) . . 125, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-hir.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-hir.tex` (example document) . . 126, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-hop.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-hop.tex` (example document) . . 127, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-liv.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-liv.tex` (example document) . . 128, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-mem.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-mem.tex` (example document) . . 132, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-mem1.tex` (old example document) . 668
`mtc-mm1.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-mm1.tex` (example document) . . 133, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-mu.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-mu.tex` (example document) . . 134, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-nom.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-nom.tex` (example document) . . 136, 227, 242, 244, 245, 256, 671
`mtc-ocf.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-ocf.tex` (example document) . . 137, 212, 227, 232, 242, 244, 245, 256, 671
`mtc-ofs.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-ofs.tex` (example document) . . 138, 227, 242, 244, 245, 256, 671
`mtc-sbf.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-sbf.tex` (example document) . . 140, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
`mtc-scr.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-scr.tex` (example document) . . 142, 227, 242, 244, 245, 666
`mtc-subf.tex` (old example document) . 668
`mtc-syn.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-syn.tex` (example document) . . 143, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
`mtc-tbi.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-tbi.tex` (example document) . . 144, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
`mtc-tlc.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-tlc.tex` (example document) . . 146, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
`mtc-tlo.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-tlo.tex` (example document) 79, 90, 146, 227, 242, 244, 245, 667
`mtc-tsfc.pdf` (example document) 244
`mtc-tsfc.tex` (example document) . . 147, 228, 242, 244, 245, 667
`mtc-tsfc.tex` (old example document) . 668

- \MTC@ 3575, 3577
- \mtc@While 2729, 2731, 2736
- \mtc@admisslanguage (command) ... 403
- \mtc@admisslanguage .. 6138, 6143, 6189
- \mtc@addtomaf 7339
- \mtc@arg@dotinterval 5374
- \mtc@arg@numwidth 5380
- \mtc@arg@pagenumwidth 5378
- \mtc@arg@tocrightmargin 5376
- \mtc@BBR (command) 282
- \mtc@BBR 2827, 3161, 3166, 3231, 3236, 3299, 3304, 3889, 3892, 3962, 3966, 4037, 4041, 4485, 4489, 4552, 4556, 4619, 4623
- \mtc@Body 2743
- \mtc@bottom@rule.. 3180, 3185, 3252, 3320
- \mtc@ck 7810
- \mtc@CkFile (command) . 278, 296, 299, 303
- \mtc@CkFile . 2743, 3127, 3197, 3265, 3857, 3923, 3998, 4450, 4517, 4584
- \mtc@CkStr .. 2743, 3135, 3205, 3273, 3868, 3936, 4011, 4458, 4526, 4593
- \mtc@classck 7400
- \MTC@contentsline (command) 311, 314, 320
- \MTC@contentsline 3481, 3577
- \mtc@dot 3719
- \mtc@EndWhile 2718, 2743
- \MTC@explist 3478, 3560
- \mtc@featparam@ (command) 389
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev (command) .. 390
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev . 5690, 5710, 5729
- \mtc@featparam@third (command) 389, 390
- \mtc@featparam@third 5710, 5729
- \mtc@featureparam@after 5675
- \mtc@featureparam@before 5673
- \mtc@featureparam@close 5679
- \mtc@featureparam@open 5677
- \mtc@featureparam@pagestyle 5681
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev (command) 383
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev 5457, 5476, 5493
- \mtc@glofix@level (command) 395
- \mtc@glofix@level . 5920, 5943, 5952–5954, 5960
- \mtc@hints@@chapter 6657, 7394
- \mtc@hints@@part 6638, 7391
- \mtc@hints@@schapter 6657, 7394
- \mtc@hints@@sect 6676, 7397
- \mtc@hints@@spart 6638, 7391
- \mtc@hints@@sssect 6676, 7397
- \mtc@hints@begindoc (command) . 408, 417
- \mtc@hints@begindoc ... 6435, 6719, 7387
- \mtc@hints@chapter (command) 414
- \mtc@hints@chapter 6638, 6657, 7394
- \mtc@hints@checklongext 7017
- \mtc@hints@enddoc (command) 408, 417, 434
- \mtc@hints@enddoc . 6435, 6720, 7292, 7387
- \mtc@hints@part (command) 414
- \mtc@hints@part 6638, 7391
- \mtc@hints@section (command) 414
- \mtc@hints@section 6638, 6676, 7397
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile (command) 271, 298, 301, 304, 647
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile .. 2637, 3168, 3240, 3308, 3894, 3971, 4046, 4491, 4561, 4628
- \mtc@hstrut .. 2827, 3959, 4034, 4548, 4615
- \mtc@hstrutbox 2827
- \mtc@ifmtarg (command) 277, 279, 281, 282
- \mtc@ifmtarg . 2718, 2752, 2785, 2811, 2820
- \mtc@ixfix@level (command) 397
- \mtc@ixfix@level.. 5963, 5986, 5995–5997, 6003
- \mtc@level@abbrev (command) 373
- \mtc@level@abbrev 5170, 5188, 5274
- \MTC@line 3573, 3575
- \MTC@list 3474, 3478, 3560, 3577
- \mtc@listmisslanguages (command) . 403
- \mtc@listmisslanguages 6138, 6219
- \mtc@LML 6138
- \MTC@loop 3474, 3561
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilof 5667
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilot 5668
- \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc 5666
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlof 5664
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlot 5665
- \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc 5663
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlof 5670
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlot 5671
- \mtc@ltypetable@secttoc 5669
- \mtc@maf (command) 436, 437
- \mtc@maf 7339, 7386
- \mtc@maf@long (command) 436
- \mtc@maf@long 7339
- \mtc@maf@short (command) 436
- \mtc@maf@short 7339
- \mtc@markboth 3038, 3134, 3204, 3272, 3864, 3930, 4005, 4458, 4524, 4591
- \mtc@mta@abbrev (command) 373
- \mtc@mta@abbrev 5151, 5188, 5274
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev (command) 391
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev 5751, 5770
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev (command) 392
- \mtc@mtaof@abbrev 5795, 5814
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev (command) 377
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev 5293, 5312
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev (command) 378
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev 5334, 5353

- \mtc@mtf@abbrev (command) 382
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev **5457, 5493**
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev (command) 389, 390
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev **5690, 5729**
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev (command) 384
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev **5532, 5553**
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev (command) 387
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev **5608, 5629**
- \MTC@next (command) 313
- \MTC@next **3399, 3474, 3560**
- \mtc@nomenclfix@level (command) 398
- \mtc@nomenclfix@level **6006, 6029,**
6038–6040, 6046
- \mtc@noX 5572, 5574, **5629**
- \mtc@onebackchap 2773
- \mtc@onebackchapter **2772**
- \mtc@onebackpart **2772**
- \mtc@onebacksect (command) 280
- \mtc@onebacksect 2774, **2802**
- \mtc@onebacksection **2772**
- \mtc@param **3719**
- \mtc@pgno 2944, 2945, **3168, 3240, 3308**
- \mtc@pns@abbrev (command) 385
- \mtc@pns@abbrev **5532, 5553**
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX 5571
- \MTC@read **3561, 3573, 3577**
- \mtc@restorelofdepth 5873, **7851**
- \mtc@restorelotdepth 5907, **7851**
- \mtc@restoretocdepth **5838, 5869, 5885,**
5903, 5919, **7851**
- \mtc@Rline **2743**
- \mtc@rule (command) 293, 641
- \mtc@rule **3081, 3135, 3185, 5056**
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev (command) 387
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev **5608, 5629**
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX 5646
- \mtc@savelofdepth **5852, 7851**
- \mtc@savelotdepth **5886, 7851**
- \mtc@savetocdepth (command) 393
- \mtc@savetocdepth **5838, 5863, 5897, 7851**
- \mtc@schapter **3332**
- \mtc@sectlevel@chapter 5138
- \mtc@sectlevel@figure 5145
- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph 5142
- \mtc@sectlevel@section 5139
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure 5147
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph 5143
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection 5140
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection 5141
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable 5148
- \mtc@sectlevel@table 5146
- \mtc@setform (command) 298, 380
- \mtc@setform **3168, 5415**
- \mtc@setlangopt (command) 406
- \mtc@setlangopt **6143, 6245**
- \mtc@setlangoptm (command) 406
- \mtc@setlangoptm **6189, 6245**
- \mtc@setlangopto (command) 406
- \mtc@setlangopto **6143, 6245**
- \mtc@string (command) 282
- \mtc@string **2827, 3577, 3642, 3703, 3719,**
3739, 4254, 4314, 4374, 4858, 4918,
4978, 7643
- \mtc@strut **2827, 3168, 3240, 3308, 3894,**
3971, 4046, 4491, 4561, 4628
- \mtc@strutbox (command) 646
- \mtc@strutbox **2827**
- \mtc@sv@fklistoffigures **6709**
- \mtc@sv@fklistoftables **6709**
- \mtc@sv@fktableofcontents **6709**
- \mtc@sv@listoffigures **6700**
- \mtc@sv@listoftables **6700**
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth **5852**
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth **5886**
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents **6700**
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth **5838, 5852, 5886**
- \mtc@svchapter **2819**
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth **5852**
- \mtc@svpart **2775, 4069**
- \mtc@svsection **2808**
- \mtc@svspart **2775**
- \mtc@svss **2808**
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth **5886**
- \MTC@test (command) 314
- \MTC@test **3575, 3577**
- \mtc@tmp@name **5188, 5274**
- \mtc@tmpde@name **5770**
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name **5729**
- \mtc@tmpfm@name **5493**
- \mtc@tmpof@name **5814**
- \mtc@tmppn@name **5553, 5629**
- \mtc@tmptf@name **5312**
- \mtc@tmpti@name **5353**
- \MTC@toc **3478, 3561, 3577**
- \mtc@toks (command) 256, 257, 282, 312, 315,
318, 320, 338, 341, 343, 360, 363,
365, 671, 672
- \mtc@toks **2827, 3511, 3617, 3678, 3719, 3739,**
4191, 4289, 4349, 4798, 4894, 4954,
5274, 5312, 5353, 5494, 5499, 5500,
5732, 5738, 5739, 5770, 5814
- \mtc@typetable@minilof 5087
- \mtc@typetable@minilot 5088
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc 5086
- \mtc@typetable@partlof 5084
- \mtc@typetable@partlot 5085
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc 5083

- \mtc@typetable@sectlof 5090
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot 5091
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc 5089
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof 5096
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot 5097
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc 5095
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof 5093
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot 5094
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc 5092
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof 5099
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot 5100
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc 5098
- \mtc@v . **2827**, 3154, 3158, 3224, 3228, 3292,
3296, **3880**, **3948**, **4027**, **4473**, **4540**,
4607
- \mtc@verse (command) 295
- mtc@verse (environment) 93, 94, 295, 297, 298,
300, 301, 304, 380, 381
- \mtc@verse **303**, 3108
- \mtc@While (command) 278
- \mtc@While **2718**, **2743**
- \mtc@WhileBody **2718**
- \mtc@WhileCondition **2718**
- \mtc@WhileNext **2718**
- \mtc@WhilePreCondition **2718**
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline (command) 320, 360
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline . . **3527**, **3739**, 4205,
4798
- \MTC@WriteContentsLine **4162**, **4782**, **4878**,
4938
- \MTC@WriteContentsline (command) . 315,
318, 320, 338, 341, 343, 360, 363,
365
- \MTC@WriteContentsline **3512**, **3544**, **3617**,
3678, **3719**, **4192**, **4219**, **4289**, **4349**,
4798, **4829**, **4894**, **4954**
- \mtc@xifmtarg **2718**
- \mtc@YN@F 5112
- \mtc@YN@f 5111
- \mtc@YN@FALSE 5108
- \mtc@YN@false 5107
- \mtc@YN@FAUX 5110
- \mtc@YN@faux 5109
- \mtc@YN@N 5106
- \mtc@YN@n 5105
- \mtc@YN@NO 5104
- \mtc@YN@no 5103
- \mtc@YN@NON 5113
- \mtc@YN@non 5114
- \mtc@YN@O 5134
- \mtc@YN@o 5135
- \mtc@YN@OFF 5102
- \mtc@YN@off 5101
- \mtc@YN@ON 5119
- \mtc@YN@on 5118
- \mtc@YN@OUI 5132
- \mtc@YN@oui 5133
- \mtc@YN@T 5127
- \mtc@YN@t 5126
- \mtc@YN@TRUE 5125
- \mtc@YN@true 5124
- \mtc@YN@V 5131
- \mtc@YN@v 5130
- \mtc@YN@VRAI 5129
- \mtc@YN@vrai 5128
- \mtc@YN@Y 5123
- \mtc@YN@y 5122
- \mtc@YN@YES 5121
- \mtc@YN@yes 5120
- \mtc@zrule (command) 282, 646
- \mtc@zrule . . **2827**, **3161**, 3183, **3231**, 3255,
3299, 3323, **3889**, **3910**, **3962**, **3984**,
4037, **4059**, **4485**, **4505**, **4552**, **4572**,
4619, **4640**
- \mtcaddchapter (command) . 35, 50, 51, 53,
66, 70, 72, 87, 93, 97, 142, 143, 201,
207, 226, 251, 282, 645
- \mtcaddchapter 12, **160**, **408**, **436**, 439, 440,
443, 444, 449, 450, 488, **1399**, **1443**,
2230, **2270**, **2314**, **2317**, **2331**, **2333**,
2342, **2820**, **7810**
- \mtcaddpart (command) . 35, 72, 87, 93, 201,
207, 279, 645
- \mtcaddpart **1443**, **1694**, **2785**, **7810**
- \mtcaddsection (command) . . . 35, 53, 70,
72, 87, 101, 202, 207, 226, 254, 281,
645, 658
- \mtcaddsection . . **160**, **570**, **601**, 722, **871**,
2811, **7810**
- \mtcArabTok **8023**
- \mtcdotsep **5400**, 5418
- \mtcEnglishIIpart **8530**
- \mtcfixglossary (command)
51, 87, 164, 165, 186, 194, 207, 252,
254, 395, 396, 455, 650, 658, 659
- \mtcfixglossary . . 5925, 5931, 5933, **5942**,
7857
- \mtcfixindex (command) 51,
87, 98, 104, 164, 165, 186, 195, 207,
252, 254, 397, 456, 649, 658, 659
- \mtcfixindex . . **484**, 485, **718**, 5968, 5974,
5976, **5985**, **7858**
- \mtcfixnomclature 6017
- \mtcfixnomenclature (command)
51, 87, 137, 169, 199, 207, 256, 398,
399, 456, 671

- \mtcfixnomenclature . . . **2052**, 6011, 6019,
6028, 7859
- \mtcfont (command) . . . 29, 36–38, 83, 297
- \mtcfont **986, 3089, 3135, 7666**
- \mtcFrenchIIpart **8746**
- \mtcgapafterheads (command) . 76, 82, 226,
254, 663
- \mtcgapafterheads . . **175, 180, 2498, 3812,**
3819, 3826, 7447
- \mtcgapbeforeheads (command) 76, 82, 226,
254, 663
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . **175, 180, 2498, 3812,**
3819, 3826, 7447
- mtcglo.ist (file) 653
- \mtchideinmainlof (command) 69, 87, 226
- mtchideinmainlof (environment) 67,
68, 87, 187, 195, 207, 226, 252, 394,
455, 649, 652, 662, 672
- \mtchideinmainlof **103**, 129
- \mtchideinmainlot (command) . 69, 87, 126,
227
- mtchideinmainlot (environment) 67,
68, 87, 187, 196, 207, 226, 252, 394,
395, 455, 649, 652, 662, 672
- \mtchideinmainlot . . **103**, 137, **1610, 1658**
- mtchideinmaintoc (environment)
67, 87, 114, 115, 187, 196, 207, 226,
252, 393, 455, 649, 662
- \mtcindent (command) . . 29, 45, 83, 91, 265,
293, 295
- \mtcindent . . **205**, 215, **303, 986, 1213, 1505,**
1956, 2120, 2131, 2494, 3081, 3108,
3161, 3231, 3299, 7439
- \mtcloadmlo (command) . 196, 253, 400, 450,
653
- \mtcloadmlo **6069, 7705, 8388,**
8397, 8640, 8647, 9018, 9028, 9039,
9049, 9060, 9068, 9079, 9090, 9258,
9267, 9279, 9291, 9303, 9316, 9626,
10127, 10135, 10144, 10150, 10158,
10166, 10395
- \mtclofrmarg **5391**
- mtcmess (package) 152, 228, 254, 442, 457, 660
- mtcmess.sty (file) 241, 242, 244
- \mtcname **3485, 3497, 3530**
- mtcnorsk.sty (file) 643
- mtcnynorsk.sty (file) 643
- mtcoff (package) 35,
55, 58, 96, 150, 151, 200–203, 228,
249, 250, 441, 442, 455–457, 640,
644, 652, 671
- mtcoff.sty (file) 241, 242, 244, 649
- \mtcoffset (command) . 29, 44, 83, 256, 295,
671
- \mtcoffset **2518, 3161, 7529**
- \mtcoffwarn@false 7793
- \mtcoffwarn@true (command) 652
- \mtcoffwarn@true . . 7450, 7458, 7466, 7478,
7486, 7494, 7505, 7513, 7521, 7531,
7539, 7547, 7559, 7567, 7575, 7586,
7594, 7602, 7810, 7821, 7832, 7860,
7867, 7874
- \mtcPackageError . . 2714, 5156, 5174, 5283,
5298, 5323, 5339, 5364, 5463, 5479,
5502, 5539, 5560, 5615, 5635, 5696,
5714, 5741, 5756, 5773, 5787, 5800,
5817, 5831, 5841, 5847, 5857, 5865,
5875, 5881, 5891, 5899, 5909, 5915,
5929, 5956, 5972, 5999, 6015, 6042,
6056, 6075, 6089, 6120, **6189, 7306,**
7400, 7882
- \mtcPackageInfo . . **2487**, 2642, 2690, 2697,
2699, 2701, 2779, 2792, 2794, 2800,
2818, 2841, 2852, 2854, 3129, 3199,
3267, 3417, 3436, 3455, 3486, 3490,
3500, 3504, 3533, 3537, 3569, 3606,
3610, 3635, 3667, 3671, 3696, 3859,
3925, 4000, 4100, 4119, 4138, 4166,
4170, 4180, 4184, 4247, 4278, 4282,
4307, 4338, 4342, 4367, 4452, 4519,
4586, 4720, 4739, 4758, 4787, 4791,
4818, 4822, 4851, 4883, 4887, 4911,
4943, 4947, 4971, **4995**, 5277, 5315,
5356, 5496, 5575, 5580, 5650, 5655,
5733, 5781, 5825, 6053, 6072, 6149,
6165, 6178, 6440, 6454, 6462, 6470,
6478, 6486, 6494, 6578, 6602, 6613,
7165, 7176, 7187, 7198, 7298, 7340,
7882, 7899
- \mtcPackageWarning 3068, 3563, 3629, 3690,
3759, 4241, 4301, 4361, 4397, 4845,
4905, 4965, 7451, 7459, 7467, 7479,
7487, 7495, 7506, 7514, 7522, 7532,
7540, 7548, 7560, 7568, 7576, 7587,
7595, 7603, 7811, 7822, 7833, 7861,
7868, 7875, **7882**
- \mtcPackageWarningNoLine . . 2776, 2796,
2859, 2871, 2876, **5029**, 5922, 5932,
5965, 5975, 6008, 6018, 6115, **6143,**
6219, 6446, 6502, 6510, 6520, 6537,
6552, 6568, 6587, 6595, 6625, 6632,
6646, 6651, 6665, 6670, 6685, 6690,
6728, 6742, 6751, 6760, 6771, 6780,
6789, 6800, 6809, 6818, 6828, 6837,
6846, 6857, 6866, 6875, 6886, 6895,
6904, 6915, 6926, 6937, 6950, 6961,
6972, 6985, 6996, 7007, 7022, 7030,

- 7038, 7049, 7058, 7067, 7076, 7085,
7094, 7103, 7112, 7121, 7130, 7139,
7148, 7157, 7209, 7216, 7223, 7230,
7237, 7244, 7251, 7258, 7265, 7272,
7279, 7286, 7293, 7795, **7882**
- \mtcpagenumbers (command) . . 46, 85, 642
- \mtcpagenumbers . . **1014, 2895, 2944, 2963, 7724**
- mtcpatchmem (package) . . 150, 151, 203, 228,
241, 458
- mtcpatchmem.sty (file) 241, 242, 244
- \mtcPfont (command) . . . 36, 38, 72, 83, 641
- \mtcPfont **160, 1008, 3089, 7666**
- \mtcnumwidth **5382, 5416**
- \mtcprepare (command) 29, 41, 87, 162, 219,
234, 254, 367, 369, 448, 660
- \mtcprepare **4995, 5045, 7642**
- \mtcprepare@ **4995**
- \mtcrule (command) 46, 85, 642
- \mtcrule **5056, 7706**
- \mtcsecondpartfalse . . 2615, 2620, 2626,
2634, 7791
- \mtcsecondparttrue . . . 2618, 2624, 2631
- \mtcselectlanguage (command) . 36, 38, 40,
70, 75, 81, 152, 154, 155, 187, 188,
196, 251, 253, 399, 406, 450, 466,
645, 653
- \mtcselectlanguage **160, 6049, 6146, 6191, 7705, 7957, 7961, 7981, 8002, 8059, 8080, 8084, 8088, 8161, 8242, 8261, 8355, 8359, 8363, 8368, 8572, 8613, 8702, 8779, 8783, 8787, 9141, 9164, 9184, 9188, 9343, 9448, 9452, 9506, 9563, 9676, 9680, 9738, 9748, 9752, 9756, 9909, 10419, 10423, 10427, 10431, 10435, 10483, 10487, 10509**
- \mtcsetdepth (command) . 29, 31, 33, 43, 66,
81–84, 155, 189, 253, 390, 391, 651
- \mtcsetdepth **1443, 2177, 2189, 2359, 2425, 5750, 5757, 5774, 5782, 5788, 5792, 7688**
- \mtcsetfeature (command) 48,
49, 81, 86, 155, 189, 193, 207, 209,
212, 216, 232, 233, 252, 256, 290,
388, 389, 650, 671
- \mtcsetfeature . . **2073–2075, 2120, 3020, 5688, 5697, 5715, 5734, 5742, 7688**
- \mtcsetfont (command) . . 29, 31, 33, 42, 65,
66, 72, 74, 78, 81, 152, 155, 190, 194,
252, 294, 372, 376, 648, 655, 658
- \mtcsetfont . . . **160, 193, 1508, 1532, 1534, 1536, 1570, 1572, 1574, 1934, 2177, 2359, 5149, 5150, 5157, 5175, 5278, 5284, 7688**
- \mtcsetformat (command)
45, 81, 94, 156, 190, 191, 194, 252,
298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349,
352, 355, 379, 380, 382, 648, 649
- \mtcsetformat **303, 3168, 3240, 3308, 5410, 5455, 5464, 5480, 5497, 5503, 7688**
- \mtcsetoffset (command) 29, 31, 33, 43, 44,
81–84, 138, 152, 163, 200, 227, 256,
392, 671
- \mtcsetoffset **2129, 2131, 5794, 5801, 5818, 5826, 5832, 5836, 7688**
- \mtcsetpagenumber@ **5531**
- \mtcsetpagenumbers (command) . . 47, 78,
81, 85, 191, 192, 252, 254, 383, 386,
648, 657
- \mtcsetpagenumbers **5513, 5540, 5561, 7688**
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ (command) . . . 384
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ **5513, 5531**
- \mtcsetrules (command) 47, 81, 85, 192, 252,
254, 386, 648, 657
- \mtcsetrules **5589, 5616, 5636, 7688**
- \mtcsetrules@ (command) 386
- \mtcsetrules@ **5589, 5607**
- \mtcsettitle (command) 36,
38, 40, 43, 66, 70, 81, 152, 156, 193,
252, 378, 390, 392, 648, 649
- \mtcsettitle . . 26, **160, 1508, 1943, 5332, 5333, 5340, 5357, 5365, 7688**
- \mtcsettitlefont (command) 42, 65, 66, 81,
156, 193, 252, 294, 376–378, 648
- \mtcsettitlefont . . **1508, 1943, 5291, 5292, 5299, 5316, 7688**
- \mtcSfont (command) . 29, 36, 38, 65, 72, 83,
641
- \mtcSfont **160, 986, 3089, 7666**
- \mtcskip (command) 29, 30, 81, 251, 265, 646,
650
- \mtcskip **411, 467, 468, 494, 495, 509, 510, 576, 631, 646, 650, 703, 727, 741, 833, 874, 900, 914, 929, 1071, 1282, 2129, 2131, 2189, 2425, 2494, 7610**
- \mtcskipamount (command) 29, 30, 81, 251,
265, 443, 646
- \mtcskipamount **2494, 7439**
- \mtcSPfont (command) 36, 38, 72, 83, 84, 641
- \mtcSPfont **160, 1008, 3089, 7666**
- \mtcSSfont (command) 36, 38, 42, 72, 83, 448,
641
- \mtcSSfont **160, 986, 3089, 7666**
- \mtcSSSfont (command) . . 36, 38, 66, 72, 83,
641
- \mtcSSSfont **160, 1008, 3089, 7666**

`\mtcsv@listoffigures` **2802**
`\mtcsv@listoftables` **2802**
`\mtcsv@tableofcontents` **2802**
`mtcswedish.sty` (file) 642
`\mtctitle` (command) . 36, 37, 43, 66, 83, 466
`\mtctitle` **1213**, 3134, **3135**, **3205**, **3273**, **6209**,
7306, **7957**, 7973, 7994, 8015, 8033,
8050, 8072, 8101, 8118, 8135, 8153,
8173, 8188, 8203, 8218, 8234, 8253,
8279, 8309, 8331, 8347, 8380, 8417,
8434, 8451, 8468, 8483, 8499, 8522,
8548, 8564, 8583, 8601, 8628, 8662,
8679, 8694, 8715, 8738, 8771, 8806,
8808, 8828, 8845, 8860, 8877, 8902,
8941, 8979, 9010, 9105, 9127, 9156,
9176, 9200, 9216, 9233, 9250, 9335,
9356, 9373, 9390, 9406, 9423, 9440,
9465, 9482, 9498, 9521, 9538, 9555,
9573, 9588, 9603, 9618, 9638, 9653,
9668, 9692, 9719, 9721, 9768, 9783,
9801, 9817, 9830, 9845, 9865, 9883,
9901, 9922, 9939, 9956, 9973, 9988,
10013, 10052, 10093, 10119, 10183,
10199, 10215, 10235, 10256, 10272,
10289, 10304, 10320, 10336, 10354,
10371, 10387, 10411, 10447, 10475,
10501, 10520, 10535, 10550, 10565
`\mtctocrmarg` 5392, 5417
`\mtifont` (command) 36, 37, 83, 297, 300, 303,
641
`\mtifont` **3089**, **3135**, **3205**, **3273**, **7666**
`mu.tex` (old example document) 664, 666
MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. 511, 674, ⇨[64]
MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan 578, 674, ⇨[81]
`multibib` (package) 60, 228, ⇨[177]
`multicol` (package) . 91, 115, 228, 647, ⇨[272]
`multicols` (environment) 91, 94, 117, 137, 139,
228
`\multicolumnmtc` **303**
`\multicolumntoc` 302
`multitoc` (package) 93, ⇨[338]
`mypatches` (package) 92
`\mz` **9981**

N

`\n@mti` . **3097**, **3135**, **3205**, **3273**, **3414**, **3433**,
3452
`\n@pti` . **3804**, **3810**, **3868**, **3936**, **4011**, **4097**,
4116, **4135**
`\n@sti` . **4419**, **4458**, **4526**, **4593**, **4717**, **4736**,
4755

`\name` (command) 665
`nameref` (package) ⇨[321]
`natbib` (package) . 209, 228, 670, ⇨[126, 127]
NAUMOV, Sergei O. 574, 674, ⇨[287]
`naustrian` (language option) . . . 39, 558, 647
`naustrian.mld` (file) 242, 244, 558
`neder.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 495
`needspace` (package) 58, 228, ⇨[385]
`\NeedsTeXFormat` . . **2487**, **7435**, 7884, 7895
NETHERTON, Lee 674, ⇨[374]
NEUKAM, Frank 88, 674, ⇨[288]
`\newblock` 2013, 2015, 2021, 2022
`\newbox` 2830, 2834
`newcommand` (tool) ⇨[303]
`\newcommand` (command) 44
`\newcommand` 307, 1963, **2172**, 2395,
2406, 2785, 2811, 2820, 3075, 3766,
4403, 5150, 5292, 5333, 5456, 5513,
5531, 5589, 5607, 5689, 5750, 5794,
5838, 5839, 5872, 5873, 5906, 5907,
5943, 5986, 6029, 6099, 6144, 6160,
6189, 7614–7616, 7810, 7821, 7832,
7857–7859, 7885, 7887, 7889, 7891
`\newcounter` . **3032**, **3066**, **3748**, **3754**, **4390**,
4402, 4406
`\newdimen` 2394
`\newenvironment` . . 1257, 5840, 5856, 5874,
5890, 5908, 7848–7850
`\newfloat` (command) 217
`\newif` (command) 266
`\newif` 397, 560, 2536–2582, 2584, 2586, 2588,
2590, 2592, 2594–2615, 2637, 2640,
2641, 2643, 2688, 2743–2745, **2841**,
2881, 5149, 5291, 5332, 5455, 5511,
5512, 5587, 5588, 5688, 5749, 5793,
5837, 5852, 5886, 5942, 5985, 6028,
6049, 6117, 6135, 6143, 6435–6438,
7787–7791, 7793
`\newlength` 2494, 3775, 4408
`\newpage` 1300, 1303, 1735, 1736, 1914, 1920,
2424
`\newread` (command) 282, 641
`\newread` **2827**, 2874
`\newskip` 2495
`\newtheorem` (command) 217
`\newtoks` **2827**
`\newwrite` (command) 248, 283
`\newwrite` **2493**, **3020**
`newzealand` (language option) 39, 558
`newzealand.mld` (file) 242, 244, 558
`ngerman` (language option) 39, 559, 647
`ngerman.mld` (file) 242, 244, 559
`ngermanb` (language option) . 39, 558, 559, 647
`ngermanb.dtx` (file) 559, 560

- ngermanb.mld (file) 242, 244, 558, 559
 ngermanb2 (language option) 39, 560
 ngermanb2.mld (file) 242, 244, 560, 653
 NGUYEN, Cuong 674
 NICOLAS, Julien 674
 NIEPRASCHK, Rolf 58, 674, \hookrightarrow [154, 325]
 \nobreak . . 401, 562, 1237, 1244, 2891, 3351,
 3352, 3363, 3364, 3816, 3823, 3830
 nocheckfiles (option) 34, 54, 174–176, 211,
 231, 251, 401, 645
 \nocite 479, 713
 \noexpand3511, 3618, 3622, 3679, 3683, 4191,
 4290, 4294, 4350, 4354, 4798, 4894,
 4954, 5772, 5816
 \nofiles (command) . 29, 170, 257, 368, 672
 \nofiles 5028, 5031
 nohints (option) 52, 80, 218, 231, 408
 \noindent (command) 641
 \noindent3151, 3221, 3289, 3879, 3951, 4026,
 4474, 4541, 4608
 NOIREL, Josselin 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
 nolistfiles (option) . . 52, 80, 231, 403, 654
 nomencl (package) . . . 51, 136, 137, 227, 398,
 \hookrightarrow [374]
 \nomenclature 2039, 2053
 nomenclbl (package) 51, 398, \hookrightarrow [139]
 \nomlfpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \nomlfpagenumbers . 1019, 2931, 2944, 2950,
 7724
 \nomlfrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \nomlfrule 5065, 7706
 \nomltpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \nomltpagenumbers . 1020, 2937, 2944, 2950,
 2956, 7724
 \nomltrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \nomltrule 5074, 7706
 \nomtcpagenumbers (command) . 46, 85, 642,
 647
 \nomtcpagenumbers . 1018, 1213, 2895, 2944,
 7724
 \nomtcrule (command) 46, 85, 642, 645
 \nomtcrule 1017, 1213, 5056, 7706
 \noopsort 480, 714
 \nopagebreak (command) 641
 \noplfpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \noplfpagenumbers 2931, 2955, 7724
 \noplfrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \noplfrule 5065, 7706
 \nopltpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \nopltpagenumbers 2937, 2961, 7724
 \nopltrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \nopltrule 5074, 7706
 \noptcpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \noptcpagenumbers 2917, 2949, 7724
 \noptcrule (command) 46, 85
 \noptcrule 1014, 5056, 7706
 \normalcolor 3365
 \normalfont 193, 197, 1232, 1242, 3365
 \normalsize (command) 37, 231
 \normalsize . 1532, 1534, 1536, 1570, 1572,
 1574, 1932, 1933, 1937, 1938, 1941,
 1942, 3791–3793
 norsk (language option) 39, 560
 norsk.dtx (file) 560, 562
 norsk.mld (file) 242, 244, 560
 norsk2 (language option) 39, 561
 norsk2.mld (file) 242, 244, 561, 653
 norvege-c.pdf (graphic file) . . 243–245, 561
 norvege-t.pdf (graphic file) . . 243–245, 561
 \noslfpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \noslfpagenumbers 2931, 2953, 7724
 \noslfrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \noslfrule 5065, 7706
 \nosltpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \nosltpagenumbers 2937, 2959, 7724
 \nosltrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \nosltrule 5074, 7706
 \nostcpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \nostcpagenumbers 2907, 2947, 7724
 \nostcrule (command) 46, 85
 \nostcrule 5056, 7706
 notoccite (package) 52, 88, 231, 251, 271, 298,
 301, 304, 402, 436, 647, \hookrightarrow [11]
 notoccite (option) 52, 80, 231, 271, 402, 436,
 647
 nottoc (tocbind package) 144
 NULL, Tim 674, \hookrightarrow [289, 290, 379]
 \numberline 1041, 4665
 \numwidth (command) 45
 nynorsk (language option) 39, 562
 nynorsk.mld (file) 242, 244, 562
 nynorsk2 (language option) 39, 562
 nynorsk2.mld (file) 242, 244, 562, 653
- ## O
- OBERDIEK, Heiko62, 88, 223, 250, 310, 314, 320,
 645, 674, \hookrightarrow [291–296, 323, 324]
 \oe 1837, 1867
 OETIKER, Tobias 674, \hookrightarrow [297, 298]
 OLD (file) 664
 Old Examples
 2c.tex 664, 666
 add.bib 665, 666
 add.tex 664, 666
 addsec.tex 656, 657, 664, 666

- amem.tex 664
- app-mem.tex 666
- apx.tex 666
- bo.tex 666
- ch0.tex 664, 666
- cri.tex 664, 666
- fo1.tex 664, 666
- fo2.tex 664, 666
- gaps.tex 663, 666
- hia.tex 664, 666
- hide.tex 662
- hide1.tex 662, 666
- hide2.tex 662, 666
- hir.tex 664, 666
- hop.tex 664, 666
- livre.tex 664, 666
- mem.tex 664, 666
- mem1.tex 664, 666
- mini-art.tex 666
- minitoc-ex.tex 666
- mtc-adds.tex 668
- mtc-amem.tex 668
- mtc-book.tex 668
- mtc-gaps.tex 668
- mtc-mem1.tex 668
- mtc-subf.tex 668
- mtc-tsfc.tex 668
- mu.tex 664, 666
- scr.tex 664, 666
- second.tex 664, 667
- subf.tex 664, 667
- tbi.tex 664, 667
- tlc.tex 664, 667
- tsfc.tex 664, 667
- OLKO, Mariusz 564, 674, ⇨[299]
- omal (package) 44, 466, 553, ⇨[5]
- omega-greek.ldf (file) 515, 517, 518
- omega-polish.ldf (file) 563
- omega-russian.ldf (file) 571
- omega-spanish.ldf (file) 584
- omega.sty (file) 207
- oneside (*many classes* package) 650
- open (feature) 48, 49, 81, 86, 137–139, 189, 216, 227, 232, 256, 288, 290, 298, 301, 304, 327, 330, 333, 349, 352, 355, 671
- \openin **3561, 3627, 3688**
- \openminilof (command) 48, 86
- \openminilof **2998, 3240, 7757**
- \openminilot (command) 48, 86
- \openminilot **2998, 3308, 7757**
- \openminitoc (command) 48, 86
- \openminitoc **2998, 3168, 7757**
- \openout 2766, 2770, **2841, 3020, 3485, 3497, 3530, 3577, 3605, 3642, 3666, 3703**, 4175, 4189, 4263, 4287, 4323, 4347, 4383, 4796, **4814**, 4867, 4892, 4927, 4952, 4987, 7345
- \openpartlof (command) 48, 86
- \openpartlof **2998, 3971, 7742**
- \openpartlot (command) 48, 86
- \openpartlot **2998, 4046, 7742**
- \openparttoc (command) 48, 86
- \openparttoc **2998, 3894, 7742**
- \opensectlof (command) 48, 86
- \opensectlof **2998, 4561, 7772**
- \opensectlot (command) 48, 86
- \opensectlot **2998, 4628, 7772**
- \opensecttoc (command) 48, 86
- \opensecttoc **2998, 4491, 7772**
- Options
 - aathira (malayalam) 550
 - above (placeins) 30–32, 183
 - addtotoc (abstract) 53, 70, 160, 206
 - ambili (malayalam) 550
 - anahka (malayalam) 550
 - ashtamudi (malayalam) 550
 - aswathi (malayalam) 550
 - ayilyambold (malayalam) 550
 - below (placeins) 30–32, 184
 - bhanu (malayalam) 550
 - bhavana (malayalam) 550
 - bibtotoc (KOMA-Script) 50, 142
 - bibtotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) 50
 - checkfiles** (default) 30, 34, 61, 154, 174–176, 211, 231, 251, 401, 645
 - chippi (malayalam) 550
 - dotted** (default) 47, 80, 250, 402, 644
 - flsection 251, 646
 - flsectionb 251, 646
 - gauri (malayalam) 550
 - gopika (malayalam) 550
 - hints** (default) 52–54, 57, 70, 72, 73, 75, 76, 79, 80, 156, 162, 170, 218, 231, 252, 253, 266, 269, 408, 417, 434, 437, 647, 651, 660
 - hints 57
 - idxtotoc (KOMA-Script) 50
 - indulekha (malayalam) 550
 - insection 30, 53, 80, 100, 107, 172, 177, 183, 184, 197, 219, 233, 251, 252, 254, 402, 417, 418, 435, 646, 648, 661, 662
 - intoc (nomencl) 136, 137
 - ISMashtamudi (malayalam) 550
 - ISMkarthika (malayalam) 550
 - ISMkaumudi (malayalam) 550

ISMrevathi (malayalam) 550
 jaya (malayalam) 550
k-loose (default) . . 42, 80, 220, 253, 271,
 347, 401, 653
k-tight . . 42, 62, 80, 142, 220, 253, 271,
 295, 324, 347, 401, 653
 karthika (malayalam) 550
 kaumudi (malayalam) 550
 kottakkal (malayalam) 550
listfiles (default) 52,
 61, 80, 154, 205, 221, 231, 253, 255,
 403, 436, 653, 666
liststotoc (KOMA-Script) 50, 142
liststotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) 50
loose (default) 42, 80, 220, 222, 237, 250,
 271, 347, 401, 644, 646
 makam (malayalam) 550
 malavika (o) 550
 mridula (malayalam) 550
 nocheckfiles 34, 54, 174–176, 211, 231,
 251, 401, 645
 nohints 52, 80, 218, 231, 408
 nolistfiles 52, 80, 231, 403, 654
 notoccite 52, 80, 231, 271, 402, 436, 647
 nottoc (tocbibind) 144
 oneside (*many classes*) 650
parindent (KOMA-Script) 42
parskip (KOMA-Script) 42
 payippad (malayalam) 550
 periyar (malayalam) 550
 ravivarma (malayalam) 550
 revathi (malayalam) 550
 sabari (malayalam) 550
 sarada (malayalam) 550
 section (placeins) . . 30–32, 53, 172, 435
 shorttext . 53, 59, 80, 168, 208, 236, 250,
 402, 644
sort&compress (natbib) 670
 sruthy (malayalam) 550
tight 42, 62, 80, 142, 220, 222, 237, 250,
 271, 295, 324, 347, 401, 644, 646
 triruvathira (malayalam) 550
 undotted 47, 62, 80, 250, 402, 644
 verbose (placeins) 30, 435
\or (command) 241, 439
 ORTOLO, Tanguy 674, \hookrightarrow [300]
\osection 2070
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 587, 674, \hookrightarrow [70]
 OTT, Jörg 674
\outer (command) 282
 overcite (package) 209, \hookrightarrow [14]

P

\PackageError (command) 228, 252
\PackageError 7882
\PackageInfo (command) 228, 252, 648, 652
\PackageInfo 7882
 Packages
 abstract 53, 70, 88, 160, 206, 252, 413, 650,
 \hookrightarrow [387]
 afoot \hookrightarrow [392]
 afterpage 207, 657, \hookrightarrow [104]
 Aleph 221, 232, \hookrightarrow [44, 170]
 alnumsec . 54, 76, 88, 185, 207, 254, 274,
 428, 662, \hookrightarrow [228]
 alphanum . 53, 75, 88, 170, 207, 408, 660,
 \hookrightarrow [96]
 Antomega . . 207, 466, 515, 517, 518, 541,
 563, 570, 571, 581, 584, \hookrightarrow [226]
 appendix 53, 64, 65, 88, 161, 207, 251, 409,
 647, 662, \hookrightarrow [388]
 Arabi . . 39, 44, 208, 472, 505, 665, \hookrightarrow [204]
 ArabTeX . . 39, 44, 208, 466, 470, 471, 525,
 \hookrightarrow [230, 231]
 ArmTeX . . 44, 208, 466, 473, 644, \hookrightarrow [123]
 babel . 39, 44, 75, 122, 208, 216, 249, 466,
 468, 469, 474, 475, 477, 481–484,
 490, 492–494, 496–499, 505, 507–
 512, 514, 515, 527, 530–532, 539–
 541, 543–545, 548, 549, 557–563,
 565–568, 570, 572, 576, 578, 580,
 581, 584, 587, 590, 593, 595, 597,
 642, 643, 651, 661, \hookrightarrow [47, 49, 67]
 backref \hookrightarrow [110]
 BangTeX . 44, 209, 466, 476, 657, \hookrightarrow [304]
 bibtopic 60, 209, \hookrightarrow [22]
 bibunits 60, 209, 228, \hookrightarrow [176]
 booktabs 22, 209, \hookrightarrow [143]
 calc 22, 209, \hookrightarrow [360]
 captcont . . 54, 76, 88, 185, 209, 254, 274,
 428, 662, \hookrightarrow [117]
 caption 54, 72, 88, 172, 209, 210, 253, 274,
 428, 654, \hookrightarrow [346]
 caption2 . . 54, 72, 88, 172, 209, 210, 253,
 275, 429, 654, \hookrightarrow [344, 345]
 ccaption 54, 72, 88, 173, 210, 253, 275, 429,
 654, \hookrightarrow [391]
 CervanTeX 44, 585, \hookrightarrow [43]
 chapterbib 60, 211, 228, \hookrightarrow [16]
 chnngpage 211, 257, 672, \hookrightarrow [384]
 cite 669, \hookrightarrow [13]
 CJK 39, 44, 211, 212, 237, 239, 466,
 491, 520, 522–524, 535–537, 589,
 \hookrightarrow [18, 19, 115, 141, 250, 251, 310]
 cmcyralt 573, 574, \hookrightarrow [46, 188]

- color 115, \hookrightarrow [109]
- comment \hookrightarrow [137]
- dblaccnt 213, 659, \hookrightarrow [275]
- Devanāgarī 44, 214, 218, 466, 495, 528,
 \hookrightarrow [306]
- doc 22, \hookrightarrow [274]
- docmfp \hookrightarrow [393]
- docstrip 22, \hookrightarrow [241, 276]
- ε -TeX 213, 216, 232, 266, \hookrightarrow [98, 268]
- ethiop 44, 216, 466, 500, 502, \hookrightarrow [39]
- fancybox \hookrightarrow [370]
- FarsiTeX 44, 216, 466, 503, 504, \hookrightarrow [140]
- flafter 31, 233, 435, 661, 662, \hookrightarrow [242, 277]
- float 31, 54, 88, 163, 217, 235, 256, 268,
275, 430, 671, \hookrightarrow [255]
- floatrow 31, 54, 88, 163, 217, 256, 268, 275,
430, 671, \hookrightarrow [239]
- flowfram 53, 79, 88, 185, 217, 256, 414, 671,
 \hookrightarrow [353, 354]
- fncychap 53, 75, 88, 184, 217, 254, 273,
426, 662, \hookrightarrow [254]
- franc 92, 217, 244, 246
- frbib 218, 244, 246
- frenchle \hookrightarrow [155]
- frenchpro \hookrightarrow [156, 157]
- frnew 92, 218, 244, 246
- fullpage 137, 138, 147, \hookrightarrow [125]
- geometry 115, 218, \hookrightarrow [366]
- guarani 44, 218, 466, 519, \hookrightarrow [41]
- hangcaption 53, 79, 88, 185, 218, 255, 273,
426, 640, 668, \hookrightarrow [210]
- here 217
- H_ATeX 219, 466, 523, 525, \hookrightarrow [222]
- hypcap 671, \hookrightarrow [293]
- hypernat 670, \hookrightarrow [36]
- hyperref 22, 53, 62, 63,
72, 88, 116, 142, 153, 170, 171, 174,
219, 223, 239, 240, 247, 250, 253,
272, 310, 414, 645, 654, 658, 669,
670, \hookrightarrow [291, 294–296, 323, 324]
- HyperTeX 219, 239, \hookrightarrow [313]
- ifmtarg 219, 277, \hookrightarrow [400]
- ifpdf \hookrightarrow [292]
- ifthen 219
- KannadaTeX 220, 538, \hookrightarrow [402]
- ledarab \hookrightarrow [392]
- ledmac \hookrightarrow [394]
- ledpar \hookrightarrow [395]
- LH 574, \hookrightarrow [287]
- lhcyr 575, 576, \hookrightarrow [404]
- lipsum 90, 94, 221, 663, \hookrightarrow [178]
- Lu_ATeX 232, \hookrightarrow [196]
- malayalam 44, 466, 550–554, \hookrightarrow [4]
- marvosym 224, \hookrightarrow [193]
- mcaption 54, 72, 88, 173, 222, 253, 275,
429, 654, \hookrightarrow [194]
- minitoc 25, 260, \hookrightarrow [134, 135]
- minitoc-hyper 62, 223, \hookrightarrow [372]
- minitocoff 249, 250, 644
- minutes 224, 294, 400, \hookrightarrow [253]
- MonTeX 44, 224, 466, 478–480,
485, 486, 555, 573, 598–600, 663,
 \hookrightarrow [119, 122]
- morefloats 650, \hookrightarrow [199]
- mtcmess 152, 228, 254, 442, 457, 660
- mtcoff 35,
55, 58, 96, 150, 151, 200–203, 228,
249, 250, 441, 442, 455–457, 640,
644, 652, 671
- mtcpatchmem 150, 151, 203, 228, 241, 458
- multibib 60, 228, \hookrightarrow [177]
- multicol 91, 115, 228, 647, \hookrightarrow [272]
- multitoc 93, \hookrightarrow [338]
- mypatches 92
- nameref \hookrightarrow [321]
- natbib 209, 228, 670, \hookrightarrow [126, 127]
- needspace 58, 228, \hookrightarrow [385]
- nomencl 51, 136, 137, 227, 398, \hookrightarrow [374]
- nomentbl 51, 398, \hookrightarrow [139]
- notoccite 52, 88, 231, 251, 271, 298, 301,
304, 402, 436, 647, \hookrightarrow [11]
- omal 44, 466, 553, \hookrightarrow [5]
- overcite 209, \hookrightarrow [14]
- pict2e 58, \hookrightarrow [154]
- placeins 30, 31, 53,
88, 172, 183, 184, 217, 219, 233, 251,
267, 411, 418, 435, 652, 662, \hookrightarrow [12]
- P_ATeX 44, 233, 564, \hookrightarrow [299, 380]
- P_ATeX 2 _{ε} 233, \hookrightarrow [202, 211]
- quotchap 53, 75, 88, 184, 234, 254, 273,
427, 662, \hookrightarrow [361]
- RomanianTeX 567, 568, \hookrightarrow [327]
- romannum 54, 76, 88, 184, 235, 254, 273,
427, 662, \hookrightarrow [398]
- rotating 235, \hookrightarrow [322]
- rotfloat 54, 88, 163, 217, 235, 256, 268, 276,
431, 671, \hookrightarrow [343]
- sectsty 53, 70, 88, 129, 173, 236, 252, 267,
272, 425, 651, 661, \hookrightarrow [266]
- sfheaders 54, 76, 88, 185, 236, 254, 274,
427, 662, \hookrightarrow [256]
- shorttoc 21, 236, 640, \hookrightarrow [133]
- shortverb \hookrightarrow [274]
- SL_ATeX 44, 236, 587, \hookrightarrow [265]
- splitbib 60, 236, \hookrightarrow [263]
- stdclsdv 235, 236, \hookrightarrow [383]

- subfig 34, 88, 147, 209, 228, 236, 237, 390,
↪[118]
- subfigure . 34, 88, 140, 227, 237, ↪[116]
- textcase ↪[108]
- thailatex 237, 589, 663, ↪[267]
- titlesec . . . 53, 88, 186, 237, 257, 410, 672,
↪[42]
- titletoc 53, 88, 174, 237, 411, ↪[42]
- tocbibind 50, 53, 65,
88, 96, 98, 100, 101, 104, 142, 144,
145, 162, 226, 227, 238, 251, 409,
645, ↪[389]
- toch 640
- tocloft 53, 64–66, 71, 78,
79, 88, 115, 116, 129, 162, 226, 227,
238, 410, ↪[386]
- tocvsec2 ↪[390]
- trivfloat 54, 88, 163, 238, 256, 268, 276, 430,
671, ↪[401]
- txfonts 36, 238, ↪[332]
- url ↪[17]
- varioref 140, ↪[273]
- varsects 53, 73, 88, 173, 239, 253, 267, 272,
425, 656, ↪[357]
- vietnam 44, 596, ↪[252]
- vruler 77, ↪[209]
- wrapfig 134, 227, 239, ↪[15]
- X_YLaTeX 232
- X_YTeX 232, ↪[213]
- xr . . . 28, 240, 310, 639, 640, 656, ↪[103]
- xr-hyper 240, ↪[106]
- \PackageWarning (command) 228, 252, 648,
652
- \PackageWarning **7882**
- \PackageWarningNoLine (command) . . 228
- \PackageWarningNoLine **7882**
- \pagebreak . . . 3184, 3256, 3324, 3913, 3987,
4062, 4508, 4575, 4643
- \pagenumbering **2225, 2231**
- \pageref 2472
- \pagestyle (command) 49
- pagestyle (feature) . 48, 49, 81, 86, 216, 233,
288, 290, 388
- \pagestyle 1308
- pageUn (environment) 117
- PAÍĆ, Alan 492, 674, ↪[82]
- PAKIN, Scott 674, ↪[301–303]
- PAL, Palash Baran 476, 674, ↪[304]
- PANDEY, Anshuman 495, 528, 674, ↪[305, 306]
- \par (command) 656
- \paragraph (command) 214, 235
- \paragraph . . 887, 904, 919, 942, 1096, 1116,
1132, 1161, **3512, 4192, 4798**
- \paragraph* **1104**
- \paragraph@mtcck 5204
- paraguay.png (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 519
- paraguayp.pdf (graphic file) . . 243–245, 519
- \parbox 1276, 2411
- parindent (KOMA-Script package) 42
- PARK, Minje Byeng-sen 674, ↪[307]
- \parsep (command) 42, 295, 324
- \parsep **3108, 3837, 4434**
- \parskip (command) 42, 265, 295, 324
- parskip (KOMA-Script package) 42
- \parskip **2494, 3837, 3877, 3945, 4020, 4468,**
4535, 4602
- \part (command) 27, 33, 51, 53, 60,
63, 82, 157, 164, 167, 169, 171, 186,
199, 208, 209, 214, 234, 235, 279,
283, 305, 307, 321, 325, 328, 331,
334, 337, 341, 343, 414, 415, 437
- part (counter) 268, 269
- \part 171, 174, 179, 278, 282, 288,
576, 645, **832, 907, 929, 1031, 1104,**
1164, 1460, 1476, 1489, 1521, 1556,
1694, **2775, 3043, 3337, 4162, 4274,**
4334, 5930, 5946, 5973, 5989, 6016,
6032, **6638, 7391**
- \part* (command) . 72, 87, 93, 279, 292, 334,
645
- \part* **1443, 1694**
- \part@mtcck . 5198, 5226, 5235, 5242, 5249,
5259, 5267
- \partbegin (command) 63, 334
- \partbegin . . 1189, **4069, 4264, 4324, 4384,**
7620
- \partend (command) 64
- \partend **4069, 4254, 4314, 4374, 7620**
- PARTL, Hubert 674, ↪[297, 298]
- \partlof (command) . 33, 37, 40, 41, 82, 87,
178, 180, 219, 323, 325, 328, 642
- \partlof **576, 646, 832, 909, 929, 1031, 1104,**
3804, 3849, 3915, 6752, 6840, 6927,
7419, 7624
- \partlof@ (command) 328
- \partlof@ **3378, 3915, 3916**
- \partlof@mtcck 5192, 5217
- partlofdepth (depth counter) . 34, 214, 233,
321, 330
- \partlot (command) . 33, 37, 40, 41, 82, 87,
178, 180, 219, 323, 325, 331, 642
- \partlot **576, 646, 832, 910, 929, 1031, 3804,**
3849, 3989, 6761, 6849, 6938, 7419,
7624
- \partlot@ (command) 331
- \partlot@ **3378, 3989, 3990**
- \partlot@mtcck 5195, 5221

- partlotdepth (depth counter) . 34, 214, 233, 321, 333
- \partoc (command) 325
- \partopsep (command) 324
- \partopsep 3110, **3837**, 4433
- \parttoc (command) . 22, 33, 37, 38, 40, 41, 53, 63, 82, 87, 93, 179, 181, 219, 323, 325, 416, 418, 420, 422, 642, 646
- \parttoc 27, 172, 177, 182, **276**, 289, **576**, 646, **832**, 908, **929**, **1031**, **1104**, **1164**, **1443**, **1531**, **1532**, **1534**, **1536**, **1569**, **1570**, **1572**, **1574**, **3804**, **3849**, 6743, 6831, 6916, **7419**, **7624**
- \parttoc@ (command) 325
- \parttoc@ **3378**, **3849**, **3850**
- \parttoc@mtcql 5189, 5211
- parttocdepth (depth counter) 22, 33, 34, 82, 214, 233, 321, 327
- PATASHNIK, Oren 209, 674, ⇨[308, 309]
- payippad (malayalam package) 550
- \pchapter **4064**, **4192**, **7643**
- PECHTA, Jonathan 674, ⇨[310–312]
- PEETERS, Kasper 674, ⇨[313]
- PELGER, Matthias 674
- \penalty 401, 562, 2070
- People
- ABOLHASSANI, Hassan 503, 504, 673
- ABRAHAMS, Paul W. 673, ⇨[1, 2]
- ABU EL-ATA, Nabil 673
- ADDABBO, Tommaso 673
- AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. . 477, 673, ⇨[55]
- AICARDI, Stéphane 673, ⇨[3]
- AKOPIAN, Vartan 208, 473, 673, ⇨[123]
- ALEX, A.J. 550–554, 673, ⇨[4, 5]
- ALFORD, Mark 673, ⇨[6]
- ANDRÉ, Jacques 673, ⇨[8, 279]
- ANDRIEUX, Jérôme 673
- ANGELI, Ralf 673
- APPEL, Walter 673, ⇨[9]
- ARADIAN, Achod André 673
- ÁRNASON, Einar 530, 673, ⇨[56]
- ARNOLD, Tim 311, 673
- ARPONEN, Jouko 673, ⇨[10]
- ARSENEAU, Donald 30, 31, 52, 88, 231, 251, 271, 277, 282, 298, 301, 304, 641, 644, 647, 659, 668, 673, ⇨[11–17, 400]
- ASLASKEN, Helmer 673, ⇨[18, 19]
- ASPINALL, David 673
- ÅSSEN, Ivar 562, 673
- BACHMANN, Philipp 673
- BADENES, Gonçal 490, 673, ⇨[57]
- BALDRIDGE, Jason 673, ⇨[20]
- BALGARENSKY, Marin 673
- BARROCA, Leonor 88, 673, ⇨[322]
- BASSI, Giancarlo 585, 673
- BASSO, Pierre 673, ⇨[22]
- BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov . . . 557, 673, ⇨[23]
- BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves 673
- BAUSUM, David 673, ⇨[24, 25]
- BAYART, Benjamin 49, 252, 370, 648, 649, 673, ⇨[26, 27]
- BAYET, Thierry 673, ⇨[27]
- BECCARI, Claudio 532, 534, 539–541, 673, ⇨[28, 29, 58, 66]
- BEFFARA, Emmanuel 61, 673, ⇨[30]
- BELET, Benoît 673, ⇨[279]
- BELMOUHOU, Rachid 673, ⇨[31]
- BÉRCES, József 548, 549, 673, ⇨[59]
- BERDNIKOV, Alexander . . . 673, ⇨[32–35]
- BERGER, Jens 673, ⇨[36]
- BERRY, Karl 673, ⇨[1, 2, 37, 38]
- BEYENE, Berhanu 500, 502, 673, ⇨[39]
- BEZOS, Javier 88, 511, 519, 581, 585, 673, ⇨[40–43]
- BILOTTA, Giuseppe 232, 673, ⇨[44]
- BÍRÓ, Árpád 548, 549, 673, ⇨[59]
- BITOUZÉ, Denis 673, ⇨[45]
- BLANKENSHIP, Dr. Barbara . . 673, ⇨[195]
- BLOCH, Laurent 673
- BONVILA, Onofre 583, 673
- BOSHPANOV, Georgi N. 483, 673, ⇨[60]
- BOUGETTE, Patrice 673
- BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 673
- BOWDEN, Andrew 672, 673
- BOYKO, Victor 573, 673, ⇨[46]
- BRAAMS, Johannes L. 44, 208, 249, 468, 496–498, 514, 531, 560, 562, 597, 642, 673, ⇨[47–95, 138, 234–237, 276–279]
- BRAUN, Felix 88, 207, 220, 673, ⇨[96]
- BREEN, Jim 673, ⇨[97]
- BREITENLOHNER, Peter 673, ⇨[98]
- BUJDOSÓ, Gyöngyi 673, ⇨[99, 100]
- BURBANK, Mimi 673, ⇨[314]
- BURC, Mustafa 590, 673, ⇨[61]
- BURYKIN, Alexey 673, ⇨[33–35]
- CARCAGNO, Samuele 673, ⇨[101]
- CARDI, Olivier 673
- CARELLA, David 673, ⇨[102]
- CARLISLE, David P. 28, 217, 240, 310, 640, 673, ⇨[62, 103–110, 277–279, 281]
- CARMODY, Kevin 495, 528, 673, ⇨[306]
- CARRIBA, Manuel 511, 673, ⇨[63, 64]
- CASPAR, Régis 673
- CHANG, Winston 673, ⇨[111]

- CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme 673,
 ⇨[45, 221, 279, 364]
- CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal 673, ⇨[112]
- CHEN, Pehong 673, ⇨[113]
- CHEONG, Otfried 673, ⇨[114]
- CHEVALIER, Céline 673, ⇨[9]
- CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana 580, 673, ⇨[65]
- CHOU, Pai H. 673, ⇨[115]
- CLEGG, Marian 673
- COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . . 34, 54, 76, 88,
 673, ⇨[116–118]
- CODOGNO, Maurizio . . 532, 534, 673, ⇨[66]
- COOK, David B. 673
- CORFF, Oliver 555, 598–600, 673,
 ⇨[119–122]
- CORNET, Emmanuel 673, ⇨[9]
- COUNTCHAM, Prakash 673, ⇨[27]
- DACHIAN, Sergueï . . 208, 473, 673, ⇨[123]
- DAERR, Adrian 673
- DALALYAN, Arnak . . 208, 473, 673, ⇨[123]
- DALY, Patrick W. . . . 673, ⇨[124–127, 224]
- DANIELSSON, Holger . . . 673, ⇨[310–312]
- DAVISON, Alice 673, ⇨[128]
- DEININGER, Andreas . . . 257, 368, 672, 673
- DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas . 481, 673, ⇨[85]
- DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien 673
- DEPARDIEU, Éric 673, ⇨[27]
- DE RYDT, Ben 673
- DESGRAUPES, Bernard . . 673, ⇨[129–131]
- DESPRAIRIES, Cécile 673,
 ⇨[31, 160, 339, 381]
- DESREUX, Sébastien 673, ⇨[9]
- DILLER, Antoni R. 673, ⇨[132]
- DORI, Dorjpalam 555, 598–600, 673,
 ⇨[122]
- DRIKIS, Ivars 542, 673
- DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. 26,
 ⇨[27, 133–135]
- DRYER, Matthew S. 473, 673
- DUCHIER, Denys 673, ⇨[276]
- DUDDING, Lyndon 64, 673
- DUNG, Ta Quang 673
- ÈEHAJA, Marko 579, 673
- EGAN, Patrick 673, ⇨[139]
- EIJKHOUT, Victor 673, ⇨[67, 136–138, 234]
- ELMEGAARD, Brian 673, ⇨[139]
- ELS, Danie 673, ⇨[143]
- ESFAHBOD, Behdad . . 503, 504, 673, ⇨[140]
- ESSER, Thomas 673
- ETIENNE, Gilhooly 673, ⇨[160]
- EVERITT, Karl F. 645, 673
- FABIAN, Mike 673, ⇨[141]
- FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 673, ⇨[142]
- FAULHAMMER, Christian 673, ⇨[318]
- FEAR, Simon 673, ⇨[143]
- FENN, Jürgen 673, ⇨[144, 362, 363]
- FERGUSON, Michael J. 673, ⇨[145]
- FESSLER, Jeff 673
- FISCHER, Ulrike 673
- FLECK, Jean-Julien 673, ⇨[9]
- FLIPO, Daniel . . 508–510, 673, ⇨[68, 297]
- FLOM, Peter L. 673, ⇨[146–148]
- FLYNN, Peter 673, ⇨[149–152]
- FOX, Jim 673
- FÜRNIS, Danny M. 673
- FURUKAWA, Tetsuo 673, ⇨[203]
- GARCIA, Federico 673, ⇨[153]
- GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 673
- GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 58, 673, ⇨[154]
- GAULLE[†], Bernard 673, ⇨[155–157]
- GELDERMAN, Maarten 673, ⇨[158]
- GENSCHTE, Chuck 673, ⇨[159]
- GHODSI, Mohammad . . 466, 503, 504, 673,
 ⇨[140]
- GILHOOLY, Helen 673, ⇨[160]
- GIRON, François 673, ⇨[161]
- GLEISZNER, Markus 656, 657, 673
- GONTSHARUK, Vitali 673
- GOOSSENS, Michel 642, 673,
 ⇨[162, 163, 277–279]
- GORDON, Jr., Raymond G. . . 673, ⇨[164]
- GOUTELLE, Mathieu 674, ⇨[27]
- GRANT, Fraser . . 531, 578, 674, ⇨[52, 69]
- GRÄTZER, George 674, ⇨[165, 166]
- GRAY, Norman 239, 674, ⇨[167]
- GREENWADE, George D. . . . 674, ⇨[168]
- GREGORIO, Enrico 585, 674, ⇨[169]
- GRENON, Loïc 674
- GRETHER, Charles 674, ⇨[339]
- GRIMES, Barbara F. 674, ⇨[164]
- GRINEVA, Olga A. 674, ⇨[32]
- GROT, Sébastien 674
- GUIGNARD, Micael 674
- GUNN, Marion 531, 674, ⇨[52]
- GURARI, Eitan M. 674, ⇨[163]
- HAFNER, Thomas 674, ⇨[325]
- HAGEN, Hans 674,
 ⇨[147, 170, 171, 175, 196]
- HAHN, Reinhard F. 674, ⇨[172]
- HAMZI, Boumediene 674
- HÀN, Thế Thành . . 213, 596, 659, 669, 674,
 ⇨[173–175, 252]
- HANSEN, Thorsten 674, ⇨[176, 177]
- HAPPEL, Patrick 674, ⇨[178]
- HARALAMBOUS, Yannis 231, 674,
 ⇨[8, 179–187, 315, 316]
- HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. . . . 674, ⇨[1, 2]

- HARIN, Alexander 574, 674, \hookrightarrow [188]
 HARRIS, Russel L. 674
 HARRISON, Michael A. 674, \hookrightarrow [113]
 HARTKE, Stephen 674, \hookrightarrow [189]
 HEAP, Danny 674
 HEFFERON, Jim 674, \hookrightarrow [191, 192]
 HEIDER, André 674
 HEIN, Thorsten 674
 HELLMAN, Sten 587, 674, \hookrightarrow [70]
 HELSTRUP, Håvard 560, 562, 674, \hookrightarrow [53]
 HENEL, Yvon 674, \hookrightarrow [27, 362]
 HENKEL, Hartmut 674, \hookrightarrow [196]
 HENLICH, Thomas 674, \hookrightarrow [193]
 HENNIG, Stephan 54, 72, 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [194]
 HENRY, Florence 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
 HERBORN, Stephen 674
 HESOLL, Jörg 674
 HINNENBUSH, Pr. Thomas J. 674, \hookrightarrow [195]
 HODLEY, David 674, \hookrightarrow [340]
 HOEKWATER, Taco 674, \hookrightarrow [196]
 HOENIG, Alan 674, \hookrightarrow [197]
 HOGG, Joe 674, \hookrightarrow [147]
 HØGHOLM, Morten 674
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil 560, 562, 674, \hookrightarrow [53]
 HÖPPNER, Klaus 674, \hookrightarrow [198]
 HORST, Umstatter 566, 674, \hookrightarrow [71]
 HOSEK, Don 650, 674, \hookrightarrow [199]
 HU, Yufan 639, 674
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel 674, \hookrightarrow [200, 279]
 HUSEBY, Dave W. 674
 HYNÄ, Helene 674, \hookrightarrow [297, 298]
 IKEDA, Hiroya 674, \hookrightarrow [202]
 IVANOV, Dmitry 207, 515, 517, 518, 541, 563,
 570, 571, 674, \hookrightarrow [226]
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar 560, 562, 674, \hookrightarrow [53]
 IWAKUMA, Tetsuo 674, \hookrightarrow [203]
 IZAOLA, Zumbeltz 477, 674, \hookrightarrow [55]
 JABRI, Youssef 208, 472, 505, 674, \hookrightarrow [204]
 JACKOWSKI, Paweł 674, \hookrightarrow [205]
 JACQUET, Christophe 674, \hookrightarrow [206]
 JAEHNE, Bernd 62, 223, 250, 310, 314, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [372]
 JALAM, Radwan 674
 JANICH, Michael 563, 674, \hookrightarrow [89]
 JEFFREY, Alan 674, \hookrightarrow [62, 207, 208, 281]
 JENSEN, Frank 674, \hookrightarrow [360]
 JERNSLITTEN, Regnor 576, 674, \hookrightarrow [72]
 JIANG, Zhuhan 77, 674, \hookrightarrow [209]
 JOLY, Loïc 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
 JONES, David M. 53, 79, 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [210]
 JORSSSEN, Christophe 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
 JUHASZ, Robert 566, 674, \hookrightarrow [71]
 JUNGE, Stefan 674
 JURAFSKY, Dan 26, 248, 639, 674
 KAKUTO, Akira 674, \hookrightarrow [211]
 KANERVA, Mikko 505, 507, 674, \hookrightarrow [73]
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak 589, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [212, 267]
 KASTRUP, David 674
 KERYELL, Ronan 218, 674
 KEW, Jonathan 232, 674, \hookrightarrow [213]
 KIELHORN, Axel 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [288]
 KIM, Ki-Joo 674, \hookrightarrow [214–216]
 KLEB, Bil 53, 674
 KLEIWEG, Peter 531, 674, \hookrightarrow [74]
 KLEVELAND, Rune 560, 562, 674, \hookrightarrow [53]
 KLÖCKL, Ingo 674, \hookrightarrow [217]
 KNAPPEN, Jörg 474, 475, 490, 498, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [75, 76, 87]
 KNUTH, Donald E. 213, 229, 231, 232, 237,
 674, \hookrightarrow [218–221]
 KOAUNGH, Un 219, 523, 525, 675, \hookrightarrow [222]
 KOHM, Markus 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
 KOPKA, Helmut 674, \hookrightarrow [224]
 KOPPANYI, Attila 548, 549, 674, \hookrightarrow [59]
 KORAI, Adamantios 518, 674
 KRAKOVIAK, Vincent 674
 KRATT, Kai 674
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 674
 KROONENBERG, Siep 674, \hookrightarrow [225]
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. 207, 515, 517, 518, 541,
 563, 570, 571, 584, 674, \hookrightarrow [226]
 KUDLEK, Manfred 500, 502, 674, \hookrightarrow [39]
 KUHN, Markus G. 674, \hookrightarrow [227]
 KULZER, Florian 674
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiaki 534, 538, 674
 KUMMER, Olaf 500, 502, 674, \hookrightarrow [39]
 KÜSTER, Frank 54, 76, 88, 579, 674, \hookrightarrow [228]
 LABORDE, Stéphane 674
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas 674, \hookrightarrow [229]
 LAGALLY, Klaus 39, 208, 470, 471, 525, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [230, 231]
 LAMPORT, Leslie 221, 674, \hookrightarrow [62, 232–237]
 LANARI, Fabio 674
 LANGE, Robert 674
 LANGMYHR, Dag 560–562, 643, 674
 LAPKO, Olga G. 88, 217, 484, 557, 572, 593,
 674, \hookrightarrow [33–35, 77, 238–240]
 LARSEN, Henning 494, 674, \hookrightarrow [78]
 LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc 674
 LASIS, Andris 542, 674
 L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM, \hookrightarrow [208, 235, 241–
 246, 376]
 LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe 674
 LAUNAY, Arnaud 674
 LAUVERNET, Claire 674
 LAVVA, Boris 527, 674, \hookrightarrow [79]

- LEBACQ, André 674
 LECARME, Olivier 674, ⇨[247]
 LECLERC, Jacques 674, ⇨[248]
 LEGRAND, Jeanne 674, ⇨[300]
 LEHMAN, Philipp 674, ⇨[249]
 LEMBERG, Werner 211, 484, 491, 520, 522–524, 535–537, 557, 572, 589, 596, 674, ⇨[77, 250–252, 275, 376]
 LEONHARDT, Thomas 646, 674
 LE PENNEC, Erwan 674, ⇨[27]
 LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane 674
 LE THUAUT, Julien 674
 LEWENBERG, Adam 674
 LICKERT, Knut 224, 400, 674, ⇨[253]
 LINDGREN, Ulf A. 53, 75, 88, 674, ⇨[254]
 LINGNAU, Anselm 88, 217, 674, ⇨[255]
 LOBEL, Pierre 674
 LOKAJČEK, Miloš V. 493, 674, ⇨[80]
 LOMBARD, Stoffel 468, 674
 LORETI, Maurizio 54, 76, 88, 674, ⇨[256]
 LORINO, Tristan 674
 LOVE, Tim 674, ⇨[257, 258]
 LOZANO, Vincent 674, ⇨[259]
 LUECKING, Daniel H. 674
 LUNDE, Ken 212, 674, ⇨[260–262]
 LYHNE, Anders 674
 MacKAY, Pierre A. 590, 674, ⇨[61]
 MADSEN, Lars 674
 MAHONEY, Richard 495, 528, 674
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. 484, 572, 674, ⇨[240]
 MALECKI, Pierre 674
 MARGOLIS, Bob 475, 674, ⇨[76]
 MARKEY, Nicolas 674, ⇨[27, 263, 264]
 MARR, Marcus 674
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise 674, ⇨[27]
 MART, Terry 474, 475, 674, ⇨[75, 76]
 MASLOV, Vadim 573, 574, 674, ⇨[46, 188]
 MASSIAS, Henri 66, 674
 MATTHIAS, Andreas 674
 MATTISSON, Sven 587, 674, ⇨[265]
 McDONNELL, Rowland 53, 70, 88, 674, ⇨[266]
 McKay, Ben 674
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant 589, 674, ⇨[267]
 MENGIN, Sébastien 674, ⇨[27]
 METZINGER, Jochen 500, 502, 674, ⇨[39]
 MICHOU, Yanick 674
 MITTELBACH, Frank 221, 249, 294, 323, 346, 642, 646, 647, 674, ⇨[62, 162, 236, 237, 268–281]
 MOON, Young Joon 674, ⇨[282]
 MOORE, Ross 674, ⇨[163]
 MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 88, 674, ⇨[223, 288]
 MORI, Lapo Filippo 674, ⇨[169, 283, 284]
 MORRISON, Michael A. 674, ⇨[285]
 MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. 511, 674, ⇨[64]
 MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan 578, 674, ⇨[81]
 NAUMOV, Sergei O. 574, 674, ⇨[287]
 NETHERTON, Lee 674, ⇨[374]
 NEUKAM, Frank 88, 674, ⇨[288]
 NGUYEN, Cuong 674
 NICOLAS, Julien 674
 NIEPRASCHK, Rolf 58, 674, ⇨[154, 325]
 NOIREL, Josselin 674, ⇨[27]
 NULL, Tim 674, ⇨[289, 290, 379]
 OBERDIEK, Heiko 62, 88, 223, 250, 310, 314, 320, 645, 674, ⇨[291–296, 323, 324]
 OETIKER, Tobias 674, ⇨[297, 298]
 OLKO, Mariusz 564, 674, ⇨[299]
 ORTOLO, Tanguy 674, ⇨[300]
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 587, 674, ⇨[70]
 OTT, Jörg 674
 PAIĆ, Alan 492, 674, ⇨[82]
 PAKIN, Scott 674, ⇨[301–303]
 PAL, Palash Baran 476, 674, ⇨[304]
 PANDEY, Anshuman 495, 528, 674, ⇨[305, 306]
 PARK, Minje Byeng-sen 674, ⇨[307]
 PARTL, Hubert 674, ⇨[297, 298]
 PATASHNIK, Oren 209, 674, ⇨[308, 309]
 PECHTA, Jonathan 674, ⇨[310–312]
 PEETERS, Kasper 674, ⇨[313]
 PELGER, Matthias 674
 PÉTIARD, François 672, 674
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset 560, 562, 674, ⇨[53]
 PICHAREAU, Paul 674, ⇨[9]
 PICHERAL, Éric 674, ⇨[187]
 PIGUET, Bruno 674, ⇨[27]
 PÍŠKA, Karel 674, ⇨[314]
 PLAICE, John 231, 674, ⇨[183–187, 315, 316]
 POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 589, 674, ⇨[267, 317]
 POPINEAU, Fabrice 674, ⇨[364]
 POPPELIER, Nico 674, ⇨[67]
 PORRAT, Rama 527, 674
 POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 674
 POURNADER, Roozbeh 503, 504, 674, ⇨[140]
 PREUSSE, Hilmar 674, ⇨[318]
 RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. 495, 528, 674, ⇨[319, 374]
 RAHTZ, Sebastian 88, 674, ⇨[110, 162, 163, 175, 294–296, 320–324]

- RAICHLE, Bernd . . . 514, 559, 560, 567, 568,
 674, ⇨[83, 84, 325, 327]
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro . . . 481, 565, 674,
 ⇨[85]
 RASCOE, Paul 674, ⇨[326]
 REINO, Keranen . . . 505, 507, 674, ⇨[73]
 REZUŞ, Adrian . . . 567, 568, 674, ⇨[327]
 ROBBERS, Yuri 674, ⇨[328]
 ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . 62, 223, 250, 314,
 674, ⇨[372]
 ROBERTSON, Will 674, ⇨[329]
 ROEGEL, Denis B. 249, 642, 643, 674,
 ⇨[162]
 ROLLAND, Christian . . 482, 674, ⇨[86, 330]
 ROULUND, Rasmus Pank . . . 674, ⇨[328]
 ROWLEY, Chris A. 674,
 ⇨[62, 207, 277–281, 331, 360]
 RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti 498, 674, ⇨[87]
 RYNNING, Jan Michael 587, 642, 674
 RYU, Young 674, ⇨[332]
 SAAR, Enn 499, 674, ⇨[88]
 SAMSOEN, David 674
 SÁNCHEZ, Julio 477, 581, 674, ⇨[55]
 SANGEUX, Morgan 674
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie 674, ⇨[333, 334]
 SCHALÜCK, Elmar 563, 674, ⇨[89]
 SCHANDL, Bernd 674, ⇨[374]
 SCHLEGL, Elisabeth 674, ⇨[297, 298]
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias 580, 674, ⇨[65]
 SCHMIDT, Walter 559, 560, 674,
 ⇨[84, 335, 336]
 SCHMITZ, Thomas A. 674, ⇨[337]
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe 674
 SCHÖPF, Rainer 674, ⇨[62, 237]
 SCHRÖDER, Martin . . . 93, 674, ⇨[175, 338]
 SCHWARTZ, Ulrich 674, ⇨[318]
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth 674, ⇨[339]
 SHELL, Michael 674, ⇨[340]
 SHIN, Jungshik 674
 SHOUKAT, Ali 675
 SHOUYI[†], Bai 675, ⇨[341]
 SHVAIKA, Andrij M. 593, 675, ⇨[90]
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop . . . 589, 675, ⇨[267]
 SINGH, Sindhu 675, ⇨[342]
 SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna . . 675, ⇨[381]
 SLOBODAN, Jankovic 578, 675, ⇨[81]
 SMITH, John 495, 528, 675, ⇨[306]
 SOCHA, Robin S. 675
 SOFRONIOU, Nick 675, ⇨[348]
 SOMMERFELDT, Axel . . . 54, 72, 88, 209, 210,
 217, 675, ⇨[343–346]
 SONG, Lianyi 675, ⇨[339]
 SOULET, Yves 675, ⇨[279]
 STEINER, Arjen 675
 STORY, D. P. 675, ⇨[347]
 STREIT, Éric 675, ⇨[27]
 STUBNER, Ralf 675
 SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. . . . 538, 675, ⇨[402]
 SUTOR, Robert S. 675, ⇨[163]
 SWOYER, Chris 675
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos 515, 675,
 ⇨[29, 91, 348]
 TABACCO, Raffaella 539, 540, 675
 TALBOT, Nicola L. C. 88, 675,
 ⇨[147, 349–356]
 TAUPIN[†], Daniel . . . 53, 73, 88, 675, ⇨[357]
 TAYLOR, Philip 675, ⇨[147]
 THIELE, Christina 675, ⇨[147, 314]
 THIMBLEBY, Harold 675, ⇨[358, 359]
 THORUP, Kresten Krab 675, ⇨[360]
 THUREAU, Aurélien 675
 TINNEFELD, Karsten . . . 53, 75, 88, 675, ⇨[361]
 ’T LAM, Ton 675
 TOLUŠIS, Sigitas 543, 544, 675
 TORDELLA, Laurent 675
 TRETTIN, Mark 675, ⇨[362, 363]
 TRUU, Ahto 675
 TSOLOMITIS, Antonis 675, ⇨[348]
 TWS-TDS, ⇨[364, 365]
 ULRICH, Stefan 36, 645, 675, ⇨[22]
 UMEKI, Hideo 675, ⇨[366]
 UYAR, Turgut 590, 675, ⇨[61]
 VAARIO, Jari 675
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet 675, ⇨[368]
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas 675,
 ⇨[27, 369]
 VAN ZANDT, Timothy 675, ⇨[370]
 VAQUIN, Vincent 675
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. 675, ⇨[371]
 VERNÉ, Didier . . . 62, 223, 250, 310, 314, 675,
 ⇨[372]
 VESCO, Sylvain 675
 VEYTSMAN, Boris 675, ⇨[373, 374]
 VIAL, Alexandre 675
 VOEGELIN, Carl F. 675, ⇨[375]
 VOEGELIN, Florence M. 675, ⇨[375]
 VOGEL, Martin 675, ⇨[193]
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir . . . 484, 557, 572, 675,
 ⇨[77, 376]
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. 277, 645, 675,
 ⇨[377, 378]
 VOSS, Herbert 675, ⇨[162]
 WAGNER, Zdeněk . . . 495, 528, 675, ⇨[306]
 WALDEN, David 675, ⇨[147]
 WARD, Nigel 26, 248, 639, 675
 WARNOCK, John 675, ⇨[159]
 WAUD, Douglas 675, ⇨[379]

- WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek 675, \hookrightarrow [380]
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. 675
 WERNER, Eduard . 545, 595, 675, \hookrightarrow [92, 93]
 WEST, Daphne 675, \hookrightarrow [381]
 WETTL, Ferenc 675, \hookrightarrow [99, 100]
 WIJNHOUT, Jeroen 675, \hookrightarrow [310–312]
 WILLIAMS, Graham 675, \hookrightarrow [382]
 WILSON, Peter R. . 50, 53, 54, 64, 65, 70, 72,
 76, 88, 206, 207, 211, 223, 277, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [383–399, 399, 400]
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin . 564, 675, \hookrightarrow [276, 299]
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth 675
 WOODING, Mark 675, \hookrightarrow [276]
 WRIGHT, Joseph A. . 88, 238, 675, \hookrightarrow [401]
 WRIGHT, Tim 675
 WUJASTYK, Dominik 495, 528, 675, \hookrightarrow [306]
 WYART, Damien 675, \hookrightarrow [27]
 YOGANANDA, C. S. 538, 675, \hookrightarrow [402]
 ZAIMI, Adi 469, 675, \hookrightarrow [94]
 ZAMENOF[†], Lejzer Ludwig 498, 675
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo 580, 675, \hookrightarrow [95]
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad . 539–541,
 675, \hookrightarrow [58]
 ZENDER, Charlie S. 675, \hookrightarrow [403]
 ZENITH, Federico 675, \hookrightarrow [310–312]
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. 574–576, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [188, 404]
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe 675
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon 580, 675, \hookrightarrow [95]
 periyar (malayalam package) 550
 PÉTIARD, François 672, 674
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset . 560, 562, 674, \hookrightarrow [53]
 \pfill 401, 562
 \pfloffset **2518**
 PICHAREAU, Paul 674, \hookrightarrow [9]
 PICAL, Éric 674, \hookrightarrow [187]
 pict2e (package) 58, \hookrightarrow [154]
 PIGUET, Bruno 674, \hookrightarrow [27]
 PÍŠKA, Karel 674, \hookrightarrow [314]
 placeins (package) 30, 31, 53,
 88, 172, 183, 184, 217, 219, 233, 251,
 267, 411, 418, 435, 652, 662, \hookrightarrow [12]
 placeins.sty (file) 31
 placeins.txt (file) 31, 233
 PLAICE, John . 231, 674, \hookrightarrow [183–187, 315, 316]
 plain.bst (file) 214, 218
 plainurl.bst (file) 255, 666
 \LaTeX (package) . . 44, 233, 564, \hookrightarrow [299, 380]
 $\text{\LaTeX}_2\epsilon$ (package) 233, \hookrightarrow [202, 211]
 \PLF@ 4312, 4314
 \PLF@contentsline (command) 341
 \PLF@contentsline **4274, 4314**
 \PLF@explist **4272, 4298**
 \PLF@line **4310, 4312**
 \PLF@list **4269, 4272, 4298, 4314**
 \PLF@lof **4272, 4299, 4314**
 \PLF@loop **4269, 4299**
 \PLF@next (command) 341
 \PLF@next **4086, 4269, 4298**
 \plf@pgno 2954, 2955, **3971**
 \PLF@read **4299, 4310, 4314**
 \plf@rule **3081, 3948, 3984, 5065**
 \plf@setform (command) 330, 381
 \plf@setform **3971, 5425**
 \PLF@test (command) 342
 \PLF@test **4312, 4314, 4314**
 \PLF@WriteContentsLine **4274**
 \plfdotsep **5400, 5428, 5448, 5453**
 \plffont (command) 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
 \plffont **1556, 3777, 3790, 3945, 7654**
 \plfname **4274, 4277**
 \plfoffset (command) 82
 \plfoffset 2520, **3966, 7529**
 \plfpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \plfpagenumbers . . **2931, 2954, 2963, 7724**
 \plfpnumwidth **5382, 5426, 5446, 5451**
 \plfrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \plfrule **5065, 7706**
 \plfSfont (command) . 37, 38, 73, 74, 82, 654
 \plfSfont **1556, 3777, 3790, 7654**
 \plftitle (command) 37, 38, 82, 466
 \plftitle **3930, 3936, 3948,**
 6209, 7306, 7957, 7970, 7991, 8012,
 8030, 8047, 8069, 8098, 8115, 8132,
 8150, 8170, 8185, 8200, 8215, 8231,
 8250, 8272, 8304, 8328, 8344, 8377,
 8414, 8431, 8448, 8465, 8480, 8496,
 8515, 8545, 8561, 8580, 8596, 8623,
 8659, 8676, 8691, 8712, 8731, 8764,
 8802, 8825, 8842, 8857, 8874, 8894,
 8898, 8933, 8971, 9007, 9102, 9120,
 9153, 9173, 9197, 9213, 9230, 9247,
 9332, 9333, 9353, 9370, 9387, 9403,
 9420, 9437, 9462, 9479, 9495, 9518,
 9535, 9552, 9570, 9585, 9600, 9615,
 9635, 9650, 9665, 9689, 9713, 9765,
 9780, 9798, 9814, 9835, 9850, 9862,
 9880, 9898, 9919, 9936, 9953, 9985,
 10005, 10044, 10086, 10116, 10180,
 10196, 10212, 10231, 10253, 10269,
 10286, 10301, 10317, 10333, 10351,
 10368, 10384, 10408, 10454, 10472,
 10498, 10517, 10532, 10547, 10562
 \plftocrmarg **5391, 5427, 5447, 5452**
 \PLT@ 4372, 4374
 \PLT@contentsline (command) 343
 \PLT@contentsline **4334, 4374**

- \PLT@explist 4332, 4358
- \PLT@line 4370, 4372
- \PLT@list 4329, 4332, 4358, 4374
- \PLT@loop 4329, 4359
- \PLT@lot 4332, 4359, 4374
- \PLT@next (command) 344
- \PLT@next 4090, 4329, 4358, 4710
- \plt@pgno 2960, 2961, 4046
- \PLT@read 4359, 4370, 4374
- \plt@rule 3081, 4027, 4060, 5074
- \plt@setform (command) 333, 381
- \plt@setform 4046, 5440
- \PLT@test (command) 344
- \PLT@test 4372, 4374, 4374
- \PLT@WriteContentsLine 4334
- \pltdotsep 5400, 5443
- \pltfont (command) 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \pltfont 1556, 3777, 3790, 4020, 7654
- \pltname 4334, 4337
- \pltoffset (command) 82
- \pltoffset 2518, 4041, 7529
- \pltpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
- \pltpagenumbers .. 2937, 2960, 2963, 7724
- \pltptnumwidth 5382, 5441
- \pltrule (command) 46, 85, 649
- \pltrule 5074, 7706
- \pltSfont (command). 37, 38, 73, 74, 82, 654
- \pltSfont 1556, 3777, 3790, 7654
- \plttitle (command) 37, 38, 82, 466
- \plttitle 4005, 4011, 4027, 6209, 7306, 7957, 7971, 7992, 8013, 8031, 8048, 8070, 8099, 8116, 8133, 8151, 8171, 8186, 8201, 8216, 8232, 8251, 8275, 8306, 8329, 8345, 8378, 8415, 8432, 8449, 8466, 8481, 8497, 8518, 8546, 8562, 8581, 8598, 8625, 8660, 8677, 8692, 8713, 8734, 8767, 8803, 8826, 8843, 8858, 8875, 8937, 8975, 9008, 9103, 9123, 9154, 9174, 9198, 9214, 9231, 9248, 9354, 9371, 9388, 9404, 9421, 9438, 9463, 9480, 9496, 9519, 9536, 9553, 9571, 9586, 9601, 9616, 9636, 9651, 9666, 9690, 9715, 9766, 9781, 9799, 9815, 9836, 9851, 9863, 9881, 9899, 9920, 9937, 9954, 9970, 9971, 9986, 10009, 10048, 10089, 10117, 10181, 10197, 10213, 10233, 10254, 10270, 10287, 10302, 10318, 10334, 10352, 10369, 10385, 10409, 10456, 10473, 10499, 10518, 10533, 10548, 10563
- \plttoctmarg 5391, 5442
- pmk (script) 233, 243, 244, 246, 247
- polish (language option) 39, 563
- polish.dtx (file) 563
- polish.mld (file) 242, 244, 563
- polish2 (language option) 39, 44, 563
- polish2.mld (file) .. 207, 242, 244, 563, 649
- pologne.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 563
- polski (language option) 39, 233, 564
- polski.dtx (file) 564
- polski.mld (file) 242, 244, 564, 660
- POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 589, 674, ⇨[267, 317]
- POPINEAU, Fabrice 674, ⇨[364]
- POPPELIER, Nico 674, ⇨[67]
- PORRAT, Rama 527, 674
- portugal.pdf (graphic file) ... 243–245, 565
- portuges (language option) 39, 565
- portuges.dtx (file) 481, 565
- portuges.mld (file) . 242, 244, 565, 650, 651
- portugues.mld (file) 650–652
- portuguese (language option) 39, 565
- portuguese.mld (file) ... 242, 244, 565, 652
- POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 674
- POURNADER, Roozbeh . 503, 504, 674, ⇨[140]
- PREUSSE, Hilmar 674, ⇨[318]
- \printglossary (command) 50
- \printindex (command) 51
- \printindex 484, 484, 718
- \printnomenclature (command) 51
- \printnomenclature 2052
- proc (class) 26, 212, 234, 235, ⇨[235]
- \ProcessOptions 7329
- \ProcessOptions* 7329
- \protect (command) 58, 62, 643
- \protect 1041, 1189, 3333, 3334, 4078, 4079, 4680, 4689, 4697, 5845, 5846, 5851, 5863, 5864, 5869, 5879, 5880, 5885, 5897, 5898, 5903, 5913, 5914, 5919, 6097, 7812, 7814, 7823, 7825, 7834, 7836, 7862, 7864, 7869, 7871, 7876, 7878, 7943, 7946, 9462, 9463, 9466, 9467, 9470, 9471
- \providecommand .. 1749, 1930, 1939, 5855, 5889, 6209, 7306, 7410
- \ProvidesFile (command) 669
- \ProvidesFile 3, 46, 105, 162, 188, 208, 261, 296, 391, 557, 756, 802, 996, 1197, 1394, 1446, 1503, 1523, 1551, 1590, 1639, 1687, 1728, 1900, 1927, 1958, 2031, 2062, 2113, 2164, 2218, 2265, 2308, 2353, 2389, 7431, 7958, 7962, 7966, 7982, 7986, 8003, 8007, 8024, 8042, 8060, 8064, 8081, 8085, 8089, 8093, 8110, 8127, 8144, 8162, 8166, 8182, 8197, 8212, 8227, 8243, 8247, 8262, 8266,

- 8298, 8324, 8340, 8356, 8360, 8364, 8369, 8374, 8389, 8398, 8409, 8426, 8443, 8460, 8477, 8492, 8508, 8531, 8557, 8573, 8577, 8592, 8614, 8619, 8641, 8648, 8655, 8671, 8688, 8703, 8707, 8724, 8747, 8780, 8784, 8788, 8792, 8822, 8837, 8854, 8869, 8886, 8925, 8964, 9002, 9019, 9029, 9040, 9050, 9061, 9069, 9080, 9091, 9099, 9114, 9142, 9146, 9165, 9169, 9185, 9189, 9193, 9209, 9225, 9242, 9259, 9268, 9280, 9292, 9304, 9317, 9326, 9344, 9348, 9365, 9382, 9399, 9415, 9432, 9449, 9453, 9457, 9474, 9491, 9507, 9513, 9530, 9547, 9564, 9568, 9582, 9597, 9612, 9627, 9632, 9647, 9662, 9677, 9681, 9685, 9701, 9739, 9749, 9753, 9757, 9761, 9777, 9792, 9810, 9826, 9843, 9858, 9874, 9892, 9910, 9914, 9931, 9948, 9965, 9982, 9997, 10036, 10075, 10112, 10128, 10136, 10145, 10151, 10159, 10167, 10175, 10192, 10208, 10224, 10248, 10265, 10281, 10298, 10313, 10329, 10345, 10364, 10380, 10396, 10403, 10420, 10424, 10428, 10432, 10436, 10442, 10466, 10484, 10488, 10495, 10510, 10514, 10529, 10544, 10559
- \ProvidesPackage (command) 152
- \ProvidesPackage **2487, 7435, 7883, 7896**
- ps.gz (extension) 603
- \ps@chapterverso 1731, 1740
- \ps@empty 1731, 1740
- \psect **4064, 7643**
- ptc (counter) 87, 278, 279, 290, 321, 334, 337, 341, 343
- \PTC@ 4252, 4254
- \PTC@contentsline (command) 337
- \PTC@contentsline **4162, 4254**
- \PTC@explist **4160, 4238**
- \PTC@line **4250, 4252**
- \PTC@list **4157, 4160, 4238, 4254**
- \PTC@loop **4157, 4239**
- \PTC@next (command) 339
- \PTC@next **4082, 4157, 4238**
- \ptc@pgno 2948, 2949, **3894**
- \PTC@read **4239, 4250, 4254**
- \ptc@rule (command) 322
- \ptc@rule **3772, 3880, 3910, 4059, 5056**
- \ptc@setform (command) 327, 380
- \ptc@setform **3894, 5410**
- \ptc@spart **4069**
- \PTC@test (command) 340
- \PTC@test **4252, 4254**
- \PTC@toc **4160, 4239, 4254**
- \ptc@verse (command) 324
- ptc@verse (environment) 324, 327, 330, 333, 380, 381, 672
- \ptc@verse **3837**
- \ptcCfont (command) 33, 36, 38, 73, 74, 82, 322
- \ptcCfont **3790, 7654**
- \ptcdotsep **5400, 5413**
- \ptcfont (command) 33, 36–38, 42, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcfont **1556, 3777, 3790, 3877, 7654**
- \ptcindent (command) 33, 82, 324
- \ptcindent **3775, 3837, 3889, 3962, 4037, 7443**
- \ptcname **4162, 4179**
- \ptcoffset (command) 33, 82, 324
- \ptcoffset **2518, 3892, 7529**
- \ptcpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
- \ptcpagenumbers **2917, 2948, 2963, 7724**
- \ptcPfont (command) 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcPfont **1556, 3777, 3790, 7654**
- \ptcpnumwidth **5382, 5411**
- \ptcrule (command) 46, 85
- \ptcrule **5056, 7706**
- \ptcSfont (command) 33, 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcSfont **3777, 3790, 7654**
- \ptcSPfont (command) 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcSPfont **1556, 3777, 3790, 7654**
- \ptcSSfont (command) 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcSSfont **1556, 3777, 3790, 7654**
- \ptcSSSfont (command) 37, 38, 73, 74, 82
- \ptcSSSfont **1556, 3777, 3790, 7654**
- \ptctitle (command) 37, 38, 82, 466, 581
- \ptctitle **3864, 3868, 3880, 6209, 7306, 7957, 7969, 7990, 8011, 8029, 8046, 8068, 8097, 8114, 8131, 8149, 8169, 8184, 8199, 8214, 8230, 8249, 8270, 8302, 8327, 8343, 8376, 8413, 8430, 8447, 8464, 8479, 8495, 8512, 8544, 8560, 8579, 8595, 8622, 8658, 8675, 8690, 8711, 8728, 8761, 8798, 8800, 8824, 8841, 8856, 8873, 8891, 8930, 8968, 9006, 9101, 9117, 9152, 9172, 9196, 9212, 9229, 9246, 9331, 9352, 9369, 9386, 9402, 9419, 9436, 9461, 9478, 9494, 9517, 9534, 9551, 9569, 9584, 9599, 9614, 9634, 9649, 9664, 9688, 9709, 9711, 9764, 9779, 9797, 9813, 9834, 9849, 9861, 9879, 9897, 9918, 9935, 9952, 9969, 9984, 10002, 10041, 10080, 10083, 10115, 10179, 10195, 10211, 10229, 10252, 10268, 10285, 10300, 10316, 10332,**

10350, 10367, 10383, 10407, 10453,
10471, 10497, 10516, 10531, 10546,
10561
`\ptctocrmarg` **5391**, 5412
`\ptifont` (command) . 37, 38, 42, 66, 82, 648
`\ptifont` **3777, 3790, 3812, 3819, 3826, 3880,**
3948, 4027, 7654

Q

`\quad` (command) 35
`\quad` 1235, 2437, 2447, 2452, 2462
`quotchap` (package) . 53, 75, 88, 184, 234, 254,
273, 427, 662, \hookrightarrow [361]
`quote` (environment) 58, 656
`\qva` **8459, 9145**

R

`\R` **8041**
`\r@mti` . **3097, 3135, 3205, 3273, 3414, 3433,**
3452
`\r@pti` . **3804, 3819, 3868, 3936, 4011, 4097,**
4116, 4135
`\r@sti` . **4419, 4458, 4526, 4593, 4717, 4736,**
4755
RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. 495, 528, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [319, 374]
`\raggedbottom` 817, 1010
`\raggedcolumns` 312, **2075, 2120**
`\raggedright` (command) 641
`\raggedright` 1242, **1750**, 2196, 3145, 3215,
3283, 3816, **3877, 3945, 4020, 4468,**
4535, 4602
RAHTZ, Sebastian . . 88, 674, \hookrightarrow [110, 162, 163,
175, 294–296, 320–324]
RAICHLE, Bernd . 514, 559, 560, 567, 568, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [83, 84, 325, 327]
RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro . 481, 565, 674, \hookrightarrow [85]
`rapport.doc` (file) 587
RASCOE, Paul 674, \hookrightarrow [326]
`ravivarma` (malayalam package) 550
`\re` **8459, 9145**
`\read` . . 2746, 2827, **3573, 3638, 3699**, 4251,
4311, 4371, 4855, 4915, 4975
`README` (file) 242–244
`\ref` . . . 1836, 2209, 2472–2476, 2479, 2482
`\refstepcounter` **4665**, 7923
REINO, Keranen 505, 507, 674, \hookrightarrow [73]
`\relax` (command) 305, 334, 439, 448, 452, 641

`\removelastskip` 311
`\renewcommand` (command) 29, 31,
33, 36–38, 40, 44, 65, 70, 74, 76, 77,
265, 266, 448, 452
`\renewcommand` **160**, 175, 176, 180,
181, 197, 302, 811, 813, 1005–1007,
1219, 1287, 1292, 1306, 1315, 1316,
1756, **1932, 1939**, 2168, 7901
`\renewcommand*` (command) 71
`report` (class) . 26, 37, 38, 46, 47, 49, 60, 61, 71,
75, 76, 110, 126, 197, 198, 212, 214,
217, 220, 226, 227, 234, 236, 239,
280, 281, 288, 322, 665, \hookrightarrow [236]
`\RequirePackage` . . **2487**, 2713, **7330, 7336**,
7438, 7898
`\reset@font` (command) 60, 284, 641
`\reset@font` . **2870**, 3147, 3154, 3158, 3217,
3224, 3228, 3285, 3292, 3296, 3723,
3728, 3741, 3743, 3877, 3882, 3886,
3947, 3954, 3958, 4022, 4029, 4033,
4470, 4478, 4482, 4537, 4544, 4549,
4604, 4611, 4616
`revathi` (malayalam package) 550
REZUŞ, Adrian 567, 568, 674, \hookrightarrow [327]
`\rightmargin` . 3113, 3115, 3162, 3232, 3300,
3841, 3845, 3890, 3963, 4038, 4436,
4438, 4486, 4553, 4620
`\rightskip` 2885, 3346, 3358
`\rmfamily` (command) 231
`\rmfamily` 811, 1532, 1570, 1941,
1942, 2178–2182, 2184–2187, 3089,
3090, 3095, 3096, 3778, 3779, 3788,
3791–3793, 3802, 4409, 4410, 4418
`rmk` (script) 234, 243, 244, 246, 247
ROBBERS, Yuri 674, \hookrightarrow [328]
ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . 62, 223, 250, 314, 674,
 \hookrightarrow [372]
ROBERTSON, Will 674, \hookrightarrow [329]
ROEGEL, Denis B. . 249, 642, 643, 674, \hookrightarrow [162]
ROLLAND, Christian . . . 482, 674, \hookrightarrow [86, 330]
`\Roman` **8507, 8530, 8723, 8746**
`romanian` (language option) 39, 566
`romanian.dtx` (file) 566–568
`romanian.mld` (file) 242, 244, 566
`romanian.pdf` (graphic file) . . 243–245, 567
`romanian2` (language option) 39, 567
`romanian2.mld` (file) . 242, 244, 567, 658, 665
`romanian3` (language option) 39, 568
`romanian3.mld` (file) . 242, 244, 568, 658, 665
`RomanianTeX` (package) . . 567, 568, \hookrightarrow [327]
`romannum` (package) 54, 76, 88, 184, 235, 254,
273, 427, 662, \hookrightarrow [398]
`rotating` (package) 235, \hookrightarrow [322]

rotfloat (package) . . . 54, 88, 163, 217, 235, 256,
268, 276, 431, 671, \hookrightarrow [343]
ROULUND, Rasmus Pank 674, \hookrightarrow [328]
ROWLEY, Chris A. 674,
 \hookrightarrow [62, 207, 277–281, 331, 360]
`\rs` **8459, 9145**
`\ru` 2395, 2419
rubber (tool) 61, 235, 653, \hookrightarrow [30]
RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti 498, 674, \hookrightarrow [87]
`\rule` (command) 646
`\rule` 1259, 1268,
2831, 2835, 2839, 3188, 3773, 4407,
5062–5064, 5071–5073, 5080–5082
russian (language option) 39, 570–573
russian-cca (language option) 39, 573
russian-cca.mld (file) 242, 244, 573, 660
russian-cca.mlo (file) 242, 244, 573
russian-cca1 (language option) 39, 574
russian-cca1.mld (file) 242, 244, 574, 660
russian-cca1.mlo (file) 242, 244, 574
russian-lh (language option) 39, 574
russian-lh.mld (file) 242, 244, 574, 660
russian-lh.mlo (file) 242, 244, 574
russian-lhcyralt (language option) 39, 575
russian-lhcyralt.mld (file) 242, 244, 575,
660
russian-lhcyralt.mlo (file) 242, 244, 575
russian-lhcyrkoi (language option) 39, 575
russian-lhcyrkoi.mld (file) 242, 244, 575,
660
russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo (file) 242, 244, 575
russian-lhcyrwin (language option) 39, 576
russian-lhcyrwin.mld (file) 242, 244, 576,
660
russian-lhcyrwin.mlo (file) 242, 244, 576
russian.def (file) 573
russian.mld (file) 242, 244, 570
russian.png (graphic file) 243–245, 569
russian.sty (file) 573, 574
russian2m (language option) 39, 44, 570
russian2m.ldf (file) 570
russian2m.mld (file) 207, 242, 244, 570, 649
russian2o (language option) 39, 44, 571
russian2o.mld (file) 207, 242, 244, 571, 649
russianb (language option) 39, 572
russianb.dtx (file) 484, 557, 572
russianb.mld (file) 242, 244, 572, 659
russianc (language option) 39, 573
russianc.mld (file) 242, 244, 573
russianlan.png (graphic file) 243–245, 569
RYNNING, Jan Michael 587, 642, 674
RYU, Young 674, \hookrightarrow [332]

S

SAAR, Enn 499, 674, \hookrightarrow [88]
sabari (malayalam package) 550
same.png (graphic file) 243–245, 577
`\samepage` (command) 641
samepage (environment) 297, 298, 300, 301,
303, 304, 326, 328, 329, 331–333,
348, 350, 351, 353–355, 641
samin (language option) 39, 576
samin.dtx (file) 576
samin.mld (file) 242, 244, 576, 645
SAMSOEN, David 674
SÁNCHEZ, Julio 477, 581, 674, \hookrightarrow [55]
SANGEUX, Morgan 674
sarada (malayalam package) 550
SAUDRAIS, Eddie 674, \hookrightarrow [333, 334]
`\scan@allowedtrue` 398, 560
SCHALÜCK, Elmar 563, 674, \hookrightarrow [89]
SCHANDL, Bernd 674, \hookrightarrow [374]
`\schapter` **4644**
SCHLEGL, Elisabeth 674, \hookrightarrow [297, 298]
SCHLEMMER, Tobias 580, 674, \hookrightarrow [65]
SCHMIDT, Walter 559, 560, 674, \hookrightarrow [84, 335, 336]
SCHMITZ, Thomas A. 674, \hookrightarrow [337]
SCHNEIDER, Uwe 674
SCHÖPF, Rainer 674, \hookrightarrow [62, 237]
SCHRÖDER, Martin 93, 674, \hookrightarrow [175, 338]
SCHWARTZ, Ulrich 674, \hookrightarrow [318]
scottish (language option) 39, 578
scottish.dtx (file) 578
scottish.mld (file) 242, 244, 577
scr.tex (old example document) 664, 666
scrartcl (class) 42, 50, 53, 75, 88, 161, 220, 235,
236, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
scrbook (class) 42, 50, 53,
75, 88, 122, 127, 161, 220, 226, 227,
235, 236, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
scrbook.cls (file) 122
Scripts
 cmk 212, 217, 224, 243, 244, 246, 254, 669
 emk 214, 219, 234, 243, 244, 246, 247, 654
 fmk 217, 219, 234, 243, 244, 246, 247, 654
 imk 214, 217, 219, 234, 243, 244, 246, 247,
 654, 663
 pmk 233, 243, 244, 246, 247
 rmk 234, 243, 244, 246, 247
 tmk 237, 243, 244, 246, 247, 255, 668
 xmk 240, 243, 244, 246, 247, 664
`\scriptsize` (command) 231
scrlettr (class) 220, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
scrlettr2 (class) 220, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]

- screpr (class) 42, 50, 53, 75, 88, 142, 161, 220,
 227, 235, 236, \hookrightarrow [223, 288, 328]
 \scshape (command) 231
 \scshape . 1932, 1933, 1937, 1938, 1941–1943
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth 674, \hookrightarrow [339]
 secnumdepth (depth counter) 213, 214
 second.tex (old example document) 664, 667
 \sectbegin (command) 357
 \sectbegin . . . 4694, 4858, 4918, 4978, 7620
 \sectend (command) 64, 357
 \sectend . . . 4694, 4858, 4918, 4978, 7620
 \sectfont (command) 122
 \sectfont 1508
 \section (command) 26, 27, 30–32,
 51, 53, 67, 84, 153, 158, 164, 165,
 167, 169, 174, 208, 209, 214, 233–
 235, 280, 283, 305, 307, 345, 347,
 350, 353, 356, 360, 363, 365, 402,
 414, 416, 438, 639
 section (counter) 269
 section (placeins package) . . 30–32, 53, 172,
 435
 \section . . 833, 929, 1443, 1536, 1587, 1610,
 1759, 1909, 1946, 2039, 2053, 2077,
 2134, 2231, 2286, 2319, 2364, 2792,
 2808, 3337, 3512, 4192, 4655, 4782,
 4878, 4938, 6638, 6676, 7397
 \section* (command) 34, 35, 72, 87, 251, 280,
 292, 645, 646
 \section* 601, 871, 1040, 1104, 2333
 \section@mtcck . . . 5201, 5252, 5262, 5270
 \sectionfont 1750
 \sectlof (command)
 31, 37, 41, 53, 84, 87, 179, 181, 219,
 347, 350, 417, 642, 643
 \sectlof 576, 631, 650, 703,
 727, 741, 833, 871, 929, 4509, 6731,
 6810, 6898, 6997, 7425, 7636
 \sectlof@ (command) 350
 \sectlof@ 3388, 4509, 4510
 \sectlof@mtcck 5194, 5258
 sectlofdepth (depth counter) . . 34, 214, 235,
 345, 352
 \sectlot (command) . . 31, 37, 41, 53, 84, 87,
 179, 181, 219, 347, 353, 417, 642
 \sectlot 576, 631, 650,
 703, 727, 741, 871, 929, 1587, 1610,
 4576, 6731, 6819, 6907, 7008, 7425,
 7636
 \sectlot@ (command) 353
 \sectlot@ 3388, 4576, 4577
 \sectlot@mtcck 5197, 5266
 sectlotdepth (depth counter) 34, 66, 214, 235,
 345, 355
 sectsty (package) 53, 70, 88, 129, 173, 236, 252,
 267, 272, 425, 651, 661, \hookrightarrow [266]
 \secttoc (command) 30, 31, 37, 38, 41, 84, 87,
 179, 181, 219, 346, 347, 642
 \secttoc . . 576, 631, 650, 703, 727, 741, 833,
 873, 900, 912, 913, 929, 2364, 4442,
 6801, 6889, 6986, 7425, 7636
 \secttoc@ (command) 347, 348
 \secttoc@ 3388, 4442, 4443
 \secttoc@mtcck 5191, 5248
 secttocdepth (depth counter) 31, 34, 84, 214,
 236, 346, 349
 serbial.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 578
 serbian (language option) 39, 578
 serbian.dtx (file) 578
 serbian.mld (file) 242, 244, 578, 658
 serbianc (language option) 39, 579
 serbianc.mld (file) 44, 242, 244, 579, 648, 658
 \setcounter (command) . . 29, 31, 33, 59, 63,
 82–84, 393
 \setcounter 8, 570, 807, 808, 931, 986, 1143,
 1277, 1750, 2172, 2216, 2231, 2421,
 3021–3023, 3032, 3066, 3401, 3402,
 3406, 3407, 3411, 3412, 3748, 3754,
 4082, 4086, 4090, 4390, 4402, 4406,
 4704, 4705, 4708, 4709, 4712, 4713,
 5770, 5814, 5838, 5852, 5886, 6100
 \setlength (command) 29, 31, 33, 76
 \setlength 215, 305, 809,
 879, 890, 922, 944, 967, 1004, 1081,
 1087, 1098, 1134, 1155, 1174, 1203,
 1215, 1270, 1271, 1507, 1961, 2120,
 2131, 2355, 2359, 2496
 \setvruer 169
 \sf 813, 1007
 \sffamily (command) 231
 \sffamily 1235, 1237, 1244, 1755
 sfheaders (package) . . 54, 76, 88, 185, 236, 254,
 274, 427, 662, \hookrightarrow [256]
 \sfloffset 2518
 \sh 8323
 SHELL, Michael 674, \hookrightarrow [340]
 SHIN, Jungshik 674
 \SHORTEXT (command) 641
 shorttext (option) . . 53, 59, 80, 168, 208, 236,
 250, 402, 644
 shorttoc (package) 21, 236, 640, \hookrightarrow [133]
 \shorttoc (command) 21
 shortverb (package) \hookrightarrow [274]
 SHOUKAT, Ali 675
 SHOUYI[†], Bai 675, \hookrightarrow [341]
 SHVAIKA, Andrij M. 593, 675, \hookrightarrow [90]
 sidewaysfigure (environment) 235

- sidewaysstable (environment) 235
 \sigma 2048, 2049
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop 589, 675, \hookrightarrow [267]
 SINGH, Sindhu 675, \hookrightarrow [342]
 SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna 675, \hookrightarrow [381]
 \sixt@@n 2827
 SJIS.cap (file) 536
 SJIS.cpx (file) 537
 SL_T_EX (package) 44, 236, 587, \hookrightarrow [265]
 \SLF@ 4916, 4918
 \SLF@contentsline (command) 363
 \SLF@contentsline 4878, 4918
 \SLF@explist 4876, 4902
 \SLF@line 4914
 \SLF@list 4873, 4876, 4902, 4918
 \SLF@lof 4876, 4903, 4918
 \SLF@loop 4873, 4903
 \SLF@next (command) 363
 \SLF@next 4706, 4873, 4902
 \slf@pgno 2952, 2953, 4561
 \SLF@read 4903, 4914, 4918
 \slf@rule 3081, 4540, 4573, 5065
 \slf@setform (command) 352, 381
 \slf@setform 4561, 5435
 \SLF@test (command) 364
 \SLF@test 4914, 4918
 \slfdotsep 5400, 5438
 \slffont (command) 37, 40, 84
 \slffont 4409, 4535, 7677
 \slflotrmarg 5391
 \slfname 4878, 4882
 \slfoffset (command) 84
 \slfoffset 2527, 4556, 7529
 \slfpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \slfpagenumbers . . 2931, 2952, 2963, 7724
 \slfnumwidth 5382, 5436
 \slfrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \slfrule 5065, 7706
 \slfSfont (command) 37, 40, 84, 654
 \slfSfont 4409, 7677
 \slftitle (command) 37, 40, 84, 466
 \slftitle 4524, 4526, 4540, 6209, 7306, 7957, 7978, 7999, 8020, 8038, 8055, 8077, 8106, 8123, 8140, 8158, 8178, 8193, 8208, 8223, 8239, 8258, 8290, 8318, 8336, 8352, 8385, 8422, 8439, 8456, 8473, 8488, 8504, 8527, 8553, 8569, 8588, 8608, 8635, 8667, 8684, 8699, 8720, 8743, 8776, 8818, 8833, 8850, 8865, 8882, 8916, 8920, 8955, 8993, 9015, 9110, 9136, 9161, 9181, 9205, 9221, 9238, 9255, 9340, 9341, 9361, 9378, 9395, 9411, 9428, 9445, 9470, 9487, 9503, 9526, 9543, 9560, 9578, 9593, 9608, 9623, 9643, 9658, 9673, 9697, 9733, 9773, 9788, 9806, 9822, 9839, 9854, 9870, 9888, 9906, 9927, 9944, 9961, 9993, 10027, 10066, 10104, 10124, 10188, 10204, 10220, 10243, 10261, 10277, 10294, 10309, 10325, 10341, 10359, 10376, 10392, 10416, 10460, 10480, 10506, 10525, 10540, 10555, 10570
 \slftocrmarg 5396, 5437
 slides (class) 212, \hookrightarrow [271]
 SLOBODAN, Jankovic 578, 675, \hookrightarrow [81]
 \sloppy 833, 1033
 slovak (language option) 39, 580
 slovak.dtx (file) 580
 slovak.mld (file) 242, 244, 580
 slovakia.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 580
 slovene (language option) 39, 580
 slovene.dtx (file) 580
 slovene.mld (file) 242, 244, 580
 slovenie.pdf (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 581
 \slshape (command) 231
 \slshape 2179, 2181, 2184, 2186, 3096
 \SLT@ 4976, 4978
 \SLT@contentsline (command) 365
 \SLT@contentsline 4938, 4978
 \SLT@explist 4936, 4962
 \SLT@line 4974
 \SLT@list 4933, 4936, 4962, 4978
 \SLT@loop 4933, 4963
 \SLT@lot 4936, 4963, 4978
 \SLT@next (command) 365
 \SLT@next 4713, 4933, 4962
 \slt@pgno 2958, 2959, 4628
 \SLT@read 4963, 4974, 4978
 \slt@rule 3081, 4609, 4641, 5074
 \slt@setform (command) 355, 382
 \slt@setform 4628, 5450
 \SLT@test (command) 366
 \SLT@test 4974, 4978
 \sltdotsep 5400
 \sltfont (command) 37, 40, 84
 \sltfont 4409, 4602, 7677
 \sltlotrmarg 5391
 \sltname (command) 644
 \sltname 4938, 4942
 \sltoffset (command) 84
 \sltoffset 2518, 4623, 7529
 \sltpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
 \sltpagenumbers . . 2937, 2958, 2963, 7724
 \sltpnumwidth 5382
 \sltrule (command) 46, 85, 649
 \sltrule 5074, 7706

- \sltfont (command) 37, 40, 84, 654
- \sltfont **4409, 7677**
- \sltttitle (command) 37, 40, 66, 84, 466
- \sltttitle 4591,
4593, 4607, 6209, 7306, 7957, 7979,
8000, 8021, 8039, 8056, 8078, 8107,
8124, 8141, 8159, 8179, 8194, 8209,
8224, 8240, 8259, 8293, 8320, 8337,
8353, 8386, 8423, 8440, 8457, 8474,
8489, 8505, 8528, 8554, 8570, 8589,
8610, 8637, 8668, 8685, 8700, 8721,
8744, 8777, 8819, 8834, 8851, 8866,
8883, 8959, 8997, 9016, 9111, 9138,
9162, 9182, 9206, 9222, 9239, 9256,
9362, 9379, 9396, 9412, 9429, 9446,
9471, 9488, 9504, 9527, 9544, 9561,
9579, 9594, 9609, 9624, 9644, 9659,
9674, 9698, 9735, 9774, 9789, 9807,
9823, 9840, 9855, 9871, 9889, 9907,
9928, 9945, 9962, 9978, 9979, 9994,
10031, 10070, 10107, 10125, 10189,
10205, 10221, 10245, 10262, 10278,
10295, 10310, 10326, 10342, 10360,
10377, 10393, 10417, 10462, 10481,
10507, 10526, 10541, 10556, 10571
- \slttocmarg 5399
- \small (command) 231
- SMITH, John 495, 528, 675, ⇨[306]
- SOCHA, Robin S. 675
- SOFRONIOU, Nick 675, ⇨[348]
- SOMMERFELDT, Axel 54, 72, 88, 209, 210, 217,
675, ⇨[343–346]
- SONG, Lianyi 675, ⇨[339]
- sorabe-1.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 546
- sorabe-2.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 546
- sorbian.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 547
- sort&compress (natbib package) 670
- SOULET, Yves 675, ⇨[279]
- \space (command) 35
- spain.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 582
- spanish (language option) 39, 489, 581
- spanish.dtx (file) 511, 581, 584, 585
- spanish.mld (file) 242, 244, 489, 581, 659
- spanish2 (language option) 39, 581, 584
- spanish2.mld (file) 242, 244, 584, 650
- spanish3 (language option) 39, 44, 581, 584
- spanish3.mld (file) 207, 242, 244, 584, 653
- spanish4 (language option) 39, 581, 585
- spanish4.mld (file) 242, 244, 585, 658
- \special (command) 219
- splitbib (package) 60, 236, ⇨[263]
- \sqrt 2056
- sruthy (malayalam package) 550
- \star 1287, 1292
- \starchapter (command) 312
- \starchapter **3399, 3530, 4219**
- \starparagraph **3544, 4219, 4829**
- \starpart 4177
- \starsection (command) 356
- \starsection **3544, 4219, 4655, 4814**
- \starsubparagraph **3544, 4219, 4829**
- \starsubsection **3544, 4219, 4829**
- \starsubsubsection **3544, 4219, 4829**
- stc (counter) 87, 278, 280, 281, 290, 346, 360,
363, 365, 646
- \STC@ 4856, 4858
- \STC@contentsline (command) 360
- \STC@contentsline **4782, 4858**
- \STC@explist **4780, 4842**
- \STC@line **4854, 4856**
- \STC@list **4777, 4780, 4842, 4858**
- \STC@loop **4777, 4843**
- \STC@next (command) 361
- \STC@next **4702, 4777, 4842**
- \stc@pgno 2946, 2947, **4491**
- \STC@read **4843, 4854, 4858**
- \stc@rule (command) 346
- \stc@rule **4397, 4473, 4505, 4572, 4607, 4640,**
5056
- \stc@sect **4694**
- \stc@setform (command) 349, 381
- \stc@setform **4491, 5420**
- \STC@test (command) 362
- \STC@test **4856, 4858**
- \STC@toc **4780, 4843, 4858**
- stc@verse (environment) 347, 349, 352, 355,
381, 382, 650
- \stc@verse 4430
- \stcdotsep **5400, 5423**
- \stcfont (command) 31, 37, 38, 40, 84
- \stcfont **796, 4409, 4468, 7677**
- \stcindent (command) 31, 84, 346
- \stcindent **796, 2359, 4397, 4436, 4485,**
4552, 4619, 7439
- \stclotrmarg **5391**
- \stcname **4782, 4786, 4814**
- \stcoffset (command) 31, 84, 347
- \stcoffset 2526, **4489, 7529**
- \stcpagenumbers (command) 46, 85
- \stcpagenumbers **2907, 2946, 2963, 7724**
- \stcPfont (command) 38, 40, 84
- \stcPfont 815, **4409, 7677**
- \stcpnumwidth **5382, 5421**
- \stcrule (command) 46, 85
- \stcrule **5056, 7706**
- \stcSPfont (command) 38, 40
- \stcSPfont 815, **4409, 7677**

- `\stcSSfont` (command) 31, 38, 40, 84
- `\stcSSfont` **796, 4409, 7677**
- `\stcSSfont` (command) 38, 40, 84
- `\stcSSfont` 815, **4409, 7677**
- `\stctitle` (command) 37, 40, 84, 466
- `\stctitle` **4458, 4473, 6209, 7306, 7957**, 7977, 7998, 8019, 8037, 8054, 8076, 8105, 8122, 8139, 8157, 8177, 8192, 8207, 8222, 8238, 8257, 8288, 8316, 8335, 8351, 8384, 8421, 8438, 8455, 8472, 8487, 8503, 8526, 8552, 8568, 8587, 8607, 8634, 8666, 8683, 8698, 8719, 8742, 8775, 8814, 8816, 8832, 8849, 8864, 8881, 8913, 8952, 8990, 9014, 9109, 9134, 9160, 9180, 9204, 9220, 9237, 9254, 9339, 9360, 9377, 9394, 9410, 9427, 9444, 9469, 9486, 9502, 9525, 9542, 9559, 9577, 9592, 9607, 9622, 9642, 9657, 9672, 9696, 9729, 9731, 9772, 9787, 9805, 9821, 9838, 9853, 9869, 9887, 9905, 9926, 9943, 9960, 9977, 9992, 10024, 10063, 10102, 10123, 10187, 10203, 10219, 10241, 10260, 10276, 10293, 10308, 10324, 10340, 10358, 10375, 10391, 10415, 10459, 10479, 10505, 10524, 10539, 10554, 10569
- `\stctocrmarg` 5393, 5422
- `stdclsdv` (package) 235, 236, \hookrightarrow [383]
- STEINER, Arjen 675
- `\stepcounter` (command) 35, 279–281
- `\stepcounter` **2775, 2808, 2819, 3040**, 3484, 3498, **3530**, 3604, 3665, **4069**, 4164, 4178, 4276, 4336, 4785, **4814**, 4881, 4941
- `\stifont` (command) 37, 40, 84
- `\stifont` **4409, 4473, 4540, 4607, 7677**
- STORY, D. P. 675, \hookrightarrow [347]
- STREIT, Éric 675, \hookrightarrow [27]
- STUBNER, Ralf 675
- subappendices (environment) 207
- subf.tex (old example document) . . 664, 667
- subfig (package) 34, 88, 147, 209, 228, 236, 237, 390, \hookrightarrow [118]
- `\subfigbottomskip` **2172**, 2200
- `\subfigcapskip` 2480
- `\subfigtopskip` **2172**, 2200
- subfigure (package) . . . 34, 88, 140, 227, 237, \hookrightarrow [116]
- `\subfigure` . . . 2198, 2201, 2203, 2433, 2438, 2443, 2448, 2453, 2458, 2463, **3617, 4289, 4894**
- `\subfigure@mtcck` . . 5208, 5213, 5223, 5230, 5246, 5254, 5272
- `\subparagraph` (command) 214, 235
- `\subparagraph` . . . 888, 905, 920, 951, 1162, **3512, 4192, 4798**
- `\subparagraph@mtcck` 5205
- SUBRAMANIAM, K. K. 538, 675, \hookrightarrow [402]
- `\subref` 2473–2476
- `\subsection` (command) . . 214, 235, 356, 639
- `\subsection` 347, 582, 587, 632, 637, 651, 656, 704, 709, 728, 733, 742, 747, 839–842, 845–870, 877, 896, 902, 906, 917, 928, 939, 952, 963–965, 973, 980–983, 1069, 1093, 1110, 1130, 1152, 1358, 1363, 1375, 1380, 1415, **1536**, 1580, 1581, 1583, 1584, **1759, 2364, 3512, 4192, 4798**
- `\subsection*` **1759**
- `\subsection@mtcck` 5202
- `\subsubsection` (command) 214, 235
- `\subsubsection` 642, 643, 885, 903, 918, 941, 1095, 1113, 1131, 1153, **1759, 2364, 3512, 4192, 4798**
- `\subsubsection@mtcck` 5203
- `\subtable` **3678, 4349, 4954**
- `\subtable@mtcck` . . 5209, 5215, 5219, 5232, 5239, 5256, 5264
- suede-a.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 588
- suede-f.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 588
- Suffixes *see* Extensions
- SUTOR, Robert S. 675, \hookrightarrow [163]
- `\sv@chapter` **3327**
- `\SV@endmtc@verse` 310, 314
- `\sv@minilof@` **3368**
- `\sv@minilot@` **3368**
- `\sv@minitoc@` **3368**
- `\SV@mtc@verse` 309, 311
- `\sv@part` **4069**
- `\sv@partlof@` **3378**
- `\sv@partlot@` **3378**
- `\sv@parttoc@` **3378**
- `\sv@sect` 4648, 4654
- `\sv@sectlof@` **3388**
- `\sv@sectlot@` **3388**
- `\sv@secttoc@` **3388**
- `\sv@spart` **4069**
- svenska.png (graphic file) 243–245, 588
- swahili (language option) 39, 585
- swahili.mld (file) . . . 242, 244, 257, 585, 672
- swahili.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 586
- swahili.tex (file) 585
- sweden.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 588
- swedish (language option) 39, 587
- swedish.dtx (file) 587

swedish.mld (file) 242, 244, 587
 swedish2 (language option) 39, 587
 swedish2.mld (file) 242, 244, 587, 661
 SWOYER, Chris 675
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos 515, 675,
 ↪[29, 91, 348]

T

TABACCO, Raffaella 539, 540, 675
 tabbing (environment) 58
 \table (command) 318
 table (environment) 209, 236, 238
 \table 3678, 4349, 4954
 \table@mtc 5207, 5214, 5218, 5231, 5238,
 5255, 5263
 \tableofcontents (command)
 22, 29, 31, 33, 50, 53, 59, 63, 65, 78,
 81–84, 180, 181, 251, 283, 290, 416,
 422, 646, 650
 \tableofcontents 11, 195, 217,
 319, 408, 570, 754, 829, 1027, 1392,
 1443, 1511, 1521, 1556, 1692, 1759,
 1910, 1947, 1956, 2037, 2077, 2188,
 2225, 2284, 2310, 2802, 6700, 6918,
 6953, 6988
 \tableofcontents* (command) 132
 \tableofcontents* 1909, 1946
 tabular (environment) 58, 297, 300, 303, 327,
 329, 332, 349, 351, 354
 TALBOT, Nicola L. C. 88, 675, ↪[147, 349–356]
 TAUPIN[†], Daniel 53, 73, 88, 675, ↪[357]
 TAYLOR, Philip 675, ↪[147]
 tbi.tex (old example document) . . . 664, 667
 \tcArabTok 8023
 TDS . . . 224, 237, 244, 246, 247, 255, 668, 669
 \testtemp 2394, 2396–2399, 2402
 \textbf (command) 231
 textcase (package) ↪[108]
 \textheight 2355
 \textit (command) 231
 \textit 1262
 \textmd (command) 231
 \textrm (command) 231
 \textsc (command) 231
 \textsc431, 597, 667, 1758, 1771, 1773, 1828,
 1839, 1963
 \textsf (command) 231
 \textsf 428, 525, 533, 541
 \textsl (command) 231
 \textsl 431, 597, 667
 \textsuperscript 1749

\texttt (command) 231
 \texttt 451, 614, 686
 \textup (command) 231
 \textwidth (command) 665
 \textwidth 2355
 \tf@mtc (command) 264, 283, 436
 \tf@mtc 2493, 2743, 2841, 3471, 3481, 3485,
 3497, 3530, 3577, 3605, 3642, 3666,
 3703, 3719, 3739, 4154, 4162, 4188,
 4189, 4262, 4263, 4274, 4286, 4287,
 4322, 4323, 4334, 4346, 4347, 4382,
 4383, 4774, 4782, 4795, 4796, 4826,
 4827, 4866, 4867, 4878, 4891, 4892,
 4926, 4927, 4938, 4951, 4952, 4986,
 4987, 7339, 7643
 thai (language option) 39, 589
 thai.dtx (file) 626
 thai.ldf (file) 589
 thai.mld (file) 242, 244, 589, 648
 thai.mlo (file) 242, 244, 589
 thai.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 589
 thaicjk.ldf (file) 589
 thailatex (package) . . . 237, 589, 663, ↪[267]
 thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz (file) 626
 \the3727, 3742, 5280, 5281, 5320, 5321, 5361,
 5362, 5499, 5500, 5738, 5739, 5780,
 5784, 5824, 5828
 \The@mtc (command) 293, 645
 \The@mtc 3066, 3123, 3125, 3193, 3195, 3261,
 3263
 thebibliography (environment) . . . 135, 145
 \thechapter 1235, 1316, 7943, 7946
 \themtc (command) 293
 \themtc 3066, 3481, 3485, 3497, 3530, 3602,
 3605, 3663, 3666
 \Thepart (command) 321
 \Thepart 3754, 3850, 3916, 3990
 \theptc (command) 321
 \theptc 3754, 4162, 4181, 4182, 4185, 4186,
 4274, 4279, 4280, 4283, 4284, 4334,
 4339, 4340, 4343, 4344
 \thesection 1315, 1316, 1750
 \thestc 4443, 4510, 4577, 4632, 4782, 4788,
 4789, 4792, 4793, 4814, 4878, 4884,
 4885, 4888, 4889, 4938, 4944, 4945,
 4948, 4949
 THIELE, Christina 675, ↪[147, 314]
 THIMBLEBY, Harold 675, ↪[358, 359]
 \thispageminilofstyle (command) 48, 86,
 300
 \thispageminilofstyle . 3007, 3203, 7757
 \thispageminilotstyle (command) 48, 86,
 303
 \thispageminilotstyle . 3007, 3271, 7757

- `\thispageminitocstyle` (command) 48, 86, 296
- `\thispageminitocstyle` . 3007, 3133, 7757
- `\thispagepartlofsty` (command) 48, 86, 645
- `\thispagepartlofsty` . 3007, 3930, 7742
- `\thispagepartlotsty` (command) 48, 86, 645
- `\thispagepartlotsty` . 3007, 4005, 7742
- `\thispageparttocsty` (command) 48, 86, 288, 645
- `\thispageparttocsty` . 3007, 3864, 7742
- `\thispagesectlofsty` (command) . 48, 86
- `\thispagesectlotsty` (command) . 48, 86
- `\thispagesectlotsty` . 3007, 4590, 7772
- `\thispagesecttocsty` (command) . 48, 86
- `\thispagesecttocsty` . 3007, 4456, 7772
- `\thispagestyle` (command) . 48, 49, 86, 288
- `\thispagestyle` 1735, 3007
- THORUP, Kresten Krab 675, ⇨[360]
- THUREAU, Aurélien 675
- `tight` (option) 42, 62, 80, 142, 220, 222, 237, 250, 271, 295, 324, 347, 401, 644, 646
- `\tightmtcfalse` (command) 42, 81
- `\tightmtcfalse` 2640, 6105, 7788
- `\tightmtctrue` (command) 42, 81
- `\tightmtctrue` 6104
- TINNEFELD, Karsten . . . 53, 75, 88, 675, ⇨[361]
- `\tiny` (command) 231
- `\title` 1758
- `titlesec` (package) . . 53, 88, 186, 237, 257, 410, 672, ⇨[42]
- `titletoc` (package) 53, 88, 174, 237, 411, ⇨[42]
- `titletoc.sty` (file) 237
- T LAM, Ton 675
- `tlc.tex` (old example document) . . 664, 667
- `tmk` (script) . . 237, 243, 244, 246, 247, 255, 668
- `tocbibind` (package) 50, 53, 65, 88, 96, 98, 100, 101, 104, 142, 144, 145, 162, 226, 227, 238, 251, 409, 645, ⇨[389]
- `tocdepth` (depth counter) 34, 63, 71, 82–84, 214, 238, 293, 297, 301, 393, 639, 651
- `toch` (package) 640
- `\toclevel@chapter` 2651
- `\toclevel@paragraph` 2655
- `\toclevel@part` 2650
- `\toclevel@section` 2652
- `\toclevel@starchapter` 2651
- `\toclevel@starparagraph` 2655
- `\toclevel@starpart` 2650
- `\toclevel@starsection` 2652
- `\toclevel@starsubparagraph` 2656
- `\toclevel@starsubsection` 2653
- `\toclevel@starsubsubsection` 2654
- `\toclevel@subparagraph` 2656
- `\toclevel@subsection` 2653
- `\toclevel@subsubsection` 2654
- `\toclevel@xchapter` 2648
- `\toclevel@xpart` 2647
- `\toclevel@xsect` 2649
- `tocloft` (package) 53, 64–66, 71, 78, 79, 88, 115, 116, 129, 162, 226, 227, 238, 410, ⇨[386]
- `tocloft.pdf` (file) 78
- `toctvsec2` (package) ⇨[390]
- `TODO` (file) 238, 242–244
- TOLUŠIS, Sigitas 543, 544, 675
- Tools
 - `dvips` 219, 239
 - `dvipsone` 219
 - `dviwindo` 219
 - `newcommand` ⇨[303]
 - `rubber` 61, 235, 653, ⇨[30]
 - `urlbst` . . . 214, 218, 239, 254, 660, ⇨[167]
 - `VTEX` 219
 - `xargs` 52, 654
- `\topsep` (command) 295, 324
- `\topsep` 3108, 3837, 4432
- TORDELLA, Laurent 675
- TRETTIN, Mark 675, ⇨[362, 363]
- `triruvathira` (malayalam package) . . 550
- `trivfloat` (package) . . 54, 88, 163, 238, 256, 268, 276, 430, 671, ⇨[401]
- TRUU, Ahto 675
- `tsfc.tex` (old example document) . . 664, 667
- TSOLOMITIS, Antonis 675, ⇨[348]
- `\ttfamily` (command) 231
- `\ttfamily` 1534, 1536, 1572, 1574
- `turkish` (language option) 39, 590
- `turkish.dtx` (file) 590
- `turkish.mld` (file) 242, 244, 590
- `turquie.pdf` (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 590
- TWS-TDS, ⇨[364, 365]
- `txfonts` (package) 36, 238, ⇨[332]

U

- `u8hangul.tex` (file) 523
- `u8hanja.tex` (file) 525
- `uighur` (language option) 39, 591
- `uighur.mld` (file) 242, 244, 591, 663
- `uighur.pdf` (graphic file) 243–245, 591

uighur2 (language option) 39, 592
 uighur2.mld (file) 242, 244, 592, 663
 uighur3 (language option) 39, 592
 uighur3.mld (file) 242, 244, 592, 663
 UKenglish (language option) 39, 592
 UKenglish.mld (file) 242, 244, 592, 652
 ukraine.jpg (graphic file) 243–245, 594
 ukraineb (language option) 39, 593
 ukraineb.dtx (file) 593
 ukraineb.mld (file) 242, 244, 257, 593, 672
 ukrainep.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 594
 ukrainian (language option) 39, 593
 ukrainian.mld (file) 242, 244, 593, 658
 ULRICH, Stefan 36, 645, 675, \hookrightarrow [22]
 UMEKI, Hideo 675, \hookrightarrow [366]
 undotted (option) 47, 62, 80, 250, 402, 644
 \undottedmtcfalse (command) 81
 \undottedmtcfalse **2881**, 6111, 7790
 \undottedmtctrue (command) 81
 \undottedmtctrue 6110
 \unhcopy 2833, 2837
 \unitlength 879, 890, 922, 944, 967, 1081,
 1087, 1098, 1134, 1155, 1174
 \unpenalty 2840
 \unskip 312, 401, 562
 uppersorbian (language option) 39, 595
 uppersorbian.mld (file) 242, 244, 595, 658
 \upshape (command) 231
 \upshape 811, 1532, 1534, 1536, 1570, 1572,
 1574, 2178, 2180, 2182, 2185, 2187,
 3089, 3090, 3095, 3778, 3779, 3788,
 3791–3793, 3802, 4409, 4410, 4418
 url (package) \hookrightarrow [17]
 \url 527, 528, 535, 536, 543, 544
 urlbst (tool) 214, 218, 239, 254, 660, \hookrightarrow [167]
 USenglish (language option) 39, 595
 USenglish.mld (file) 242, 244, 595, 652
 \usepackage (command) 28–31, 33, 78, 202,
 206, 232–234, 442, 466
 \usepackage 5–7, 48, 107, 164, 166, 167, 190,
 191, 210–212, 214, 263–268, 298–
 301, 304, 393–395, 403, 404, 559,
 564, 565, 758–761, 804–806, 998–
 1001, 1199, 1201–1203, 1213, 1214,
 1220–1224, 1396, 1448–1451, 1505,
 1506, 1525–1527, 1553–1555, 1592,
 1593, 1641, 1642, 1689, 1690, 1742–
 1748, 1902–1905, 1907, 1929, 1935,
 1936, 1960, 1962, 2033, 2034, 2064–
 2068, 2072, 2115–2119, 2166, 2170,
 2171, 2222–2226, 2267, 2310, 2311,
 2359, 2391–2393, 7806
 usorbian (language option) 39, 595
 usorbian.dtx (file) 595

usorbian.mld (file) 242, 244, 257, 595, 660,
 672

UYAR, Turgut 590, 675, \hookrightarrow [61]

V

VAARIO, Jari 675
 \value 2623, **7017**, **8507**, **8530**, **8723**, **8746**
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet 675, \hookrightarrow [368]
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas 675,
 \hookrightarrow [27, 369]
 VAN ZANDT, Timothy 675, \hookrightarrow [370]
 VAQUIN, Vincent 675
 varioref (package) 140, \hookrightarrow [273]
 varsects (package) 53, 73, 88, 173, 239, 253,
 267, 272, 425, 656, \hookrightarrow [357]
 \vbox 2199, 2202, 2204, 2408, 2415
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. 675, \hookrightarrow [371]
 verbose (placeins package) 30, 435
 VERNA, Didier 62, 223, 250, 310, 314, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [372]
 verse (environment) 35, 295, 324, 347, 639
 VESCO, Sylvain 675
 VEYTSMAN, Boris 675, \hookrightarrow [373, 374]
 \vfil 2199, 2202, 2204, 2409, 2414
 \vfill 1263, 1280
 VIAL, Alexandre 675
 viet2.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 596
 viet3.pdf (graphic file) 243–245, 596
 vietnam (package) 44, 596, \hookrightarrow [252]
 vietnam (language option) 39, 596, 597
 vietnam.mld (file) 242, 244, 596, 597, 644
 vietnamese (language option) 39, 597
 vietnamese.mld (file) 242, 244, 597
 VOEGELIN, Carl F. 675, \hookrightarrow [375]
 VOEGELIN, Florence M. 675, \hookrightarrow [375]
 VOGEL, Martin 675, \hookrightarrow [193]
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir 484, 557, 572, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [77, 376]
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. 277, 645, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [377, 378]
 Voss, Herbert 675, \hookrightarrow [162]
 \vref 2212, 2213
 \vrule (command) 646
 \vrule 2400, 2401, 2403
 vruler (package) 77, \hookrightarrow [209]
 \vskip 313, 1238, 1245, 2884, 3167, 3183,
 3187, 3239, 3255, 3307, 3323, 3345,
 3357, 3817, 3824, 3831, 3893, 3912,
 3970, 3986, 4045, 4061, 4490, 4507,
 4560, 4574, 4627, 4642

\vspace 1231, 1241, 1267, 1291,
1295, 1298, **1966**, 2073, 2074, 2121,
2207, 3100, 3101, 3177, 3184, 3188,
3249, 3256, 3317, 3324, 3773, 3808,
3809, 3811, 3815, 3822, 3829, 3906,
3913, 3980, 3987, 4055, 4062, 4407,
4422, 4423, 4501, 4508, 4575, 4643,
5062–5064, 5071–5073, 5080–5082
\vspace* (command) 641
VTEX (tool) 219

W

W0001 (message) 51, 151, 164, 395
W0002 (message) 51, 151, 164, 397
W0003 (message) 50, 54, 151, 164, 293
W0004 (message) 50, 54, 151, 164, 321
W0005 (message) 50, 54, 151, 165, 346
W0006 (message) 51, 151, 165, 395
W0007 (message) 51, 151, 165, 397
W0008 (message) 151, 165, 316
W0009 (message) 151, 165, 318
W0010 (message) 151, 166, 313
W0011 (message) 151, 166, 341
W0012 (message) 151, 166, 344
W0013 (message) 151, 166, 339
W0014 (message) 151, 166, 364
W0015 (message) 151, 167, 366
W0016 (message) 151, 167, 361
W0017 (message) 60, 151, 167, 280
W0018 (message) 151, 167, 279
W0019 (message) 151, 167, 283
W0020 (message) 151, 168, 236, 402
W0021 (message) 60, 151, 168, 284
W0022 (message) 60, 151, 168, 284
W0023 (message) 151, 170, 219, 415, 416
W0024 (message) 151, 170, 434
W0025 (message) 53, 75, 151, 170, 207, 408, 660
W0026 (message) 53, 66, 151, 170, 207, 413
W0027 (message) 53, 66, 151, 171, 207, 413
W0028 (message) 151, 171, 219, 415
W0029 (message) 53, 75, 151, 171, 220, 414, 660
W0030 (message) 151, 171, 219, 415
W0031 (message) 151, 172, 233, 411
W0032 (message) 151, 172, 233, 411
W0033 (message) 54, 72, 151, 172, 209, 428
W0034 (message) 54, 72, 151, 172, 209, 241,
429, 466
W0035 (message) 54, 72, 151, 173, 210, 429
W0036 (message) 54, 72, 151, 173, 222, 429
W0037 (message) 53, 70, 151, 173, 236, 425

W0038 (message) 53, 73, 151, 173, 239, 253,
425, 656
W0039 (message) 151, 173, 219, 416
W0040 (message) 53, 151, 174, 237, 411
W0041 (message) 151, 174, 432
W0042 (message) 151, 174, 432
W0043 (message) 151, 174, 432
W0044 (message) 151, 175, 431
W0045 (message) 151, 175, 431
W0046 (message) 151, 175, 431
W0047 (message) 151, 175, 433
W0048 (message) 151, 176, 433
W0049 (message) 151, 176, 432
W0050 (message) 151, 176, 433
W0051 (message) 151, 176, 433
W0052 (message) 151, 176, 434
W0053 (message) 53, 54, 59, 151, 177, 424
W0054 (message) 53, 54, 59, 151, 177, 424
W0055 (message) 53, 54, 59, 151, 177, 424
W0056 (message) 30, 53, 151, 177, 219, 418
W0057 (message) 151, 178, 419
W0058 (message) 151, 178, 419
W0059 (message) 151, 178, 419
W0060 (message) 151, 178, 418
W0061 (message) 151, 178, 418
W0062 (message) 151, 179, 418
W0063 (message) 151, 179, 419
W0064 (message) 151, 179, 419
W0065 (message) 151, 179, 419
W0066 (message) 151, 179, 423
W0067 (message) 151, 180, 423
W0068 (message) 151, 180, 423
W0069 (message) 151, 180, 422
W0070 (message) 151, 180, 422
W0071 (message) 151, 181, 422
W0072 (message) 151, 181, 424
W0073 (message) 151, 181, 424
W0074 (message) 151, 181, 424
W0075 (message) 151, 182, 420
W0076 (message) 151, 182, 420
W0077 (message) 151, 182, 420
W0078 (message) 151, 182, 421
W0079 (message) 151, 182, 421
W0080 (message) 151, 183, 421
W0081 (message) 151, 183, 421
W0082 (message) 151, 183, 421
W0083 (message) 151, 183, 421
W0084 (message) 151, 183, 233, 411
W0085 (message) 151, 184, 233, 411
W0086 (message) 53, 75, 151, 184, 217, 254,
426, 662
W0087 (message) 53, 75, 151, 184, 234, 254,
427, 662

W0088 (message) . . . 54, 76, 151, 184, 235, 254,
427, 662
W0089 (message) . . . 54, 76, 151, 185, 236, 254,
427, 662
W0090 (message) . . . 54, 76, 151, 185, 207, 254,
428, 662
W0091 (message) . . . 54, 76, 151, 185, 209, 428
W0092 (message) . . . 53, 79, 151, 185, 218, 255,
426, 640, 668
W0093 (message) 151, 168, 405
W0094 (message) 151, 169, 405
W0095 (message) 51, 151, 169, 398
W0096 (message) 51, 151, 169, 398
W0097 (message) . . . 53, 79, 151, 185, 217, 256,
414, 671
W0098 (message) 29, 151, 169
W0099 (message) . . . 53, 151, 186, 237, 257, 410,
672
WAGNER, Zdeněk 495, 528, 675, \hookrightarrow [306]
WALDEN, David 675, \hookrightarrow [147]
WARD, Nigel 26, 248, 639, 675
WARNOCK, John 675, \hookrightarrow [159]
WAUD, Douglas 675, \hookrightarrow [379]
WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek 675, \hookrightarrow [380]
WEBANCK, Stephan B. 675
welsh (language option) 39, 597
welsh.dtx (file) 597
welsh.mld (file) 242, 244, 597
WERNER, Eduard . . . 545, 595, 675, \hookrightarrow [92, 93]
WEST, Daphne 675, \hookrightarrow [381]
WETTL, Ferenc 675, \hookrightarrow [99, 100]
\widowpenalty (command) 641
WIJNHOUT, Jeroen 675, \hookrightarrow [310–312]
WILLIAMS, Graham 675, \hookrightarrow [382]
WILSON, Peter R. . . . 50, 53, 54, 64, 65, 70, 72,
76, 88, 206, 207, 211, 223, 277, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [383–399, 399, 400]
win-gn.def (file) 519
WOLIŃSKI, Marcin 564, 675, \hookrightarrow [276, 299]
WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth 675
WOODING, Mark 675, \hookrightarrow [276]
wrapfig (package) 134, 227, 239, \hookrightarrow [15]
wrapfigure (environment) 134, 227, 239
wraptable (environment) 239
WRIGHT, Joseph A. 88, 238, 675, \hookrightarrow [401]
WRIGHT, Tim 675
\write . . . 2630, 2633, 2767, **2841**, **3719**, **3739**,
7349
WUJASTYK, Dominik . . . 495, 528, 675, \hookrightarrow [306]
WYART, Damien 675, \hookrightarrow [27]

X

\X . . . **9567**, **9581**, **9596**, **9611**, **9631**, **9646**, **9661**
xalx (language option) 39, 539, 598–600
\xalx **10111**, **10558**
xalx.mld (file) 242, 244, 539, 598, 655
xalx2 (language option) 39, 599
xalx2.mld (file) 242, 244, 599, 661
xalx3 (language option) 39, 600
xalx3.mld (file) 242, 244, 600, 661
xargs (tool) 52, 654
\xchapter (command) 315, 318
\xchapter **3325**, **3601**, **3662**, **7643**
\xdef (command) 393
\xdef 5838, 5872, 5906
X_YTEX (package) 232
X_YTEX (package) 232, \hookrightarrow [213]
xinjiang.png (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 591
xinjiangc.png (graphic file) . . . 243–245, 591
xmkn (script) 240, 243, 244, 246, 247, 664
\xpart **3754**, 4275, 4335, **7643**
xr (package) 28, 240, 310, 639, 640, 656,
 \hookrightarrow [103]
xr-hyper (package) 240, \hookrightarrow [106]
\xsect **4644**, 4880, 4940, **7643**

Y

YOGANANDA, C. S. 538, 675, \hookrightarrow [402]

Z

\z@ (command) 646
ZAIMI, Adi 469, 675, \hookrightarrow [94]
ZAMENOF[†], Lejzer Ludwig 498, 675
ZAVRTANIK, Danilo 580, 675, \hookrightarrow [95]
ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad . . . 539–541, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [58]
ZENDER, Charlie S. 675, \hookrightarrow [403]
ZENITH, Federico 675, \hookrightarrow [310–312]
ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. 574–576, 675,
 \hookrightarrow [188, 404]
ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe 675
ŽLAJPAH, Leon 580, 675, \hookrightarrow [95]